Washington State
Department of Transportation

Publications Transmittal

Transmittal Number PT 06-033	Date May 16, 2006
Publication Distribution To: All holders of the *Highway Runoff Manual* M 31-16	
Publication Title *Highway Runoff Manual*	Publication Number M 31-16
Originating Organization Engineering and Regional Operations Division, Environmental and Engineering Programs Headquarters Environmental Affairs and Hydraulics	

Remarks:

The *Highway Runoff Manual* M 31-16 has been revised effective May 16, 2006 for projects going to Ad after July 1, 2007. Application of the revised guidance in the May 2006 HRM is optional, but encouraged for projects going to Ad during the 2005-2007 biennium since the revised guidance provides additional flexibility in stormwater designs over the March 2004 manual.

Distribution:

The manual is distributed online: http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/fasc/EngineeringPublications/library.htm

Instructions:

The *March 2004 Highway Runoff Manual* (HRM) was revised to improve content clarity and to reflect advancements in stormwater management and improvement in design tools. Significant changes in the May 2006 revision include:

- A major reorganization and rewrite of the 2004 HRM's *Chapter 3 – Stormwater Planning and Design Guidance*, including changing the chapter title to *Stormwater Planning and Design Integration* and moving it into the Chapter 2 position (i.e., 2004 HRM's *Chapter 2 – Minimum Requirements* now appears as Chapter 3).
- Greater uniformity in applying the manual's minimum requirement thresholds for eastern and western Washington.
- An expanded flow control exempt surface waters list.
- Clarifications to retrofit guidance.
- Improvements to the *Endangered Species Act Stormwater Design Checklist.*
- Applying the *Threshold Discharge Area* approach to eastern Washington.
- Refinements and additions related to infiltration guidance.
- Refinements related to MGSFlood enhancements.
- Refinements/additions to flow control modeling credits for several BMPs and modeling low-impact development (LID) approaches.
- Elimination of *Appendix 4C – Downstream Analysis*, which was incorporated into the *Hydraulics Manual* update.
- Refined design criteria for several best management practices (BMPs).
- Additional figures and photos to enhance BMP design descriptions.
- Fully integrating low-impact development (LID) approaches into Chapter 5, thereby eliminating the need for *Appendix 5A – Low-Impact Development Land Use Practices.*

- A process for seeking approval to use BMPs not currently in the HRM (i.e., emerging technologies and high operations and maintenance BMPs), thereby eliminating the need for *Appendix 5B – Experimental BMPs Under Development.*
- Glossary enhancements.
- Expanded document hyperlink capabilities.

Periodic updates to this manual will be published only on the Internet. If you use a printed or CD ROM copy of the manual, you must consult the *Highway Runoff Manual Resource web page* for postpublication updates to verify the information you have is up to date.

For More Information:

Please consult:

WSDOT Intranet's *Highway Runoff Manual Resource webpage*:
http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/WaterQuality/Runoff/HighwayRunoffManual.htm

WSDOT Internet's *Environmental Services Office Stormwater – Water Quality Program web page*:
http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/waterquality/

Distributed By	Phone Number	Signature
Administrative and Engineering Publications	(360) 705-7430	Stephanie Williams

Highway Runoff Manual

M 31-16

Washington State Department of Transportation
Environmental and Engineering Programs

Alternate Formats: Persons with disabilities may request that this information be prepared and supplied in alternate formats by calling the Washington State Department of Transportation at (360) 705-7097. Persons who are deaf or hard of hearing may call the Washington State Telecommunications Relay Service by dialing 7-1-1 and asking to be connected to (360) 705-7097.

Additional copies may be purchased from:

Washington State Department of Transportation
Directional Documents and Engineering Publications
PO Box 47408
Olympia, WA 98504-7408

Phone: 360-705-7430
Fax: 360-705-6861
E-mail: Leerc@wsdot.wa.gov
Internet: http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/fasc/Engineering Publications/

Highway Runoff Manual
Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

Chapter 1. Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction

1-1. Basis for Manual Development

1-1.1. Purpose, Need, and Scope

The *Highway Runoff Manual* (HRM) was developed to direct the planning and design of stormwater management facilities for existing and new Washington State highways, rest areas, park-and-ride lots, ferry terminals, and highway maintenance facilities throughout the state. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) manages its stormwater discharges to protect water quality, beneficial uses of the state's waters, and the aquatic environment in general. Conformance to the provisions of this manual will result in consistent design procedures statewide, and should support acceptance of WSDOT stormwater planning by regulatory agencies. Guidance is provided for both western and eastern Washington, taking into account variations in climatic, geologic, and hydrogeologic conditions.

This manual's approach is consistent with WSDOT's objective of implementing a statewide highway runoff program that applies sound engineering principles to satisfy federal and state requirements. While federal and state stormwater requirements are subject to change, this manual is based on the best practicable engineering approaches to stormwater management currently available for WSDOT facilities.

The HRM establishes minimum requirements and provides uniform technical guidance for avoiding and mitigating water resource impacts associated with the development of state-owned and -operated transportation infrastructure systems, and for reducing and minimizing water resource impacts associated with the redevelopment of those facilities. The manual will receive periodic updates to enhance content clarity, as well as reflect changes in the regulatory landscape, advances in stormwater management, and improvements in design tools. Users referencing printed copies and CD ROM versions of the manual should continually consult the HRM Resource Web Page (🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/WaterQuality/Runoff/HighwayRunoffManual.htm#Updates) for postpublication updates to ensure they are using the most current design guidance.

Primary users of this manual include:

- WSDOT engineers who design drainage systems, and those who develop Hydraulic Reports; temporary erosion and sediment control (TESC) plans; and spill prevention, control, and countermeasures (SPCC) plans.
- WSDOT project inspectors in construction project offices responsible for inspection and maintenance of TESC plans.

- WSDOT maintenance staff responsible for developing Roadside Management Plans and roadway maintenance practices.
- Developers of projects adjacent to WSDOT right-of-way that are linked to roadway and/or drainage facilities within the right-of-way.
- Consultants hired to develop Hydraulic Reports, TESC plans, and SPCC plans, and/or to design stormwater facilities for WSDOT.
- Counties, municipalities, and other jurisdictions that design transportation projects supported by federal or state funding.

The Headquarters (HQ) Hydraulics Branch and the HQ Environmental Services Office are jointly responsible for manual revisions and implementation oversight. The design criteria and procedures presented in this manual supersede conflicting information presented in other previously published WSDOT manuals.

Many aspects of stormwater management for environmental protection relate to drainage collection and conveyance systems, culverts, drainage outfalls, and a variety of other hydraulic features. This manual makes frequent references to the *Hydraulics Manual,* dedicated in large part to addressing the analysis and design of those hydraulic features, with the intention that the two are to be used in tandem for complete analysis and design of stormwater facilities for roadway and other transportation infrastructure projects.

1-1.2. Review Process and Regulatory Standing of the Manual

The *Highway Runoff Manual* covers the entire state and meets the level of stormwater management established by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) in their *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SMMWW), and the *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington* (SMMEW). Washington State stormwater management requirements were developed to protect receiving waters from adverse hydrologic change and water quality degradation that can occur with project development. The applicable requirements vary for western and eastern Washington, due to differences in climate, soils, receiving water characteristics, and environmental concerns. Ecology has been involved in a review capacity throughout the development of this manual.

This manual also provides guidance to support WSDOT in its efforts to comply with the requirements of the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA). National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Fisheries and the United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) did not formally review the Ecology stormwater management manuals for programmatic "concurrence" under the ESA. Thus, to accomplish WSDOT's objective of developing stormwater treatment design guidance that meets all regulatory requirements, NOAA and USFWS were invited to comment on the HRM during the development process.

The HRM reflects the best available science in stormwater management to ensure that WSDOT projects adequately protect the functions and values of critical environmental areas, including wetlands, streams, lakes, and marine waters. Best available science includes information presented in the Ecology stormwater manuals for western and eastern Washington, research findings and successful stormwater management strategies from other areas of the country, and results of WSDOT's own testing of innovative stormwater management practices. WSDOT considers this manual to include all known, available, and reasonable methods of prevention and treatment (AKART) for stormwater runoff discharges consistent with state and federal law.

1-1.3. Presumptive versus Demonstrative Approaches to Protecting Water Quality

This manual is intended to provide project engineers and designers with technically sound stormwater management practices, equivalent to guidance provided in Ecology's stormwater management manuals, to achieve compliance with federal and state water quality regulations through the *presumptive approach*. Engineers and designers have the option of not following the stormwater management practices in this manual and seeking compliance via the *demonstrative approach*. However, this requires (1) demonstrating that the project will not adversely impact water quality by collecting and providing appropriate supporting data to show that the alternative approach protects water quality and satisfies state and federal water quality laws, and (2) performing the technology-based requirements of state and federal law.

Both the *presumptive* and *demonstrative approaches* are based on best available science and result from existing federal and state laws that require stormwater treatment systems to be properly designed, constructed, maintained, and operated to:

1. Prevent pollution of state waters and protect water quality, including compliance with state water quality standards.
2. Satisfy state requirements for all known available and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment of wastes prior to discharge to waters of the state.
3. Satisfy the federal technology-based treatment requirements under 40 CFR Part 125.3.

Under the *demonstrative approach*, the timeline and expectations for providing technical justification of stormwater management practices depend on the complexity of the individual project and the nature of the receiving water environment. In each case, the engineer or designer may be asked to document, to the satisfaction of Ecology or other approval authority, that the practices selected will result in compliance with the water quality protection requirements of the permit or of other local, state, or federal water quality-based project approval conditions. This approach may be more cost effective for large, complex, or unusual types of projects.

Projects that follow the stormwater best management practices (BMPs) contained in this manual are presumed to have satisfied this demonstration requirement and do not need to provide technical justification to support the selection of BMPs. Following the stormwater management practices in this manual means adhering to the guidance provided for proper selection, design, construction, implementation, operation, and maintenance of BMPs. This approach will generally be more cost effective for typical WSDOT projects.

1-1.4. Overview of Manual Development

The original *Highway Runoff Manual* was published in 1995 for primary application in the Puget Sound basin. The manual was designed to be consistent with Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin* (published in 1991), with specific guidance for transportation projects. The *Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin* became obsolete when Ecology published the SMMWW. Ecology's publication of the SMMEW provided the first comprehensive stormwater management manual for the eastern areas of the state. The guidance included in these two manuals forms the basis for this revised HRM and supports WSDOT's mission by providing technical and uniform guidance consistent with the intent of Ecology's stormwater guidance for all areas of the state.

This manual represents a culmination of over two years of extensive research, collaboration, and negotiation by an interdisciplinary technical team made up of water quality, stormwater, and erosion control specialists; designers; hydrologists; geotechnical and hydraulics engineers; landscape architects; and maintenance staff. The technical team also included several county representatives, and benefited from a close working relationship with Ecology staff (with work also contributed by consultants and outside reviewers). The technical team recognized that it is inefficient, and in some instances ineffective, to attempt to emulate how local jurisdictions manage runoff from residential, commercial, and industrial land uses. Consequently, its approach to revising the manual took into consideration the following:

1. WSDOT needs a statewide approach for managing stormwater that recognizes the differences in climate, soils, and land uses in eastern and western Washington.

2. Highway projects are linear in nature and, as such, are faced with practical limitations in terms of locating and maintaining stormwater treatment facilities within state-owned right-of-way.

3. WSDOT has limited control over many pollution sources entering its right-of-way, such as pollutants generated from atmospheric deposition, vehicle operation, litter, organic debris, and surrounding land uses.

4. The option to discharge runoff to local jurisdictions' drainage systems is not always available.

5. WSDOT lacks funding mechanisms (e.g., stormwater utility fees) and land use controls (e.g., zoning and land use ordinances) available to local governments.

6. WSDOT must be accountable to taxpayers to provide cost-effective stormwater facilities. WSDOT cannot infringe on the Legislature's authority to allocate gasoline tax funds to

transportation programs and projects by agreeing to measures that significantly increase project costs.

1-1.5. Overview of Federal, State, and Local Regulations Related to Stormwater

Water pollution control was formally established as a federal concern when Congress passed the first Water Pollution Control Act in 1948. For many years, the emphasis was on control of point source pollution; typically, outfalls from industrial factories and municipal sewage treatment plants. Since the early 1980s, water pollution control efforts have broadened to address non-point sources of pollution. Pollution collected and carried by stormwater often originates from nonpoint sources, but may be collected, conveyed, and discharged as a point source.

Major amendments to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act (which has become known as the Clean Water Act) in 1987 addressed stormwater pollution by extending the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit program to include stormwater discharges. Also in 1987, the Puget Sound Water Quality Authority (now the Puget Sound Action Team) issued the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan. This plan called for a Highway Runoff Program, which was subsequently developed in detail by Ecology and codified in *Washington Administrative Code* (WAC) 173-270.

In 1995, Ecology prepared NPDES municipal separate storm sewer permits for several municipalities with populations greater than 100,000. The Phase I NPDES permittees included the cities of Seattle and Tacoma; the counties of Clark, King, Pierce, and Snohomish; and WSDOT.

The Phase I NPDES Municipal Stormwater General Permit (originally effective through the year 2000, and subsequently extended by Ecology pending an updated Phase I permit) requires WSDOT to implement a stormwater program within the Phase I jurisdictional areas, including minimum requirements and BMPs equal to those found in the *Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin* or equivalent. The stormwater management plan developed in accordance with this Phase I permit requires WSDOT to "reduce pollutants in discharges to the maximum extent practicable (MEP)." To attain future compliance with its revised NPDES permit, and to continue to meet the general standards of AKART and MEP, WSDOT must implement a stormwater program that includes minimum requirements and best management practices consistent with those found in the SMMWW and the SMMEW.

Beginning in 1995, WSDOT construction projects were also required to comply with the Ecology NPDES requirements specific to construction activities. The threshold for a site disturbance area that typically triggered an NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit was 5 acres. Some large WSDOT projects with particularly sensitive environmental concerns are required to obtain individual NPDES construction stormwater permits from Ecology. NPDES construction stormwater permits require detailed documentation and implementation of temporary erosion and sediment control measures and other pollution prevention and control measures. Activities at sites such as the Washington State Ferries Eagle Harbor maintenance facility are covered under the NPDES Industrial Stormwater General Permit. Beginning in 1999, several fish species in Washington State were listed as threatened or endangered under the ESA, thus expanding the necessity for stormwater runoff control at WSDOT project sites in many parts of the state. The ESA requires that a biological evaluation be conducted to determine potential project impacts on threatened or endangered species, including impacts associated with stormwater. Stormwater management measures implemented at many WSDOT sites have been shaped by requirements necessary to avoid, minimize, or reduce potential impacts to threatened and endangered species under the ESA. The Section 7 Consultation process serves as the primary ESA compliance pathway for WSDOT projects.

Beginning in March 2003, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (U.S. EPA) extended the NPDES permit program for municipal separate storm sewer systems to encompass many more jurisdictions. Upon Ecology's issuance of these permits, Phase II of the NPDES program will extend the requirements for effective stormwater management to most of the state's urbanized areas. Also in 2003, the NPDES permit program lowered the threshold for construction projects that require general NPDES construction stormwater permits to 1 acre of ground disturbance; thus encompassing a much higher percentage of WSDOT projects. Ecology's reissuance of the NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit incorporates additional regulations of the U.S. EPA's nationwide Phase II program, and requires implementation of construction site BMPs in conformance with the SMMWW and SMMEW.

Additional state regulations applicable to stormwater include:

- Implementation of Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) plans by Ecology and local partners, resulting in limitations on pollutants in stormwater discharges. TMDLs are addressed in Section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act.
- Conditions of the underground injection control (UIC) program (WAC 173-218). The UIC program, administered by Ecology to implement provisions of the federal Safe Drinking Water Act, applies to subsurface drainage facilities that discharge water to the ground (e.g., drywells).
- Site-specific Section 401 (of the Clean Water Act) Water Quality Certifications issued by Ecology in relation to projects that require federal Section 404 permits for in-water work. Section 404 of the Clean Water Act provides federal regulatory protection for wetlands.
- Conditions of aquatic lands use authorizations. The aquatic lands use authorization is administered by the Washington State Department of Natural Resources (DNR) and may apply to stormwater outfalls (*Revised Code of Washington* [RCW] 79.90 through 79.96 and WAC 332-30).
- State Surface Water Quality Standards (WAC 173-201A).

In most instances, local stormwater management requirements will not override the requirements in this manual. RCW 47.01.260(1) grants WSDOT plenary power in planning, locating, designing, constructing, improving, repairing, operating, and maintaining state highways, including drainage facilities and channel changes necessary for the protection of such highways. This grant of authority means that, absent express legislative direction, WSDOT is not subject to local ordinances in areas within WSDOT's purview, and attempts by local agencies to enforce such preempted ordinances are unconstitutional.

With respect to all state highway right-of-way in the Puget Sound basin under WSDOT control, WSDOT must use the *Highway Runoff Manual* to direct stormwater management for its existing and new facilities and rights-of-way, as addressed in WAC 173-270-030(1). Stated exceptions where more stringent stormwater management requirements may apply are addressed in WAC 173-270-030(3)(b) and (c).

- When a state highway is located in the jurisdiction of a local government that is required by Ecology to use more stringent standards to protect the quality of receiving waters, WSDOT will comply with the same standards to promote uniform stormwater treatment. The key emphasis here is that the local government has to be required by Ecology to use more stringent standards (e.g., via an existing TMDL) rather than simply opting on its own to do so.
- WSDOT will comply with standards identified in watershed action plans for WSDOT rights-of-way, as required by WAC 400-12-570. This is similar to the condition described above; however, its application is complicated by the fact that WAC 400-12-570 (*Action Plan Implementation*) was repealed on December 7, 1991.

Other instances where more stringent local stormwater standards can apply are projects subject to tribal government standards and to the stormwater management-related permit conditions associated with critical area ordinances (under the Growth Management Act) and shoreline master programs (under the Shoreline Management Act). In addition, WSDOT needs to comply with local jurisdiction stormwater standards when WSDOT elects, and is granted permission, to discharge stormwater runoff into a municipality's stormwater system.

Issuance of WSDOT's statewide municipal NPDES permit will further reduce the number of stormwater-related permits required by no longer regulating stormwater discharges under *Section 401 Water Quality Certification* and *Hydraulic Project Approval* permits.

This manual represents a set of tools and options that supports compliance with local, state, and federal regulations related to stormwater management. Incorporation of local and regional stormwater requirements into project design is discussed further in Sections 2-6 and 2-7.

1-2. The Importance of Stormwater Management

1-2.1. Background and Objectives

Land development can have a dramatic impact on the natural hydrologic cycle. In western Washington, land cover that once consisted primarily of mature forest has been replaced in many areas with impervious surfaces such as rooftops, parking areas, roadways, and manicured landscapes. Similar transitions have occurred in eastern Washington, where prairies, pine forests, shrub-steppe landscapes, and channeled scablands have been replaced by farmland and urbanization. The creation of impervious surfaces has two main effects on the hydrologic cycle: (1) a reduction in infiltration, and (2) an associated increase in surface runoff. Reducing land cover, mainly by tree removal, can also significantly increase runoff, even though pervious surfaces remain.

The creation of impervious surfaces increases both the volume of surface runoff and the peak rate of flow resulting from a storm event, leading to increased flooding rate, extent, and severity. Increasing impervious surfaces also decreases the time to peak discharge. The higher velocity and greater quantity of flow may cause streambank erosion and aquatic habitat destruction that could potentially result in geomorphological impacts. Sediment from cleared areas and eroded and unstable streambanks is deposited downstream, filling ponds, streambeds, and stormwater facilities. Construction projects with exposed and unstabilized soils, especially on slopes, can be significant sources of soil and sediment that adversely affect drainage systems and receiving waters.

Stormwater and snowmelt runoff function as the transport mechanisms for nonpoint sources of pollution, as well as for the atmospheric deposition of airborne pollutants. In addition to the hydrologic effects from runoff, land development significantly increases the amount of pollutants available for entrainment in stormwater and snowmelt runoff. Increased pollutant loadings resulting from human habitation and activity can result in measurable degradation of receiving waters.

A more subtle impact of development on the hydrologic cycle is the reduction of infiltration. Infiltration of precipitation, stormwater, and snowmelt runoff recharges groundwater and produces interflow: the subsurface flow particularly common in many of the soils of Washington. Shallow groundwater is typically the source of summer base flows in streams, and it sustains water levels in some wetlands. Reduction in infiltration can dry up small streams and wetlands in the summer and, in turn, render aquatic systems uninhabitable during these times.

1-2.2. Impacts of Roadway Runoff

Runoff from roadways and associated facilities may contain suspended solids; oil and grease (hydrocarbons); and heavy metals such as lead, copper, and zinc. Many of the pollutants in roadway runoff are attributed to motorized vehicle operation. The wearing of brake linings, thrust bearings, engine crankshafts, and tires results in the deposition of numerous heavy metal particles on the roadway surface. The dripping of oil and other engine fluids deposits additional heavy metals, phosphorus, hydrocarbons, and other toxic organic compounds on the roadway surface. Atmospheric deposition of airborne pollutants via rain and snow events also contributes to the pollutant content on roadways, particularly in heavily urbanized areas. Litter, organic debris, and other materials that are common in roadway corridors also contribute to the pollutant loading in roadway runoff. The motor vehicle industry is engaged in various efforts to reduce the extent to which vehicles produce pollutants, such as the manufacture of brake pads with less copper content and engines powered by alternative energy sources, which may reduce pollutant loadings in roadway runoff in the future.

Transportation projects, which tend to be linear in nature, may encompass multiple drainage basins and impact multiple receiving waters. While the runoff discharged from highways and other transportation infrastructure represents only a portion of the runoff affecting nearby water bodies, it contributes to the cumulative degradation of those waters. The effects of stormwater runoff on receiving waters are typically a function of the proximity of development site discharges to the receiving water body, and the size of the receiving water body relative to discharge volumes and flow rates. The impacts of stormwater runoff from state owned rights-of-way vary widely, depending on surrounding land use, climate patterns, soil characteristics, receiving water characteristics, and other local factors.

The construction of roadway improvement projects also contributes to surface runoff contamination, due mainly to suspended solids associated with soil erosion. Construction activities can also result in stormwater and nearby surface waters being contaminated with oil, heavy metals, and other pollutants resulting from vehicle operations and maintenance; runoff from areas where solvents, paints, and other liquid materials are used and stored; leaching of asphalt emulsion and concrete slurry; and a variety of other sources. Those impacts can be severe and long-lasting if appropriate actions are not taken to control construction site runoff quality.

1-2.3. Management of Runoff From Transportation Projects

The key to controlling problems created by stormwater is the application of best management practices (BMPs). BMPs are defined as physical, structural, and managerial practices that, when used individually or in combination, prevent or reduce pollution of water and attenuate peak flows and volumes. BMPs targeting the types of problems discussed above are typically categorized as *temporary* or *permanent*. Temporary BMPs are typically used only during the construction phase of a project. Permanent BMPs are used to control and treat runoff throughout operation of the highway, park-and-ride lots, rest areas, ferry terminals, or other transportation project sites. Some BMPs, such as detention ponds, may function in both temporary and permanent BMP capacities.

Temporary BMPs are designed to prevent the introduction of pollutants into runoff for the duration of the construction project, and are concurrent with construction of the permanent

BMPs. Common examples of temporary BMPs include mulching of bare ground, silt fencing, and spill control and containment. Permanent runoff treatment BMPs include facilities that remove pollutants from runoff by simple gravity settling of particulate matter, and/or by filtration, biological uptake, and soil adsorption (common examples include wet ponds and vegetated swales). Flow control BMPs reduce the peak rate of runoff during a storm event by storing the flow and releasing it at a slower rate, thus protecting stream ecosystems from excessive erosion (typical examples are detention ponds and dry vaults). Permanent BMPs are used to treat highway runoff for the design life of the project site.

Stormwater problems can be grouped into two categories: (1) impacts associated with existing impervious areas, and (2) impacts arising from new impervious areas if no stormwater controls are used. New projects that must comply with this manual are required to provide stormwater treatment for the new impervious surfaces.

Project designers should keep in mind that the ultimate goal is to provide practicable stormwater treatment for runoff from the existing impervious surfaces, and to protect the beneficial uses of receiving waters. Existing highway sections that have no stormwater treatment, or where treatment is substandard, may eventually be retrofitted in accordance with the WSDOT retrofit program. If it is cost effective to include a BMP to treat the entire project site, even though only a portion of the facility is undergoing expansion or redevelopment, the BMP should be designed and constructed to treat the larger area. Guidance for determining whether it is cost effective to provide stormwater treatment beyond what is required can be found in Section 3-4.

In some cases, it may not be practicable to provide treatment and/or flow control for runoff from project-site areas, due to various constraints such as site limitations, costs, or other obstacles. If on-site mitigation is not feasible, opportunities that use this manual's off-site treatment options must be identified and considered. Sections 2-7.3 and 2-7.4 present a process for analyzing off-site treatment options. WSDOT will continue to develop, pursue, and expand off-site options. However, these options are currently constrained to the "in-kind" variety, as Ecology has stated it will not authorize the use of "out-of-kind" mitigation options.

1-3. Organization of This Manual

The HRM is divided into six chapters. Chapter 1 provides background information on the development of the manual and an overview of the stormwater problems associated with highways and other transportation infrastructures.

Chapter 2 provides an overview of the WSDOT project design process and how the stormwater/drainage design elements should be integrated into that process. Guidance is provided for gathering predesign data and analyzing design alternatives. Appendix 2A presents a method to assist in determining when site-specific factors could make constructing stormwater management facilities within or adjacent to the highway right-of-way infeasible. Appendix 2B provides a checklist to assist project designers in providing pertinent information about a project's stormwater treatment facilities to biologists responsible for preparing biological assessments required for consultation under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act.

Chapter 3 describes the minimum requirements that apply to the planning and design of stormwater facilities and best management practices. Guidance is provided to determine which of the nine minimum requirements must be met for a given transportation project. The purpose and the applicability of the minimum requirements are described. Guidance is also provided for determining whether it is cost effective to provide stormwater treatment retrofits beyond what is called for under these requirements.

Chapter 4 provides a description of the different hydrologic analysis methods that must be used to design stormwater runoff treatment and flow control facilities. The chapter also provides a detailed explanation of the analysis methods used, as well as the supporting data and assumptions needed to complete the design.

Chapter 5 guides the project designer through the selection of permanent stormwater treatment, infiltration, and flow control BMPs and their design processes. It includes a process for BMP selection in both western and eastern Washington. Guidance for the use of emerging technologies and discussions of operation and maintenance are included. Detailed design criteria for each permanent BMP are included in Section 5-4.

Chapter 6 guides the project designer through the process of selecting and designing temporary construction-related BMPs. It includes guidance for selecting appropriate erosion and sediment control (ESC), as well as spill prevention, control, and countermeasures (SPCC) BMPs (including operation and maintenance considerations). Chapter 6 also provides guidance on water quality monitoring for projects required to monitor runoff quality and/or receiving water effects during construction. Design criteria for each temporary BMP are included in Appendix 6A.

1-4. How to Use This Manual

The designer should follow the guidance for integrating the planning and design of stormwater-related project elements into the context of WSDOT's project development process prior to using the guidance in Chapter 3 to determine which minimum requirements must be satisfied for a specific project. In most instances, this process will spur the need to design construction and postconstruction BMPs according to the guidance provided in Chapters 4, 5, and 6.

Most projects lend themselves to relatively straightforward application of one or more of the BMP options presented in this manual. However, many WSDOT sites are not conducive to easy installation of any BMPs. When these types of problems arise, contact the following for assistance:

- **BMP Selection** – Region environmental and/or hydraulics staff, then the Hydraulics Branch staff or the Water Quality & Stormwater Program staff of the HQ Environmental Services Office.
- **Outfall Inventory/Field Screening Results, Retrofit Priorities, NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit, and Sampling** – Staff in the HQ Environmental Services Office, Water Quality & Stormwater Program.
- **Spill Control, Containment, and Countermeasure Activities** – Region environmental staff, then staff in the HQ Environmental Services Office, Hazardous Materials Program.
- **Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control Plans and Construction Site BMPs** – Region environmental staff, then staff in the HQ Environmental Services Office, Water Quality & Stormwater Program.
- **Vegetation Management** – Region and HQ Landscape Architects, then HQ Highway Maintenance staff.
- **Roadway Maintenance Practices** – Region maintenance staff, then HQ Highway Maintenance environmental staff.
- **Emerging BMPs** – Region environmental staff and the HQ Environmental Services Office, Water Quality & Stormwater Program staff.

CHAPTER 2

Stormwater Planning and Design Integration

Chapter 2. Table of Contents

List of Tables

Chapter 2. Stormwater Planning and Design Integration

2-1 Introduction

This chapter provides guidance for integrating the planning and design of stormwater-related project elements into the context of the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) project development process. How the process applies to a specific project depends on the type, size, and complexity of the project and individual WSDOT regional business practices.

2-2 Stormwater Management Objectives

Originally, the only function of highway stormwater management was to maintain safe driving conditions, using engineering techniques designed to prevent stormwater from ponding on road surfaces. While maintaining safe driving conditions continues to be essential for any functional highway drainage system, WSDOT also acknowledges the state's vital interest in protecting and preserving natural resources and other environmental assets, as well as its citizens' health and safety. These interests have become integrated with other vital interests committed to the department, including the cost-effective delivery and operation of transportation systems and services that meet public needs. Thus, stormwater management for WSDOT transportation facilities has two main objectives: (1) protect the functions of the transportation facility, and (2) protect ecosystem functions and the beneficial uses of receiving waters.

2-3 Project Development Overview

The integration of stormwater planning and design into WSDOT's project development process is shown in Table 2-1. While the process consists of the distinct phases described below, in practice, the phases actually overlap.

- The preliminary scope, schedule, and cost estimates for a project are generated during the *definition phase* (referred to as *scoping*). The product of the definition phase is the Project Summary, which is used to program the project.
- After the project is programmed, it is further developed through the *design phase*. The Design Documentation Package (DDP) produced during the design phase is submitted for design approval.
- The process continues through the development of project Plans, Specifications, and Estimates—the *PS&E phase*—which leads to production of contract documents for construction.

The level of effort invested during each phase of development and the extent to which the phases overlap for a specific project varies depending on the type, size, and complexity of that project. The project's design may also undergo modifications during the construction process.

Table 2-1. Stormwater Planning and Design in the Project Development Process.

Scoping ➔ ↓	***Design Approval/*** ➔ ***Environmental Documentation*** ↓	***PS&E*** ↓
Identification of water quality and hydrologic impacts and potential mitigation BMPs ↓	Selection of stormwater mitigation BMPs—type, size, and location ↓	Final design of stormwater BMPs—working plans ↓
Project Summary supported by design file documentation: ▪ Stormwater scoping package ▪ Environmental Review Summary ↓	Design report supported by design file documentation: ▪ Hydraulic Report ▪ Required environmental documentation ↓	Plans, Specifications, and Estimates package: ▪ TESC plan ▪ Provisions for SPCC plan ▪ Stormwater-related plans; general and special provisions ↓
BMP cost allocation	Preliminary BMP cost estimate	BMP cost estimate

2-3.1 Development Team

Assessment and documentation of stormwater impacts and mitigation measures begin during project scoping. The scoping and design team should involve appropriate participants (listed in Table 2-2) as part of the scoping process. Project type, size, and complexity are key factors in determining who should be consulted for development of the stormwater strategy for a project.

Table 2-2. Key Contacts for Development of Project Stormwater Strategy.

Contact	Roles	Activities
Project Design Office	Project management.	Participates in all aspects of project management and design.
Program Management (including program development)	Manages current biennial program; develops future biennial programs.	Manages set-up design and construction funding, and assists with below-the-line costs; manages project definition process.
Survey	Collects survey information.	Compiles field data; performs surveys; stakes right-of-way; verifies existing conditions.
Consultant Liaison	Consultant administration.	Issues request for proposal; assists in development of scopes of work; selects consultant; manages contract.
Developer Services	Coordinates development activity.	Provides information and contacts for other development activity in the area.

Contact	Roles	Activities
Planning Office	Determines future plans for route location.	Determines route development plans; develops proposals.
Geotechnical and Materials Laboratory	Determines geotechnical requirements; obtains data; provides analysis.	Provides scope and cost estimate of geotechnical work; reviews existing records and maps; performs soil borings; installs piezometers; conducts pH and resistivity testing. Assesses sources of materials and makes surfacing recommendations.
State Design Engineer	Approves design.	Reviews and approves overall design.
Right-of-Way Research and HQ Photogrammetry	Maintains as-built and right-of-way/access records.	Provides information regarding project location for inclusion in plans; provides aerial photos, survey, and photogrammetry development.
Maintenance	Provides recommendations.	Provides information on existing conditions; gives input on maintenance requirements of completed project.
Region and Headquarters Hydraulics	Provides assistance with hydraulic elements of design; provides approval or concurrence.	Determines hydraulic requirements; manages design, review, and approval of hydraulic and TESC design elements; assists with construction monitoring.
Region Environmental/ HQ Environmental Services	Performs analysis of environmental impacts and alternatives, and assures compliance with environmental laws and regulations.	Prepares environmental (NEPA/SEPA) documents; coordinates with resource and permitting agencies; assists with public involvement; obtains environmental permits.
Resource Agency (various)	Reviews reports; issues permits.	Provides endangered species list; approves biological assessments; issues permits that establish conditions for design and construction.
Roadside & Site Development Unit	Provides landscape design plans.	Prepares landscaping plans, specifications, and estimates, including planting and irrigation work; inspects construction; manages plant establishment period until sign-off by regulators.
Biologist	Performs biological analyses.	Delineates wetlands; prepares wetland reports, biological assessments, and mitigation recommendations.
Air and Noise	Performs air quality and noise analyses.	Conducts air and noise testing; determines wall locations.
Local Programs Office and Local Agencies	Various	Provides funding and design criteria; develops maintenance agreements.
Tribal Organizations	Various	May provide funding and comments on project.
Regional Transit Authorities	Various	Coordinates regional issues, basin plans, construction projects, and route development.
Railroads	Manages design conflicts.	Identifies facilities, relocation requirements, and design considerations.
Plan Review Office	Ensures compliance with plan standards.	Assists with preparation of special provisions and plans; provides final plan reviews.
Real Estate Services	Real estate management.	Determines ownership; estimates property costs; procures rights-of-way, easements, rights of entry, and access management.

Contact	Roles	Activities
Bridge and Structures Office	Structural design.	Assesses condition of existing structures; designs new structures; prepares PS&E for structures; coordinates backwater studies and pier placement.
Traffic	Traffic analysis and design.	Collects traffic data; develops traffic models; reviews channelization plans and work zone traffic control plans.
Safety Office	Applies safety standards.	Assists with design and provisions for stormwater features to meet regulations and codes.
Utilities	Manages existing and new utilities.	Determines utility requirements; prepares franchise inventory listing; reviews clear zone inventory; obtains utility as-built plans for inclusion on plan sheets; prepares relocation plan and utility agreements.
Construction Offices	Manages project construction.	Contributes to design considerations; provides constructibility reviews.

2-3.2 Site Assessment

Stormwater facility design is a major element for many projects, which requires significant advance data gathering and assessment to identify alternatives and develop accurate schedules and cost estimates. Data are needed to assess the project site in order to (1) determine project alignment alternatives, (2) assess impacts, (3) determine minimum requirements, and (4) develop conceptual stormwater management alternatives.

Characterizing the site and adjacent areas allows for a determination of the limiting factors controlling local hydrology. These limiting factors can then become the focus of the project's stormwater treatment strategies.

A three-dimensional picture of site hydrology should emerge during the site assessment. This picture should include natural and altered flow paths to the site from upstream areas, and from the site to downstream areas. Natural drainage must be preserved (see Minimum Requirement 4, Section 3-3.4). The design team must identify all off-site flows coming to the site, including streams, seeps, and stormwater discharges. The transportation facility must allow for passage of all off-site flows; however, every effort should be made to keep off-site flows separate (via bypass) from the highway runoff. This may not be possible for flows that are currently permitted to discharge to WSDOT conveyance and treatment facilities.

Runoff from WSDOT rights-of-way must not adversely affect downstream receiving waters and properties. Existing drainage impacts on downstream waters and properties must be identified during scoping, and must be either corrected as part of the project or recommended for a later retrofit. Drainage impacts are identified using multiple sources of information (see Section 2-3.2.1) and site visits during storms. Section 4-7 in the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* provides guidance on performing and documenting a downstream analysis. The preliminary downstream analysis is used for scoping purposes; however, a more detailed analysis may be needed during the project design phase. The final downstream analysis is included in the Hydraulic Report.

The scoping phase is the time to begin identifying natural areas within or adjacent to the project boundary that can be conserved. Conserving these areas helps to minimize project impacts. Some of these areas may be used as part of the project's stormwater management approach if they are appropriate areas for dispersion and infiltration. (See Chapters 4 and 5 for information regarding dispersion and infiltration.)

Conservation areas and their functions must be permanently protected under conservation easements or other locally acceptable means. If the conservation area falls within the right-of-way, it needs to be appropriately labeled on the right-of-way plan. If the conservation area is outside the right-of-way, then WSDOT needs to purchase a conservation easement or obtain another similar real estate protection instrument.

2-3.2.1 Inform ation Sources

As a starting point, the following data and resources are generally necessary for this task:

- Project vicinity map and site map
- Land cover types and areas (aerial photographs)
- Topography (USGS quadrangle maps and other survey maps)
- Watershed or drainage basin boundaries
- Receiving waters
- Wetlands
- Stream flow data
- Ditches and open-channel drainage
- Enclosed drainage
- Floodplains
- Utilities
- Total maximum daily loads (TMDLs)
- Water cleanup plans
- Clean Water Act Section 303(d) list of impaired waters
- Drainage patterns and drainage areas
- Basin plan data (basin-specific needs)

- Soil types, depth, and slope (Natural Resources Conservation Service soil surveys)
- Existing stormwater outfalls (outfall inventory and site reconnaissance)
- Land use types and associated pollutants
- Groundwater data, including depth to seasonal high water table
- Soil infiltration rates
- Vegetation surveys
- Land surveys
- Hazardous materials or wastes
- Average daily traffic (ADT)
- Roadway geometry (profiles/super-elevations)
- Geotechnical evaluation (see Section 2-3.2.2)

The contacts in Table 2-2 can help in collecting this information. In addition, WSDOT's *GIS Workbench* (an ArcView geographic information system tool to provide staff with access to comprehensive, current, and detailed environmental and natural resource management data) can be used to gather some of these data and can provide maps to help with project assessment, selection of stormwater management alternatives, and maintenance applications.

WSDOT's *Stormwater Management Facility Inventory Database* is another information resource. The database includes information generated from both office research and in-field site review for inventoried outfall locations. Data gathered includes information on the outfall location, watershed hydrology, and receiving water body water quality impairments and beneficial uses. The research portion also involves gathering data on the known external influences (e.g., legislative activities, the activities of other departments within state government, or the activities of local cities, communities, and tribal organizations) that may affect planning and scoping relative to the outfall location.

Data gathered in the field includes geographic and photographic information, adjacent land uses, receiving water body type, distance of outfall to receiving water body, and description of the outfall and conveyance system(s). The description of the outfall and conveyance system includes information on catchment size, percent contribution of highway runoff to watershed, conveyance system type, and other observations. Another portion of the in-field collection effort involves gathering data on aspects of the right-of-way (including right-of-way land classification) and existing BMPs and their condition. Furthermore, during dry weather, field visits assess whether any illicit discharges are present in the WSDOT drainage system.

In addition to the data used to derive retrofit priorities for each outfall, several hundred complete records contain best management practice (BMP) retrofit recommendations, conceptual design information, BMP cost estimates, drainage basin characteristics, conveyance system information, photographs, field sketches, and preliminary facility sizing calculations. Where available, that information can be used to reduce the research needs of designers for a particular project. It is important to check the date of a retrofit recommendation; older recommendations may not meet current standards and will require modification.

This database will become an increasingly valuable tool for design engineers as more stormwater management facilities are inventoried. Future plans include enhancing the database to track stormwater facility operation and maintenance. Information on the project's stormwater facilities will be input into the database as part of the project closeout procedure. Even though these database functions are not currently available, the types of data needed to support these database functions should be documented in the project's Hydraulic Report. Furthermore, stormwater management deficiencies are also tracked through the Priority Array Tracking System (PATS) and the Capital Program Management System (CPMS). When deficiencies are addressed by means of a retrofit, this is tracked through the same systems.

To obtain available stormwater database information about specific outfalls, or outfalls within the limits of a project, contact the region's Hydraulics and Water Quality offices, or the Headquarters (HQ) Environmental Services Office, Water Quality Program.

2-3.2.2 Geotechnical Evaluations

Understanding the soils, geology, geologic hazards, and groundwater conditions at the project site is essential to optimizing stormwater design for a project. Contact the WSDOT Region Materials Engineer (RME) and staff from the HQ Geotechnical Division as early as possible in the scoping phase, for inclusion on the scoping and design team.

Infiltration is the preferred method for flow control of stormwater runoff. Chapters 4 and 5 provide direction on how to apply optimal infiltration for stormwater management on transportation projects. However, the extent to which infiltration can be used needs to be assessed during the scoping phase because of its direct impact on stormwater alternatives and costs. The degree to which runoff can be infiltrated depends on the project location and context. Limiting factors include soil characteristics, depth to groundwater, and designated aquifer protection areas.

The RME evaluates the geotechnical feasibility of stormwater facilities that may be needed for the project. With assistance from the HQ Geotechnical Engineer, as needed, the RME gathers all available geotechnical data pertinent to the assessment of the geotechnical feasibility of the proposed stormwater facilities. Some subsurface exploration may be required at this stage, depending on the adequacy of the geotechnical data available to assess feasibility. For additional details, see Section 510.04 of the WSDOT *Design Manual*.

The scoping office develops the stormwater facility conceptual design using input from the RME and the HQ Geotechnical Engineer. Based on this design and investigation effort, fatal flaws in the proposed stormwater plan are identified, along with potential design and construction problems that could affect project costs or the project schedule. Critical issues to be considered include:

- Depth to water table, including any seasonal variations.
- Presence of soft or otherwise unstable soils.
- Presence in soils of shallow bedrock or boulders that could adversely affect constructibility.
- Presence of existing adjacent facilities that could be adversely affected by construction of the stormwater facilities.
- Presence of geologic hazards such as earthquake faults, abandoned mines, landslides, steep slopes, or rockfall.
- Adequacy of drainage gradient to ensure functionality of the system.
- Potential effects of the proposed facilities on future corridor needs.
- Maintainability of the proposed facilities.
- Potential impacts on adjacent wetlands and impacts on other environmentally sensitive areas.
- Presence of hazardous materials in the area.
- Whether or not the proposed stormwater plan will meet the requirements of resource agencies.
- Infiltration capacity (infiltration and percolation rates for project sites).

To characterize the seasonal variation of the groundwater table, it may be desirable to install piezometers at potential infiltration sites during scoping. One year of monitoring is desirable. At a minimum, one full rainy season is necessary to acquire the data needed to make a determination of site suitability.

2-3.2.3 Right-of- Way

Once the stormwater requirements for the project are understood, the general hydrologic site characteristics are known (including approximate groundwater table elevations), and the stormwater design alternatives are determined, the area necessary for stormwater facilities can be estimated. Refer to Chapters 4 and 5 to estimate the required area for each facility. Examine the proposed layout of the project, and determine the most suitable locations available to locate the stormwater facilities. Determine where facilities are proposed outside existing right-of-way and establish estimates for right-of-way acquisition areas and costs.

2-3.2.4 Utilities

The project design office should contact the region's Utilities Office to obtain information about whether existing utilities have franchises or easements within the project limits. Whenever proposed stormwater facilities conflict with an existing utility's right-of-way and facilities, a utility agreement is required. WSDOT may be responsible for the relocation costs, the utility owner may be responsible for the costs, or the costs may be shared. More information regarding utility elements is available in the *Utilities Manual*.

2-3.3 Maintenance Review

Once a list of permanent stormwater BMPs is determined based on the site assessment, the designer shall contact the region's maintenance program to discuss treatment options available for use. Overall maintenance costs must be considered when selecting BMPs. The project design office shall consult with the region's maintenance staff regarding the proposed drainage alternatives and evaluate maintenance needs, including personnel, equipment, and long-term costs through the BMP's expected life cycle. Review the general maintenance requirements in Section 5-3.7.1 and the maintenance guidelines in Section 5.5. Maintenance concurrence shall be obtained prior to the final selection of the treatment BMP and documented in the Hydraulic Report.

2-3.4 Documentation

Thorough documentation and tracking of stormwater design commitments is often a required element of environmental permit applications.

2-3.4.1 Stormwater Scoping Package

Stormwater documentation during the scoping phase of project development is referred to here as the *stormwater scoping package*. This package contains the information used to determine project stormwater impacts and the selection of stormwater BMPs. It is the source of stormwater information needed to complete the project summary documents. This package should include a brief summary report that contains the following:

- Identification of the project program
- Brief project description
- Synopsis of data gathered during the site assessment
- Basin and subbasin identification
- Threshold discharge area delineations indicating flow paths and outfalls to receiving waters
- Area determinations

- Applicable minimum requirements
- Other applicable regulatory requirements related to stormwater (e.g., Endangered Species Act requirements)
- Design criteria required for flow control and runoff treatment
- Known problems and commitments
- Retrofit recommendations
- Design alternatives and assumptions for flow control and runoff treatment
- Cost estimates

The stormwater scoping package is critical to the efficient continuation of project development and must be retained and easily retrievable. Once the project is programmed and assigned to a project office, the file and report become the starting point for the design phase. The stormwater-scoping package should be kept and stored by the region program management or scoping office. The package should remain with the overall project scoping file to ensure that the project office to which the project is assigned for design receives the preliminary stormwater information.

2-3.4.2 Project Summary

As described in Section 2-3, the product of scoping is the *Project Summary*, which consists of the *Project Definition*, *Environmental Review Summary*, and *Design Decisions Summary*. All of these documents require stormwater-related information, as outlined in Table 2-3. Much of the stormwater-related information needed to complete permit applications can be obtained from the *Project Summary* documentation.

2-3.4.3 Hydraulic Report

The Hydraulic Report is intended to serve as a complete document record containing the engineering justification for all drainage modifications that occur as a result of project construction, including documentation of the analysis and design for the postconstruction stormwater management system. For additional details, see the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual*.

Table 2-3. Stormwater-Related Information Needed for the Project Summary.

Project Definition (PD)	• Cost estimate and variance for preliminary engineering, right-of-way, and construction • Right-of-way needs for stormwater facilities • Preliminary environmental review: required environmental documentation, permits, and environmental commitments • Design decisions regarding stormwater • Public input regarding stormwater • Project commitments for stormwater made to others and by others • Potential impacts of stormwater facilities on utilities • Specialized workforce expertise required for geotechnical, biological, geomorphic, and other evaluations • Other stormwater-related issues
Environmental Review Summary (ERS) and Environmental Classification Summary (ECS)	• Required permits and approvals related to stormwater • Critical or sensitive areas as designated by Growth Management Act ordinances • Floodplains or floodways within (or affecting) the project site • Rivers and streams: crossing structures and types • Water quality/stormwater: impacts and mitigation • Previous environmental commitments made in project area related to stormwater • Long-term maintenance commitments related to stormwater and necessary for project
Design Decisions Summary (DDS)	• Roadway geometrics data affected by stormwater facilities • Roadside character classification and treatment level: effect on stormwater facility design (forest, open, rural, semiurban, urban) • Hydraulic decisions regarding stormwater facilities

2-3.4.4 Constr uction Planning

During the design phase, key stormwater documents are produced to meet stormwater site planning requirements associated with Minimum Requirement 1 (see Section 3-3-1).

All projects require spill prevention, control, and countermeasures (SPCC) plans, which are prepared by the contractor after the project contract is awarded. The WSDOT Hazardous Materials Program (🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/hazmat/default.htm) and Section 1-07.15(1) within the *Standard Specifications* provide more information regarding SPCC plan expectations. Provisions of the SPCC plan should be developed during the PS&E phase to ensure plan implementation.

For soil-disturbing projects, WSDOT must also prepare temporary erosion and sediment control (TESC) plans (see Chapter 6).

2-3.4.5 Contract Plan Sheets

Infiltration, dispersion, and conservation areas need to be identified on the contract plan sheet, along with other drainage and environmental elements. Development of the contract plan sheets is defined in the WSDOT *Plans Preparation Manual*.

2-3.4.6 Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E)

For the PS&E phase of a project, a set of Plans, Specifications, and Estimates is prepared. These documents translate the stormwater management elements of the design into a contract document format for project advertisement, bidding, award, and construction.

2-3.4.7 Underground Injection Control Wells

Drywells and infiltration trenches that contain perforated pipe are considered injection wells and require registration per the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) Underground Injection Control (UIC) Program. Registration information is available at:
http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/uic/registration/reg_info.html

For further guidance, consult region environmental staff or HQ Environmental Services Office staff.

2-4 Developer Projects

WSDOT must provide for the passage of off-site flows through its right-of-way to maintain natural drainage paths. If a private developer's project discharges off-site flow to WSDOT right-of-way, the project must provide stormwater BMPs that will prevent any increase in flow rates or volumes and any degradation of water quality within the state right-of-way. WSDOT will not concur with designs or allow discharges that do not comply with these requirements. Once WSDOT accepts discharge of water onto its right-of-way, the state becomes liable for the quality and quantity of that discharge. For this reason, WSDOT requires the discharge water to be treated at a minimum in accordance with provisions of this *Highway Runoff Manual*, Ecology stormwater management manuals, or an Ecology-approved local equivalent manual used by the local government having primary jurisdiction over the project.

For details regarding the WSDOT requirements and the process for review and concurrence of private project drainage design, refer to WSDOT's *Development Services Manual* and *Utilities Manual*.

2-5 Stormwater Facility Design Approach

2-5.1 Context Sensitive Design

It is important to understand how transportation facilities, in combination with other development, can affect the natural hydrology of watersheds and the water quality of receiving waters; in other words, the watershed context of a project. This understanding can guide the planner and designer in choosing stormwater management solutions that more successfully achieve the objective of protecting ecosystems.

Context sensitive design (CSD), also known as *context sensitive solutions* and *thinking beyond the pavement*, is an approach to transportation planning that broadens the focus of the project development process to look beyond the basic transportation issues, and develop projects that are integrated with the unique context(s) within the project setting. This approach considers the elements of mobility, safety, environment, community, and aesthetics from the beginning to the end of the project development process. The CSD also involves a collaborative project development process that obligates participants to understand the impacts and trade-offs associated with project decisions. Further discussion of and guidance on the context sensitive design/context sensitive solutions approach can be found at the following web site:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/csd/

2-5.2 Stormwater Facility Design Strategy

Stormwater management facilities (i.e., runoff treatment and flow control) can be utilized to mitigate both the hydrologic impacts and the water quality impacts of a development project by applying the following fundamental strategy:

> *Maintain the preproject[1] hydrologic and water quality functions of the project site as it undergoes development.*

This strategy is accomplished through the following steps:

Step 1 Avoid and minimize impacts on hydrology and water quality.

Step 2 Compensate for altered hydrology and water quality by mimicking natural processes.

Step 3 Compensate for altered hydrology and water quality by using end-of-pipe solutions.

Steps 1 and 2 can be achieved by minimizing impervious cover; conserving or restoring natural areas; mimicking natural drainage patterns (e.g., using sheet flow, dispersion, infiltration, or

[1] The term *preproject* refers to the actual conditions of the project site before the project is built.

open channels); disconnecting drainage structures to avoid concentrating runoff; and using many small redundant facilities to treat, detain, and infiltrate stormwater. This approach to site design reduces reliance on the use of structural management techniques. Step 3 refers to the use of traditional engineering structural approaches (e.g., detention ponds) to the extent that Steps 1 and 2 are not feasible.

The methods listed for achieving Steps 1 and 2 above are commonly referred to as low-impact development (LID) approaches. By using the project site's terrain, vegetation, and soil features to promote infiltration, the landscape can retain more of its natural hydrologic function. Low-impact development methods will not be feasible in all project settings, depending on the physical characteristics of the site, the adjacent development, and the availability and cost of additional right-of-way, if needed. However, the designer should always investigate the feasibility of using low-impact development methods. Since the use of low-impact development methods requires understanding of soil characteristics, infiltration rates, water tables, native vegetation, and other site features, it is important to gain the participation of design support services and others from the beginning through the end of the project development process.

2-6 Special Design Considerations

2-6.1 Critical and Sensitive Areas

The Washington Growth Management Act (RCW 36.70A), combined with Article 11 of the Washington State Constitution, requires local jurisdictions to adopt ordinances that classify, designate, and regulate land use in order to protect critical areas. *Critical areas* are defined as wetlands, floodplains, aquifer recharge areas, geologically hazardous areas, and those areas necessary for fish and wildlife conservation.

2-6.1.1 Wetlands

Altering land cover and natural drainage patterns may increase or decrease stormwater input into surrounding wetlands. Land use changes and stormwater management practices usually alter hydrology within a watershed. Hydrologic changes have more immediate and greater effects on the composition of vegetation and amphibian communities than do other environmental changes, including water quality degradation.

Wetland ecosystems can be highly effective managers of stormwater runoff; they can remove pollutants and also attenuate flows and recharge groundwater. Minimum Requirement 7 (see Section 3-3.7) addresses wetland protection. While natural wetlands for the most part may not be used as pollution control facilities in place of runoff treatment BMPs, Ecology's SMMEW allows the use of lower-quality wetlands as runoff treatment BMPs if requirements for hydrologic modification are met. For detailed guidance on this issue for eastern Washington projects, refer to *Use of Existing Wetlands to Provide Runoff Treatment* (in Section 2.2.5, page 2-26) and *Application to Wetlands and Lakes* (in Section 2.2.6, page 2-33) in Ecology's

SMMEW, and the *Eastern Washington Wetland Rating Form* at:
🖰 *http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/biology/docs/WetlandRatingForm_EasternWA_050426.doc*

For western Washington projects that may potentially alter the wetland hydroperiod, refer to *Guide Sheet 1B* in Appendix I-D of Ecology's SMMWW. Additional information on wetland hydroperiods is provided in Section 4-6 of this manual.

Region or HQ hydraulics and environmental staff can provide further assistance on hydroperiod modeling. For guidance on wetland creation or restoration as mitigation for direct wetland impacts, contact the region's wetland biologist or consult the following web site:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/biology/bio_wetlands.htm

2-6.1.2 Floodplains

Hydrologic storage that is displaced by roadway fill or other structures may result in increased stream flows, channel erosion, downstream flooding, and decreased infiltration and summer base flows. Projects may be required to mitigate loss of hydrologic storage by creating new hydrologic storage elsewhere in the watershed.

A decision to locate structural detention facilities in floodplains should depend on the flow control benefits that can be realized. If a detention facility can be placed so that it is functional through at least the 10-year flood elevation, it will accomplish most of its function by controlling peaks during smaller, more frequent events that cumulatively cause more damage. Stormwater facilities that are located outside the 2-year, 10-year, and 25-year flood elevations do not compromise any flood storage during those floods. If it is not possible to locate stormwater facilities anywhere but within the 100-year floodplain, and if flood storage is an issue, consult with the region's Hydraulics Office to identify alternative mitigation opportunities.

2-6.1.3 Aquifers and Wellhead Protection Areas

County health departments set well protection buffers presuming that the buffer width will adequately protect wells from contamination. Most local health departments require a setback distance of 100 feet from a roadway right-of-way. If a private well is located more than the standard buffer distance from the road right-of-way, WSDOT considers that well to be adequately protected, especially in light of WSDOT's standard runoff treatment measures. A reduction in the setback distance is sometimes granted if hydrologic testing (i.e., a pump test) shows a smaller zone of influence for the well.

The project design team should gather and document information on all wells located within 100 feet of right-of-way or easement along project limits. If proposed construction includes major cuts or similar activities, a larger radius of concern for wells should be investigated. To locate wells in the project area, check Ecology's web site (🖰 http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/welllog/) for listed well logs. Also, search the database of wells constructed and registered since the 1930s, and wells managed by Ecology since 1971. Some wells may not be registered and can be identified only by field investigations. Contact region or HQ environmental staff early in the project design phase if there are wells located within the radius of concern.

Certain state and local laws could require additional review. Refer to the local critical areas ordinances applicable to the project area for details on aquifer and wellhead protection areas. Other designations include critical aquifer recharge areas (CARAs), wellhead protection zones, and sole-source aquifers (SSAs). The WSDOT GIS Workbench can be used to provide a preliminary assessment of CARA and SSA limits in the vicinity of a given project. Check with region environmental staff or contact the local municipality for critical area ordinance requirements.

WSDOT mitigates potential well impacts if a road encroaches within the well buffer set by the county health department and the well is less than 50 feet deep and in coarse, unconsolidated soils, or the road produces concentrated runoff that flows toward the wellhead. The primary mitigation option is to route concentrated runoff away from the well and its unaffected buffer area using curbs, ditches, or other conveyances. The secondary mitigation option, where diverting roadway runoff is not practical, is to move the well or modify it (e.g., make the well deeper or install a protective collar around the wellhead) to reduce the potential for contamination. Well monitoring should be considered only as a final option. Monitoring would be performed only upon consultation with the local health department, the region's Environmental Office, and the HQ Water Quality Program to confirm that the soil, well depth, and well usage rate indicate a significant threat to well water quality.

Well water capacity could be affected by land cuts or soil compaction that intercepts groundwater flows. If a concern arises regarding potential impacts on well capacity, the HQ Materials Laboratory and the HQ Hydraulics Office should be consulted.

2-6.1.4 Streams and Riparian Areas

Avoiding encroachment into riparian areas is important to prevent direct impacts on stream channels and stream ecosystems. Removing riparian vegetation may directly result in channel instability and streambank erosion; loss of aquatic and wildlife habitat; loss of spawning gravels; increased sedimentation; increased water temperatures; decreased dissolved oxygen concentrations; and other water quality impacts. When a highway-widening project is located parallel to a stream, stormwater facility placement should occur away from the stream to the extent feasible and measures should be taken to preserve or enhance riparian buffers.

2-6.2 Endangered Species

Projects with a federal nexus (i.e., federal funding, permit, or approval) must go through consultation pursuant to Section 7 of the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA). A biological evaluation or biological assessment must be prepared whenever ESA-listed species are suspected to occur in the vicinity of a project.

The design team works with a WSDOT region biologist to develop the required documentation. The information needed to complete the biological evaluation or biological assessment can be obtained from existing documents and resources for the given conceptual project design alternatives. Ideally, the majority of the final information will be gathered during the scoping phase of project development. The scoping team should contact the biologist early in the scoping process to request assistance in determining ESA-related issues, and to determine how these issues and needs affect project design and cost considerations.

Information necessary to complete a biological evaluation or biological assessment for stormwater-related impacts is compiled in the ESA Stormwater Design Checklist included as Appendix 2B.

2-6.3 Contaminated and Hazardous Waste Sites

If a project contains a contaminated or hazardous waste site, or if such a site is suspected to exist within the project limits, contact WSDOT HQ hazardous materials staff for further direction. Also, see the WSDOT *Environmental Procedures Manual*, Section 447.05, Technical Guidance.

2-6.4 Airports

Special consideration must be given to the design of stormwater facilities for projects located near airports. Roadside features, including standing water (e.g., wet ponds) and certain types of vegetation, can attract birds both directly and indirectly. The presence of large numbers of birds near airports creates hazards for airport operations and must be avoided. Before planning and designing facilities for a project near an airport, contact WSDOT Aviation, the airport, and the Federal Aviation Administration for wildlife management manuals and other site-specific guidance.

2-6.5 Bridges

Because the over-water portion of the bridge surface captures only the portion of rainfall that otherwise would fall directly into the receiving water body, that portion of the bridge makes no contribution to the increased rate of discharge associated with surface runoff to the water body. This reasoning assumes that the conveyance system is constructed to prevent any localized erosion between the bridge surface and the outfall to the water body. While this fact may simplify needs for flow control, bridges present challenges associated with pollutant removal from runoff generated by their surfaces.

Bridges are typically so close to receiving waters that it is often difficult to find sufficient area in which to site a treatment solution. In the past, bridges have been constructed with small bridge drains that discharge the runoff directly into the receiving waters by way of downspouts. This practice is no longer allowed; thus creating the challenge of incorporating runoff collection, conveyance, and treatment facilities into the project design.

Use of suspended pipe systems to convey bridge runoff should be avoided whenever possible because these systems have a tendency to become plugged with debris and are difficult to clean. The preferred method of conveyance is to hold the runoff on the bridge surface and intercept it at the ends of the bridge with larger inlets. This method requires adequate shoulder width to accommodate flows so that they do not spread farther into the travel way than allowed (see Chapter 5 of the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* for allowable spread widths). In cases where a closed system must be used, it is recommended that bridge drain openings and pipe diameters be larger, and that 90º bends be avoided, to ensure the system's operational integrity. Early coordination with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office is essential if a closed system is being considered.

2-6.6 Ferry Terminals

A ferry dock consists of the bridge (trestle and span), piers, and some of the holding area (parking facility). The terminal is the dock and all associated upland facilities. Requirements and consideration for the terminal's upland facilities are the same as for park-and-ride lots, rest areas, and maintenance yards as describe in Section 2-6.7 (where similarities exist). Requirements and considerations that apply to bridges also apply to the trestle, span, and other over-water portions (see Section 2-6.5).

2-6.7 Maintenance Yards, Park-and-Ride Lots, and Rest Areas

The Ecology stormwater management manuals for western (SMMWW) and eastern (SMMEW) Washington provide more specific stormwater BMP information related to parking lots and commercial and industrial land uses. Stormwater facility design should give first consideration to the use of low-impact development methods such as permeable pavement and bioretention (see Chapter 5 for these and other applicable BMPs).

2-7 How Stormwater Management Applies to a Project

2-7.1 HRM Minimum Requirements and Exemptions

Chapter 3 contains the manual's minimum requirements for stormwater management. Section 3-2 aids in determining the minimum requirements that apply and Section 3-3 provides further detailed direction as to their application. Even when projects do not trigger a particular minimum requirement (e.g., flow control), the intent of the minimum requirement should still be considered in project design.

Section 3-2 provides information on projects that are exempt from the minimum requirements. Sections 3-3.5 and 3-3.6 provide specific information on limited exemptions from runoff treatment (Minimum Requirement 5) and flow control (Minimum Requirement 6), respectively.

2-7.2 Local Requirements

Section 1-1.5 explains the conditions under which local requirements apply to stormwater management on WSDOT projects. By state statute, WSDOT projects on state right-of-way are not subject to local permits, except for *shoreline* permits required by the local shoreline master program and permits required by *critical* or *sensitive areas* ordinances promulgated under the Growth Management Act (see Section 2-6.1).

Permitting staff in the region's Environmental Office should be consulted as to the individual permits required for a project. If the project will result in a new stormwater discharge to a municipal storm sewer system, a permit may be required by that jurisdiction's stormwater utility. Local agencies may have special design requirements for projects in which a portion of the local system will be replaced and turned over to the local jurisdiction for operation and maintenance.

The above information is intended to specify the local permits that may be applicable to WSDOT projects; it is not intended to preclude the need to work with local authorities to address concerns they may have regarding the potential impacts of a project. Additional information on applicable statutes, regulations, and environmental permitting can be found in WSDOT's *Environmental Procedures Manual*.

2-7.3 Watershed and Basin Plans

Incorporating watershed and basin planning, and local requirements into stormwater management is addressed in Minimum Requirement 8 (see Section 3-3.8). Project planners and designers need to familiarize themselves with the planning efforts for the watersheds and local jurisdictions in which the project is located, and identify any specific requirements, recommendations, and opportunities that relate to stormwater management. Watershed plans may also identify priority mitigation needs within the watershed that may present off-site opportunities to mitigate project impacts. Local plans may have identified specific stormwater-related needs and/or contain useful analyses.

Statewide-organized watershed planning efforts occur under two state laws: the Watershed Planning Act (2514 Planning) and the Salmon Recovery Act (2496 Planning). Each uses *water resource inventory areas* (WRIAs) as its basic geographic unit.

Basin planning conducted by local governments focuses on drainage basins at a local, sub-WRIA scale. Unfortunately, there are no uniform state standards defining an adequate basin plan. As stated in Minimum Requirement 8 (see Section 3-3.8), standards developed from basin plans cannot modify any minimum requirement until the basin plan is formally adopted and implemented by the local governments within the basin, and has received approval or concurrence from Ecology.

Entities with basin planning responsibilities for an area where transportation projects are planned should be contacted as early as possible in the project planning process. Such groups include *lead entities* under the Salmon Recovery Act and *watershed planning units* under the Watershed Planning Act, as well as city and county public works departments responsible for basin planning. There may be shared funding opportunities for local priority mitigation projects , which could significantly reduce project mitigation costs. Also, such entities may have data and analyses that can be used in the project planning process.

- More information on activities under the Watershed Planning Act, including a map of Washington's water resource inventory areas, can be found at: 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/watershed/index.html
- More information on activities under the Salmon Recovery Act can be found at: 🖰 http://wdfw.wa.gov/recovery.htm
- Watershed data, reports, and other related information can be found at: 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/eap/wrias/index.html

Also, the region's Environmental Office or the HQ Watershed Management Program Office can arrange meetings and help coordinate with watershed-related efforts.

The Watershed Program staff of the HQ Environmental Services Office has developed a project screening and watershed characterization process to identify alternatives to managing stormwater impacts within the right-of-way. The objectives in pursuing the watershed-based approach are to improve environmental benefits and reduce costs compared to standard runoff treatment and flow control facilities constructed within the right-of-way. Factors to consider with watershed-based options include:

1. *Have all source controls been included?* Source control may be the most cost-effective practice to control pollutants. This should be the first step in the investigation of alternative treatment options.
2. *What size watershed scale is appropriate for this alternative mitigation approach?* While the smallest subbasin may be appropriate for healthy watersheds, a larger watershed scale may be more appropriate in highly degraded watersheds depending on the nature of impairment(s).
3. *Can stormwater treatment be coordinated with habitat mitigation?* Stream restoration, floodplain restoration, riparian replanting, or other practices could provide both habitat mitigation and stormwater treatment.
4. *Has a regional facility been evaluated?* If on-site stormwater facilities are not feasible, combining several project stormwater treatment/control needs into one regional facility may be a more cost-effective option.
5. *Are there legal or regulatory constraints to off-site stormwater treatment?*

For more information on activities of WSDOT's Watershed Program, including the watershed-based mitigation method, see: 🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/watershed/default.htm

2-7.4 Engineering and Economic Feasibility

For some projects, practical limitations may present obstacles to fully meeting certain requirements, particularly runoff treatment and flow control, within the project right-of-way. Limitations may be infrastructural, geographical, geotechnical, hydraulic, environmental, or benefit/cost-related. For these projects, the planning and design team must make a formal assessment of the project and identify constraints on meeting the minimum requirements. This assessment is referred to as *engineering and economic feasibility* (EEF).

The Engineering and Economic Feasibility Evaluation Checklist, included in Appendix 2A, is an evaluation based on 18 project- and site-specific criteria that assesses the practical limitations of constructing stormwater facilities within or adjacent to a project's right-of-way. The assessment should be performed as early as possible in project development. If the assessment reveals that stormwater requirements for a project cannot be met because it is not feasible to do so, an explanation must be provided in the project's Hydraulic Report. The explanation must include the reasons why the requirements cannot be met for the site and the amount of stormwater treatment/control that can be provided. Whenever an EEF assessment shows that meeting the HRM's minimum requirements for a project is not feasible within the project's right-of-way, in whole or in part, the project team should consult with the region's Environmental Office or the HQ Watershed Management Program Office regarding whether alternative mitigation opportunities have been identified for the project area.

If on-site options are unavailable and opportunities to create off-site runoff treatment and/or flow control capacity cannot be identified or are not chosen, the project needs to pursue the *demonstrative approach* to propose a treatment option for the stormwater discharge (see Sections 1-1.3 and 5-3.6.3). The *demonstrative approach* requires demonstrating that the project will not adversely affect water quality by providing appropriate supporting data showing that the alternative approach satisfies state and federal water quality laws. The timeline and expectations for providing technical justification depend on the complexity of the individual project and the nature of the receiving water environment. Thus, this approach may be more cost effective for large, complex, or unusual types of projects. In developing alternate treatment and control options, it is important to consider and document the site limitations using the Engineering and Economic Feasibility Evaluation Checklist.

2-7.5 Stormwater Retrofit

Project-related stormwater retrofit provides stormwater improvements for existing impervious surfaces where treatment/controls are substandard. The decision to apply current standards for runoff treatment and flow control to existing impervious surfaces within the project limits should occur during project scoping. The guidelines for applying project-related retrofit actions are provided in Section 3-4.

Stormwater retrofit may also occur as a stand-alone programmed project. Those responsible for scoping a project should work closely with the region or HQ Program Management Office to learn if any such programmed retrofit actions apply to their project. The level of retrofit should be documented in the Hydraulic Report.

APPENDIX 2A

Determination of Engineering and Economic Feasibility for Construction of Stormwater Management Facilities Within Highway Rights-of-Way Management Practices

Appendix 2A. Table of Contents

Appendix 2A.
Determination of Engineering and Economic Feasibility for Construction of Stormwater Management Facilities Within Highway Rights-of-Way

Stormwater runoff from state highways should be treated and controlled adjacent to or within the right-of-way (ROW) when transportation improvement projects are constructed. However, various site-specific factors (e.g., lack of land availability; engineering constraints; health and safety issues associated with operations and maintenance activities; or other obstacles) could make constructing stormwater management facilities within or adjacent to the highway right-of-way (called *inROW treatment*) difficult, if not impossible.

This appendix presents a method to assist in determining when site-specific factors could make constructing stormwater management facilities within or adjacent to the highway right-of-way infeasible. Using the Engineering and Economic Feasibility (EEF) Evaluation Checklist (see Section 2A-2) to document the critical site-specific limiting factors is required if the project deviates from prescribed stormwater treatment schemes contained in design guidance, such as the *Highway Runoff Manual* or the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) stormwater management manuals for eastern and western Washington. This documentation is necessary in addition to the analysis required to seek compliance through the *demonstrative approach*, which requires submittal of a site-specific stormwater management proposal to Ecology and supporting data to show that the alternative approach protects water quality and satisfies state and federal water quality laws (see Section 1-1.3). Such a proposal may involve using off-site or watershed-based options to create runoff treatment and flow control capacity to meet regulatory requirements (see Section 2-7.3).

2A-1 General Criteria: Engineering and Economic Feasibility (EEF) of Constructing Stormwater Control Facilities Within Highway Rights-of-Way

The following four general criteria should be considered by the designer in the siting and selection of stormwater best management practices (BMPs). These criteria affect the feasibility of stormwater BMPs, and they are further explained in the EEF Checklist in Section 2A-2.

- **Physical site limitations.** In many cases, the amount of available right-of-way determines which types of stormwater controls are feasible for the project. When additional right-of-way can be acquired at market value, or when eminent domain condemnations can be demonstrably justified, then project proponents should explore these options to acquire additional land for stormwater control facilities. Historically, condemning land specifically for wetland mitigation (also triggered by the Clean Water Act) has been extremely difficult; hence, this option for stormwater control facilities will likely encounter the same difficulties.

Additional site constraints could include geographic limitations, steep slopes, soil instability, proximity to water bodies, presence of significant cultural resources, and shallow water tables.

- **Treatment effectiveness.** Generally, BMPs with the highest pollutant removal efficiencies should be considered first. These practices may require more land area, thus affecting space limitations.
- **Costs and associated environmental benefits.** Generally, the most cost-effective method of meeting environmental requirements should be chosen.
- **Legal and policy issues.** WSDOT and Ecology stormwater guidance, local ordinances, Endangered Species Act concerns, and tort liability issues must also be considered when selecting appropriate BMPs. If watershed-based stormwater treatment options are considered, legal and policy issues discouraging this approach may need to be overcome.

When identifying on-site treatment and control options, it is important to consider the site limitations preventing construction of stormwater control and treatment facilities. For physical or economic reasons, it may not be feasible to construct full-scale stormwater control facilities on-site.

2A-2 Engineering and Economic Feasibility (EEF) Evaluation Checklist

The following checklist is intended for use by WSDOT staff during the design stage to determine whether construction of stormwater control facilities is feasible within the immediate highway right-of-way. Factors that limit the feasibility of constructing inROW stormwater controls are listed, along with questions to help transportation project planners and designers determine the feasibility of constructing inROW stormwater treatment and control systems based on site conditions.

2A-2.1 Collect Project Site Data to Identify Limiting Factors

Project information such as project boundaries, soil conditions, presence of slopes, proximity of water bodies, and other project data must be collected to determine inROW treatment and control feasibility. Preliminary estimates of runoff treatment and flow control needs for the project must also be made. At a minimum, this analysis should include the anticipated new and existing total impervious areas within the right-of-way; topographic characteristics; existing land use and land cover adjacent to the right-of-way; and whether on-site soil characteristics can accommodate infiltration.

The following list contains the information needed to complete a full EEF analysis for constructing stormwater control facilities within a specific highway right-of-way. It should be noted that, in many cases, not all of the information listed below is needed to make a feasibility determination. Once a fatal flaw is identified in the checklist that makes it not feasible to construct inROW stormwater control facilities, then the EEF analysis is effectively completed, thus negating the need for additional information to evaluate inROW feasibility.

- Conceptual-level stormwater design: Is infiltration possible based on soil characteristics?
- Amount of right-of-way currently available and/or that can be reasonably acquired via purchase or condemnation.
- Location(s) of critical public infrastructure(s) relative to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Location(s) of protected cultural resources, historic sites, parklands, or wildlife and waterfowl refuges (i.e., Department of Transportation Act of 1966 §4[f] properties) relative to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Location(s) on or adjacent to the established or acquirable right-of-way that are designated as sensitive by a federal, state, local, or tribal government. These areas include, but are not limited to:
    - Water bodies designated as "impaired" under the provision of Section 303(d) of the federal Clean Water Act enacted by Public Law 92-500.
    - Designated "critical water resources" as defined in 33 CFR Part 330, Nationwide Permit Program.
    - Sole source aquifers as defined under the Safe Drinking Water Act, Public Law 93-523.
    - Wellhead protection zones as defined under WAC 246-290, Public Water Supplies.
    - "Critical habitat" as defined in Section 3 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973.
    - Areas identified in local critical area ordinances or in an approved basin plan.
- Location(s) of established structure(s) on or adjacent to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Slopes and location(s) of unstable slopes on or adjacent to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Available hydraulic head.
- Depth of the mean annual high groundwater table and information on local groundwater flooding.
- Presence and location of hazardous or dangerous materials on or adjacent to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Existence and location(s) of well-established riparian tree canopies and/or vegetative buffers on the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- Presence and distribution of 100-year floodplains on or adjacent to the established or acquirable right-of-way.
- For bridge projects: Can the bridge structure be drained to land by gravity feed?

- Estimated cost for constructing and/or maintaining the conceptual stormwater control facilities for the drainage area.

2A-2.2 Infrastructure Limitations to Construction Feasibility

The density of the built environment adjacent to the established right-of-way may limit the amount of land available for acquisition to construct stormwater treatment and control systems. Once project limits, right-of-way, and stormwater runoff treatment and flow control needs are defined, a determination on whether it is feasible to construct stormwater management practices on-site can be made. Generally, wet vaults should be avoided when other BMP options are viable because of high construction and maintenance costs.

The following questions should be considered when determining whether infrastructure or right-of-way limits the feasibility of designing and constructing stormwater BMPs within or adjacent to the right-of-way (inROW treatment). Each element evaluates potential fatal flaws that would preclude the feasibility of constructing stormwater treatment facilities within the anticipated right-of-way of the project being scoped.

2A-2.2.1. Can a multiple-purpose runoff treatment system, such as an extended wet/detention pond or pond/constructed wetland, or floodplain restoration project be constructed within the anticipated right-of-way to treat the estimated water quality and/or flow impacts of the project? (YES/NO)

EEF implications: This is to reinforce the concept that facilities that are designed and constructed to treat larger areas result in lower unit volume treatment costs, which will affect the benefit/cost ratio, which can affect overall feasibility.
*If **YES**, go to Section 2A-2.3. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.2.2.*

2A-2.2.2. Can runoff treatment BMPs be designed to fit within the anticipated right-of-way? (YES/NO)

Consider these BMPs (in order of preference):

- Infiltration or exfiltration via ponds, trenches, depressions, groundwater contactors, or drain fields
- Compost-amended vegetated filter strips
- Ecology embankments
- Wet/detention ponds
- Biofiltration swales and filter strips
- Constructed wetlands
- Vaults and tanks (use requires preauthorization; see Section *5-3.6.1*)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, proceed to Section 2A-2.2.3. If **NO**, go to Section 2A-2.2.4. In many instances, it may be possible to fit in-ROW BMPs for runoff treatment only, since some runoff treatment BMPs can be engineered to fit within highly constrained land parcels (e.g., compost-amended filter strips and ecology embankments), whereas flow control BMPs tend to require more land.*

2A-2.2.3. Can flow control BMPs be designed to fit within the anticipated right-of-way? (YES/NO)

Consider these BMPs (in order of preference):

- Low-impact development (LID) methods, such as minimizing clearing and compaction; retaining mature stands of vegetation and soil horizons; soil enhancements; routing runoff to closed vegetated depressions (bioretention); compost-amended vegetated buffer strips; porous pavement shoulders and gore areas; and dispersion.
- Floodplain restoration projects designed to increase stormwater storage.
- Infiltration and/or exfiltration.
- Dispersion BMPs.
- Wet/detention ponds.
- Extended detention (dry) ponds.
- Vaults and tanks (use requires preauthorization; see Section *5-3.6.1)*.

*EEF implications: If **YES**, go to Section 2A-2.3; it has been established that there is enough land area within the anticipated right-of-way to construct BMPs. Other constraining factors, such as geotechnical, geographic, environmental, etc., may also limit the feasibility of constructing in-ROW BMPs and need to be examined to complete the EEF analysis. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.2.4.*

2A-2.2.4. If BMPs cannot be accommodated on-site, is it feasible to purchase adjoining properties to allow the construction of one of the above BMP designs?

In order to answer this question, the following associated questions need to be answered:

2A-2.2.4.1 Are there critical publicly-owned infrastructure(s) or facilities, such as schools, fire stations, police facilities, major utility lines, etc., that would need to be relocated to facilitate construction of in-ROW stormwater control facilities? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, it is generally not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities due to the existence of critical public infrastructure(s). Identification of the location and nature of the critical public infrastructure(s) needs* *to be well documented to regulatory agencies, to justify not constructing in-ROW stormwater control facilities. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.2.4.2.*

2A-2.2.4.2 Will the designated stormwater treatment area for constructing a stormwater management facility trespass on or disturb designated historic building sites, structures, archeological sites, or other significant cultural resources? (YES/NO)

Note: Any projects involving disturbance of ground surfaces not previously disturbed should be reviewed for cultural resource study needs (e.g., site file searches at the Washington State Office of Archaeology and Historic Preservation, on-site surveys, and subsurface testing). Federal involvement (e.g., funding, permits, and lands) requires compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and implementing regulations in 36 CFR 800.

*EEF implications: If **YES**, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities due to the existence of statutorily protected cultural resources at the site. At this point, the EEF analysis is complete. Identification of the location and nature of the critical public infrastructure(s) needs to be well documented to resource agencies, to justify not constructing in-ROW stormwater control facilities. Other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality, eliminate the hydrology impacts of the project, and comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.2.4.3.*

2A-2.2.4.3 Is the land needed to site and construct the stormwater treatment facility available at a reasonable cost without significant displacement or other impacts? In other words, is the needed additional land available for purchase from a willing seller at market value, at a cost acceptable to the project budget, or by eminent domain condemnation procedures? (If the required land lies within an area with expensive privately-owned structures and buildings, the cost of acquisition and relocation may greatly exceed market rates for the land itself.) (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: This query evaluates whether it is feasible to purchase additional right-of-way to accommodate construction of in-ROW stormwater control facilities. If **YES**, proceed to Section 2A-2.3, since additional land can practicably be purchased, and project offices should continue with the EEF analysis to investigate whether there are other factors limiting feasibility. If **NO**, it is not feasible to construct stormwater control facilities within the right-of-way, and other options to create capacity should be identified to meet regulatory requirements. Consider using* *off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards.*

2A-2.3 Geographic and Geotechnical Limitations to Construction Feasibility

A project's topography and/or proximity to wetlands, sensitive water bodies, or steep slopes may physically or structurally preclude construction of BMPs on-site within required engineering standards. This could occur near shorelines, riverfront areas, steep terrains, or wetlands. In situ geotechnical conditions can also limit the feasibility of constructing BMPs within the right-of-way (e.g., the project is on unstable slopes, high shrink/swell soils, or karst topography). The following questions should be considered when determining whether geography or geotechnical limits affect the feasibility of designing stormwater BMPs on-site:

2A-2.3.1 Is the project located adjacent to or on a water body, wetland, riparian buffer, or other natural aquatic feature that would physically preclude the construction of any in-ROW BMP? Some examples of water bodies that could geographically limit a WSDOT project include lakes, rivers, streams (including intermittent streams), wetlands, sloughs, wet meadows, natural ponds, sounds, and seas. (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities because of geographic limitations. Project offices should review project plans to evaluate whether it is feasible to reconfigure drainage and BMP designs to accommodate as much stormwater treatment as can practicably fit within the right-of-way. Other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and Washington State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.3.2.*

2A-2.3.2 Do extremely steep slopes (steeper than 2H:1V) exist at the proposed BMP location?

*EEF implications: If **YES**, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities because of geographic limitations. Project offices should review project plans to evaluate whether or not it is feasible to reconfigure drainage and BMP designs to accommodate as much stormwater treatment as can practicably fit within the right-of-way. Other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and Washington State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.3.3.*

2A-2.3.3 Does the land needed for construction of runoff treatment and/or flow control facilities lie within 50 feet of any slope greater than 15%? (YES/NO)

EEF implications: This is a setback specification encoded in Ecology's new stormwater manuals and reflected in the Highway Runoff Manual.

*If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.4.1. If **YES**, consult with a geotechnical engineer to determine whether there is a risk of slope failure because of slope and soil characteristics. If there is an unacceptable risk of slope failure, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities on the designated BMP site. Other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards.*

2A-2.4 Hydraulic Limitations to Construction Feasibility

Hydraulic limitations can include the lack of hydraulic head necessary to effectively operate stormwater control facilities or areas with very shallow water tables, such as floodplains or seasonal wetlands. Alternatives such as spill control devices and frequent cleaning of road or bridge surfaces with high efficiency vacuum sweepers should be considered in these areas in lieu of standard treatment facilities.

2A-2.4.1 Will BMP construction involve excavating to below annual high groundwater levels? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, consideration should be given to altering the stormwater system design to use other BMP options. If other BMP options are also found not to be feasible, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW BMPs and the EEF analysis is complete. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.4.2.*

2A-2.4.2 Will construction of an infiltration BMP result in localized groundwater flooding (e.g., basement inundation) or will it be located less than 20 feet from any upslope foundation or less than 100 feet from any downslope foundation? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, consider other BMPs or use impermeable barriers to protect existing foundations, if found to be feasible. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.4.3.*

2A-2.4.3 Is there adequate hydraulic head (dependent on the type of BMP, but generally greater than 3 feet) available to effectively operate the BMP? (YES/NO)

EEF *implications: If **NO**, consideration should be given to altering the design to use other BMP options. If other BMP options are also found not to be feasible, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control systems. If **YES**, proceed to Section 2A-2.4.4.*

2A-2.4.4 Specifically for bridge projects, is it feasible from an engineering perspective to convey stormwater to on-land stormwater control facilities by gravity feed and have a flowpath of less than 2,000 feet to shore? (YES/NO)

EEF *implications: If **NO**, the inability to drain bridge structures by gravity feed, whether because of expansion joints, grated sections, or the lack of grade, makes it not feasible to convey stormwater to land for treatment. Project offices should evaluate whether it is possible to alter project design to accommodate gravity drainage to land. If not, other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **YES**, proceed to Section 2A-2.5.*

2A-2.5 Environmental or Health Risk Limitations to Construction Feasibility

Areas with intensive historic levels of industrial or commercial activity may have significant levels of soil, water, or fill contamination, which would prevent highway construction work from being conducted in a safe manner (as specified in the Washington Industrial Safety and Health Act or federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations), or may be the subject of overriding Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), state Model Toxics Control Act (MTCA), or Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA) regulations. Such significant safety, health, and environmental limitations would generally preclude construction of stormwater facilities on a particular site.

2A-2.5.1 Does the proposed stormwater treatment area contain significant quantities of contaminated soils or materials to designate it as a hazardous or dangerous waste area or require a cleanup action as defined by RCRA or MTCA regulations? (YES/NO)

EEF *implications: If **YES**, go to Section 2A-2.6 to evaluate benefit-to-cost ratios, incorporating estimated costs for remediation of hazardous or dangerous materials into the analysis. Construction of stormwater facilities in areas with hazardous or dangerous wastes generally is not feasible to protect worker health and may result in releases of acutely toxic substances to surface waters during the construction phase and impacts to groundwater in the operations phase. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.5.2.*

2A-2.5.2 Will the construction of stormwater control facilities require the removal of well-established riparian tree canopies (generally trees over 100 feet tall) and/or vegetative buffers? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, the benefit/cost (B/C) analysis will determine feasibility if no other limiting factors are found, so go to Section 2A-2.6. Well-established tree canopies can sequester significant amounts of air and water pollutants, provide long-term water storage, and provide shading that buffers temporal in-stream temperature increases. Project offices should reevaluate drainage and BMP designs to investigate whether stormwater control facilities can be reconfigured or moved to avoid or minimize the removal of established tree canopies.*

*If avoidance and minimization are not possible, other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines affected by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.5.3.*

2A-2.5.3 Will the construction of stormwater control facilities require the removal of critical habitat for listed endangered and threatened species? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, it is not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities due to environmental limitations. Removal of critical habitat would at a minimum result in a Section 7 consultation for the project or would likely result in a take of an endangered or threatened species, making it not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities. Project offices should reevaluate drainage and BMP designs to investigate whether stormwater control facilities could be reconfigured or moved to avoid or minimize the removal of critical habitat. If avoidance and minimization is not possible, other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If **NO**, proceed to Section 2A-2.5.4.*

2A-2.5.4 Is the established or acquirable right-of-way for stormwater control facilities located within a 100-year floodplain? (YES/NO)

*EEF implications: If **YES**, the established or available land is within a 100-year floodplain and it is not feasible to construct functional stormwater control facilities within the right-of-way. Project offices should reevaluate drainage and BMP designs to investigate whether stormwater control facilities could be reconfigured or moved* *to avoid or minimize the 100-year floodplain. If avoidance and minimization are not possible, other options to create capacity should be identified to maintain and/or restore the water quality and hydrology baselines impacted by the project, and to comply with the antidegradation clause of the Clean Water Act and State Water Pollution Law, RCW 90.48. Consider using off-site or watershed-based options (see Sections 1-1.3 and 2-7.3) to create additional capacity in the receiving water so that the project will meet water quality standards. If* ***NO****, proceed to Section 2A-2.6.*

2A-2.6 Cost Limitations to Construction Feasibility

In 2003, WSDOT performed an environmental mitigation cost analysis. Critical factors found to affect stormwater treatment costs included the location and setting of the specific projects relative to neighborhoods, streams, and wetlands. In addition, projects with poor soil conditions or high water tables generally had considerably higher costs for treating stormwater within the right-of-way. In discussions with the authors of the cost analysis, it was determined that project delivery would be impeded when stormwater costs exceeded a range of $5 to $7 per square foot of contributing impervious surface. Using a range of values allows project offices some flexibility to determine cost/benefit feasibility based on the project's setting.

2A-2.6.1 Within individual drainages, will the incremental cost for constructing in-ROW stormwater control facilities be more than $5 to $7 per square foot of contributing impervious surface? (YES/NO)

EEF implications: If ***YES****, it is generally not feasible to construct in-ROW stormwater control facilities. Project offices should investigate how project designs can be altered to accommodate more cost-efficient BMPs. Projects within highly urbanized areas or those that may impact significant areas of wetlands or floodplains should generally use the $7 per square foot criterion, while those projects in more rural areas should generally use the $5 per square foot criterion for evaluating benefit/cost feasibility. If* ***NO****, it is feasible to construct stormwater control facilities within or adjacent to the highway right-of-way.*

APPENDIX 2B

Endangered Species Act Stormwater Design Checklist

Appendix 2B. Table of Contents

Appendix 2B.
Endangered Species Act
Stormwater Design Checklist

2-B.1 Purpose and Use of the Checklist

The Stormwater Design Checklist assists project designers in providing pertinent information about a project's stormwater treatment facilities to biologists responsible for preparing biological assessments required for consultation under Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act. The use of this checklist is necessary to aid in developing biological assessments, and to promote consistency in the content provided in the agency's biological assessments.

It is possible that the specific conditions of some projects may warrant modifying or adding certain checklist items. However, to maintain consistency in the type and amount of information collected and submitted for the environmental permitting process, the checklist should be modified only if necessary.

Endangered Species Act
Stormwater Design Checklist

Project Name:____

Project Location:____

General Project Information

1. Will work occur outside existing pavement or gravel shoulders? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If *yes*, describe the nature and extent of the work:

   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____

Existing Impervious Surface and Stormwater Facilities (Preproject)

2. Is there any existing impervious surface within the project area? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If *yes*, for each threshold discharge area (TDA), identify the amount of existing impervious surface within the project limits: ___________________ (square feet, acres)

   If *no*, go to #11.

3. For each TDA, identify the total area of existing impervious surface currently receiving runoff treatment: ___________________ (square feet, acres)

4. Will any existing impervious surface receive runoff treatment (i.e., retrofit)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If *yes*, for each TDA, identify how much of the existing impervious surface will be retrofitted for runoff treatment ___________________ (square feet, acres), and the level(s) of treatment:

   ☐ *Basic* ☐ *Enhanced* ☐ *Oil Control* ☐ *Phosphorous Control*

5. For each TDA, identify the total area of existing impervious surface currently receiving flow control: __________________ (square feet, acres)

6. Will any existing impervious surface receive flow control (i.e., retrofit)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If *yes*, how much of the existing impervious surface in each TDA will be retrofitted for flow control? __________________ (square feet, acres)

7. Is any of the runoff from the existing impervious surface infiltrated? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If *yes*, what percentage of the runoff from the existing impervious surface in each TDA is infiltrated? __________________%.

   How much of the runoff volume does this represent? __________________ (acre-feet)

8. Identify the type(s), location(s), footprint(s), and receiving area/water body for each runoff treatment and flow control BMP. If available, provide a map depicting TDA boundaries and BMP locations.

   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____

9. Describe the nature of the stormwater conveyance (drainage) system (e.g., pipe, culvert, channel, ditch, swale, sheet flow). If available, provide a map of the system depicting TDA boundaries.

   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____
   ____

10. Is off-site stormwater being treated/controlled by WSDOT stormwater facilities prior to initiation of the project? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, will this stormwater continue to be treated/controlled to the same level? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If off-site stormwater will not continue to be treated/controlled to the same level, explain why not:

    ____
    ____
    ____
    ____
    ____

New Impervious Surface and Stormwater Facilities (Proposed Project)

11. Will the project create a net gain in impervious surface? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, for each TDA, identify how much net-new impervious surface the project will create: __________________ (square feet, acres)

    If *no*, will the project result in a net decrease in impervious surface? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, for each TDA, identify how much net loss will result: _________________ (square feet, acres)

12. Will the project require runoff treatment? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, for each TDA, identify the total area of new impervious surface treated: __________________ (square feet, acres) and identify the level(s) of treatment required:

    ☐ *Basic* ☐ *Enhanced* ☐ *Oil Control* ☐ *Phosphorous Control*

13. Will the project require flow control? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, for each TDA, identify the total area of new impervious surface to receive flow control: _________________ (square feet, acres)

14. Will any of the runoff from the new impervious surface be infiltrated? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, what percentage of the runoff from the new impervious surface in each TDA will be infiltrated? __________________%

    How much of the runoff volume does this represent? __________________ (acre-feet)

15. Are any of the project's TDAs exempt from the flow control requirement? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, identify the exempt TDA(s):

    ____
    ____
    ____
    ____
    ____

    If *no*, and the project is petitioning for an exemption, has a hydrologic analysis supporting the exemption been approved by Ecology? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, provide a summary of the analysis as an attachment to this checklist.

    If *no*, a hydrologic analysis justifying the exemption must be submitted to Ecology for approval, or flow control must be provided.

16. If applicable, identify the type(s), location(s), and footprint(s) for each runoff treatment and flow control BMP. If available, provide a map of depicting TDA boundaries and BMP locations.

____
____
____
____
____

17. Describe the nature of the stormwater conveyance (drainage) system (e.g., pipe, culvert, channel, ditch, swale, sheet flow). If available, provide a map of the system depicting TDA boundaries.

____
____
____
____
____

18. Will the project require construction of a new stormwater outfall structure or a new point of discharge to any water body? ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If *yes*, identify the receiving water body, and describe areas of permanent and temporary clearing or grading, types of vegetation to be removed, amount of riprap, diameter of outfall pipe(s), and all maintenance/access roads to be constructed. If available, provide a map of outfall locations.

____
____
____
____
____

19. If the project is not infiltrating all of the runoff from the new impervious surface and is unable to provide the required runoff treatment or flow control for the entire new impervious surface, explain why not. Documentation should include a completed copy of the *Engineering and Economic Feasibility (EEF) Evaluation Checklist* (Appendix 2A).

____
____
____
____
____

20. What stormwater management design standards were applied?

- ☐ WSDOT *Highway Runoff Manual*, version ______________________________________
  (1995, 2004, 2006, etc.)
- ☐ Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual*(*s*), version ____________________________
  (2001, 2005 Western Washington; 2004 Eastern Washington, etc.)
- ☐ Other: ____
- ☐ Not Applicable

Prepared by______________________________ Phone________________ Date____________

Project Engineer____________________________ Office Location_______________________

CHAPTER 3

Minimum Requirements

Chapter 3. Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 3. Minimum Requirements

3-1 Introduction

> *Note to the designer: It is extremely important to take the time to thoroughly understand the minimum requirements presented in this chapter when making stormwater design decisions. A firm grasp of the chapter's terminology is essential; consult the manual's Glossary to clarify the intent and/or appropriate use of these terms. Questions regarding the minimum requirements and terminology should be directed to the region hydraulics representative, the Headquarters (HQ) Hydraulics Office, or the HQ Environmental Services Office.*

This chapter describes the nine minimum requirements that apply to the planning and design of stormwater management facilities and best management practices (BMPs) for existing and new Washington State highways, rest areas, park-and-ride lots, ferry terminals, and highway maintenance facilities. In order to plan and design stormwater management systems appropriately, the designer must determine specific parameters related to the project, such as new impervious area created, converted pervious area, area of land disturbance, presence of wetlands, and applicability of basin and watershed plans. Projects that follow the stormwater management practices in this manual achieve compliance with federal and state water quality regulations through the *presumptive approach*. As an alternative, see Sections 1-1.3, 2-7.4, and 5-3.6.3 for a description of using the *demonstrative approach* to protect water resources, in lieu of following the stormwater management practices in this manual.

This chapter provides information on applying the following minimum requirements to various types and sizes of projects:

1. Stormwater Planning
2. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
3. Source Control
4. Preservation of Natural Drainage
5. Runoff Treatment
6. Flow Control
7. Wetland Protection
8. Basin/Watershed Planning
9. Operations and Maintenance

Not all of the minimum requirements apply to every project. The flowchart in Figure 3.1 is provided to assist in determining which requirements **may** apply. **Consulting the flowchart is the initial step in the process. The next critical step involves checking Section 3-2 for the detailed information provided for each minimum requirement in terms of its objective, applicability (and potential exemptions), and guidance for application**. Consult the Glossary to ensure complete understanding of the minimum requirements. Additional guidance for retrofits not triggered by the minimum requirements is provided in Section 3-4.

Note: For the purposes of this manual, the boundary between eastern and western Washington is the Cascade Crest, except in Klickitat County, where the boundary line is the 16-inch mean annual precipitation contour (isopleth).

3-2 Applicability of the Minimum Requirements

3-2.1 Project Thresholds

Unless otherwise noted, all minimum requirements apply throughout the entire state. However, in some instances, design criteria, thresholds, and exemptions for eastern and western Washington differ due to different climatic, geologic, and hydrogeologic conditions. Regional differences for each minimum requirement are presented in Section 3-3 under the *Applicability* sections. Additional controls may be required, regardless of project type or size, as a result of adopted basin plans or to address special water quality concerns via a critical area ordinance or a requirement related to the total maximum daily load (TMDL).

All nonexempt projects are required to comply with Minimum Requirement 2. In addition, projects that exceed certain thresholds are required to comply with additional minimum requirements. Use Figure 3.1 as the **initial step** in determining which requirements might apply. The **next critical step** involves reviewing the detailed information provided for each minimum requirement in Section 3-3. Consult the Glossary to gain a clear understanding of the following terms, which are essential for correctly assessing minimum requirement applicability:

- New impervious surface
- Converted pervious surface
- Pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS)
- Pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS)
- Land-disturbing activity
- Native vegetation
- Nonroad-related projects
- Existing roadway prism
- Project limits
- Replaced impervious surface

- Road/parking lot-related projects
- Effective impervious surface
- Noneffective impervious surface
- Effective PGIS
- Noneffective PGIS
- Threshold discharge area (TDA)
- Net-new impervious surface

Upgrading by resurfacing state facilities from gravel to bituminous surface treatment (BST or "chip seal"), asphalt concrete pavement (ACP), or Portland cement concrete pavement (PCCP) is considered to be adding new impervious surfaces and is subject to the minimum requirements that are triggered when the thresholds are met.

Basin planning is encouraged and may be used to tailor applicable minimum requirements to a specific basin (i.e., Minimum Requirement 8).

3-2.2 Exemptions

Some types of activities are fully or partially exempt from the minimum requirements. These include some road maintenance/preservation practices and some underground utility projects. The road maintenance and preservation practices that are exempt from all the minimum requirements are:

- Pothole and square cut patching.
- Overlaying existing bituminous surface treatment (BST or "chip seal"), asphalt concrete pavement (ACP), or Portland cement concrete pavement (PCCP) with BST, ACP, or PCCP without expanding the area of coverage.
- Shoulder grading.
- Reshaping/regrading drainage systems.
- Crack sealing.
- Resurfacing with in-kind material without expanding the road prism.
- Vegetation maintenance.
- Upgrading by resurfacing Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) facilities from BST to ACP or PCCP without expanding the area of coverage.[1]

[1] This exemption is applicable only to WSDOT projects; whereas, the "gravel-to-BST" exemption in Ecology's stormwater management manuals is available to local governments. For local governments, upgrades that involve resurfacing from BST to ACP or PCCP are considered new impervious surfaces and are not categorically exempt.

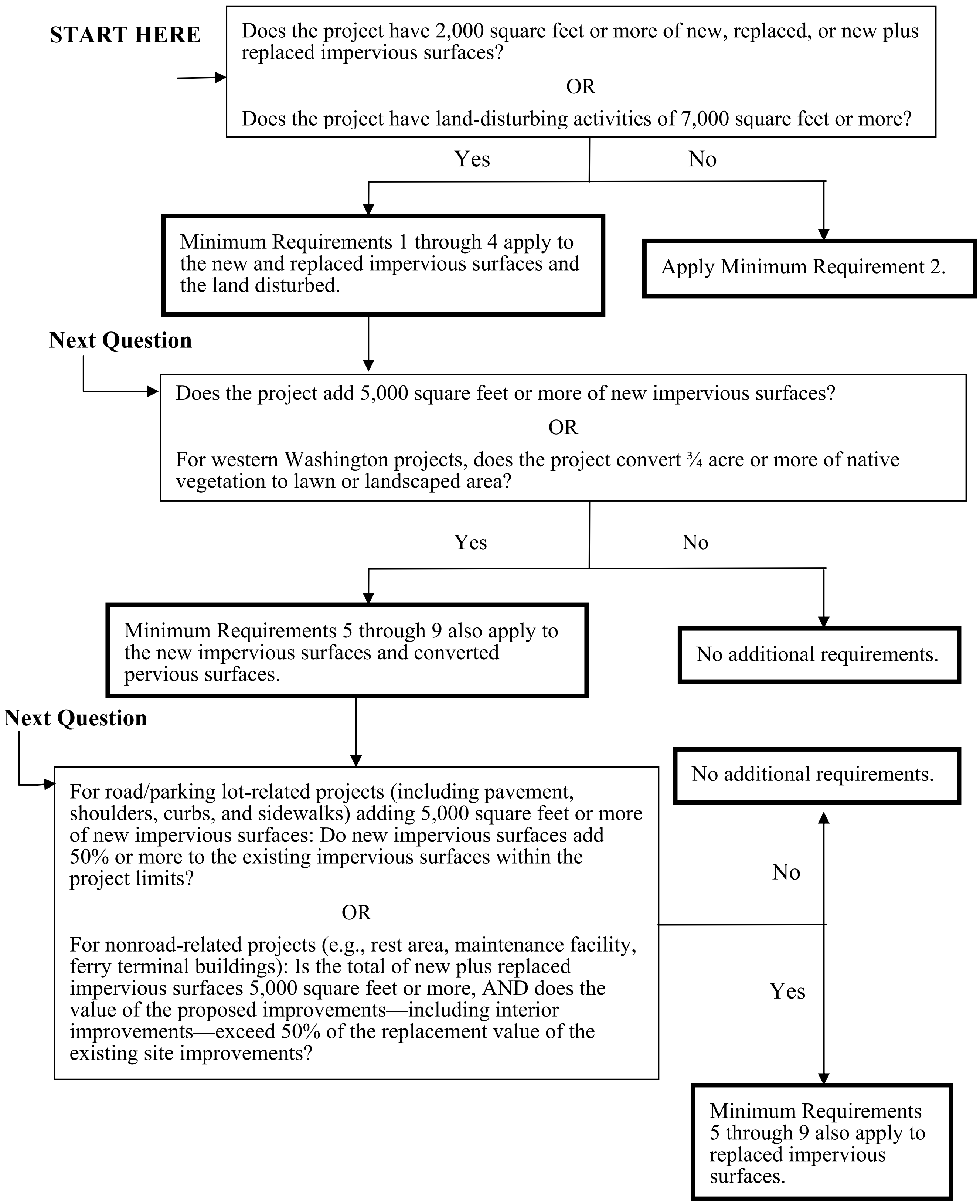


Figure 3.1. Flow chart for the *initial step* in evaluating minimum requirement applicability.

The following practices are subject only to Minimum Requirement 2 – Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention:

- Underground utility projects that replace the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics
- Removing and replacing a concrete or asphalt roadway to base course, or subgrade or lower, without expanding or upgrading the impervious surfaces
- Repairing the roadway base or subgrade

3-3 Minimum Requirements

This section describes the minimum requirements for stormwater management at project sites. Consult Section 3-2 to determine which requirements apply to any given project. (See Chapter 5 for BMPs to use in meeting Minimum Requirements 3, 5, 6, 7, and 9, and Chapter 6 for BMPs to use in meeting Minimum Requirement 2.)

3-3.1 Minimum Requirement 1 – Stormwater Planning

The two main stormwater planning components are: (1) Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Planning, and (2) Permanent Stormwater Control Planning.

Multiple documents are used to fulfill the objective of this requirement, since addressing stormwater management needs is thoroughly integrated into WSDOT's design, construction, and maintenance programs. WSDOT's construction stormwater pollution prevention planning components consist of Spill Prevention, Control, and Countermeasures (SPCC) plans and Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control (TESC) plans. WSDOT's permanent stormwater control planning components include Hydraulic Reports and aspects of the *Maintenance Manual*.

3-3.1.1 Objective

The stormwater planning components collectively demonstrate how stormwater management will be accomplished, both during project construction and in the final, developed condition.

3-3.1.2 Applicability

Minimum Requirement 1 applies to all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1. Contractors are required to prepare SPCC plans for all projects, since all projects have the potential to spill hazardous materials. WSDOT prepares TESC plans on projects that expose more than 7,000 square feet of erodible soil. Both plans must be kept on-site or within reasonable access of the site during construction, and may require updates with changing site conditions.

To meet the objectives of the permanent stormwater control planning requirements, WSDOT prepares Hydraulic Reports and follows the *Maintenance Manual*. The Hydraulic Report provides a complete record of the engineering justification for all drainage modifications and is prepared for all major and minor hydraulic projects, based on guidance from this manual as well as the *Hydraulics Manual*. As noted in the *Hydraulics Manual*, the Hydraulic Report must contain detailed descriptions of the following items:

- Existing and developed site hydrology
- Flow control and runoff treatment systems
- Conveyance system analysis and design
- Wetland hydrology analysis (if applicable)
- Off-site analysis (if applicable)

3-3.1.3 Gu idance

Instructions on how to prepare SPCC and TESC plans are provided in Minimum Requirement 2 and in Chapter 6.

Stormwater runoff treatment and flow control BMP maintenance criteria for each BMP in Chapter 5 are included in Section 5-5. Additional standards for maintaining stormwater BMPs are found in the *Regional Road Maintenance/Endangered Species Act Program Guidelines* (🖱 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/maintenance/roadside/esa.htm). The criteria and guidelines are designed to ensure that all BMPs function at design performance levels and that the maintenance activities themselves are protective of water quality and its beneficial uses.

3-3.2 Minimum Requirement 2 – Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention

The two components of construction stormwater pollution prevention are:

- Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control (TESC) planning.
- Spill Prevention, Control, and Countermeasures (SPCC) planning.

Erosion control is required to prevent erosion from damaging project sites, adjacent properties, and the environment. The emphasis of erosion control is to prevent the erosion process from starting by preserving native vegetation, limiting the amount of bare ground, and protecting slopes. A TESC plan must address the following elements:

- Element 1: Mark clearing limits
- Element 2: Establish construction access
- Element 3: Control flow rates

- Element 4: Install sediment controls
- Element 5: Stabilize soils
- Element 6: Protect slopes
- Element 7: Protect drain inlets
- Element 8: Stabilize channels and outlets
- Element 9: Control pollutants
- Element 10: Control dewatering
- Element 11: Maintain BMPs
- Element 12: Manage the project

All projects that involve mechanized equipment or construction materials that could potentially contaminate stormwater or soils require SPCC plans. The SPCC plan is a stand-alone document prepared by the contractor. The contents of the spill plan are as follows:

- Site information and project description
- Spill prevention and containment
- Spill response
- Material and equipment requirements
- Reporting information
- Program management
- Plans to contain preexisting contamination (if necessary)

Detailed requirements for each of these elements are provided in Sections 6-2 and 6-3. The TESC and SPCC plans must (1) demonstrate compliance with all of those detailed requirements, or (2) when site conditions warrant the exemption of an element(s), provide a clear explanation in the narrative as to why a requirement does not apply to the project.

3-3.2.1 Objective

The objective of construction stormwater pollution prevention is to ensure that construction projects do not impair water quality by allowing sediment to discharge from the site or allowing pollutant spills.

3-3.2.2 Applicabi lity

All nonexempt projects must address Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention per Standard Specification 1.07.15(1). All projects that disturb 7,000 square feet or more of land, or add 2,000 square feet or more of new, replaced, or new plus replaced impervious surface, must prepare a TESC plan in addition to an SPCC plan.

3-3.2.3 Guidance

Instructions on how to prepare SPCC and TESC plans are provided in Sections 6-2 and 6-3.

3-3.3 Minimum Requirement 3 – Source Control of Pollutants

All known, available, and reasonable source control BMPs must be applied, and must be selected, designed, and maintained in accordance with this manual.

3-3.3.1 Objective

The intention of source control is to prevent pollutants from coming into contact and mixing with stormwater. In many cases, it is more cost effective to apply source control than to remove pollutants after they have mixed with runoff. This is certainly the case for erosion control and spill prevention during the construction phase.

3-3.3.2 Applicability

Minimum Requirement 3 applies to all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1. Source control (i.e., erosion control and spill prevention) applies to all projects during the construction phase per Minimum Requirement 2. Postconstruction source controls are employed programmatically via WSDOT's maintenance program. Thus, in instances where structural BMPs may not be sufficient, consult with the environmental support staff of the HQ Maintenance and Operations Office to explore operational source control options that may be available to meet regulatory requirements.

3-3.3.3 Guidance

Source control BMPs include operational BMPs and structural BMPs. Operational BMPs are nonstructural practices that prevent (or reduce) pollutants from entering stormwater. Examples include preventative maintenance procedures; spill prevention and cleanup; and inspection of potential pollutant sources. Structural BMPs are physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. Examples include installation of vegetation for temporary and permanent erosion control; separation of contaminated runoff from clean runoff; and street sweeping.

Many source control BMPs combine operational and structural characteristics. A construction phase example is slope protection using various types of covers: temporary covers (structural) and the active inspection and maintenance needed for effective use of the covers (operational). A postconstruction phase example is street sweeping: a sweeper (mechanical) and the sweeping schedule and procedures for its use (operational) collectively support the BMP.

For guidance on the design of construction-related source control BMPs, see Chapter 6 and Appendix 6A. For guidance on the design of source control BMPs for the postconstruction phase, see Section 5-2.1.

3-3.4 Minimum Requirement 4 – Maintaining the Natural Drainage System

To the maximum extent possible, natural drainage patterns must be maintained, and discharges from the site must occur at the natural outfall locations. The manner by which runoff is discharged must not cause downstream erosion in receiving waters and downgradient properties. Outfalls may require dispersal systems and/or energy-dissipation BMPs.

3-3.4.1 Objective

The intention of maintaining the natural drainage system is to preserve and utilize natural drainage systems to the fullest extent because of the multiple benefits such systems provide and to prevent erosion at, and downstream of, the discharge location.

3-3.4.2 Applicabi lity

Minimum Requirement 4 applies to all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1, to the maximum extent practicable.

3-3.4.3 Gu idance

When projects affect subsurface and/or surface water drainage, use strategies that minimize impacts and maintain hydrologic continuity. For example, road cuts on hill slopes or roads bisecting wetlands or ephemeral streams can affect subsurface water drainage. Ditching, channel straightening, channel lining, channel obliteration, and roads that bisect wetlands or perennial streams change surface water drainage and stream channel processes. The designer should use the best available design practices to maintain hydrologic function and drainage patterns based on site geology, hydrology, and topography.

If flows for a given outfall are not channeled in the preproject condition, runoff concentrated by the proposed project must be discharged overland through a dispersal system and/or to surface water through an energy dissipater BMP before leaving the project outfall. Typical dispersal systems are rock pads, dispersal trenches, level spreaders, and diffuser pipes. Typical energy dissipaters are rock pads and drop structures. These systems are listed in Sections 5-4.3.5 and 5-4.3.6.

In some instances, a diversion of flow from the existing (i.e., preproject) discharge location may be beneficial to the downstream properties and/or receiving water bodies. An example of where the diversion of flows may be warranted includes areas where preproject drainage conditions are contributing to active erosion of a stream channel in a heavily impervious basin. Another example includes areas where preproject drainage patterns are exacerbating flooding of downstream properties. If it is determined that a diversion of flow from the natural discharge location may be warranted, contact region or HQ hydraulics staff.

3-3.5 Minimum Requirement 5 – Runoff Treatment

Runoff treatment must be provided for all nonexempt projects that meet the threshold described in Figure 3.1.

3-3.5.1 Objective

The purpose of runoff treatment is to reduce pollutant loads and concentrations in stormwater runoff using physical, biological, and chemical removal mechanisms to maintain or enhance beneficial uses of receiving waters. When site conditions are appropriate, infiltration can potentially be the most effective BMP for runoff treatment. Meeting runoff treatment requirements may also be achieved through regional stormwater facilities.

3-3.5.2 Runoff Treatment Exemptions

Any of the runoff treatment exemptions below may be negated by requirements set forth in a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) or a TMDL-related water cleanup plan.

- Runoff treatment is not required where no new pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) is added. These include:
  - Projects or portions of projects that add paved surfaces not intended for use by motor vehicles (e.g., sidewalks, bike and/or pedestrian trails) and that are separated from adjacent roadways in such a way that they do not contribute flow to PGIS areas.
  - Projects that overlay or upgrade existing bituminous surface treatment (BST or “chip seal”), asphalt concrete pavement (ACP), or Portland cement concrete pavement (PCCP) without an increase in impervious area. (Note: Upgrading a facility from gravel surface to BST, ACP, or PCCP is considered an addition of new impervious surface and is subject to runoff treatment if the thresholds are met.)
  - Projects that remove a paved surface to base course or lower, then repave without an increase in impervious area.
- Discharges to underground injection control (UIC) facilities may be exempt from basic runoff treatment requirements if the vadose zone matrix between the bottom of the facility and the water table provides adequate treatment capacity (see Section 5-4.2.1). However, all drywells should be preceded by a properly maintained catch basin to preserve the functionality of the drywell, or a basic treatment BMP.

3-3.5.3 Applicabi lity[2]

Minimum Requirement 5 applies to all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1. Even if the threshold is not triggered, runoff from the applicable pollution-generating impervious surfaces (PGIS) and pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) must be dispersed and infiltrated to adjacent pervious areas when feasible. The extension of the roadway edge and the paving of gravel shoulders and lanes are considered new PGIS.

Projects not triggering the runoff treatment minimum requirement may still require treatment if a specific deficiency within the project limits is identified through the I-4 Stormwater Retrofit program. The decision to retrofit is made by the project office in collaboration with region and HQ program management and environmental services staff.

Application

Application of the runoff treatment requirement is a two-step process.

Step 1. Project level: Minimum Requirement 5 applies if one of the following conditions is exceeded (Note: Thresholds described in Step 1 differ from Figure 3.1 in that Step 1 looks at PGIS, while Figure 3.1 only looks at “new” impervious surfaces):

- The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new PGIS; OR
- The project converts more than ¾ acre of native vegetation to PGPS (western Washington only).

In addition, when the 5,000-square-foot PGIS threshold is met or exceeded:

- Road/parking lot-related projects (e.g., pavement, shoulders, curbs, and sidewalks) would also apply Minimum Requirement 5 to any replaced PGIS if the new PGIS is equal to or greater than 50% of the total existing PGIS within the project limits; OR
- Nonroad-related projects (e.g., rest area buildings, maintenance facilities, ferry terminal buildings) would also apply Minimum Requirement 5 to any replaced PGIS if the value of the proposed improvements, including interior improvements, exceeds 50% of the replacement value of the existing site improvements.

Step 2. Threshold discharge area (TDA) level: For projects exceeding Step 1 thresholds, each of the following triggers should be evaluated for each TDA in the project to determine whether Minimum Requirement 5 applies to the effective PGIS in that particular TDA:

---

[2] Consult the Glossary for the following key terms: *converted pervious surface*, *impervious surface*, *new PGIS, PGPS*, *project limits*, *replaced impervious surface*, *effective PGIS*, *noneffective PGIS*, and *threshold discharge area* (TDA).

- Effective PGIS (i.e., new PGIS plus any applicable replaced PGIS minus any noneffective PGIS) is 5,000 square feet or more in a TDA; OR
- PGPS is ¾ of an acre or more in a TDA, and there is a surface discharge in a natural or manmade conveyance system from the site (applicable for western Washington only).

Equivalent area treatment is allowable for PGIS areas that drain to the same receiving waters and have the same pollutant loading characteristics. While the equivalent area will receive treatment, the new or expanded discharge must not cause a violation of surface water quality standards. Additional information on equivalent area treatment is provided in Section 4-3.6.1.

3-3.5.4 Guidance

Runoff treatment design involves the following three steps:

1. Determine the specific runoff treatment requirements (i.e., basic treatment, enhanced treatment, oil control, and/or phosphorus control). Refer to the section on *treatment targets* below.
2. Choose the method(s) of runoff treatment that will best meet the treatment requirements, taking into account the constraints/opportunities presented by the project's context and operation and maintenance. Refer to Sections 2-5, 2-6, 2-7.4, 4-3.1, 5-3.5 and 5-5.
3. Design runoff treatment facilities based on the sizing criteria. Refer to the section on *Criteria for Sizing Runoff Treatment Facilities* below and Section 5-4.1.

WSDOT's stormwater management design philosophy (see Section 2-5.2) seeks to mimic natural hydrology where feasible, through the dispersal and infiltration of runoff. The extent to which runoff flow rates and volumes can be dispersed (or remain dispersed) and then infiltrated determines the types of runoff treatment options available and their sizing. This aspect of runoff treatment planning and design is discussed in detail in Sections 2-3.2, 4-3.6.1, 5-2, and 5-3.

Stormwater facilities are not allowed within a jurisdictional wetland or its natural vegetated buffer, except for conveyance systems allowed by applicable permit(s) or as allowed in a wetland mitigation plan. Wetlands may be considered for runoff treatment if the wetland meets the criteria for hydrologic modification (see Minimum Requirement 6 and Section 4-6 on wetland hydroperiods) and Minimum Requirement 7.

Sections 4-3 (western Washington) and 4-4 (eastern Washington) provide design criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities, including a description on how to conduct the hydrological analysis to derive treatment volumes and flow rates for treatment facilities.

Section 5-4 provides direction on how to design the treatment facilities chosen for the project.

Treatment Targets

There are four runoff treatment targets: *Basic Treatment* (i.e., total suspended solids removal), *Enhanced Treatment* (i.e., dissolved metals removal), *Oil Control*, and *Phosphorus Control*. Table 3-1 describes applicable treatment targets and performance goals for roadway projects. For nonroadway applications, refer to the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington* (SMMEW) or the *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SMMWW). Table 3-2 identifies receiving waters that do not require *Enhanced Treatment* for direct discharges.

Section 5-3.5 provides information on options available to meet each of the four treatment targets. Treatment facilities, designed in accordance with the design criteria presented in this manual, are presumed to meet the applicable performance goals.

An adopted and implemented Basin Plan, Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL), or Water Clean-up Plan may also be used to set runoff treatment requirements that are tailored to a specific basin. However, treatment requirements must not be less than those achieved by facilities designed for Basic Treatment.

Table 3-1. Runoff treatment targets and applications for roadway projects.

Treatment Target	Application	Performance Goal
Basic Treatment	All project threshold discharge areas (TDAs) where runoff treatment threshold is met.	80% removal of total suspended solids (TSS)
Enhanced Treatment (dissolved metals)	Same as for Basic Treatment. AND Roadway ADT[1] is ≥ 30,000 or is required by an adopted basin plan or water cleanup plan/TMDL. (See Table 3-2 for receiving water exemptions.)	Provide a higher rate of removal of dissolved metals than Basic Treatment facilities for influent concentrations ranging from 0.003 to 0.02 mg/L for dissolved copper and 0.02-0.3 mg/L for dissolved zinc
Oil Control	Same as for Basic Treatment. AND There is an intersection where either ≥15,000 vehicles (ADT) must stop to cross a roadway with ≥25,000 vehicles (ADT) or vice versa.[2] OR Rest areas with an expected ADT count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area. OR Maintenance facilities that park, store, or maintain 25 or more vehicles (trucks or heavy equipment) that exceed 10 tons gross weight each.	No ongoing or recurring visible sheen and 24-hr average total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration of not greater than 10 mg/L with a maximum of 15 mg/L for a discrete (grab) sample
Phosphorus Control	Same as for Basic Treatment. AND The project is located in a designated area requiring phosphorus control as prescribed through an adopted basin plan or water cleanup plan/TMDL.[3]	50% removal of total phosphorus (TP) for influent concentrations ranging from 0.1 to 0.5 mg/L TP

[1] Average daily traffic (ADT) is generally the design year ADT and not the current ADT. A possible exception to this rule is where road ADTs would likely never reach levels that would exceed its design capacity (such as with rural portions of the state). Contact region hydraulics staff for more information.

[2] Treatment is required for these high-use roadway intersections for lanes where vehicles accumulate during the signal cycle, including left- and right-turn lanes from the beginning of the left-turn pocket. If no left-turn pocket exists, the treatable area must begin at a distance equal to three car lengths from the stop line. If runoff from the intersection drains to more than two collection areas that do not combine within the intersection, treatment may be limited to any two of the collection areas where the cars stop.

[3] Contact WSDOT region hydraulics or environmental staff to determine if phosphorus control is required for a project.

Table 3-2. Basic Treatment receiving waters.[1]

1. All saltwater bodies	
2. Rivers (only Basic Treatment applies below the location)	
Baker (Anderson Creek)	Quillayute (Bogachiel River)
Bogachiel (Bear Creek)	Quinault (Lake Quinault)
Cascade (Marblemount)	Sauk (Clear Creek)
Chehalis (Bunker Creek)	Satsop (Middle and East Fork confluence)
Clearwater (Town of Clearwater)	Similkameen
Columbia (Canadian Border)	Skagit (Cascade River)
Cowlitz (Skate Creek)	Skokomish (Vance Creek)
Elwha (Lake Mills)	Skykomish (Beckler River)
Green (Howard Hanson Dam)	Snake
Grand Ronde	Snohomish (Snoqualmie River)
Hoh (South Fork Hoh River)	Snoqualmie (Middle and North Fork confluence)
Humptulips (West and East Fork confluence)	Sol Duc (Beaver Creek)
Kalama (Italian Creek)	Spokane
Kettle	Stillaguamish (North and South Fork confluence)
Klickitat	North Fork Stillaguamish (Boulder River)
Lewis (Swift Reservoir)	South Fork Stillaguamish (Canyon Creek)
Methow	Suiattle (Darrington)
Moses	Tilton (Bear Canyon Creek)
Muddy (Clear Creek)	Toutle (North and South Fork confluence)
Naches	North Fork Toutle (Green River)
Nisqually (Alder Lake)	Washougal (Washougal)
Nooksack (Glacier Creek)	White (Greenwater River)
South Fork Nooksack (Hutchinson Creek)	Wenatchee
Okanogan	Wind (Carson)
Pend Oreille	Wynoochee (Wishkah River Road Bridge)
Puyallup (Carbon River)	Yakima
Queets (Clearwater River)	
3. Nonfish-bearing streams tributary to Basic Treatment receiving waters	
4. Lakes (county location)	
Banks (Grant)	Silver (Cowlitz)
Chelan (Chelan)	Whatcom (Whatcom)
Moses (Grant)	Washington (King)
Potholes Reservoir (Grant)	Union (King)
Sammamish (King)	
5. Discharges to groundwater via rule-authorized underground injection control (UIC) facilities[2]	

[1] Receiving waters not requiring Enhanced Treatment for direct discharges.

[2] Contact WSDOT region hydraulics or environmental staff to determine if an underground injection control (UIC) facility is authorized by the rules under the UIC program (WAC 173-218).

Note: Local governments may petition for the addition of waters to this list. The initial criteria for this list are rivers whose mean annual flow exceeds 1,000 cubic feet per second, and lakes whose surface area exceeds 300 acres. Additional waters do not have to meet these criteria, but should have sufficient background dilution capacity to accommodate dissolved metals additions from build-out conditions in the watershed under the latest Comprehensive Land Use Plan and zoning regulations.

Criteria for Sizing Runoff Treatment Facilities

Two sets of criteria exist for sizing runoff treatment facilities—one for western Washington (Table 3-3) and one for eastern Washington (Table 3-4).

Table 3-3. Criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities in western Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Flow-based: upstream of flow control facility (on-line & off-line)	Size treatment facility so that 91% of the annual average runoff will receive treatment at or below the design-loading criteria, under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA. If the flow rate is split upstream of the treatment facility, use the off-line flow rates.	Approved continuous simulation model using 15-minute time steps
Flow-based: downstream of flow control facility	Size treatment facility using the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility, under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Approved continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps
Volume-based (on-line & off-line)	*Wetpool—Volume-based, infiltration, or filtration:* Size the facility to treat 91% of the estimated historic runoff file for the postdeveloped conditions. OR *Wetpool*: Size treatment facility using the runoff volume predicted for the 6-month, 24-hour design storm under the postdeveloped conditions for each TDA. This design storm is approximately as 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour design storm or 91st percentile, 24-hour runoff volume.	Approved continuous simulation model with 1-hour time steps OR Single event model (SBUH*)

* Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph (SBUH) method is based on NRCS curve number equations

Table 3-4. Criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities in eastern Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Volume-based	Size facility using the runoff volume predicted for the 6-month, 24-hour storm event under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Climatic Regions 1–4 Regional Storm; OR Type 1A for Climatic Regions 2 & 3
Flow-based: upstream of detention/retention facility	Size facility using the peak flow rate predicted for the 6-month, short duration storm under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Short duration storm
Flow-based: downstream of detention facility	Size facility using the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility, under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Short duration storm Climatic Regions 1–4 Regional Storm; OR Type 1A for Climatic Regions 2 & 3, whichever produces the greatest flow

If runoff from areas other than the total new PGIS and that portion of any replaced PGIS that requires treatment cannot be separated from the total new PGIS runoff, treatment facilities must be sized to treat this additional runoff.

3-3.6 Minimum Requirement 6 – Flow Control

This requirement applies to all nonexempt projects that discharge stormwater directly, or indirectly through a conveyance system, to a surface freshwater body.

3-3.6.1 Objective

The objective of flow control is to prevent increases in the stream channel erosion rates beyond those characteristic of natural or reestablished conditions. The intent is to prevent cumulative future impacts from increased stormwater runoff volumes and flow rates on streams. Wherever possible, infiltration is the preferred method of flow control. Meeting flow control requirements may also be achieved through regional stormwater facilities.

3-3.6.2 Flo w Control Exemptions

Flow control is not required for all discharges to surface waters, because it is not always needed to protect stream morphology. Regardless of whether an exemption applies, projects need to take advantage of on-site opportunities to infiltrate storm runoff to the greatest extent feasible.

The following projects and discharges are exempt from flow control requirements (runoff treatment may still be required per Minimum Requirement 5):

1. A project able to disperse stormwater without discharging runoff either directly or indirectly through a conveyance system to surface waters per guidelines in Section 5-2.2.2.
2. Projects discharging stormwater directly or indirectly through a conveyance system into any of the exempt water bodies shown in Table 3-5.
3. Projects discharging stormwater from over-the-water structures such as bridges, docks, and piers in or over fresh water are exempt up to the 2-year flood plain elevation; OR that portion of an over-the-water structure that is over the ordinary high water mark.
4. Portions of a roadway that cut through the 2-year flood plain elevation.
5. Projects discharging stormwater directly or indirectly through a conveyance system into a wetland. However, flow control may still be required to maintain wetland hydrology (i.e., depth and duration of inundation) per Minimum Requirement 7. (See applicable wetland protection criteria under Minimum Requirement 4 and Minimum Requirement 7.)

Any of the exempted areas must meet the following requirements:

- Direct discharge to the exempt receiving water does not result in the diversion of drainage area from perennial streams classified as Types 1, 2, 3, or 4 in the State of Washington Interim Water Typing System; or Types "S," "F," or "Np" in the Permanent Water Typing System; or from any category I, II, or III wetland; AND
- Flow-splitting devices or drainage BMPs are applied to route natural runoff volumes from the project site to any downstream Type 5 stream or Category IV wetland:
  - Design of flow-splitting devices or drainage BMPs will be based on continuous hydrologic modeling analysis. The design will assure that flows delivered to Type 5 stream reaches will approximate, but in no case exceed, durations ranging from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year peak flow.
  - Flow-splitting devices or drainage BMPs that deliver flow to category IV wetlands will also be designed using continuous hydrologic modeling to preserve preproject wetland hydrologic conditions, unless specifically waived or exempted by regulatory agencies with permitting jurisdiction; AND
- The project site must be drained by a conveyance system that is comprised entirely of manmade conveyance elements (e.g., pipes, ditches, outfall protection) and that extends to the ordinary high water mark of the exempt receiving water, unless, in order to avoid construction activities in sensitive areas, flows are properly dispersed before reaching the buffer zone of the sensitive or critical area; AND
- The conveyance system between the project site and the exempt receiving water shall have a hydraulic capacity sufficient to convey discharges under future build-out conditions from all project and nonproject areas (if applicable—see WSDOT *Utilities Manual,* Section 1-18, for storm drainage requirements) from which runoff is collected; AND
- Any erodible elements of the manmade conveyance system for the area must be adequately stabilized to prevent erosion under future build-out conditions from areas that contribute flow to the system; AND
- If the discharge is to a stream that leads to a wetland, or to a wetland that has an outflow to a stream, both this requirement and Minimum Requirement 7 apply**.**

The following **additional** exemptions (or partial exemptions) are available in eastern Washington:

1. A site with less than 10-inch average annual rainfall that discharges to a seasonal stream that is not connected via surface flow to a nonexempt surface water by

runoff generated during the 2-year regional storm for Climatic Regions 1–4; OR during the 2-year Type 1A storm for Climatic Regions 2 and 3.

2. Discharges to a stream that flows only during runoff-producing events. The runoff carried by the stream following the 2-year regional storm in Climatic Regions 1–4; OR during the 2-year Type 1A storm for Climatic Regions 2 and 3, must not discharge via surface flow to a nonexempt surface water. The stream may carry runoff during an average annual snowmelt event, but must not have a period of base flow during a year of normal precipitation.

3. Discharges to stream reaches consisting primarily of irrigation return flows and not providing habitat for fish spawning and rearing. Projects should match the predeveloped 2-year and 25-year peak runoff rates for these discharges. Local irrigation districts may impose other requirements.

Petitions to seek exemptions in additional geographic areas can be submitted to Ecology for consideration. Such a petition must justify the proposed exemption based upon a hydrologic analysis demonstrating that the potential stormwater runoff from the exempted area will not significantly increase the erosion forces on the stream channel, nor have near-field impacts. Contact the region's Hydraulics Office to determine the feasibility of potential exemption candidates.

Diversions of flow from perennial streams and from wetlands can be considered if significant existing (i.e., preproject) flooding, stream stability, water quality, or aquatic habitat problems would be solved or significantly mitigated by bypassing stormwater runoff, rather than providing stormwater detention and discharge to natural drainage features. Bypassing should not be considered as an alternative to applicable flow control or treatment if the flooding, stream stability, water quality, or habitat problem to be solved would be caused by the project. In addition, the proposal should not exacerbate other water quality/quantity problems such as inadequate low flows or inadequate wetland water elevations.

A stormwater engineer or scientist should document the existing problems and their solutions or mitigation as a result of the direct discharge after review of any available drainage reports, basin plans, or other relevant literature. The restrictions in this minimum requirement on conveyance systems that transfer water to exempt receiving waters are applicable in these situations. Approvals by all regulatory authorities with permitting jurisdiction are necessary.

Additional streams in eastern Washington may be exempt by applying the following criteria:

- Any river or stream that is fifth order or greater as determined from a 1:24,000 scale map; OR
- Any river or stream that is fourth order or greater as determined from a 1:100,000 or larger scale map.

Table 3-5. Flow control exempt surface waters list.

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Alder Lake	
Asotin Creek	Downstream of confluence with George Creek
Baker Lake	
Baker River	Baker River/Baker Lake downstream of confluence with Noisy Creek
Banks Lake	
Bogachiel River	0.4 miles downstream of Dowans Creek
Bumping Lake	
Bumping River	Downstream of confluence with American River
Burg Slough	Downstream of Humptulips River
Calawah River	Downstream of confluence with South Fork Calawah River
Carbon River	Downstream of confluence with South Prairie Creek
Cascade River	Downstream of Found Creek
Cedar River	Downstream of confluence with Taylor Creek
Chehalis River	1,500 feet downstream of confluence with Stowe Creek
Chehalis River, South Fork	1,000 feet upstream of confluence with Lake Creek
Cispus River	Downstream of confluence with Cat Creek
Clearwater River	Downstream of confluence with Christmas Creek
Cle Elum River	Downstream of Cle Elum Lake
Columbia River	Downstream of Canadian border
Columbia River Reservoirs	
Colville River	Downstream of confluence with Chewelah Creek
Conconully Reservoir	
Coweman River	Downstream of confluence with Gobble Creek
Cowlitz River	Downstream of confluence of Ohanapecosh River and Clear Fork Cowlitz River
Crescent Lake	
Dickey River	Downstream of confluence with Coal Creek
Dosewallips River	Downstream of confluence with Rocky Brook
Dungeness River, main channels	Downstream of confluence with Gray Wolf River
Elwha River	Downstream of confluence with Goldie River
Grande Ronde River	Entire reach from the Oregon to Idaho border
Grays River	Downstream of confluence with Hull Creek
Green River (WRIA 26 – Cowlitz)	3.5 miles upstream of Devils Creek
Hoh River	1.2 miles downstream of Jackson Creek
Humptulips River	Downstream of confluence with West and East Forks
Kalama River	2.0 miles downstream of Jacks Creek
Kettle River	Downstream of confluence with Boulder Creek
Klickitat River	Downstream of confluence with West Fork
Latah Creek (formerly Hangman Creek)	Downstream of confluence with Rock Creek (in Spokane County)
Lake Chelan	
Lake Cle Elum	
Lake Cushman	
Lake Kachess	
Lake Keechelus	
Lake Quinault	
Lake Shannon	

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Lake Sammamish	
Lake Union	King County
Lake Wenatchee	
Lake Washington	
Lake Whatcom	
Lewis River	Downstream of confluence with Quartz Creek
Lewis River, East Fork	Downstream of confluence with Big Tree Creek
Lightning Creek	Downstream of confluence with Three Fools Creek
Little Spokane River	Downstream of confluence with Deadman Creek
Little White Salmon River	Downstream of confluence with Lava Creek
Lower Crab Creek	Entire reach
Mayfield Lake	
Methow River	Downstream of confluence with Early Winters Creek
Moses Lake	
Muddy River	Downstream of confluence with Clear Creek
Naches River	Downstream of confluence with Bumping River
Naselle River	Downstream of confluence with Johnson Creek
Newaukum River	Downstream of confluence with South Fork Newaukum River
Nisqually River	Downstream of confluence with Big Creek
Nooksack River	Downstream of confluence of North and Middle Forks
Nooksack River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with Glacier Creek, at USGS gage 12205000
Nooksack River, South Fork	0.1 miles upstream of confluence with Skookum Creek
North River	Downstream of confluence with Vesta Creek
Ohanapecosh River	Downstream of confluence with Summit Creek
Okanogan River	Downstream of Canadian border
Osoyoos Lake	
Pacific Ocean	
Palouse River	Downstream of confluence with South Fork Palouse River
Pend Oreille River	Idaho to Canadian border
Pend Oreille River Reservoirs	
Pothole Reservoir	
Puget Sound	
Puyallup River	Half-mile downstream of confluence with Kellog Creek
Queets River	Downstream of confluence with Tshletshy Creek
Quillayute River	Downstream of Bogachiel River
Quinault River	Downstream of confluence with North Fork Quinault River
Riffe Lake	
Rimrock Lake	
Rock Creek	In Whitman County, downstream of confluence with Cottonwood Creek
Ruby Creek	Ruby Creek at State Route 20 crossing downstream of Granite and Canyon Creeks
Sammamish River	Downstream of Lake Sammamish
Sauk River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Forks
Satsop River	Downstream of confluence of Middle and East Forks
Satsop River, East Fork	Downstream of confluence with Decker Creek
Silver Lake	Cowlitz County
Similkameen River	Downstream of Canadian border

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Skagit River	Downstream of Canadian border
Skokomish River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Forks
Skokomish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence with Vance Creek
Skokomish River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with McTaggert Creek
Skookumchuck River	1 mile upstream of Bucoda at State Route 507, milepost 11.0
Skykomish River	Downstream of South Fork
Skykomish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence of Tye and Foss Rivers
Snake River	Entire reach along Idaho boarder to the Columbia River
Snake River Reservoirs	
Snohomish River	Downstream of confluence of Snoqualmie and Skykomish Rivers
Snoqualmie River	Downstream of confluence of the Middle Fork
Snoqualmie River, Middle Fork	Downstream of confluence with Rainy Creek
Sol Duc River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Fork Soleduck River
Spokane River	Downstream of Idaho border
Spokane River Reservoirs	
Stillaguamish River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Forks
Stillaguamish River, North Fork	7.7 highway miles west of Darrington on State Route 530, downstream of confluence with French Creek
Stillaguamish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence of Cranberry Creek and South Fork
Suiattle River	Downstream of confluence with Milk Creek
Sultan River	0.4 miles upstream of State Route 2
Swift Creek Reservoir	
Teanaway River	Downstream of confluence of North and West Forks
Thunder Creek	Downstream of confluence with Neve Creek
Tieton River	Downstream of Rimrock Lake
Tilton River	Downstream of confluence with North Fork Tilton River
Toppenish Creek	Downstream of confluence with Wanity Slough
Touchet River	Downstream of confluence with Patit Creek
Toutle River	North and South Fork confluence
Toutle River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with Hoffstadt Creek
Toutle River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence with Thirteen Creek
Tucannon River	Downstream of confluence with Pataha Creek
Walla Walla River	Downstream of confluence with Mill Creek
Wenatchee River	Downstream of confluence with Icicle Creek
White River	Downstream of confluence with Huckleberry Creek
White Salmon River	0.15 miles upstream of confluence with Trout Lake Creek
Willapa River	Downstream of confluence with Mill Creek
Wind River	Downstream of confluence with Cold Creek
Wynochee Lake	
Wynoochee River	Downstream of confluence with Schafer Creek
Yakima River	Downstream of Lake Easton

3-3.6.3 Applicabi lity[3]

Unless an exemption applies, the project must provide flow control of stormwater runoff that meets the threshold at which Minimum Requirement 6 applies. The threshold for triggering the flow control requirement takes into account the project's effective impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces. The application of Minimum Requirement 6, with respect to effective impervious surface areas, is shown below.

Flow Control Thresholds

If a flow control exemption does not apply, use the following two-step threshold process to determine project conditions that require flow control:

Step 1. **Project level:** First, Minimum Requirement 6 applies to the project if (note that this is the same process depicted in Figure 3.1):

- The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new impervious surface; OR
- The project converts more than ¾ acre of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped area in western Washington.

In addition, when the 5,000-square-foot threshold (above) is met or exceeded:

- Road/parking lot-related projects (including pavement, shoulders, curbs, and sidewalks) also need to apply Minimum Requirement 6 to any replaced impervious surfaces if the new impervious surfaces add 50% or more to the existing impervious surfaces within the project limits; OR
- Nonroad-related projects (e.g., rest area buildings, maintenance facilities, ferry terminal buildings) also need to apply Minimum Requirement 6 to any replaced impervious surfaces if the value of the proposed improvements—including interior improvements—exceeds 50% of the replacement value of the existing site improvement.

Step 2. **Threshold Discharge Area (TDA) level (western Washington):** For projects exceeding Step 1 thresholds, each of the following triggers should be evaluated to determine whether Minimum Requirement 6 applies to each TDA. If any one of the three triggers is exceeded for a given TDA, flow control should be provided for the effective impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces in that particular TDA:

- The effective impervious surface area (net-new impervious surfaces plus any applicable replaced impervious surfaces minus any noneffective impervious surfaces) is 10,000 square feet or more in a given TDA; OR

[3] Consult the Glossary for the following key terms: *converted pervious surface*, *new impervious surface*, *effective impervious surface*, *net-new impervious surface*, *project limits*, *replaced impervious surface*, and *threshold discharge area* (TDA).

- The project converts ¾ acre or more of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped area in a given TDA, and there is a surface discharge in a natural or manmade conveyance system from the site; OR
- Through a combination of effective impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, the particular TDA causes a 0.1 cfs or more increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow, as estimated using the MGSFlood or other Ecology-approved model. This analysis is based on preproject (i.e., what is currently seen at the project site) land cover conditions for the predeveloped modeling condition and the postconstruction (i.e., after the project is completed) land cover conditions for the developed modeling conditions.

Step 3. Threshold Discharge Area (TDA) level (eastern Washington): For projects exceeding Step 1 thresholds, the following trigger should be evaluated to determine whether Minimum Requirement 6 applies to each TDA. If the trigger is exceeded for a given TDA, flow control should be provided for the effective impervious surfaces in that particular TDA:

- The effective impervious surface area (net-new impervious surfaces plus any applicable replaced impervious surfaces minus any noneffective impervious surfaces) is 10,000 square feet or more in a given threshold discharge area.

Application of the "net-new impervious surface" concept is germane only to determine if Minimum Requirement 6 applies at the TDA level (Step 2). Application of the concept does not extend to any other minimum requirement. When applying the net-new impervious approach, the pavement permanently removed by the project needs to be reverted to a pervious condition per the guidelines in Section 4-3.6.1.

3-3.6.4 Gu idance

Infiltration is the preferred method to control flow. If infiltration cannot be achieved at the project site, refer to the appropriate design criteria listed below and in Chapter 4.

Flow control BMPs or the live storage portion of a combination flow control/runoff treatment BMP shall not be placed below the seasonal high water table. As an alternative, first look for equivalent areas within the same TDA to provide the necessary flow control. If a feasible location cannot be found within the TDA, seek out equivalent areas (within WSDOT right-of-way) upstream of the TDA that discharge to the same receiving water body to provide the necessary flow control. Lastly, if a feasible location cannot be found upstream of the TDA, seek out equivalent areas (within WSDOT's right-of-way) downstream of the TDA that discharge to the same receiving water body to provide the necessary flow control. Document these decisions on the Engineering and Economic Feasibility (EEF) Evaluation Checklist (Appendix 2A).

If none of the above options are feasible within the project area, then explore alternative flow control mitigation in the watershed (e.g., purchasing land and converting it back to a forested condition, or restoring wetlands in close proximity to the project site). For more information on watershed-based approaches, see Section 2-7.3.

Avoid placing BMPs in wetlands, 100-year floodplains, and intertidal areas. These natural systems have a higher net environmental benefit than engineered stormwater treatment systems. If the placement of a required flow control BMP would impact such a sensitive area, consult the region's Hydraulics Office as early as possible for aid in properly analyzing the effects of various flow control options. The region's Hydraulics and Environmental offices will also coordinate with the appropriate state, local, tribal, and federal agencies to ensure adequate protection of all natural resources.

Design specifications for conveyance and flood prevention are reviewed with the assistance of the region's or HQ Hydraulics Office.

Western Washington Design Criteria

Stormwater discharges must match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. Also, check the 100-year peak flow rate for downstream flooding and property damage, using an approved continuous simulation model.

Refer to Section 4-3.6.1 for the appropriate modeling process. Also, reference the same section for the modeling process to address mitigated and nonmitigated areas on projects in on-site and off-site flow bypass situations.

This standard requirement is waived for sites that will reliably infiltrate all runoff from impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces. Table 3-6 summarizes flow control criteria for western Washington.

Table 3-6. Western Washington flow control criteria.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Detention/combination treatment and detention facilities	Provide storage volume required to match the duration of predeveloped peak flows from 50% of the 2-year up to the 50-year storm flow, using a flow restrictor (e.g., orifice, weir), and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage.	Continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps
Infiltration facilities	Size facility to infiltrate sufficient volumes so that the overflow matches the Duration Standard, and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage, or infiltrate 100% of the runoff volume.	Continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps

An alternative flow control standard may be established through applying watershed-scale hydrologic modeling and supporting field observations. Possible justifications for an alternative flow control standard include:

1. Establishment of a stream-specific threshold of significant bedload movement other than the assumed 50% of the 2-year peak flow; OR
2. Zoning and Land Clearing Ordinance restrictions that, in combination with an alternative flow control standard, maintain or reduce the naturally-occurring erosive forces on the stream channel, with local jurisdiction approval; OR
3. A duration control standard is not necessary for protection, maintenance, or restoration of designated beneficial uses or Clean Water Act compliance.

Eastern Washington Design Criteria

Using a single-event model, flow control design requirements for projects must limit the peak release rate of the postdeveloped 2-year runoff volume to 50% of the predeveloped 2-year peak, and maintain the predeveloped 25-year peak runoff rate. The 100-year event must be checked for downstream flooding and property damage. Table 3-7 summarizes flow control criteria for eastern Washington.

Table 3-7. Eastern Washington flow control criteria.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Detention/combination treatment and detention facilities	Provide storage volume required to match ½ of the 2-year predeveloped peak flow rate and match the predeveloped 25-year peak flow rate, and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage.	Single Event Model (SCS or SBUH) Climatic Regions 1–4 Regional Storm; OR Type 1A Storm for Climatic Regions 2 & 3 only
Infiltration facilities	Size facility to infiltrate the entire volume of the 25-year storm with an overflow, and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage, or infiltrate 100 % of the storm runoff volume.	Single Event Model (SCS or SBUH) Climatic Regions 1–4 Regional Storm; OR Type 1A Storm for Climatic Regions 2 & 3 only

Predevelopment and postdevelopment runoff volumes and flow rates must be estimated using the Regional Storm for Climatic Regions 1–4; OR Type 1A Storm for Climatic Regions 2 and 3, as described in Section 4-4.2. Predeveloped conditions are those that currently exist at the site.

In many instances, the 2-year predeveloped flow rate is zero cubic feet per second, or the flow rate is so small that it is impracticable to design a pond to release at the prescribed flow rate from an engineered outlet structure. In these cases, the total postdeveloped 2-year storm runoff volume must be infiltrated (preferred) or stored in a retention pond for evaporation, and the detention pond designed to release the predeveloped 10- and 25-year flow rates. (See BMP FC.03, Detention Pond, in Section 5-4.2.3 for pond and release structure design information.)

3-3.7 Minimum Requirement 7 – Wetlands Protection

Stormwater discharges to wetlands must maintain the wetland's hydrologic conditions (particularly hydroperiod), hydrophytic vegetation, and substrate characteristics that are necessary to maintain existing wetland functions and values.

3-3.7.1 Objective

The objective of wetlands protection is to ensure that wetlands receive the same level of protection as any other waters of the state.

3-3.7.2 Applicability

Minimum Requirement 7 applies to all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1, and where stormwater discharges into a wetland, either directly or indirectly, through a conveyance system.

No discharge is excused from the obligation to comply with state water quality standards (found in *Washington Administrative Code* [WAC] 173-201A) or state groundwater standards (found in WAC 173-200).

3-3.7.3 Guidance

Steps should be taken during design to maximize natural water storage and infiltration opportunities within the project area and outside of existing wetlands. Natural wetlands may not be used as pollution control facilities in lieu of runoff treatment BMPs.

Building stormwater runoff treatment and flow control facilities within a wetland or its natural vegetated buffer is discouraged, except for:

- Necessary conveyance systems as allowed by applicable permit(s); OR
- As allowed in wetlands approved for hydrologic modification and/or treatment in accordance with Ecology guidance. For western Washington projects, refer to *Guide Sheet 1B* in Appendix I-D of Ecology's SMMWW. For eastern Washington projects, refer to *Use of Existing Wetlands to Provide Runoff Treatment* (in Section 2.2.5, page 2-26) and *Application to Wetlands and Lakes* (in Section 2.2.6, page 2-33) in Ecology's SMMEW, and the *Eastern Washington Wetland Rating Form*: http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/biology/docs/WetlandRatingForm_EasternWA_050426.doc); OR
- Projects with approved permits from the appropriate resource agencies.

An adopted and implemented basin plan (Minimum Requirement 8), or a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) Water Cleanup Plan may be used to develop requirements for wetlands that are tailored to a specific basin.

The thresholds identified in Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) and Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) must also be applied for discharges to wetlands. In addition, a hydroperiod analysis must be performed and that analysis must show that the discharge will not adversely affect the wetland hydroperiod.

When considering constructing new wetlands or using existing wetlands for flow control or runoff treatment, or when looking for guidance on protecting wetlands from stormwater impacts, seek input from the appropriate in-house experts in the environmental, biological, wetlands, and landscape architectural disciplines. Refer to Section 2-6.1.1 regarding special wetland design considerations, Section 4-6 for additional information on wetland hydroperiod analysis, and Section 5-4.1.4 for additional information on the Constructed Stormwater Treatment Wetland (BMP RT.13).

3-3.8 Minimum Requirement 8 – Incorporating Watershed-Based/Basin Planning Into Stormwater Management

Basin/watershed plans may subject projects to different minimum requirements for erosion control; source control; runoff treatment; operation and maintenance; and alternative requirements for flow control and wetlands hydrologic control. Basin/watershed plans must evaluate and include, as necessary, retrofitting urban stormwater BMPs into existing development or redevelopment in order to achieve watershed-wide pollutant reduction and flow control goals consistent with the requirements of the federal Clean Water Act. Standards developed from basin plans cannot modify any of the above minimum requirements until the basin plan is formally adopted and implemented by the local governments within the basin, and has received approval or concurrence from Ecology.

3-3.8.1 Objective

The objective of incorporating watershed-based/basin planning into stormwater management is to promote the development of watershed-based resource plans as a means to develop and implement comprehensive water resource protection measures. The primary objective of basin planning is to reduce pollutant loads and hydrologic impacts to surface and groundwaters in order to protect water resources.

3-3.8.2 Applicabi lity

Minimum Requirement 8 applies where watershed and basin plans are in effect for all nonexempt projects that meet the thresholds described in Figure 3.1.

3-3.8.3 Gu idance

While Minimum Requirements 1 through 7 establish general standards for individual sites, they do not evaluate the overall pollution impacts and protection opportunities that could exist at a watershed scale. For a basin plan to serve as a means of modifying the minimum requirements, the following conditions must be met:

- The plan must be formally adopted by all jurisdictions with implementation responsibilities under the plan; AND
- All ordinances or regulations called for by the plan must be in effect.

Basin planning provides a mechanism by which the minimum requirements and implementing BMPs can be evaluated and refined based on an analysis of an entire watershed. Basin plans are especially well suited for developing control strategies to address impacts from future development and to correct specific problems whose sources are known or suspected. Basin plans can be effective in addressing both long-term and cumulative impacts of pollutant loads; short-term acute impacts of pollutant concentrations; and hydrologic impacts to streams, wetlands, and groundwater resources. (See Section 2-7.3 for further guidance on basin/watershed planning.) Examples of how basin planning can alter the minimum requirements of this manual appear in Appendix I-A of Ecology's SMMWW.

3-3.9 Minimum Requirement 9 – Operation and Maintenance

An operation and maintenance manual that is consistent with the guidance in Section 5-5 will be provided for all proposed stormwater facilities and BMPs. The party (or parties) responsible for such maintenance and operation must be identified, and a record of maintenance activities will be kept.

3-3.9.1 Objective

The objective of operation and maintenance is to achieve appropriate preventive maintenance and performance checks to ensure that stormwater control facilities are adequately maintained and properly operated to:

- Remove pollutants and/or control flows as designed.
- Permit the maximum use of the roadway.
- Prevent damage to the highway structure.
- Protect natural resources.
- Protect abutting property from physical damage.

3-3.9.2 Applicability

Minimum Requirement 9 applies to all projects that require stormwater control facilities or BMPs, and is accomplished programmatically via WSDOT's maintenance program.

3-3.9.3 Guidance

Inadequate maintenance is a common cause of stormwater management facility degraded performance or failure. Section 5-5 provides guidance for BMP maintenance. The WSDOT

Maintenance Manual provides further guidance on stormwater management-related operation and maintenance activities.

3-4 Stormwater Retrofit Guidance

As described in Section 1-2.3, the ultimate goal is to provide practicable stormwater treatment for runoff from existing impervious surfaces that do not have treatment, or for which treatment is substandard. As designers scope (or revise the scope of) affected projects, they will need to consider *whether now is the appropriate time to retrofit stormwater controls for the existing impervious surface*. In making this decision, the department needs to follow an approach that ensures it does not circumvent the Legislature's authority to determine where to invest financial resources. At the same time, the department's goal is to retrofit existing impervious surfaces where a significant amount of pavement is added on a project.

WSDOT has adopted a departmental budget structure with a specific category for retrofitting existing impervious surfaces in order to meet one of the requirements of WAC 173-270-060. This budget structure allows the department to include the work from one project category in another category if it does not add significant cost to the project. In accordance with this guidance, the WSDOT HQ Strategic Planning and Programming Office has established the following boundaries for adding the stormwater treatment of existing impervious surfaces into new improvement and preservation projects:

1. Mobility projects (I-1 subprogram) can always consider including the cost of retrofitting existing impervious surfaces.
2. Safety projects (I-2 subprogram) can include the retrofitting of existing impervious surfaces only if the cost to retrofit all existing impervious surfaces does not exceed an additional 20% of the cost of treating new impervious surfaces. The region may request a variance from this limit for extenuating circumstances.
3. Economic Initiatives (I-3 subprogram, *except for* Four-Lane Trunk projects) can include the retrofitting of existing impervious surfaces only if the cost to retrofit all existing impervious surfaces does not exceed an additional 20% of the cost of treating new impervious surfaces. The region may request a variance from this limit for extenuating circumstances.
4. Four-Lane Trunk projects in the I-3 subprogram can always consider including the retrofitting of existing impervious surfaces.
5. Environmental Retrofit projects (I-4 subprogram, *except for* the Stormwater Retrofit category) do not add new impervious surfaces and cannot retrofit existing impervious surfaces. The region may request a variance from this limit for extenuating circumstances.

6. For those safety and economic initiative projects that exceed the 20% limit, and where the HQ Project Control and Reporting Office and region concur, the region can submit a request for funding from the I-4 Stormwater Retrofit category. These requests will be prioritized along with the other stormwater retrofit needs already identified for funding by the Legislature.
7. Paving projects (P-1 subprogram) can only consider retrofitting existing impervious surfaces for projects involving the total replacement of existing concrete lanes (i.e., on projects that only replace the existing asphalt shoulder with concrete, retrofitting is not required).

Questions on applying the above guidance should be directed through the region's Program Management Office, with backup (if needed) to the HQ Strategic Planning and Programming Systems' Analysis and Program Development Office. Finally, budget implications and Ecology-approved basin plan status should be considered prior to including retrofit as part of a project's scope. Associated costs for providing flow control for all the runoff from new, replaced, and existing impervious areas must be recorded in the project's Hydraulic Report.

In general, most preservation projects do not add any new impervious surface and therefore the guidelines above will have minimal impact. However, if a stormwater outfall/deficiency is located within the limits of a preservation project, the region may develop a companion project proposal for the I-4 Environmental Retrofit Projects' Stormwater category, if the deficiency is considered a priority (generally considered as being in the 6-year program). These retrofit projects will be prioritized along with the other stormwater retrofit needs already identified.

CHAPTER 4

Hydrologic Analysis

Chapter 4. Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 4. Hydrologic Analysis

4-1 Introduction

This chapter presents and defines the minimum computational standards for the types of hydrologic analyses required to design the various stormwater best management practices (BMPs) described in detail in Chapters 5 and 6. It also provides an explanation of the methods to be used for the modeling of stormwater facilities and the supporting data and assumptions that will be needed to complete the design. The computational standards, methods of analysis, and necessary supporting data and assumptions for designs in western Washington are different from those in eastern Washington. As a result, Section 4-3 includes design criteria and guidance for western Washington and Section 4-4 includes design criteria and guidance for eastern Washington. The hydrologic analysis tools and methodologies presented in this chapter support the following tasks:

- Designing stormwater runoff treatment and flow control facilities
- Designing infiltration facilities
- Closed Depression Analysis
- Analyzing wetland hydroperiod effects

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) *Hydraulics Manual* presents the minimum computational standards, methods of analysis, and necessary supporting data and assumptions for analysis and design of the following:

- Culverts and other fish passage structures
- Open channel flow
- Storm sewer design
- Drainage from highway pavement (inlet spacing, and curb and gutter)
- Hydraulic issues associated with bridge structure design

This manual makes numerous references to the *Hydraulics Manual*, where additional design guidance can be found.

4-2 Project Considerations

Prior to conducting any detailed stormwater runoff calculations, the overall relationship between the proposed project site and the runoff it will create must be considered. This section provides guidance regarding what parameters should be reviewed to adequately evaluate the project.

The general hydrologic characteristics of the project site dictate the amount of runoff that will occur and where stormwater facilities can be placed. Several sources of information will be useful in determining the information necessary for preliminary runoff analyses. Drainage patterns and contributing areas can be determined by consulting topographic contour maps generated from preliminary surveys of the area for the proposed project or by using contour maps from a previous project in the same area. For some projects, adequate information on soil characteristics can be found in soils surveys published by the Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS).

4-2.1 Estimating Stormwater Treatment Areas

Estimates of the area that will be required for stormwater treatment must be developed when the project layout is first being determined. These estimates of stormwater BMP sizes and areas may dictate changes to the roadway or other infrastructure design, and support decisions to purchase additional right-of-way for the project. The following information is required in order to successfully estimate the approximate area required for stormwater treatment and flow control facilities:

- The basic requirements for the stormwater facility design
- The general hydrologic characteristics of the project site
- The basic footprint of the proposed roadway or other infrastructure improvement project

4-2.2 Local and State Requirements

In most cases, the basic requirements for stormwater facilities described in this manual will be adequate to meet other state agency and local jurisdiction requirements. Section 1-1.5 explains to what extent a local jurisdiction's stormwater requirements apply to WSDOT projects. The first part of any hydrologic analysis involves research to determine if the project is located in an area where additional requirements prevail. Typically, this can be accomplished by consulting with WSDOT region hydraulics or environmental staff. When stricter standards do apply, they are usually related to unique runoff treatment concerns: a need for flow control under more extreme storm conditions than is required by this manual, or a need for lower site discharge rates than are required by this manual. Either case is easily applied to the methods of analysis outlined in this chapter.

4-2.3 Soils

Quite often, additional sources of information are needed to adequately characterize on-site soils, particularly within existing highway rights-of-way and in other urban areas. The WSDOT Materials Laboratory can provide detailed information on soils and shallow groundwater characteristics in conjunction with geotechnical field data collection efforts. Typically, the Lab must be informed of the need for gathering additional data for drainage analysis purposes early in the project design phase. This is very important for determining infiltration rates.

4-2.4 Determining Existing Conditions

Information on existing drainage facilities and conveyance system locations can be found in Hydraulic Reports from previous projects in the same vicinity, or in as-built plans for the existing roadway. The local jurisdiction may have mapping and/or as-built information for storm drainage facilities near the WSDOT right-of-way, and may know of other projects in the vicinity that documented drainage conditions. A site visit will help determine the basic hydrological characteristics of the proposed project site. Observations made during a field visit will serve to verify the information obtained through research and will show where that information may have been deficient. In nearly every instance, the information gained by visiting the site prior to designing the stormwater facilities will benefit the ensuing design effort.

4-2.5 Mapping Threshold Discharge Areas

The final part of determining the site's hydrologic characteristics is mapping the threshold discharge areas (TDAs). A TDA is defined as an on-site area draining to a single natural or manmade discharge location or multiple natural or manmade discharge locations that combine within one-quarter mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flowpath). A TDA delineation begins at the first discharge location, that exits WSDOT right-of-way and is based on preproject conditions. The purpose of this definition is to provide more flexibility in meeting the minimum requirements, while still providing sufficient protection for the receiving water bodies. All TDAs must be verified in the field.

To map a TDA, the designer must have an understanding of drainage basin delineation. A drainage basin includes all of the area that will contribute runoff to the point of interest. For example, in Figure 4-1, the designer must quantify off-site flow that discharges to the ditch, which is the point of interest. To determine the off-site area of land that contributes runoff to the ditch, topographic contours are needed. Where a contour forms a chevron (or the letter "V") pointing in the direction of increasing elevation, that contour depicts a valley. Where the chevron points in the direction of decreasing elevation, that contour depicts a ridge. Ridges are the limits of a drainage basin, since precipitation falling on a ridge or peak will flow either to or away from the point of interest. Connecting the ridges and peaks on the contour map will form the boundary of the drainage basin.

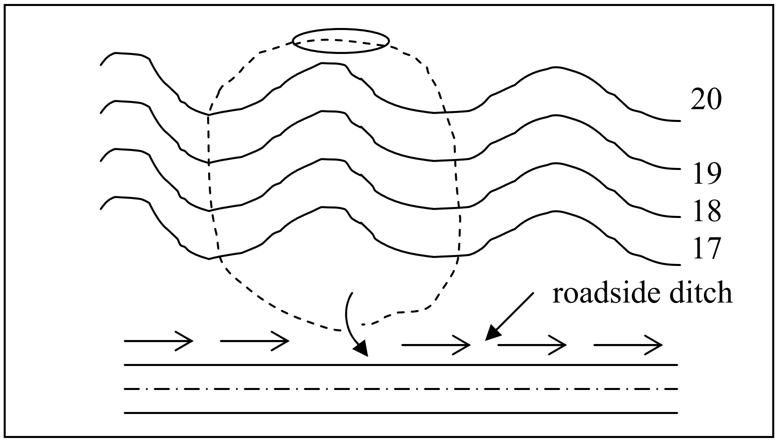


Figure 4-1. TDA mapping example.

In pavement drainage, artificial ridges and peaks are formed by cross slopes and vertical curves. In Figures 4-2a, 4-2b, and 4-3, each drainage basin is delineated by the crown of the roadway to the top of the ditch backslope and between each vertical curve crest. If the discharges from both culverts join within one-quarter mile downstream from the right-of-way, all four drainage basins would combine to make one TDA, as indicated in Figure 4-2a. If the discharges remain separate for at least one-quarter mile downstream of the project site right-of-way, drainage basins A1 and A2 combine to make one TDA, and drainage basins A3 and A4 combine to make a second TDA. Figure 4-2b and Step 3 below illustrate this situation, where the flow paths do not combine within one-quarter mile and result in two separate TDAs. The new, replaced, and existing impervious areas must be estimated for each TDA. Minimum requirement thresholds are applied to each TDA. (See Chapter 3 for minimum requirement applicability.)

An example of how to determine whether the discharges join within one-quarter mile is provided below with the use of Figures 4-2a and 4-2b.

Step 1 Measure one-quarter mile along Flowpath A2.

Step 2 Measure one-quarter mile along Flowpath A4. If the two flowpaths join within the shortest measured one-quarter mile flowpath (Flowpath A2), the areas A1, A2, A3, and A4 are considered one TDA, as shown in Figure 4-2a.

An additional step is necessary if there is another flowpath in close proximity to the first discharge location. (See Figure 4-2b).

Step 3 Assuming areas A1, A2, A3, and A4 are within one TDA, measure one-quarter mile along Flowpath A6. If Flowpath A2 (most upstream flowpath) and Flowpath A6 join within the shortest measured one-quarter mile flowpath, all areas are considered one TDA. If the flowpaths do not combine within the shortest measured one-quarter mile flowpath, then the last discharge location is the beginning of a new TDA delineation and becomes the first discharge location for that downstream TDA. Figure 4-2b shows that Flowpath A2 and Flowpath A6 do not combine within the one-quarter mile measured along the shortest flowpath, so areas A1, A2, A3, and A4 combine to form one TDA, while areas A5 and A6 combine to form a separate TDA.

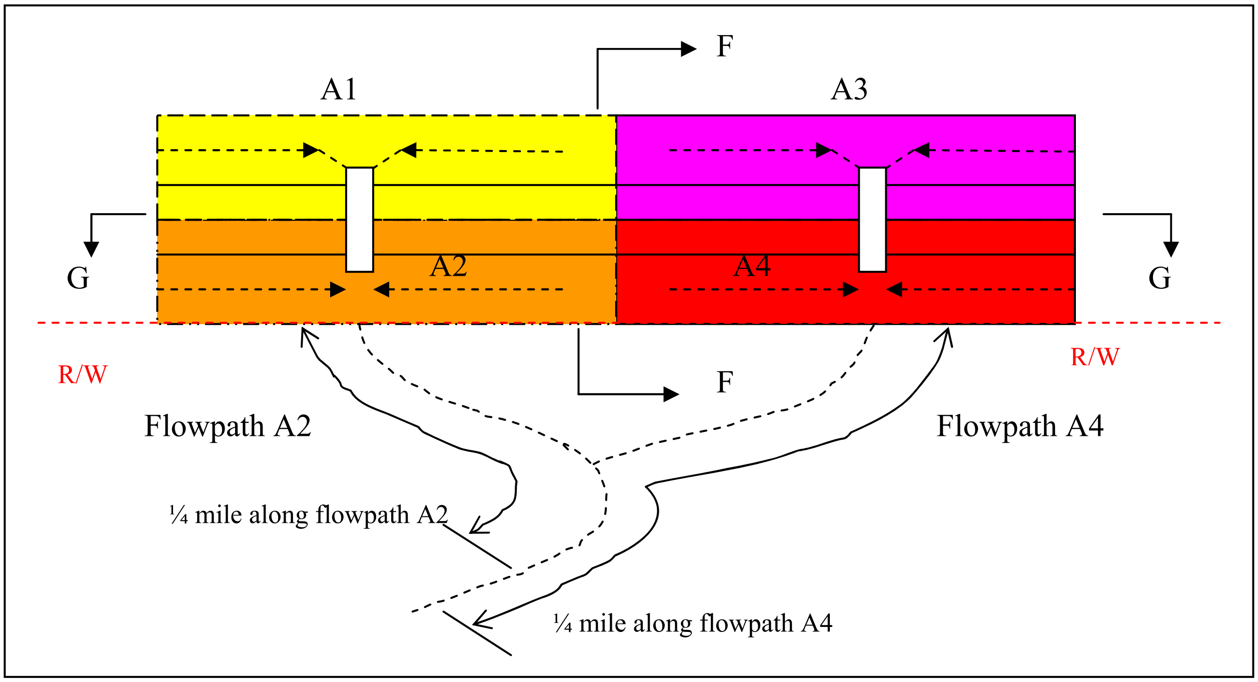


Figure 4-2a. Threshold discharge areas (plan – not to scale).

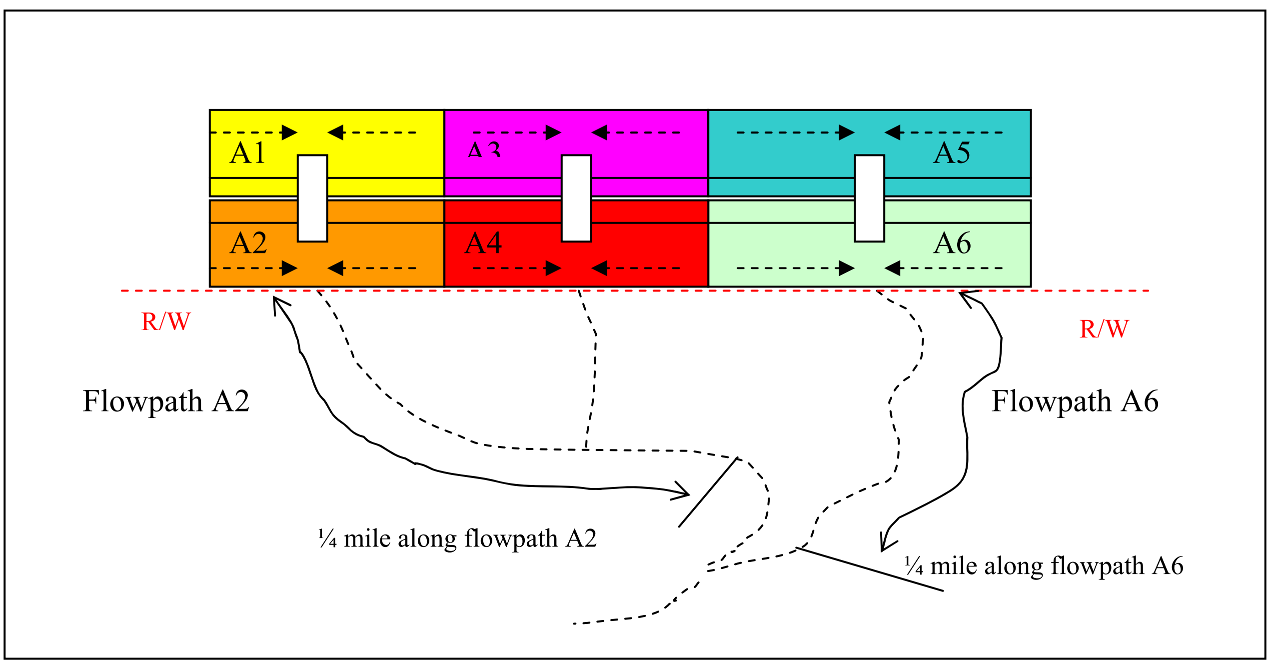


Figure 4-2b. Threshold discharge areas (plan – not to scale).

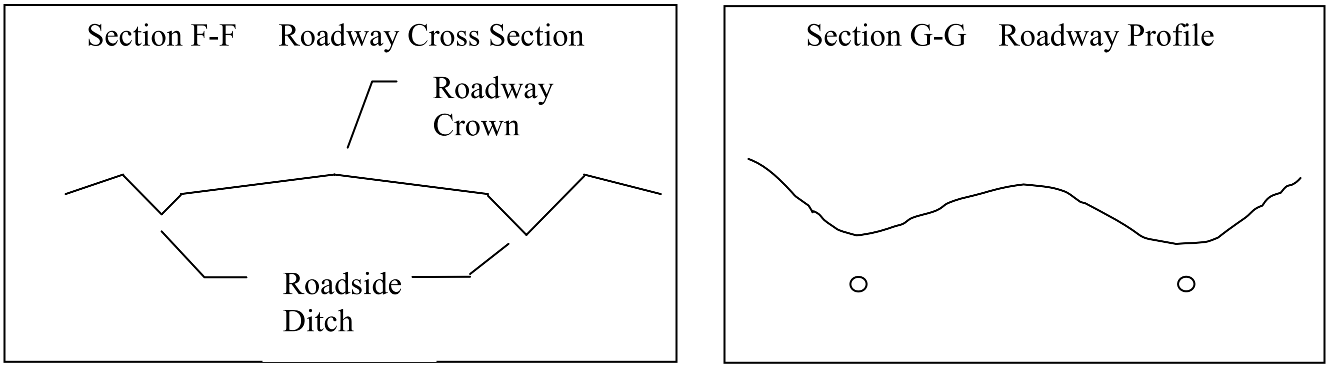


Figure 4-3. Threshold discharge areas (section and profile).

The concept of *net-new impervious surface area* arises where a project that adds impervious surface area also offers opportunities to remove impervious surfaces and provide new pervious (i.e., permeable) surfaces. To provide incentive for the removal of unneeded impervious surface, net-new impervious surface can be used to determine the minimum requirement for flow control only. This is allowable under certain conditions. For a project to use the concept of net-new impervious surface, the following criteria must be met:

- Existing impervious areas that are removed must follow the guidance on Reversion of Existing Impervious Surface Areas found in Section 4-3.6.1.
- The new pervious area must be planted with native vegetation (primarily native coniferous species in western Washington).
- The new pervious area must be designated as a stormwater management area, whether or not it receives runoff from adjacent areas. It must be managed to produce a mature forest in western Washington.
- The new pervious area must be permanently protected from development. If the area is outside state right-of-way, it must be protected with a conservation easement or some other legal covenant to ensure that it remains in native vegetation.
- New impervious surfaces that are exempt from flow control requirements by virtue of using the net-new impervious surface approach need to be added to the I-4 list as an environmental retrofit project.

If there is opportunity within any threshold discharge area to rehabilitate impervious area by converting it to pervious area, and if it is feasible to do so, the impervious area should be converted, and techniques for flow control should be applied as described in Section 4-3.6.1.

4-2.6 Conclusions

Once the basic stormwater requirements are understood and the general hydrologic characteristics of the site are known, the size of the area necessary for stormwater facilities can be estimated. This is done by examining the proposed project layout and determining the most suitable locations to place stormwater management facilities. With one or more such locations identified, the computation methods described later in this chapter can be applied using site data, and an estimate of the required stormwater facility area(s) can be calculated. If this preliminary facility sizing is done early enough in the project design schedule, slight alterations can be made to the project alignment/footprint, and adequate right-of-way can be purchased without causing undue cost or delay to the project. A final design of the stormwater facilities will have to be performed when the project layout is finalized.

The locations of new stormwater outfalls from WSDOT right-of-way should be provided to local agencies and added to WSDOT's outfall inventory to facilitate compliance with NPDES and Highway Runoff Rule requirements, *Washington Administrative Code* (WAC) 173-270 (🖰 http://www.leg.wa.gov/wac/index.cfm?fuseaction=chapterdigest&chapter=173-270). For details on how to relay the outfall inventory information, contact a WSDOT region hydraulics and/or water quality section representative.

Flow charts are presented in Figures 4-4 and 4-5 to help the designer navigate through the requirements of Chapter 4 and hydrologic analyses for typical projects.

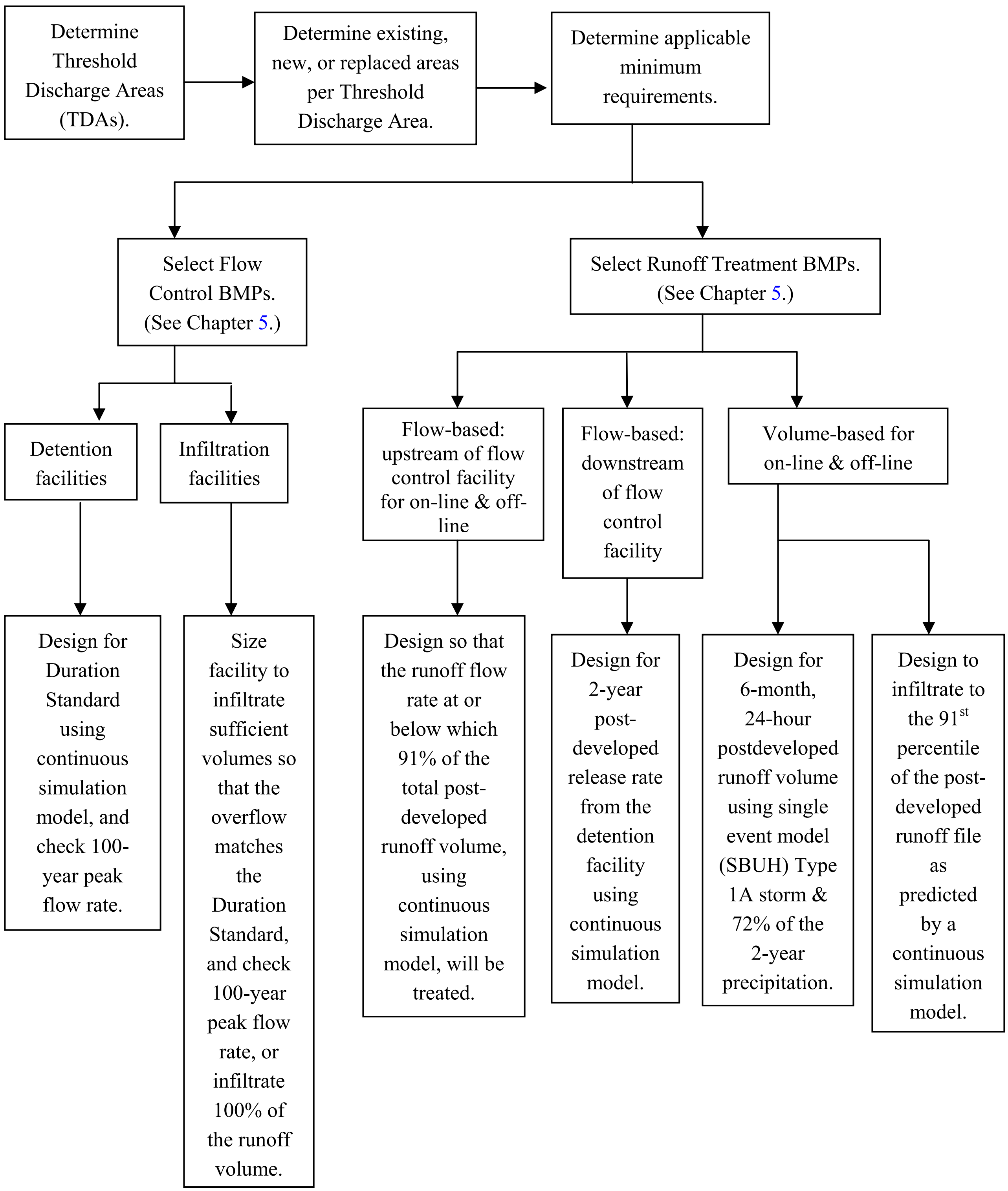


Figure 4-4. Hydrologic analysis flowchart for western Washington.

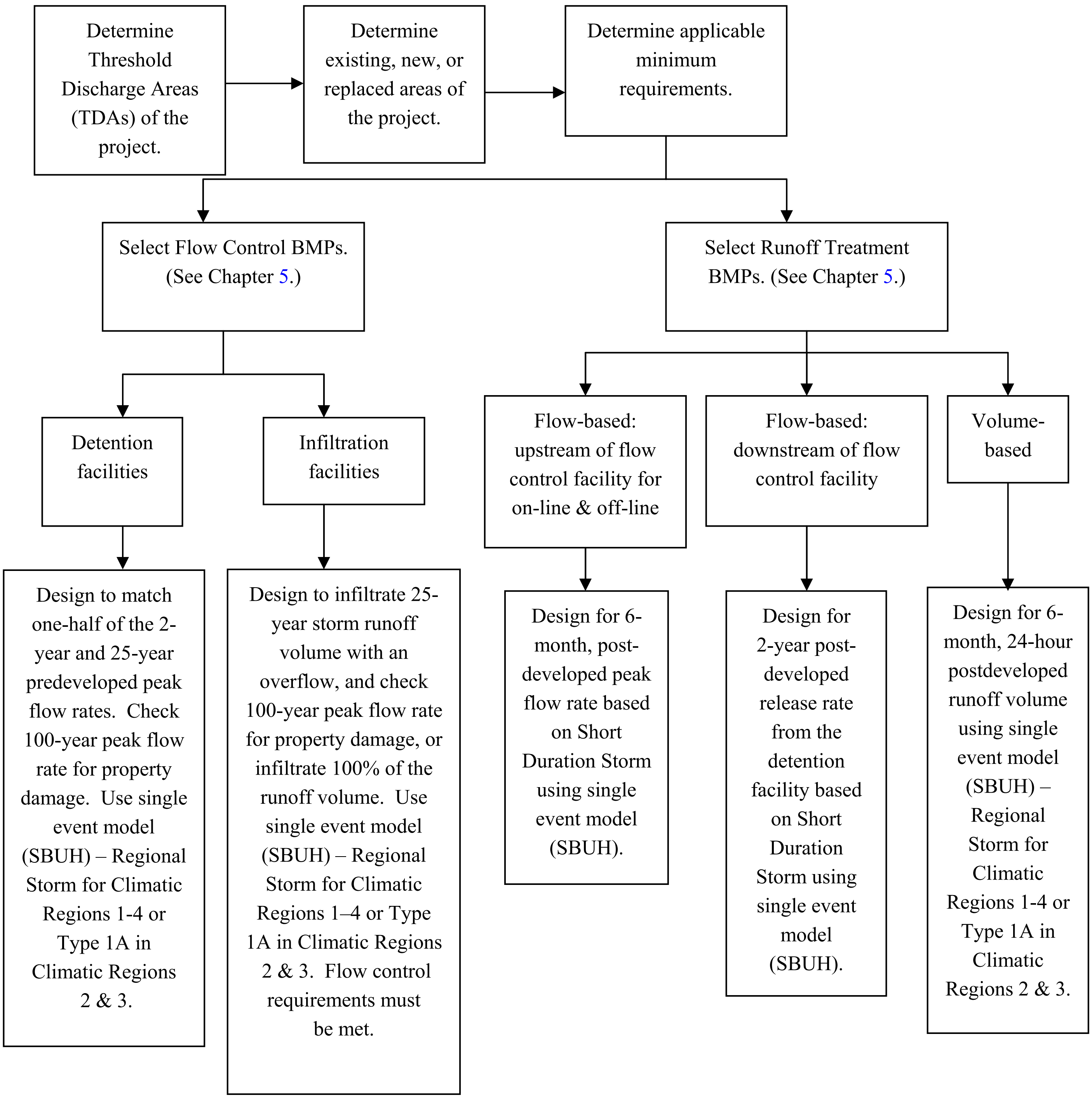


Figure 4-5. Hydrologic analysis flowchart for eastern Washington.

4-3 Western Washington Design Criteria

4-3.1 Runoff Treatment Flow-Based and Volume-Based BMPs

4-3.1.1 Flo w-Based Runoff Treatment

An approved continuous simulation hydrologic model based on the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's (U.S. EPA's) Hydrologic Simulation Program – Fortran (HSPF) is used when designing runoff treatment BMPs based on flow rate, in accordance with WSDOT Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5). WSDOT prefers that the program **MGSFlood** be used for designing flow-based runoff treatment BMPs in WSDOT right-of-way. The design flow rate for these types of facilities is dependent on whether the treatment facility is located upstream or downstream of a flow control facility, and whether it is an *on-line* or *off-line* facility (see Figure 4-6).

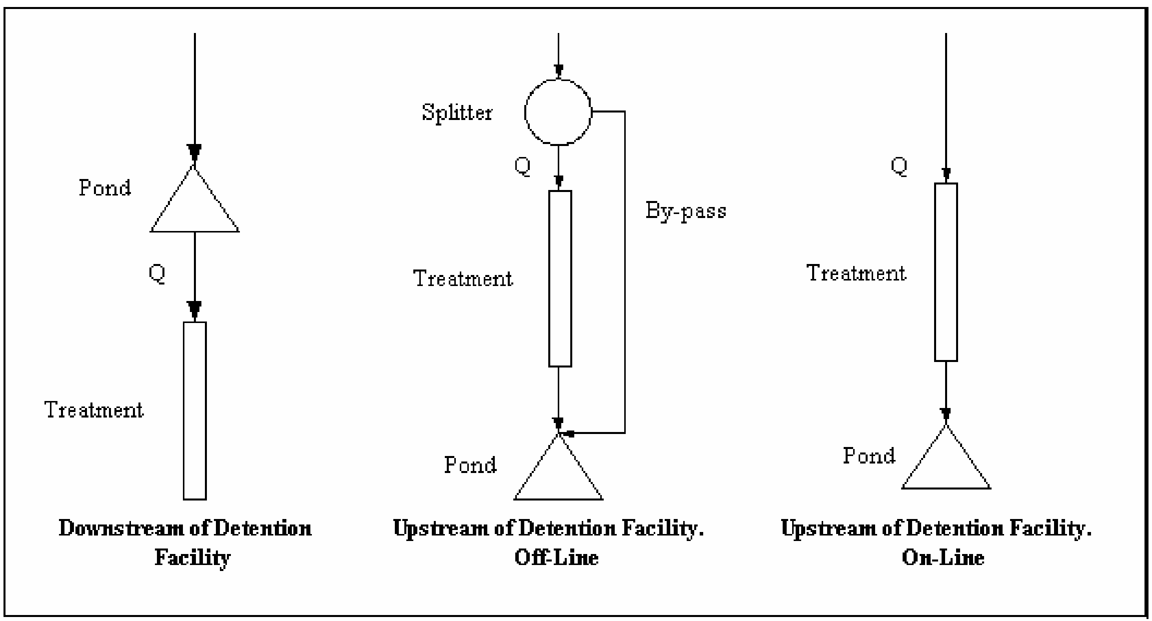


Figure 4-6. Typical on-line and off-line facility configurations.

Downstream of Flow Control Facilities

If the runoff treatment facility is located downstream of a stormwater flow control facility, the full 2-year recurrence interval release rate from the flow control facility, as estimated by an approved continuous simulation model**,** is used to design the treatment facility.

Upstream of Flow Control Facilities, Off-Line

The design flow rate for an off-line treatment facility located upstream of a flow control facility is the flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume for the developed TDA will be treated, based on a 15-minute time step, as estimated by an approved continuous simulation model (see Figure 4-7). A high-flow bypass (flow splitter) is used to route the incremental flow in excess of the treatment design flow rate around the treatment facility. (See Section 5-4.3, for more details on flow splitters.) It is assumed that flows from the bypass enter the conveyance system downstream of the treatment facility, but upstream of the flow control facility. The bold horizontal line on Figure 4-7 is an example that shows the 91% runoff volume flow rate. All flows below that line will be treated, and the incremental portion of flow above that line will bypass the runoff treatment facility.

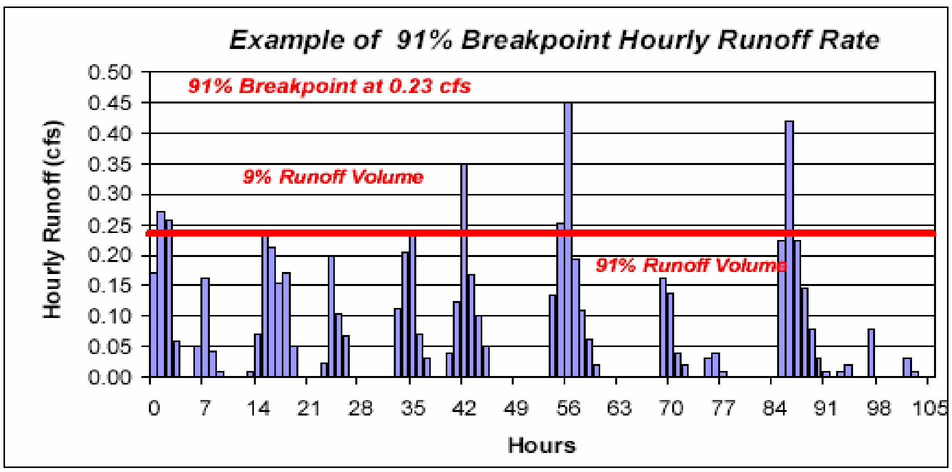


Figure 4-7. Example showing calculation of runoff treatment discharge for off-line treatment facilities (computed as 0.23cfs).

Upstream of Flow Control Facilities, On-Line

On-line runoff treatment facilities do not include a high-flow bypass for flows in excess of the runoff treatment design flow rate, and all runoff is routed through the facility. The design flow rate for these types of on-line treatment facilities is the flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume occurs, based on a 15-minute time step, as estimated by an approved continuous simulation model, to be in compliance with Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5). MGSFlood will determine the hourly runoff treatment design flow rate as the rate corresponding to the runoff volume that is greater than or equal to 91% of the hourly runoff volume entering the treatment facility. The simulation model automatically generates 15-minute time step flows based on hourly flows. Because on-line treatment facilities receive greater volumes of inflow than off-line facilities, the design flow rate corresponding to the 91% breakpoint is higher than for off-line facilities. The higher design flow rate will result in a slightly larger treatment facility. Figure 4-8 indicates that the facility will receive all the flow, but will be sized for only 91% runoff volume flow rates, minus the red bars in its calculations for the developed TDA.

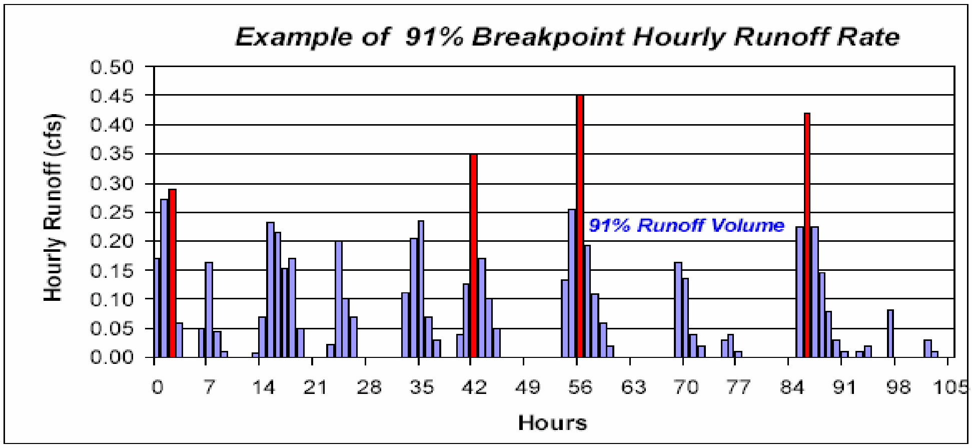


Figure 4-8. Example showing calculation of runoff treatment discharge for on-line treatment facilities (computed as 0.28cfs).

4-3.1.2 Vol ume-Based Runoff Treatment

For the purpose of designing runoff treatment BMPs based on volume (wetpool and infiltration treatment facilities), in accordance with Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5), the following two methods can be used to derive the storage volume:

- Wetpool and Infiltration: An approved continuous simulation hydrologic model based on the U.S. EPA's HSPF can be used. WSDOT prefers that the program MGSFlood be used. The required storage volume is the 91st percentile, 24-hour runoff volume based on the long-term runoff record generated in the TDA of concern as predicted based on a 1-hour time step.
- Wetpool: The Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph (SBUH) method, which is based on NRCS curve number equations, can be used to determine the runoff treatment design storm runoff volume. This is the volume of runoff predicted from the 6-month, 24-hour recurrence interval storm. This design storm is approximated as 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour design storm. WSDOT prefers that the SBUH-based program **StormShed** be used for this alternative method to size volume-based runoff treatment BMPs. The size of the wetpool storage volume is the same whether located upstream or downstream of a flow control facility, or whether it is coupled with the flow control facility (e.g., a combination wet/detention facility).

If runoff from the new impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces is not separated from runoff from other surfaces on the project site, and/or is combined with run-on from areas outside the right-of-way, volume-based runoff treatment facilities must be sized based on runoff from the entire drainage area. This is because runoff treatment effectiveness can be greatly reduced if inflows to the facility are greater than the design flows that the facility was designed to handle. A high-flow bypass (flow splitter) is used to route the incremental flow in excess of the treatment design runoff volume around the treatment facility. (See Section 5-4.3 for more details on flow splitters.) Infiltration facilities must infiltrate 91% of the total runoff volume from the infiltration basin within 36 hours. Under this premise, the storm/runoff ends 12 hours after the runoff period midpoint and combines with the 24-hour drain criteria. Therefore, the actual drawdown time is 36 hours (see "Pond Design Using Routing Table" in Section 4-3.6.1, Continuous Simulation Model).

Table 4-1 summarizes the flow rates and volumes needed for sizing runoff treatment facilities for various situations.

Table 4-1. Criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities in western Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Flow-based: upstream of flow control facility (on- & off-line)	Size treatment facility so that 91% of the annual average runoff will receive treatment at or below the design loading criteria, under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA. If the flow rate is split upstream of the treatment facility, use the off-line flow rates.	Approved continuous simulation model using 15-minute time steps
Flow-based: downstream of flow control facility	Size treatment facility using the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility, under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Approved continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps
Volume-based (on- & off-line)	*Wetpool*: Size treatment facility using the runoff volume predicted for the 6-month, 24-hour design storm under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA. This design storm is approximated as 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour design storm or 91st percentile, 24-hour runoff volume. AND *Wetpool and other volume-based (infiltration or filtration):* Size the facility to treat 91% of the estimated historic runoff file for the post-developed conditions.	Single event model (SBUH*) OR Approved continuous simulation model with 1-hour time steps

* SBUH method is based on NRCS curve number equations.

4-3.2 Flow Control Volume and Flow Duration-Based BMPs

An approved continuous simulation hydrologic model, based on HSPF, is used for designing flow control BMPs, in accordance with Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6). WSDOT prefers that the program MGSFlood be used for designing flow control BMPs in WSDOT right-of-way. Stormwater discharges must match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow, up to the full 50-year peak flow. The 100-year peak flow must also be checked for flood control and prevention of property damage using the continuous simulation model.

Infiltration facilities for flow control must be based on postdeveloped runoff volumes, and must be designed to infiltrate the entire volume of the 50-year recurrence interval flow and provide an overflow, or infiltrate 100% of the runoff volume with no overflow. Table 4-2 summarizes the volumes needed for sizing flow control facilities for various situations.

Table 4-2. Criteria for sizing flow control facilities in western Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Detention/combination treatment and detention facilities	Provide storage volume required to match the duration of predeveloped peak flows from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year flow using a flow restrictor (e.g., orifice, weir), and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage.	Continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps
Infiltration facilities	Size facility to infiltrate sufficient volumes so that the overflow matches the Duration Standard, or infiltrate 100% of the runoff volume and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage.	Continuous simulation model using 1-hour time steps

4-3.3 Temporary Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control

Conveyance channels on construction sites should be designed to be stable for the peak flow rate of at least a 2-year storm predicted by MGSFlood. The surface area for sediment traps and ponds is determined by using the same flow rate. (See Chapter 6 for Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control BMPs.) The designer should consult the Headquarters (HQ) Environmental Services Office or region hydraulics staff to determine if the downstream condition warrants a higher level of protection than the 2-year event. The 10-year event should be used if the project is expected to be under construction for several seasons.

4-3.4 Exemptions for Flow Control

WSDOT has developed a standardized process to help the designer produce an acceptable hydraulic analysis for determining flow control exemptions. The process helps the designer determine how extensive an analysis needs to be for a particular project. (See Chapter 3 for a process that has been established for lakes and some river systems.) Minimum Requirement 6 has further details on exemptions, flow dispersion, and flow control thresholds (see Section 3-3.6).

4-3.5 Hydrologic Analysis Methods for Designing BMPs in Western Washington: HSPF versus SBUH

This section provides a brief description and in-depth discussion of the methodologies used for calculating stormwater runoff from a project site. It includes a discussion on estimating stormwater runoff with continuous simulation models versus single event models such as SBUH.

The HSPF model is a U.S. EPA program for simulation of watershed hydrology and water quality for both conventional and toxic organic pollutants. The HSPF model uses information such as the time history of rainfall, temperature, and solar radiation, and land surface characteristics such as land use patterns and land management practices to simulate the hydrologic processes that occur in a watershed. The result of this simulation is a time history of the quantity and quality of runoff from an urban, forested, or agricultural watershed. Flow rate and sediment load, as well as nutrient and pesticide concentrations, can be predicted.

Unlike intensity-duration models, which are sensitive to the peak rainfall intensity, the SBUH method models runoff by analyzing a given time period of rainfall to generate a hydrograph that is sensitive to variations in the rainfall preceding and following the peak. It was specifically developed to model runoff from urbanized areas that have mostly impervious land usage.

4-3.5.1 Hydrologic Analysis for Runoff Treatment

A calibrated, approved continuous simulation hydrologic model based on HSPF is used when designing a flow rate-based runoff treatment BMP. This is because single event models, such as SBUH, tend to underestimate the time of concentration and the peak flow rate occurs too early. This affects treatment BMPs that are designed to achieve a specified flow residence time (the resultant designs are more conservative). Calculation of the flow residence time is sensitive to the shape of the inflow hydrograph. The inflow hydrograph is also of fundamental importance when designing an infiltration or filtration BMP, as these BMPs are sized based on a routing of the inflow hydrograph through the BMP.

When designing a volume-based runoff treatment BMP, a calibrated, approved continuous simulation hydrologic model based on HSPF may be used. Note: For BMPs that maintain "permanent pools" (e.g., wet ponds), none of the above concerns apply, since the permanent pool volume is adequately predicted by SBUH.

4-3.5.2 Hydrologic Analysis for Flow Control

Because of single event hydrologic model limitations, an approved continuous simulation model, rather than a single event model such as SBUH, should be used to design flow control BMPs for WSDOT projects in western Washington. While SBUH may give acceptable estimates of total runoff volumes, it tends to overestimate peak flow rates from pervious areas, because it cannot adequately model subsurface flow (which is a dominant flow regime for predevelopment conditions in western Washington basins). One reason SBUH overestimates the peak flow rate for a pervious area is that the actual time of concentration is typically greater than what is assumed. Better flow estimates could be made if a longer time of concentration was used. This would change both the peak flow rate (i.e., it would be lower) and the shape of the hydrograph (i.e., peak occurs somewhat later) and the hydrograph would better reflect actual predeveloped conditions.

Another reason that SBUH overestimates the peak rates of runoff from undeveloped land is the curve numbers (CN) presented for single event modeling in the 1995 WSDOT *Highway Runoff Manual*. These curve numbers were developed by the U.S. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), formerly the Soil Conservation Service (SCS), and published as the Western Washington Supplemental Curve Numbers. These CN values are typically higher than the standard CN values published in NRCS Technical Release 55 (1986). In 1995, the NRCS recalled the use of the western Washington CNs for floodplain management and found that the standard CNs better describe the hydrologic conditions for rainfall events in western Washington. However, based on runoff comparisons with the King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS), which is a continuous simulation model, better estimates of runoff are obtained when using the western Washington CNs for developed pervious areas such as parks, lawns, and other landscaped areas. Consequently, the CNs in this manual are changed to those in NRCS Technical Release 55, except for the open spaces category for the developed areas, which include lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, and landscaped areas. For these areas, the western Washington CNs are used. (These changes are intended to provide better runoff estimates using the SBUH method.) For CN values, see Appendix 4B.

When the SBUH is used to estimate runoff rates in a 24-hour storm event, it is not capable of simulating soil moisture characteristics that have a significant impact on generation of runoff. Sizing of stormwater BMPs based on 24-hour storms does not reflect the effects of longer-term storms in western Washington. The use of a longer-term (e.g., 3- or 7-day) storm is perhaps better suited for western Washington, and could better capture the hydrologic effect of back-to-back storm events.

HSPF is a continuous simulation model capable of simulating a wider range of hydrologic responses than the single event models like SBUH. For use in western Washington, WSDOT has developed the continuous simulation hydrologic model MGSFlood, based on HSPF. MGSFlood uses multiyear inputs of hourly precipitation and evaporation to compute a multiyear timeseries of runoff from the site. Use of precipitation input that is representative of the site under consideration is critical for the accurate computation of runoff and the design of stormwater facilities. Precipitation and evaporation timeseries have been assembled for most areas of western Washington and are stored in a database file accessed by the program.

Default HSPF model parameters that define rainfall interception, infiltration, and movement of moisture through the soil are based on work by the USGS and King County and have been included in MGSFlood. Pervious areas have been grouped into three land cover categories: forest, pasture, and lawn; and three soil/geologic categories: till, outwash, and saturated/wetland soil—for a total of seven land cover/soil type combinations (as shown in Table 4-3). The combinations of soil type and land cover are called pervious land segments, or PERLNDS, in HSPF. Default runoff parameters for each PERLND are loaded automatically by the program for each project and should not be changed. If the user changes these values, the changed values are noted in the project documentation report. If a basin or watershed has been calibrated, those PERLNDS values can be used, since they are site-specific.

Table 4-3. Pervious land cover/soil type combinations used with HSPF model parameters.

Pervious Land Cover/Soil Type Combinations
1. Till/Forest
2. Till/Pasture
3. Till/Lawn
4. Outwash/Forest
5. Outwash/Pasture
6. Outwash/Lawn
7. Saturated Soil/All Cover Groups

4-3.6 Hydrologic Analysis Methods for Flow Control and Runoff Treatment Facility Design

This section presents a detailed discussion of the parameters necessary to design a stormwater flow control facility using an approved continuous simulation model.

4-3.6.1 Continuous Simulation Method

WSDOT's continuous simulation hydrologic model MGSFlood (see Section 4-3.5.2) uses the HSPF routines for computing runoff from rainfall on pervious and impervious land areas. Specifically, the program is intended to size stormwater detention and infiltration ponds, as well as calculate runoff treatment flow rates and volumes, to meet the requirements of the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SMMWW). It should not be used for conveyance design unless the conveyance system is downstream of a stormwater pond. (See Appendix 4A for a web link to a detailed example of this modeling approach, and for information on how to obtain a copy of the public domain program.)

MGSFlood does not include routines for simulating the accumulation and melt of snow, and its use should be limited to lowland areas where snowmelt is typically not a major contributor to floods or to the annual runoff volume. In general, these conditions correspond to an elevation below approximately 1500 feet. MGSFlood can be used to model TDAs up to 320 acres (about one-half square mile). If a TDA falls outside the modeling guidance above, contact region or HQ hydraulics staff for assistance.

Several factors must be considered in the design of a stormwater flow control facility. Based on the proposed project improvements, watershed and TDA can be determined, and precipitation and runoff parameters can be applied to them. The continuous simulation model uses this information to simulate the hydrologic conditions at the site and estimate runoff. The flow control facility is then sized to detain the runoff in a way that closely mimics the runoff from the predeveloped site conditions. The designer must then verify that the flow control performance is in accordance with Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6). Key elements of continuous simulation modeling are presented below.

Precipitation Input

Two methods of transposing precipitation timeseries are available in the continuous simulation model: Extended Precipitation Timeseries Selection and Precipitation Station Selection.

Extended Precipitation Timeseries Selection

Extended Precipitation Timeseries uses a family of prescaled precipitation and evaporation timeseries. These timeseries were developed by combining and scaling precipitation records from widely separated stations, resulting in record lengths in excess of 100 years. Extended hourly precipitation and evaporation timeseries have been developed using this method for most of the lowland areas of western Washington where WSDOT projects are constructed. These timeseries should be used for stormwater facility design for project areas with a mean annual precipitation ranging from 24 to 60 inches and located in the region shown in Figure 4-9.

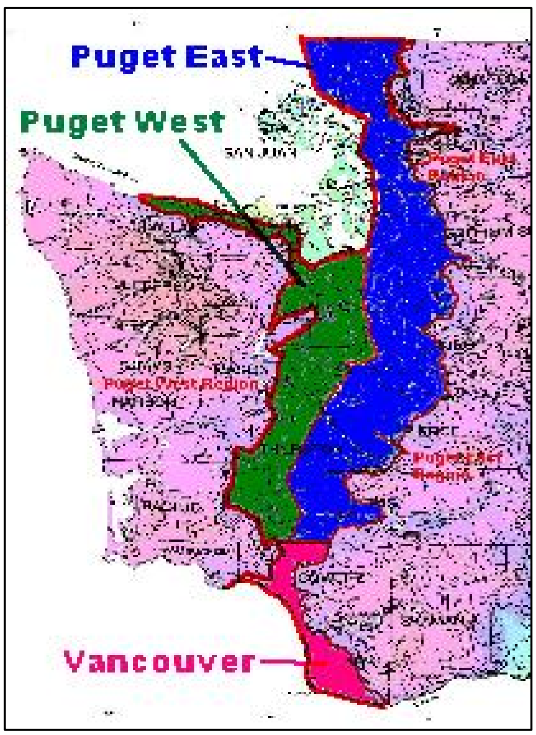


Figure 4-9. Extended precipitation timeseries regions.

Precipitation Station Selection

For project sites located outside the extended timeseries region, a second precipitation scaling method is used. A source gage is selected and a single scaling factor is applied to transpose the hourly record from the source gage to the site of interest (target site). The current approach for single factor scaling, as recommended in Ecology's SMMWW, is to compute the scaling factor as the ratio of the 25-year, 24-hour precipitation for the target and source sites. Contact region or HQ hydraulics staff if assistance is needed in selecting the appropriate gage. Updating areas with the extended precipitation timeseries will be done eventually for all of western Washington, based on available funding.

Watershed and Drainage TDA Characteristics

To facilitate rainfall-runoff modeling, project area drainage must be defined in terms of TDAs. Land cover and soil type can vary within a TDA; the continuous simulation model simulates the rainfall-runoff for each land cover/soil type combination separately. Nodes can be used to collect runoff from the tributary area for a given TDA and from the nodes of upstream TDAs. There is no attenuation of flow from TDA to TDA, as the hydrographs from the TDA are translated directly to the receiving node without hydraulic routing.

The hydroperiod of existing wetlands within a TDA should be evaluated to determine if they are likely to be impacted by project runoff. This will make a difference when modeling for flow control. Please contact region or HQ hydraulics staff for additional guidance.

Predevelopment Land Cover

The first consideration when modeling project site runoff for flow control BMP sizing is the amount of pervious cover versus impervious surface in the overall basin. The hydrologic analysis for flow control to protect a receiving water is based on mitigating floods and erosion. It is relevant for projects where (1) no flow control exemptions exist, (2) no approved basin plans exist that address hydrologic modeling input parameters for stormwater system design, (3) the site cannot reliably infiltrate all its runoff, or (4) the existing site condition is not forested. In these cases, use the existing project area land cover condition as the predeveloped condition.[1] If a project will revert or replace any of the existing impervious surface back to a pervious condition, if a project is proposing to retrofit existing impervious surface, or if a project proposes to change the surface from gravel to BST, ACP, or PCCP, that portion of existing impervious surface can be modeled as grass or that which reflects the surrounding project conditions. Contact the region's Hydraulics Office for assistance and refer to the section below (Reversion of Existing Impervious Surface Areas) for additional procedures.

Reversion of Existing Impervious Surface Areas

Opportunities may emerge to remove an existing impervious surface due to roadway realignment, roadway abandonment, or other project condition rendering the existing impervious surface obsolete. Under these circumstances, reverting an impervious surface to a pervious

[1] The assumption is that the existing ratio of impervious surface area overwhelms any geomorphic benefit provided by applying a more stringent flow standard.

surface may present an opportunity to improve the hydrological functions of an area, thereby providing a proportional reduction in the amount of runoff generated.

The following *two-step approach* must be followed to analyze reversion of existing impervious surface areas in lieu of conventional surface water flow control. Only one of these two steps can be applied, and they **cannot** be combined if a flow control facility is required.

Step 1

The first step involves evaluating the potential for stormwater impacts based on the concept and application of "net-new impervious surface." Applying the net-new impervious surface concept requires removing existing impervious surface, incorporating soil amendments into the subsurface layers, and revegetating the area with evergreen trees (unless the predeveloped condition was prairie, as may be the case in some parts of eastern Washington). In this case, the net-new impervious surface concept is applied at the Threshold Discharge Area (TDA) level when determining if triggers for flow control (Minimum Requirement 6) have been exceeded, as specified in Section 3-3.6, and then only if the following criteria can be met:

- Existing impervious areas removed must be replaced with soils meeting the soil quality and depth requirements of the soil amendments guidance in Chapter 5.
- The new pervious area must be planted with native vegetation including evergreen trees. For further guidance, see the *Roadside Classification Plan* and the *Roadside Manual*.
- The new pervious area must be designated as a stormwater management area in the stormwater database, (see Chapter 2) whether or not it receives runoff from adjacent areas.
- The new pervious area must be permanently protected from development. If the area is sited off of state right-of-way, it must be protected with a conservation easement or some other legal covenant that causes it to remain in native vegetation.
- The outfall to which the new impervious surfaces (that are not provided with flow control as a result of being exempted by using a net approach) drain needs to be entered into the stormwater database, (see Chapter 2) as a deficiency.

Step 2

If it is concluded that triggers for that particular TDA have been exceeded and any of the above criteria cannot be fully implemented (i.e., only low-lying native vegetation can be planted due to clear-zone restrictions), then application of the net-new impervious surface concept is not applicable and the reversion area must be evaluated strictly as a land use modification when modeling for flow control. In this case, if it is feasible and there is an opportunity within any TDA to rehabilitate an impervious area to a pervious area, it should be done, and techniques for flow control (as explained in Modeling Best Management Practices) should be applied.

Separation of On-Site and Off-Site Flow

The following guidance applies primarily to meeting flow control requirements and does not generally apply to meeting runoff treatment requirements, unless otherwise noted:

On-site flows can be classified as mitigated and nonmitigated areas. For the purpose of discussing the requirement to separate on-site and off-site flows in this section, a *mitigated area* is that area representing the impervious surface that will receive flow control and/or runoff treatment. The *nonmitigated area* is that area representing the existing on-site impervious or pervious surface that will not receive flow control and/or runoff treatment. If the existing on-site nonmitigated impervious or pervious surface is greater than 50% of the mitigated area, runoff from these areas must bypass the flow control facility. Three on-site options and one off-site option can be evaluated to deal with bypass systems.

1. **On-site, equivalent area option.** The first option is to regulate the discharge of flows of the mitigated area based on the equivalent area. For example, stormwater runoff treatment and flow control can be applied to an equivalent area when that is more feasible than providing the treatment and flow control for the new impervious area because of site constraints. The *equivalent area*, then, is an existing impervious surface area to which stormwater runoff treatment and/or flow control can be added in place of providing treatment and/or flow control for an area of new impervious surface. *Equivalent* means equal in area, located within the same receiving water drainage basin (TDA), and having similar use characteristics (for example, similar average daily traffic) to the impervious surface area being traded. The equivalent area should be upgradient of or in close proximity to the discharge from the new area. This option provides flow control for the area requiring stormwater mitigation. As exemplified in Figure 4-10, the flow control facility would be sized just for those 10 acres. Using the equivalent area, runoff from existing impervious areas and new impervious areas would be routed to the facility, so that 10 acres within the same TDA drains to the facility. This concept can also be applied to meeting the minimum requirement for runoff treatment.

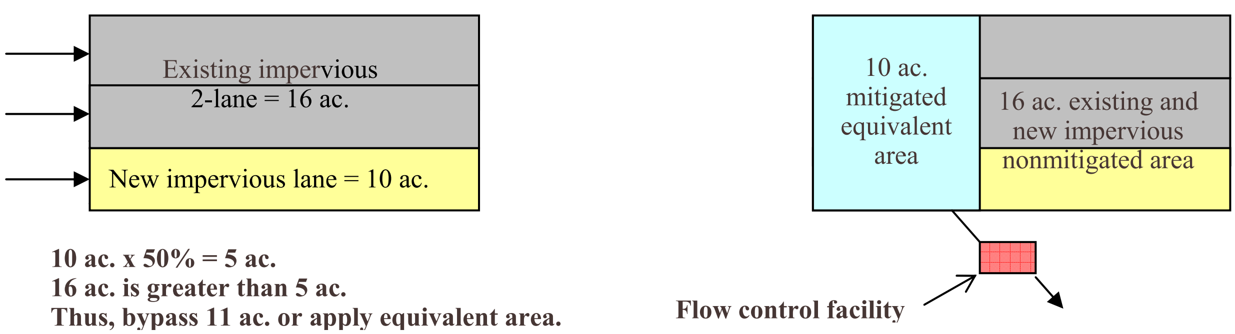


Figure 4-10. Separation of on-site and off-site flows – Equivalent area option.

2. **On-site, full area option.** The second option uses a detention pond with an orifice and riser release structure to represent the flow control facility for illustrative purposes. Other types of facilities can also be designed to meet flow control requirements for this scenario. Note: The 50% guidance for on-site nonmitigated area does not apply to this option.

The intent of this option is to size the detention facility for the mitigated area, but have both the mitigated and nonmitigated areas flow to the facility (see Figure 4-11). The detention facility and the outlet release structure should initially be sized using the drainage area for which flow control is required. A second modeling exercise is then conducted that routes flow from the mitigated area, plus any additional existing non-mitigated surface area (for which mitigation is not required) through the previously designed pond and outlet structure. Verify that the required criteria are still being met for the mitigated area, and that the facility does not overflow.

If the flow can pass through the outlet structure without overtopping the pond (i.e., engaging the emergency overflow in one of the embankments), it is a successful design. If some portion of the runoff file causes the pond to overtop, then the design is inadequate. There are two logical options: (1) increase the distance between the top of the riser and the emergency overflow by raising the height of the overflow and the entire embankment, or (2) redesign the outlet structure. If option 2 is chosen, the most obvious change is to increase the diameter of the riser (while keeping the orifices the same) so that the higher flows can be discharged. However, the designer has to demonstrate that the new outlet structure design could meet the flow control duration requirement if the pond were only serving the mitigated area (i.e., the initial design condition). This option would provide flow control for all of the impervious surface draining to the stormwater facility, but the duration standards would be applied only to the mitigated area, even though there will be higher flows passing through the facility. This option does not meet a retrofit standard and is applicable for flow control facilities only.

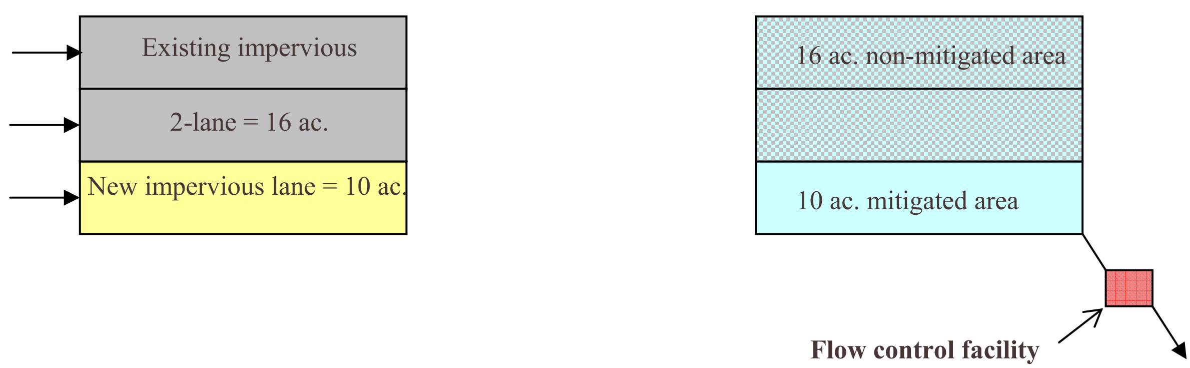


Figure 4-11. Separation of on-site and off-site flows – Full area option.

3. **On-site, bypass area option.** There may be instances when some of the area that must meet the flow control requirement cannot be separated from area that does not have to meet the requirement. The following bypass option, as depicted in Figure 4-12, provides a way to meet the overall intent of the flow control requirement for the total area that must be mitigated.

- Bypass: For this scenario, it is not possible to collect and convey a portion of the mitigated area to a stormwater facility. In this case, runoff from a portion of the area that must be mitigated may bypass the facility, provided **all** of the following conditions are met. These criteria apply only to that portion of the area that must be mitigated, but that is bypassed. (See Appendix 4A for a web link to an example that explains how a bypass area can be modeled using MGSFlood.)
    - ☐ Runoff from both the bypass area and the facility converges within one-quarter mile downstream of the project site discharge point.
    - ☐ The facility is designed to compensate for the uncontrolled bypass area, so that the net effect at the point of compliance downstream is the same with or without bypass.
    - ☐ The 100-year developed peak flow rate from the bypass area will not exceed 0.4 cfs.
    - ☐ Runoff from the bypass area will not create a significant adverse impact to downstream drainage systems or properties.
    - ☐ Runoff treatment requirements applicable to the bypass area are met.

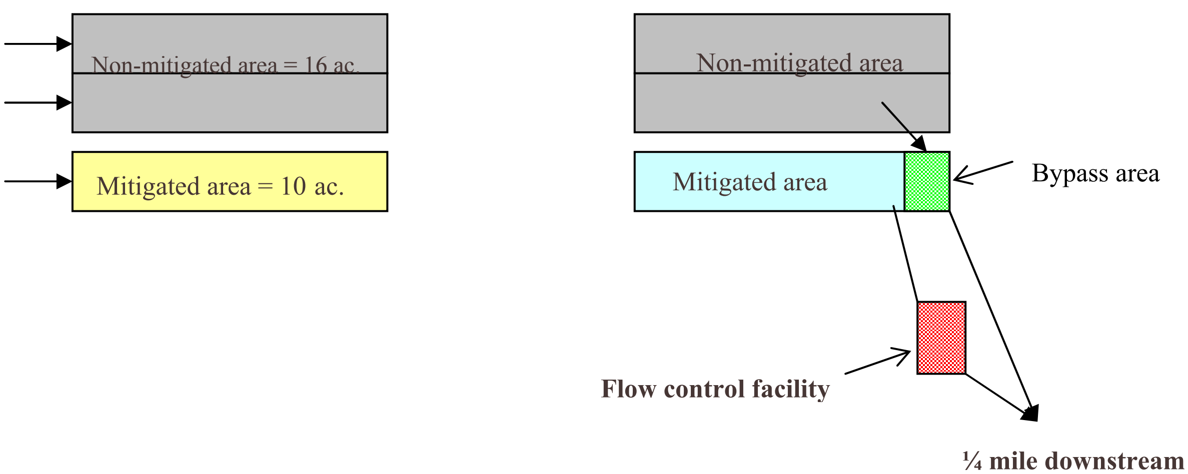


Figure 4-12. Separation of on-site and off-site flows – Bypass area option.

5. **Off-site, inflow area option.** Modeling guidelines are intended to avoid the mixing of off-site inflow with on-site runoff that flows through a flow control facility (see Figure 4-13). However, when it is not practical to separate off-site and on-site flows, the following option will account for the additional off-site inflow in a way that meets the overall intent of mitigating the effects of increased runoff generated from the project site.

   - Control of off-site inflow: With this option, flow control is provided for runoff from an upslope area outside the project limits, if the existing 100-year peak flow rate from the off-site inflow area is less than 50% of the 100-year peak flow rate of the on-site mitigated area (for post-developed conditions, without flow control) for the TDA. The control of off-site runoff must be designed to achieve the following:

     - ☐ Any existing contribution of flows to a wetland must be maintained.

     - ☐ Off-site flows that are naturally attenuated by the TDA under pre-developed conditions should remain attenuated, either by natural means or by implementing additional on-site flow control measures, so that peak flows do not increase.

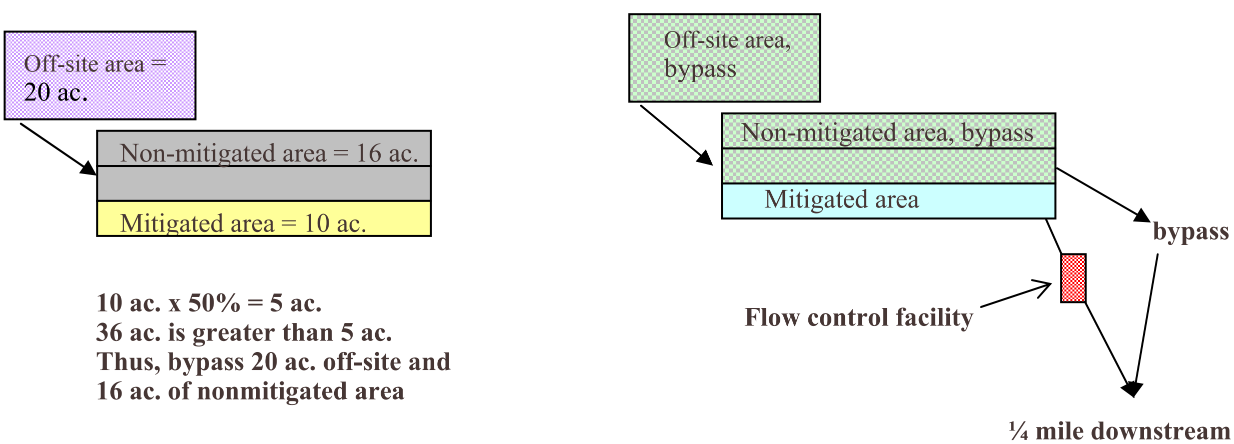


Figure 4-13. Separation of on-site and off-site flows – Off-site area option.

Modeling existing ponds under the 1995 HRM method can now be modeled to take advantage of the available or excess capacity in the existing pond for new road projects. There are two scenarios that distinguish the input of information when using MGSFlood. The first scenario is if the basin area contributing to the existing pond does not change. The second scenario is if the basin area contributing to the existing pond increases. MGSFlood can be used to model the two scenarios with the following steps:

Step 1

Place the existing pond and its associated surfaces that contribute runoff to this pond in the predeveloped scenario as impervious. Also, while in the predeveloped scenario, represent the areas of new impervious (and any applicable replaced impervious) surface as forest, pasture, or grass based on the current flow control requirements. The runoff from the new impervious (and any applicable replaced impervious) surface should be sent into the existing pond in the predeveloped scenario if the basin area to the existing pond will not increase. If the basin area to the existing pond will increase, then the new impervious (and any applicable replaced impervious) surface area should NOT be sent to the existing pond in the predeveloped scenario.

Step 2

Place the existing pond and its associated surfaces that contribute runoff to this pond in the developed mitigated scenario as impervious. In addition, send runoff from the new impervious (and any applicable replaced impervious) surface to the existing pond for the developed scenario. Then, use the "Route" button in MGSFlood with the existing parameters of the pond size and its discharge structure.

The MGSFlood routing routine checks the duration standards with the existing pond design. Some changes might be necessary for the discharge structure to make the pond in compliance.

Hydrologic Soil Groups

For each TDA, land use is defined in units of acres for *predeveloped* and *developed* conditions. Soils at the project site must be classified into one of three default categories for use in the continuous simulation model. These soils categories are: till, outwash, or saturated soil (as defined by the USGS). Mapping of soil types by the Soil Conservation Service (SCS), which is now the Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS), is the most common source of soil/geologic information used in hydrologic analyses for stormwater facility design. Each soil type defined by the NRCS has been classified into one of four hydrologic soil groups: A, B, C, and D. As is common in hydrologic modeling in western Washington, the soil groups used in the continuous simulation model generally correspond to the NRCS hydrologic soil groups as shown in Table 4-4.

Table 4-4. Relationship between NRCS hydrologic soil group and HSPF soil group.

NRCS Group	HSPF Group
A	Outwash
B	Till or Outwash
C	Till
D	Wetland

NRCS Type B soils can be classified as either glacial till or outwash, depending on the type of soil under consideration. Type B soils underlain by glacial till or bedrock, or that have a seasonally high water table, are classified as till. Conversely, well-drained B-type soils should be classified as outwash. It is very important to work with the WSDOT Materials Laboratory, or a licensed geotechnical engineer, to make sure the soil properties and near-surface hydrogeology of the site are well understood, since they are significant factors in the final modeling results. Appendix 4B contains some soils classification information for preliminary work.

Wetland soils remain saturated throughout much of the year. The hydrologic response from wetlands is variable, depending on the underlying geology, the proximity of the wetland to the regional groundwater table, and the bathymetry of the wetland. Generally, wetlands provide some baseflow to streams in the summer months, and attenuate storm flows via temporary storage and slow release in the winter. Special design consideration must be taken into account when including wetlands in continuous simulation runoff modeling.

Modeling Best Management Practices (BMPs)

Flow control BMP design focuses on infiltrating, dispersing, and, as a last resort, detaining and discharging stormwater. In contrast to conventional BMPs that receive runoff at one location on the site, low-impact development (LID) BMP applications manage stormwater in small-scale, dispersed facilities located as close to the source of the runoff as possible. Due to the many different factors affecting both stormwater runoff treatment and flow control, there is no one technique that will work in all situations. The following is a list of modeling strategies that must be considered when modeling BMPs:

1. **General Modeling Guidelines**: In determining the appropriate modeling approach, it is important to understand how stormwater infiltration, dispersion, and runoff occurred historically on the site. The site analysis (see Section 4-2) provides information on how the site and the surrounding areas currently process stormwater, and how they processed stormwater before any land use changes had altered them. This information should aid the designer in determining the best site layout and deciding on appropriate BMPs that will either maintain or restore the natural predeveloped stormwater process. Use the following items from the site analysis to determine appropriate site layouts and BMPs:

    - Location and quantity of off-site drainage entering and on-site drainage leaving the site, if any
    - Slopes throughout the site
    - Locations of existing mature vegetation (trees and shrubs) that retain intact upper soil profiles for stormwater processing
    - Small depressions on-site that retain stormwater runoff
    - Depths and conditions of the upper soil profile (the A and B horizons), along with the identification of the lower soils

2. **Modeling and Sizing in Western Washington**: Modeling and sizing of multiple BMPs with a readily available continuous simulation model is possible at this time, with the latest version of MGSFlood 3. In order to incorporate LID BMPs into the MGSFlood model, two tables have been created to spell out modeling techniques that can be assumed. Table 4-5 lists modeling techniques that can be assumed for site land uses in either outwash or till soils, where natural dispersion can be taken advantage of or where native vegetation can be reestablished by landscaping. Outwash soils would represent soils in Hydrologic Soil Group A, and some uncompacted soils in Hydrologic Soil Group B. Till soils would represent some compacted soils in Hydrologic Soil Group B, as well as soils in Hydrologic Soil Groups C and D.

Table 4-5. Flow control modeling techniques based on land use.

BMP Type: LAND USE	Assume the TDA is Composed of the Following: OUTWASH SOIL	TILL SOIL
Reversion of impervious surface[1]	100% Pasture	100% Grass
Landscaped with amended soils[2]	25% Impervious, 75% Pasture, or Apply FC.02 Engineered Dispersion Criteria	50% Impervious, 50% Pasture, or Apply FC.02 Engineered Dispersion Criteria
Permeable pavement without perforated drain pipe[3]	100% Grass	100% Grass
Permeable pavement with perforated drain pipe[3]	100% Impervious	100% Impervious

[1] See Step 2 in preceding section titled "Reversion of Impervious Surface Areas" and Section 5-4.3.2, Soil Amendments.

[2] See Section 5-4.3.2, Soil Amendments.

[3] See BMP IN.06, Permeable Pavement Surfaces, in Chapter 5.

Table 4-6 lists modeling technique procedures for specific LID systems in the form of modifications to model input parameters for pond and infiltration characteristics. Adjusting the pond and infiltration characteristics takes into account the water loss and avoids over-designing the flow control facility. MGSFlood has the routine for multiple structures BMP systems in Version 3. Table 4-6 will be eliminated and the BMPs will be analyzed in series, once the design guidance on how to model all the structures has been completed.

For sites with multiple types of BMPs, soil types, and/or land covers, modeling must incorporate multiple TDAs. Alternatively, a weighted average of the modeling techniques can be calculated for the combination of BMPs. The designer should note that these techniques are for flow control only, and must model the postproject conditions in order to determine the appropriate runoff treatment volume. Once this is complete, the designer can then apply these modeling techniques to land use to determine the appropriate flow control volume.

Table 4-6. Flow control modeling techniques for the interim.

BMP Type: STRUCTURAL	Assume the Following Process for the Interim: OUTWASH SOIL	TILL SOIL
Biofiltration Pond (Biofiltration Swale)*	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.
Vegetated Filter Strip (VFS)	Model VFS as Grass.	Model VFS as Grass.
Compost-Amended Vegetated Filter Strip (CAVFS)	See Section 4-5.2.3.1.	See Section 4-5.2.3.1.
Bioinfiltration Pond (Biofiltration Swale)*	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.
Ecology Embankment*	Pond with steady-state infiltration rates and with an overflow height of half an inch.	Pond with steady-state infiltration rates and with an overflow height of half an inch.
Infiltration trench**	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate and reference Section 4-5.3.1.	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate and reference Section 4-5.3.1.
Drywells*	Pond and reference Section 4-5.3.2.	Pond and reference Section 4-5.3.2.
Bioretention (Linear & Cell)*	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.	Pond with a steady-state infiltration rate.
Compost-Amended Soils*	Apply FC.02 Engineered Dispersion Criteria or Model as Pasture.	Apply FC.02 Engineered Dispersion Criteria or Model as Pasture.

* These BMPs can be modeled using MGSFlood. Please contact the region's Hydraulics Office first to obtain procedures, or utilize the web link: 🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/#HRM

** Infiltration trench can be modeled in MGSFlood, Version 3; it has a built-in subroutine.

Runoff Timeseries Generation

Precipitation and evaporation for the selected climate region are used in the model, and runoff is computed for predevelopment and postdevelopment conditions. The continuous simulation model stores this information as a runoff timeseries. The computed runoff timeseries are not saved for each project when using MGSFlood; thus, the runoff must be recomputed before performing any BMP design iterations, to ensure that the direct access file is up-to-date and contains runoff for the project currently under consideration.

Runoff computations are performed on a *water year* basis; that is, they begin on October 1 and end on September 30. This is because the soils are typically driest at the beginning of fall and a single set of antecedent conditions can be used for all regions of western Washington. A time period shorter than the full record can be used for runoff computations; however, the full period of record should be used in facility design to provide the most accurate flow computations.

Flow Control Facility Design

Flow control facility design can be completed in one of two ways: by defining the pond hydraulics in the *Pond Hydraulic Routing Table*

(http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/EESC/Design/Hydraulics/downloads.htm), or by using an optimization routine available in a proprietary version of MGSFlood.

Pond Design Using Routing Table

Routing is performed using the information entered in the *Pond Hydraulic Routing Table*. Information can be keyed into the table or copied from a spreadsheet and pasted using the Windows clipboard function (see the *Pond Hydraulics Excel Spreadsheet* at:
 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/EESC/Design/Hydraulics/programs/PondHydraulics(Dogwood2).xls). *Elevation* is the water surface elevation in the pond; *Area* is the pond surface area (acres); *Volume* is the pond volume (acre-feet); *Discharge* is the pond discharge (cfs); and *Infilt* is the infiltration rate (cfs) through the pond bottom. Water infiltrated through the pond bottom does not contribute to the computed pond outflow. (See Appendix 4A for a web link to example problems that will provide suggestions for manipulating the design to achieve matching predeveloped and postdeveloped durations.)

Pond Design Using Optimization

The proprietary version of MGSFlood includes routines for computing pond hydraulics and automatically sizing detention pond and outlet works to meet the duration-based flow control standard (see Table 4-2). Designing stormwater ponds to this standard is a laborious, iterative process, whereby the runoff timeseries (typically 40 years or more) is routed through the pond, and flow-duration statistics are computed and compared with predeveloped flow-duration statistics. The automatic pond sizing routine in MGSFlood performs this pond design procedure.

The automatic pond sizing optimization routine in the MGSFlood Hydraulic Structures add-in module will determine the pond size and outlet configuration for three pond types: (1) a detention pond with no infiltration, (2) a detention pond with minor infiltration, and (3) an infiltration pond. The characteristics of these pond types are listed in Table 4-7.

MGSFlood (Version 3) has the following new features:

1. Option for simulating multiple structures to allow the designer to account for infiltration that occurs upstream of a detention facility, and to analyze sites with multiple treatment facilities.
2. Determines if the runoff treatment volumes can be infiltrated in 36 hours. Under this premise, the storm/runoff ends 12 hours after the runoff period midpoint and combines with the 24-hour drain criteria; therefore, it would take 36 hours to drain the pond.
3. Subroutine that provides water surface elevation magnitude-frequency statistics and reports these in the project report.
4. Subroutine that computes varying infiltration rates as a function of pond depth using Massmann’s equations.

5. Subroutine to compute the volume of stormwater treated by a sand filter.
6. Subroutine that states the percentage of runoff that infiltrates through the pond bottom relative to the total pond inflow.
7. Predevelopment, 100-year line on pond performance flow duration graph.
8. Subroutine for infiltration trench design on the embankment or in the ditch line.
9. Two new extended timeseries for Island County vicinity; 24-inch and 28-inch MAP.

Table 4-7. Characteristics of detention and infiltration ponds sized using MGSFlood optimization routine.

Characteristic	Detention Pond	Infiltration Pond
Pond Configuration	Riser Structure with Low-Level Circular Orifice and Vertical Rectangular Upper Orifice	Overflow Riser Only
Valid Infiltration Rates	0.00–0.10 inches/hour	0.05–50 inches/hour
Optimization Levels	Quick or Full	Quick Only

Two levels of optimization are available for detention pond sizing: Quick Optimization and Full Optimization. Quick Optimization determines a "ballpark" solution in a relatively short time (usually less than one minute). Full Optimization does an exhaustive search of potential solutions, seeking a configuration for the minimum pond size required to meet the flow duration standard. The Full Optimization routine usually converges on a solution in less than ten minutes (depending on the speed and memory of the computer).

The pond sizing optimization routine uses general input about the pond geometry, including the following:

- Pond length to width ratio
- Pond side slope
- Pond floor elevation
- Riser crest elevation
- Pond infiltration rate

The pond sizing routine uses this information to establish the geometric relationships for the pond configuration. The program establishes a parameter space of possible solutions by varying the pond bottom area, and the sizes and elevations of hydraulic devices for the outlet structure. The program then routes the developed runoff timeseries through the pond and seeks to find a solution that provides the minimum pond size to meet the discharge flow duration requirements.

Once the optimization has determined a pond size, it is still possible to go back to the first tab under Pond/Vault Geometry and manually manipulate the pond size under the Prismatic Pond Geometry or the Elevation Volume Table for irregularly shaped ponds (i.e., underground detention tanks).

The standard outlet configuration used for detention ponds consists of a circular low-level orifice and a vertical rectangular orifice (slot). If a different outlet configuration is desired, the volume-discharge characteristics of the desired configuration can be set to match the volume-discharge characteristics returned by the program for the orifice/slot weir configuration. The low-level circular orifice is assumed to be free of tailwater effects. If tailwater conditions are present, first use the optimization routine to determine the pond configuration without consideration of tailwater. Then, include the tailwater rating table and manually adjust the pond configuration to meet the flow duration design criteria.

There are a wide variety of combinations of hydraulic devices, device sizes and invert heights, and pond configurations that can be used to match the flow duration standard. However, it is difficult to find a pond configuration that minimizes the pond volume and meets the duration standard using a manual trial and error approach. The automatic pond sizing routine searches the parameter space of possible solutions and seeks to find the minimum pond size to meet the flow duration standard.

In some situations, usually when there are "outliers" in the precipitation data, or precipitation data of poor quality are used, the pond design may not meet all design criteria. In these cases, the pond design determined by the MGSFlood program is returned to the Hydraulic Structures and Pond/Vault Geometry tabs for manual refinement. The user can make modifications to the design and flows can be routed through the pond using manual mode.

Flow Frequency and Duration Statistics Check

To analyze a stormwater pond's effectiveness at reducing postdevelopment flows to pre-developed levels, flows are first routed through the pond. Statistics can be computed and graphs created to show the performance graphically. Pond performance can be assessed by comparing the flow frequency and duration statistics for the pond outflow with the statistics computed for the predeveloped condition. The designer must also check the 100-year peak flow for flood control and property damage. The designer should review the history file and verify that the postdeveloped 100-year peak is less than the predeveloped 100-year peak flow. If the post-developed peak flow is not less than the predeveloped 100-year peak flow, the designer should field verify that property damage will be prevented.

4-4 Eastern Washington Design Criteria

This section provides a discussion of the methodologies used for calculating stormwater runoff from project sites in eastern Washington. It includes a discussion of estimating stormwater runoff with single event models, such as the SCS unit hydrograph method, and more information on the eastern Washington design storm events (see Appendix 4C).

The suggested hydrologic analysis method for most WSDOT project sites in eastern Washington is either the SCS or SBUH method. The input required for a single event hydrograph method includes pervious and impervious TDAs; times of concentration; pervious and impervious curve numbers; design storm precipitation; and a design storm hyetograph. An approved single event model, such as StormShed, should be used for calculating runoff characteristics. Single event models are explained in more detail in Section 4-4.6. Runoff curve numbers and the precipitation data differ considerably in eastern and western Washington (see Appendix 4B).

Note: The Threshold Discharge Area concept must also be applied to projects in eastern Washington (see Section 4-2.5 for more information).

After the existing and postdeveloped hydrographs are computed for the project site, the results are routed through a level pool reservoir. The level pool reservoir is a model of either a detention or an infiltration facility. If a detention facility is proposed, the design includes a flow control structure consisting of one or more orifices in a riser or baffle wall that slowly release the outflows. If an infiltration facility is proposed, the model input includes the infiltration pond/trench area, design infiltration rate, and outlet control facility parameters (if only a portion of the design storm hydrographs will infiltrate and some flow will be released to a surface conveyance system). The level pool routing method is used to optimize the size of the facility with the space and depth available, and meet the design criteria from Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6).

4-4.1 Runoff Treatment Flow-Based and Volume-Based BMPs

Runoff treatment BMPs are used to treat the stormwater runoff from pollutant-generating surfaces, and should be designed in accordance with Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5). Some treatment BMPs are sized based on a flow rate, while others are sized based on a volume of runoff. For example, a bioswale or proprietary filtration BMP is sized based on flow rate, whereas an infiltration pond is sized based on runoff volume. Sizing is dependant on flow rates or volumes, as detailed in the following sections. The criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities in eastern Washington are summarized in Table 4-8.

4-4.1.1 Flo w-Based Runoff Treatment

The design flow rate for these types of facilities is dependent on whether the treatment facility is located upstream of a flow control facility and whether it is an *on-line* or *off-line* facility (see Section 4-3.1.1 for examples). Most treatment facilities can be designed as “on-line” systems, with flows greater than the runoff treatment design flow rate simply passing through the facility as overflow, with lesser or no pollutant removal. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to treatment facilities and bypass the remaining higher flows around them. These are called “off-line” systems.

Table 4-8. Criteria for sizing runoff treatment facilities in eastern Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Volume-based	Size facility using the runoff volume predicted for the 6-month, 24-hour event under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Regional Storm (Climatic Regions 1 – 4) or Type 1A Storm (Regions 2 & 3)
Flow-based: facility is located upstream of detention/retention facility	Size facility using the peak flow rate predicted for the 6-month, short duration storm under postdeveloped conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Short duration storm
Flow-based: facility is located downstream of detention facility	Size facility using the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility, under post-developed conditions for each TDA.	Single event model (SCS or SBUH) Short duration storm Regional Storm (Climatic Regions 1 – 4) or Type 1A Storm (Regions 2 & 3); whichever produces the greatest flow.

4-4.1.2 Volume-Based Runoff Treatment

Runoff treatment facilities are designed based on volumes and must be sized for the entire flow volume that is directed to them. The following method can be used to derive the storage volume:

- Wetpool and Infiltration: The NRCS curve number equations (see Section 4-4.6.2) can be used to determine the runoff treatment design storm runoff volume. This is the volume of runoff from the storm noted in Table 4-8. WSDOT prefers that StormShed, an SBUH-based program, be used for this method to size volume-based runoff treatment BMPs. The size of the wetpool or infiltration storage volume is the same whether located upstream or downstream of a flow control facility, or whether it is coupled with the flow control facility.

If the runoff from the new impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces is not separated from runoff from other surfaces on the project site, and/or is combined with run-on from areas outside the right-of-way, the runoff treatment facilities must be sized for the entire flow volume that is directed to them. Infiltration facilities must infiltrate 6-month, 24-hour total runoff volume within 72 hours after precipitation has ended.

4-4.2 Flow Control BMPs

An approved single event model must be used when designing flow control BMPs, in accordance with Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6). WSDOT prefers that StormShed be used for designing flow control BMPs in WSDOT right-of-way. Stormwater discharges must match developed peak flows to predeveloped peak flows for the range of predeveloped discharge rates noted in Table 4-9.

Table 4-9. Criteria for sizing flow control facilities in eastern Washington.

Facility Type	Criteria	Model
Detention/combination treatment and detention facilities	Provide storage volume required to match ½ of the 2-year predeveloped peak flow rate, match the predeveloped 25-year peak flow rate, and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage.	Single Event Model (SCS or SBUH) Regional Storm (Climatic Regions 1 – 4) or Type 1A Storm (Regions 2 & 3)
Infiltration facilities	Size facility to infiltrate the entire volume of the 25-year storm with an overflow, and check the 100-year peak flow for property damage, or infiltrate 100% of the storm runoff volume.	Single Event Model (SCS or SBUH) Regional Storm (Climatic Regions 1 – 4) or Type 1A Storm (Regions 2 & 3)

Infiltration facilities for flow control must be designed based on postdeveloped runoff volumes, and should be designed to infiltrate the entire volume of the criteria noted below. If full infiltration is not possible, all surface discharges must match the flow control standard in Table 4-9.

4-4.3 Temporary Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control

Design volumes or peak flows for erosion and sediment control BMPs at construction sites (e.g., conveyance channels, sediment ponds, settling basins) are based on the 2-year recurrence interval storm hydrograph calculated using a single event model. The 10-year event should be used if the project is expected to be under construction for several seasons or if the downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. Time of year for construction is an important factor in eastern Washington. (See region hydraulic staff and the *Hydraulics Manual* for methods of analysis that account for freezing conditions and snowmelt.)

4-4.4 Exemptions for Flow Control

WSDOT has developed a standardized process to aid the designer in producing an acceptable hydraulic analysis for determining flow control exemptions. The process will help the designer determine how extensive an analysis must be for a particular project. (See Chapter 3 for a process that has been established for lakes and some river systems.) Please refer to Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6) for further details on exemptions, flow dispersion, and flow control thresholds.

4-4.5 Hydrologic Analysis Methods for Flow Control and Runoff Treatment Facility Design

This section presents the general process involved in conducting a hydrologic analysis using single event hydrograph methods to (1) design retention/detention flow control facilities, and

(2) determine runoff treatment volumes. The exact step-by-step method for entering data into a computer model varies with the different models and is not described here (see the Documentation or Help modules of the computer program). Predeveloped and postdeveloped site runoff conditions must be determined and documented in the Hydraulic Report.

The process for designing retention/detention flow control facilities in eastern Washington is as follows:

Review Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6) to determine all requirements that will apply to the proposed project.

1. Determine rainfall depths for the site (see Appendix 4A).
   - 2-year – 24-hour
   - 25-year – 24-hour
   - 100-year – 24-hour
2. Determine predeveloped soils type and hydrologic group (A, B, C, or D) from SCS maps (see Section 4-4.6.2).
3. Determine predeveloped and postdeveloped TDAs, and determine the subsequent pervious and impervious area (in acres) for each condition (see Section 4-2.5 for more details).
4. Determine curve numbers for pervious and impervious area using hydrologic soil groups for both the predeveloped and postdeveloped conditions (see Appendix 4B and Equations 4-10 and 4-11).
5. Determine predeveloped and postdeveloped time of concentration. StormShed will do this calculation if the designer enters length, slope, roughness, and flow type (see Section 4-4.6.2).
6. Select storm hyetograph and analysis time interval. Check that the analysis time interval is appropriate for use with storm hyetograph time increment.
7. For each TDA, input the data obtained above into the computer model for each predeveloped and postdeveloped storm event.
8. Have the computer model compute the hydrographs.
9. Review the peak flow rate for the predeveloped conditions in the 2-year and 25-year storm events. The allowable release rate is listed in Table 4-9. Note that, in some cases, the predeveloped 2-year peak flow rate may be 0 cfs, which means there is no discharge from the site. The 2-year postdeveloped flows in this situation must be retained as dead storage that will ultimately infiltrate or evaporate.

10. Review the peak flow rate for postdeveloped conditions in the 2-year and 25-year storms. Compare the increases in peak flow rates for 2-year and 25-year design storms to determine if the project qualifies for an exemption.

11. Assume the size of the detention facility and input the data into the computer model. Refer to the volume of the design storm hydrograph computed in Step 8 for a good assumption of the detention volume required.

12. Assume the size of the orifice structure and input the data into the computer model. A single orifice at the bottom of the riser may suffice in some cases. In other projects, multiple orifices may result in decreased pond sizes. A good approximation would be to assume a 1-inch-diameter orifice per 0.05 cfs outflow for a typical pond.

13. Use the computer model to route the postdeveloped hydrographs through the detention facility and orifice structure. Compare the postdeveloped peak outflow rates to allowable release rates from Step 9.

14. If the postdeveloped peak outflow rates exceed the allowable release rates, adjust detention volume, orifice size, orifice height, or number of orifices. Keep running the computer model and adjusting the parameters until the post-developed outflow rates are less than or equal to the allowable release rates.

15. Check the 100-year release rate and compare to predeveloped conditions, and check for potential property damage.

16. Calculations are complete.

Examples can be found through the web links, which are provided in Appendix 4A.

The process for calculating runoff treatment design volumes or flow rates is as follows. (Note that the data for many of the initial steps matches the data used in designing retention/detention flow control facilities described above.)

1. Review Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5) to determine all requirements that will apply to the proposed project.

2. Determine the climatic region and Mean Annual Precipitation (MAP) (see Appendix 4A).

3. Determine the rainfall for the site depending on the treatment BMP (see Appendix 4A and Section 4-4.1).

4. Multiply the rainfall by the appropriate coefficient to determine the 6-month precipitation (see Appendix 4C).

5. Determine the existing soils type and hydrologic group (A, B, C, or D) from SCS maps (see Section 4-4.6.2).

6. Determine postdeveloped TDAs, and the subsequent pervious and impervious area (in acres), requiring treatment that contributes flow to the treatment BMP (see Section 4-4.6.2).
7. Determine curve numbers for pervious and impervious area using the hydrologic soil group for the postdeveloped condition (see Appendix 4B).
8. Determine postdeveloped time of concentration; StormShed computes this when the designer inputs length, slope, roughness, and flow type (see Section 4-4.6.2).
9. If modeling the short-duration storm hyetographs, use the short duration RAC file. Determine that the analysis time interval is appropriate for use with the storm hyetograph time increment (see Appendix 4C).
10. Input data obtained from above into StormShed for the postdeveloped storm event.
11. Have the model compute the hydrograph.
12. For the design of flow-based treatment BMPs, the computed peak flow from the 6-month, 3-hour hydrograph is the design flow.
13. For the design of volume-based treatment BMPs, the computed volume from the 6-month, 24-hour storm is the design volume.

Examples can be found through the web links, which are provided in Appendix 4A.

4-4.6 Single Event Hydrograph Method

In eastern Washington, a single event hydrograph method is typically used for calculation of runoff, with an integrated set of hydrology design tools developed to address the needs of conventional engineering practice. There are many single event models based on the SCS (Soil Conservation Service) and SBUH (Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph) methodologies that include level pool routing, pipe and ditch conveyance system analysis, and backwater computation. Appendix 4A provides a link to the approved WSDOT single event model.

An SBUH analysis requires that the designer understand certain characteristics of the project site, such as drainage patterns, predicted rainfall, soil type, area to be covered with impervious surfaces, method of drainage conveyance, and the flow control BMP that will be used. The physical characteristics of the site, and the design storm, determine the magnitude, volume, and duration of the runoff hydrograph. Other factors, such as the conveyance characteristics of channel or pipe, merging tributary flows, and type of BMP used will alter the shape and magnitude of the hydrograph. The key elements of a single event hydrograph analysis are listed below and described in more detail in this section:

- Design storm hyetograph
- Runoff parameters
- Hydrograph synthesis
- Hydrograph routing
- Hydrograph summation

4-4.6.1 Design Storm Hyetograph

The SBUH method requires the input of a rainfall distribution, or design storm hyetograph. The design storm hyetograph is rainfall depth versus time for a given design storm frequency and duration. For this application, it is presented as a dimensionless table of unit rainfall depth (incremental rainfall depth for each time interval divided by the total rainfall depth) versus time.

For projects in eastern Washington, the design storms are as noted in Tables 4-8 and 4-9. The design storms are presented further in Appendix 4C. The design storm precipitation depths for the city that is closest to the project site should be selected for use in the SBUH modeling (see Appendix 4A). Another method for obtaining rainfall depths for different storms is to use isopluvial maps (contours of precipitation for a particular storm duration and recurrence interval). The National Weather Service publishes isopluvial maps for different storm durations and recurrence intervals. This information is referenced in Appendix 4A and can also be obtained from the HQ Hydraulics Office.

4-4.6.2 Runoff Parameters

The SBUH method requires input of parameters that describe physical drainage basin characteristics. These parameters provide the basis from which the runoff hydrograph is developed. This section describes the three key parameters (TDA and contributing drainage basin areas; runoff curve number; and runoff time of concentration) that, when combined with the rainfall hyetograph in the SBUH method, develop the runoff hydrograph.

Threshold Discharge Area and Contributing Drainage Basin Areas

The proper selection and delineation of the TDA and contributing drainage basin areas (within the TDA) to the BMP or structure of interest is required in the hydrograph analysis. The contributing basin area(s) used should be relatively homogeneous in land use and soil type. If the entire contributing basin is similar in these aspects, the basin can be analyzed as a single area. If significant differences exist within a given contributing drainage basin, it must be divided into subbasin areas of similar land use and soil characteristics. Hydrographs should then be computed for each subbasin area and summed to form the total runoff hydrograph for the basin. Contributing drainage basins larger than 100 acres should be divided into subbasins. By dividing large basins into smaller subbasins and then combining calculated flows, the timing aspect of the generated hydrograph is typically more accurate.

TDAs and contributing basin areas can be determined with a topographic contour map. Contour maps that are generated specifically for the project site are the most accurate source for determining and delineating TDAs and contributing drainage basin areas, since they are typically produced with contour intervals of 5 feet or less. If the TDA extends past the limits of the maps generated for the project, USGS Quadrangle topographic maps can be used to obtain the missing information. New impervious area should always be measured from project-specific maps.

The first consideration when modeling existing project site runoff for flow control BMP sizing is the amount of pervious cover versus impervious surface in the overall basin. The hydrologic analysis for flow control to protect receiving water is based on mitigating floods and erosion. It is relevant for projects where (1) no flow control exemptions exist, (2) no approved basin plans exist that address hydrologic modeling input parameters for stormwater system design, (3) the site cannot reliably infiltrate all of its runoff, or (4) the existing site condition is not forested. In these cases, use the existing project area land cover condition as the predeveloped condition. If a project will revert or replace any of the existing impervious surface back to a pervious condition, if a project is proposing to retrofit existing impervious surface, or if a project proposes to change the surface from gravel to BST, ACP, or PCCP, that portion of existing impervious surface can be modeled as grass or that which reflects the surrounding project conditions. Contact the region's Hydraulics Office for assistance and refer to Section 4-3.6.1 under *Reversion of Existing Impervious Surface Areas* for additional procedures.

To determine the TDA and contributing basin area for a specific runoff analysis location, the area must first be outlined on the contour map. This is done by locating the project's discharge point on the map and drawing a line along the ridgeline of the basin, finally connecting back to the discharge point. This will need to be done for each discharge point at the project site. If the flow from two or more discharge points can be combined, their basin areas can also be combined. Once the TDA and contributing basin boundary is drawn on a map, it can be measured using a planimeter or digitized on a CAD workstation and scaled. For more details on delineation of TDAs, see Section 4-2.5. Also, see Section 4-3.6.1 for strategies for separating on-site and off site flows.

Curve Numbers

The NRCS has conducted studies into the runoff characteristics of various land types. After gathering and analyzing extensive data, the NRCS developed relationships between land use, soil type, vegetation cover, interception, infiltration, surface storage, and runoff. The relationships have been characterized by a single runoff coefficient called a curve number (CN). CNs are chosen to depict average conditions—neither dry, nor saturated. The designer is referred to FHWA Ip-80-1 for more information on choosing appropriate curve numbers. Appendix 4B shows suggested CN values for various land covers and soil conditions.

The factors that contribute to the CN value are known as the soil-cover complex. The soil-cover complexes have been assigned to one of four hydrologic soil groups, according to their runoff characteristics. These soil groups are labeled Types A, B, C, and D; with Type A generating the least amount of runoff and Type D generating the greatest. Appendix 4B shows the hydrologic soil groups of most soils in Washington State. The different soil groups can be described as follows:

- **Type A**

  Soils having high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of deep, well-drained to excessively-drained sands or gravels. These soils have a high rate of water transmission.

- **Type B**

  Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of moderately-fine to moderately-coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission.

- **Type C**

  Soils having slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, or soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a slow rate of water transmission.

- **Type D**

  Soils having very slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a hardpan or clay layer at or near the surface, and shallow soils over bedrock or other nearly impervious material. These soils have a very slow rate of water transmission.

The NRCS (formerly the Soil Conservation Service, or SCS) has developed maps for Washington State that show the specific soil classification for any given location. These maps are compiled by county and typically are available from the regional NRCS office. To determine which soil group to use for an analysis, locate the project site on the SCS map and read the soil classification listed. (See Appendix 4B for a web link to data to convert from the specific soil classification to a hydrologic soil group.) The WSDOT Materials Laboratory can also perform a soil analysis to determine the soil group for the project site. This should be done only if an SCS soils map cannot be located for the county in which the site is located; the available SCS map does not characterize the soils at the site (many SCS maps show "urban land" in highway rights-of-way and other heavily urbanized areas where the soil properties are uncertain); or, there is reason to doubt the accuracy of the information on the SCS map for the particular site.

When performing an SBUH analysis for a basin, it is common to encounter more than one soil type. If the soil types are fairly similar (within 20 CN points), a weighted average can be used. If the soil types are significantly different, the basin should be separated into smaller subbasins (previously described for different land uses).

Pervious ground cover and impervious ground cover should always be analyzed separately. If the computer program StormShed is used for the analysis, pervious and impervious land segments will automatically be separated, but the designer will have to combine and manually weight similar pervious soil types for a basin.

Antecedent Moisture Condition

The moisture condition in a soil at the onset of a storm event, referred to as the antecedent moisture condition (AMC), has a significant effect on both the volume and rate of runoff. Recognizing this, the SCS developed three antecedent soil moisture conditions, labeled conditions I, II, and III.

AMC I: Soils are dry, but not to the wilting point.

AMC II: Average conditions.

AMC III: Heavy rainfall, or light rainfall and low temperatures, has occurred within the last 5 days; near saturated or saturated soil.

Table 4-10 gives seasonal rainfall limits for the three antecedent soil moisture conditions:

Table 4-10. Total 5-day antecedent rainfall (inches).

AMC	Dormant Season	Growing Season
I	Less than 0.5	Less than 1.4
II	0.5 to 1.1	1.4 to 2.1
III	Over 1.1	Over 2.1

Varying antecedent moisture conditions are used in the design of evaporation ponds in Chapter 5. (Appendix 4C provides further information.) Refer to Appendix 4B for the curve number conversions for different antecedent moisture conditions for the case of Ia = 0.2S. For other conversions, see the SCS National Engineering Handbook No. 4, 1985.

Time of Concentration

Travel time (T_t) is the time it takes water to travel from one location to another in a watershed. T_t is a component of time of concentration (T_c), which is the time it takes for runoff to travel from the hydraulically most distant point of the watershed. T_c is computed by summing all the travel times for consecutive components of the drainage flow path. T_c influences the shape and peak of the runoff hydrograph. Urbanization usually decreases T_c, thereby increasing peak discharge. Note: The analysis detailed in this section can be performed using StormShed.

Water moves through a watershed as sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow, open channel flow, or some combination of these. The type of flow that occurs is best determined by field inspection.

Sheet flow is flow over plane surfaces. It usually occurs in the headwater areas of streams, and also for short distances on evenly graded slopes. With sheet flow, the friction value (n_s) (a modified Manning's roughness coefficient) is used. These n_s values are for very shallow flow depths of about 0.1 foot (3 cm) and are used only for travel lengths up to 300 feet (90 m). Appendix 4B gives Manning's n_s values for sheet flow for various surface conditions.

For sheet flow of up to 300 feet, use Manning's kinematic solution to directly compute T_t:

$$T_t = (0.42\ (n_s L)^{0.8})/((P_2)^{0.527}(s_o)^{0.4}) \qquad \textbf{(4-1)}$$

where: T_t = travel time (minutes)
n_s = sheet flow Manning's coefficient (dimensionless)
L = flow length (feet)
P_2 = 2-year, 24-hour rainfall (inches)
s_o = slope of hydraulic grade line (land slope, ft/ft)

After a maximum of 300 feet, sheet flow is assumed to become shallow concentrated flow. The average velocity for this flow can be calculated using the k_s values from Appendix 4B. Average velocity is a function of watercourse slope and type of channel. After computing the average velocity using the Velocity Equation (Equation 4-2), the travel time (T_t) for the shallow concentrated flow segment can be computed by dividing the length of the segment by the average velocity.

Open channels are assumed to begin where surveyed cross section information has been obtained, where channels are visible on aerial photographs, or where lines indicating streams appear on USGS Quadrangle maps. For developed drainage systems, the travel time of flow in a pipe is also represented as an open channel. The k_c values from Appendix 4B used in the Velocity Equation can be used to estimate average flow velocity. Average flow velocity is usually determined for bank full conditions. After average velocity is computed, the travel time (T_t) for the channel segment can be computed by dividing the length of the channel segment by the average velocity.

A commonly used method of computing average velocity of flow, once it has measurable depth, is the Velocity Equation:

$$V = (k)(s_o{}^{0.5}) \qquad \textbf{(4-2)}$$

where: V = velocity (ft/s)
k = time of concentration velocity factor (ft/s)
s_o = slope of flow path (ft/ft)

The following limitations apply in estimating travel time (T_t):

- Manning's kinematic solution should not be used for sheet flow longer than 300 feet.

- The equations given here to calculate velocity were developed by empirical means; therefore, English Units (such as inches) must be used for all input variables for the equation to yield a correct answer. Once the velocity is calculated, it can be converted to metric units to finish the travel time calculations in the case of shallow concentrated flow and channel flow.

Appendix 4B shows suggested "*n*" and "*k*" values for various land covers to be used in travel time calculations.

4-4.6.3 Hydrograph Synthesis

The SBUH method applies the selected CNs to SCS equations to compute soil absorption and precipitation excess from the rainfall hyetograph. Each time step of this process generates one increment of an instantaneous hydrograph with the same duration. The instantaneous hydrograph is then routed through an imaginary reservoir, with a time delay equal to the basin time of concentration. The end product is the runoff hydrograph for that land segment.

Abstractions (including rainfall interception and storage in small depressions in the ground surface) are also accounted for in the SBUH method. The abstraction of runoff, S, is computed from the CN as shown below:

$$S = (1000/CN) - 10 \qquad \textbf{(4-3)}$$

Using the abstraction value and precipitation for the given time step, the runoff depth, D, per unit area is calculated as follows:

$$D(t) = ((p(t) - 0.2\mathrm{S})\text{\textasciicircum}2)/(p(t) + 0.8\mathrm{S}) \qquad \textbf{(4-4)}$$

where: $p(t)$= precipitation for the time increment (in)

The total runoff, $R(t)$, for the time increment is computed as follows:

$$R(t) = D(t) - D(t\text{-}1) \qquad \textbf{(4-5)}$$

The instantaneous hydrograph, $I(t)$, in cubic feet per second (cfs) at each time step, dt, is computed as follows:

$$I(t) = 60.5\ R(t)\ A/dt \qquad \textbf{(4-6)}$$

where: A = area (acres)

dt = time interval (min)

Note: A time interval of 10 minutes or 5 minutes can be used for the Type 1A storm or the Regional Long Duration Storm, and 5 minutes can be used for the Short Duration Storm.

The runoff hydrograph, $Q(t)$, is then obtained by routing the instantaneous hydrograph $I(t)$, through an imaginary reservoir with a time delay equal to the time of concentration of the drainage basin. The following equation estimates the routed flow, $Q(t)$:

$$Q(t+1) = Q(t) + w[I(t) + I(t+1) - 2Q(t)] \quad \textbf{(4-7)}$$

where: $w = dt/(2Tc + dt)$

Tc = Time of concentration for the TDA or contributing drainage basin area

4-4.6.4 Level Pool Routing

This section presents the methodology for routing a hydrograph through a stormwater facility using hydrograph analysis. Level pool routing is done the same way regardless of the method used to generate the hydrograph. Therefore, this part of the analysis is not unique to the SBUH method. The level pool routing technique presented here is one of the simplest and most commonly used hydrograph routing methods and is the method used in StormShed. It is based on the continuity equation:

Inflow – Outflow = Change in Storage

$$((I1 + I2)/2) - ((O1 + O2)/2) = S2 - S1 \quad \textbf{(4-8)}$$

where: $I1, I2$ = Inflow at time 1 and time 2

$O1, O2$ = Outflow at time 1 and time 2

$S1, S2$ = Storage at time 1 and time 2

The time interval for the routing analysis must be consistent with the time interval used in developing the inflow hydrograph. The time interval used for a 24-hour storm is 10 minutes. The variables can be rearranged to obtain the following equation:

$$I1 + I2 + 2S1 - O1 = O2 + 2S2 \quad \textbf{(4-9)}$$

If the time interval is in minutes, the unit of storage (S) is now cubic feet per minute (cf/min), which can be converted to cfs by multiplying by 1 min/60 sec.

The terms on the left-hand side of the equation are known from the inflow hydrograph and from the storage and outflow values of the previous time step. The unknowns O and S can be solved interactively from the given stage-storage and stage-discharge curves. As with the synthesis of a hydrograph, the computations are fairly simple, but very voluminous. The best way to route a hydrograph through a stormwater facility is to use a computer program. Many hydrologic analysis software programs include features that make hydrograph routing an easy process.

4-4.6.5 Hy drograph Summation

One of the key advantages of hydrograph analysis is the ability to accurately describe the cumulative effect of runoff from several contributing drainage basin areas (within one TDA) having different runoff characteristics and travel times. This cumulative effect is best characterized by a single hydrograph, which is obtained by summing the individual hydrographs from tributary basins at a particular discharge point of interest.

The general procedure for performing a hydrograph summation begins with selecting a discharge point of interest where it is important to know the effects of the runoff generated on the project site. Next, route each individual hydrograph through a conveyance system that carries it to the point of interest. The final step is to sum the flow values for each hydrograph for all of the time intervals. This will yield a single discharge hydrograph.

4-4.7 Eastern Washington Design Storm Events

When rainfall patterns during storms were analyzed in eastern Washington, it was concluded that the SCS Type II rainfall does not match the historical records. Two types of storms were found to be prominent on the east side of the state: short duration thunder storms (later spring through early fall seasons), and long duration winter storms (any time of year, but most common in the late fall through winter period, and the late spring and early summer period). The short duration storm generates the greatest peak discharges and should be used to design flow-based BMPs. The long duration storm occurs over several days, generating the greatest volume, and should be used to design volume-based BMPs.

When using the long duration storm, it should be noted that the state has been divided into the following four climatic regions:

1. East Slope Cascades
2. Central Basin
3. Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse
4. NE and Blue Mountains

The long duration storms in Regions 2 and 3 are similar to the SCS Type 1A storm. Designers in those regions can choose to use either the long duration storm or the SCS Type 1A storm. Eastern Washington Design Storm Events are further discussed in Appendix 4C.

4-4.8 Modeling Using Low-Impact Development Techniques in Eastern Washington

Low-impact development (LID) is a BMP application that manages stormwater on a small scale and disperses it into a facility as close as possible to the source of runoff. This is in contrast to conventional BMP applications that manage stormwater at one location on the project site.

Design of low-impact development BMP drainage features in eastern Washington requires a different approach than in western Washington, since the sizing of these systems is based on a single event hydrologic model. Adjustments to site runoff parameters are based on the SCS Curve Numbers (CNs) applicable to the site ground cover and soil conditions. Appendix 4B presents the adjusted runoff CNs for selected soil and ground cover combinations, reflecting the reduced values for situations where pervious areas drain to low-impact BMPs. (See Section 4-4.6.2 for soil type definitions and more discussion on CN values.) It should be noted that the analysis described in this section generally uses StormShed.

Composite custom CN values are calculated using a weighted approach based on individual land covers, without considering disconnectivity of the site's impervious surfaces. This approach is appropriate because it places increased emphasis on minimal disturbance to, and retention of, site areas that have potential for runoff storage and infiltration. This approach also provides an incentive to save more trees and shrubs and maximize the use of Type A and B soils for recharge.

If the impervious surface coverage on the site is less than 30% of the site area, the percentage of unconnected impervious areas within the watershed influences the calculation of the CN value. For linear transportation systems, the percentage of impervious surface should be evaluated based on a "unit length" method, such as a drainage area 30 feet wide that is bound by the crown of the roadway centerline to the right-of-way limit.

Use Equation 4-10 when disconnectivity of impervious areas is not considered:

$$CN_c = \frac{CN_1 A_1 + CN_2 A_2 ... + CN_j A_j}{A_1 + A_2 ... + A_j}$$

(4-10)

where: CN_c = Composite Curve Number

A_j = Area of each land cover in ft^2

CN_j = Curve number for each land cover

Use Equation 4-11 for sites with less than 30% impervious surface coverage where those impervious surfaces are disconnected:

$$CN_c = CN_p + \left(\frac{P_{imp}}{100}\right) x \left(98 - CN_p\right) x \left(1 - 0.5R\right)$$

(4-11)

where: CN_c = Composite Curve Number

CN_p = Composite pervious Curve Number

P_{imp} = Percentage impervious site area

R = Ratio of unconnected impervious area to total impervious area

Unconnected impervious areas are impervious areas without any direct connection to a drainage system or other impervious surface.

After calculation of the CN_c is complete, use the SBUH method to determine stormwater runoff volumes and rates from the unit length of roadway basin (for example, 30-foot width for continuous roadway prisms with consistent soils/vegetation) for the applicable runoff treatment and flow control design storms. The method can also be applied to specific roadway lengths (noncontinuous width) where soils and roadway character vary.

It is extremely important to verify soil infiltration capacity and vegetative cover in all areas where this method is to be applied. Determine the natural infiltration capacity of the roadside area where runoff will be distributed. The WSDOT Materials Laboratory should provide the infiltration rates, although initial estimates based on published NRCS data can be used for rough sizing estimates (see Section 4-5.1). If the resultant infiltration rate (Q) of the receiving area is greater than the peak 25-year design flow rate of the contributing drainage basin, all stormwater will be infiltrated along the roadside and no further analysis is needed. Calculation of the infiltrative flow rate, Q_i, can be performed as follows:

Calculation of Infiltrative Flow Rate

$$Q_i = \frac{F \times A}{43200 \frac{in/hr}{ft/s}}$$

where: Q_i = flow rate in cfs

A = area available for infiltration in ft^2

F = saturated (long term) infiltration rate in inches/hour

Should peak flow rates of the contributing drainage basin exceed the infiltrative flow rate of the receiving roadside area, further analysis is required and some storage of stormwater will be necessary. In semiarid nonurban areas, formalized detention ponds are usually not the best solution. Storage of minor to moderate amounts of stormwater runoff can be accomplished by using natural depression storage. This includes depressions in the roadside topography, swales, and even roadway ditches. Each of these features can accommodate stormwater storage and allow for releasing runoff through infiltration over a longer time scale.

To determine the needed runoff retention volume, subtract the continuous saturated infiltration rate from the 25-year storm hydrograph produced from the SBUH method. The resulting quantity represents the runoff volume that needs to be detained until infiltration can "catch up" with the runoff. Check to see if this volume can be accommodated in the existing roadside landscape or roadway ditches. If roadside hydraulic conveyance capacity allows, *check dams* may be placed in ditches to detain stormwater in noncentralized locations. This method for small-scale flow detention will require a site-specific analysis; a continuous linear approach may not be valid.

4-5 Infiltration Design Guidance

An infiltration facility provides stormwater flow control by containing excess runoff in a storage facility, then percolating that runoff into the surrounding soil. Some infiltration facilities can provide runoff treatment, but to do so requires certain soil characteristics. Section 4-5.2, Site Suitability Criteria, provides a detailed discussion of soil characteristics needed to design infiltration facilities for runoff treatment. Otherwise, runoff treatment can be addressed through pretreatment (see Chapter 5 for additional guidance).

4-5.1 General Criteria

For a site to be considered suitable for an infiltration pond, the design infiltration rate must be at least 0.5 inches/hour. Infiltration can still be considered in flow control facility design if the infiltration rate is less than this, but infiltration must be considered to be a secondary function in that case. This pond must be designed to a desirable depth of 3 feet, and a maximum depth of 6 feet, with a minimum freeboard of 1 foot above the design water level (i.e., 1 foot above the 50-year water surface elevation for western Washington and 1 foot above the 25-year water surface elevation for eastern Washington). For a web link to examples of infiltration pond design and associated spreadsheets, see Appendix 4A. Please note that examples are separated into western Washington examples on MGSFlood and eastern Washington examples on StormShed.

1. For western Washington, an infiltration flow control pond must be designed using a continuous hydrograph model to infiltrate sufficient volume so that the overflow matches the Duration Standard (or 100% of the runoff volume).
2. For eastern Washington, an infiltration flow control pond must be designed using a single event hydrograph model to infiltrate the runoff treatment volume out of the pond within 72 hours. An infiltration flow control pond must be designed using a single event hydrograph model to infiltrate the 25-year storm with an overflow for the higher events or infiltrate 100% of the storm runoff volume.

Design Procedure for Infiltration Ponds

An overview of the design procedure is provided in Figures 4-14 through 4-16. The focus of these design procedures is to size the facility for flow control. For other geotechnical aspects of the facility design, including geotechnical stability of the facility and constructibility, see Chapter 5 and the WSDOT *Design Manual,* Chapter 510. A multidisciplinary approach is required to design infiltration facilities, as described in Chapter 2. Also, two facility design approaches are provided: (1) a detailed analysis that allows the designer to consider the type of hydrograph used (continuous or single event); the depth to the groundwater table; the site-specific hydraulic gradient for the facility; and the facility geometry, and (2) a simplified approach that generally follows Ecology's SMMWW.

The simplified approach was derived for high groundwater and shallow pond sites in western Washington and, in general, will produce conservative designs. The simplified approach can be used when determining the trial geometry of the infiltration facility; for small or low-impact facilities; or where a more conservative design is acceptable. The simplified method must not be used for determination of short-term soil infiltration rates for runoff treatment infiltration facilities for western Washington, as referenced in the Site Suitability Criteria (SSC 5).

Guidance on design procedures for LID infiltration facilities with soil amendments will have an alternative infiltration process. This process has been accepted by Ecology and it follows a standard ASTM. Before a method is selected to determine the infiltration rate, the first step is to go through the Site Suitability Criteria (below). **All** the criteria must be met in order to use infiltration.

4-5.2 Site Suitability Criteria (SSC)

This section specifies the site suitability criteria that must be considered for siting infiltration treatment systems. When a site investigation reveals that any of the following eight applicable criteria cannot be met, appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented so that the infiltration facility will not pose a threat to safety, health, or the environment.

For infiltration treatment, site selection, and design decisions, a qualified engineer with geotechnical and hydrogeologic experience should prepare a geotechnical and hydrogeologic report. A comparable professional may also conduct the work if it is under the seal of a registered Professional Engineer (PE). The design engineer may use a team of certified or registered professionals in soil science, hydrogeology, geology, and other related fields.

To design infiltration facilities, the following SSC must be followed (if applicable), in addition to those described in the BMP descriptions:

SSC 1 – Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for infiltration facilities are generally provided in local regulations, Uniform Building Code requirements, or other state regulations. The following setback criteria are used, unless otherwise required by Critical Area Ordinance or other jurisdictional authorities:

- In general, infiltration facilities should be located 20 feet downslope and 100 feet upslope from building foundations, and 50 feet or more behind the top of slopes steeper than 15%. The designer should request a geotechnical report for the project that would evaluate structural site stability impacts due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties (especially on hills with known side-hill seeps). The report should address the adequacy of the proposed BMP locations and recommend any adjustments to the setback distances provided above, either greater or smaller, based on the results of this evaluation.

- Infiltration facilities should be set back at least 100 feet from drinking water wells, septic tanks or drain fields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies and within 1-, 5-, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with health department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, WAC 246-290-135).
- Additional setbacks must be considered if roadway deicers or herbicides are likely to be present in the influent to the infiltration system.
- Infiltration facilities must be located at least 20 feet from a native growth protection easement (NGPE).
- Infiltration facilities must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line and vegetative buffer. This distance may be increased based on permit conditions required by the local government.

SSC 2 – Seepage Analysis and Control

Determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones near building foundations, roads, parking lots, or sloping sites. Infiltration of stormwater is not recommended on or upgradient of a contaminated site where infiltration of even clean water can cause contaminants to mobilize.

Sidewall seepage is not usually a concern if seepage occurs through the same stratum as the bottom of the facility. However, for engineered soils, or for soils with very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the sidewalls may be significant. In those cases, the sidewalls must be lined, either with an impervious liner or with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, to prevent seepage of untreated flows through the sidewalls.

SSC 3 – Groundwater Protection Areas

A site is not suitable if the infiltrated stormwater will cause a violation of the Ecology Ground Water Quality Standard (WAC 173-200). Local jurisdictions should be consulted to determine applicable pretreatment requirements and whether the site is located in an aquifer-sensitive area, a sole-source aquifer, or a wellhead protection zone.

SSC 4 – Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer

The base of all infiltration basins or trench systems must be ≥ 5 feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan), or other low permeability layer. A separation down to 3 feet may be considered if the design of the overflow and/or bypass structures is judged by the site professional to be adequate to prevent overtopping and meet the Site Suitability Criteria specified in this section.

SSC 5 – Soil Infiltration Rate

For runoff treatment infiltration facilities, the short-term soil infiltration rate is 2.4 inches per hour or less, calculated as described in Section 4-5.2.1 using the “Detailed Approach,” but using a value of 1.0 for $CF_{silt/bio}$. The “Simplified Approach” (Section 4-5.2.2) should not be used for this determination in western Washington, as it is set up to only produce long-term infiltration rates. The infiltration rate calculated in this manner should not be used to size the facility, but only to determine whether the treatment criterion is met. This infiltration rate is typical for soil textures that possess sufficient physical and chemical properties for adequate treatment, particularly for soluble pollutant removal (see below). It is comparable to the textures represented by Hydrologic Soil Groups B and C (see hydrologic soil groups in Section 4-4.6.2).

If the potential pollutant loadings and vadose zone treatment capacity meet the criteria of Section 4-5.3, then infiltration rates greater than 2.4 inches per hour may be permitted for runoff treatment facilities. If the results of Table 4-15 are “Suitable for all UIC facilities,” then no further action is required. If the results of Table 4-15 are “Suitable for 2-stage drywell,” then the infiltration facility must be preceded as detailed in Note * of the table. If the matrix in Table 4-15 leads to any other result, the maximum infiltration rate of 2.4 inches per hour applies to the facility.

Long-term infiltration rates, calculated as described in Section 4-5.2.1 and accounting for long-term effects such as siltation and biofouling (up to 2.0 inches per hour), can also be considered if the infiltration receptor is not a sole-source aquifer, and if, in the judgment of the site professional, the treatment soil has characteristics comparable to those specified in SSC 7 to adequately control the target pollutants.

SSC 6 – Drawdown Time

For western Washington, it is necessary to infiltrate 91% of the total runoff volume from the infiltration basin within 36 hours. Under this premise, the storm/runoff ends 12 hours after the runoff period midpoint and combines with the 24-hour drain criteria. Therefore, the actual drawdown time is 36 hours. Flow control and runoff treatment in eastern Washington is designed to completely drain ponded runoff within 72 hours in order to meet the following objectives:

- Restore hydraulic capacity to receive runoff from a new storm (applicable for single event modeling, but not applicable for continuous hydrograph modeling).
- Aerate vegetation and soil to keep the vegetation healthy, prevent anoxic conditions in the treatment soil, and enhance the biodegradation of pollutants and organics (if the infiltration facility is to provide treatment).
- In general, this drawdown requirement is applicable only if it is intended for the infiltration facility to provide treatment, and for addressing storage capacity if a single event hydrograph model is used.

SSC 7 – Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment

Soil texture and design infiltration rates should be considered, along with the physical and chemical characteristics specified below, to determine if the soil is adequate for removing the target pollutants. The following soil properties must be carefully considered in making such a determination:

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) of the treatment soil must be ≥5 milliequivalents CEC/100 g dry soil (U.S. EPA Method 9081). *Consider empirical testing of soil sorption capacity, if practicable*. Ensure that soil CEC is sufficient for expected pollutant loadings, particularly heavy metals. CEC values of >5 meq/100g are expected in loamy sands, according to Rawls et al. (1982). Lower CEC content may be considered if it is based on a soil loading capacity determination for the target pollutants that is accepted by the local jurisdiction.
- The sodium adsorption ratio (SAR) can have a dramatic effect on the long-term performance of an infiltration facility. Soils with an excess of sodium ions, compared to calcium and magnesium ions, remain in a dispersed condition, almost impermeable to water. A dispersed soil is extremely sticky when wet, tends to crust, and becomes very hard and cloddy when dry. An SAR value of 15 or greater indicates that an excess of sodium will be adsorbed by the soil clay particles and severely restrict infiltration. Montmorillionite, vermiculite, illite, and mica-derived clays are more sensitive to sodium than other clays and could develop problems if the SAR is greater than 5. If runoff contains high levels of sodium in relation to calcium and magnesium, it may also present problems in the future. The addition of gypsum (calcium sulfate) to the soil can be used to free the sodium and allow it to be leached from the soil.
- Depth of soil used for infiltration treatment must be a minimum of 18 inches, except for designed, vegetated infiltration facilities with an active root zone, such as bioinfiltration swales.
- Organic content of the treatment soil (ASTM D 2974): organic matter can increase the sorptive capacity of the soil for some pollutants. The site professional should evaluate whether the organic matter content is sufficient for control of the target pollutant(s).
- Waste fill materials should not be used as infiltration soil media, nor should such media be placed over uncontrolled or nonengineered fill soils.
- Engineered soils may be used to meet the design criteria in this chapter and the runoff treatment targets in Table 2-1. Field performance evaluation(s), using acceptable protocols, would be needed to determine feasibility and acceptability by the local jurisdiction. (See Soil Amendments in Chapter 5 for more information.)

SSC 8 – Cold Climate and Impacts of Roadway Deicers

- For cold climate design criteria (snowmelt/ice impacts), refer to the D. Caraco and R. Claytor document, Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates, U.S. EPA, December 1997.
- The potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells must be considered in the siting determination. Mitigation measures must be implemented if infiltration of roadway deicers can cause a violation of groundwater quality standards. For assistance, contact region or HQ hydraulics staff.

4-5.2.1 Detailed Approach to Determining Infiltration Rates

This detailed approach was obtained from Massmann (2003). Procedures for the detailed approach are as follows (see Figures 4-14 and 4-15 for a flowchart of this process):

1. **Select a location:**

   This will be based on the ability to convey flow to the location and the expected soil conditions. The minimum setback distances must also be met. (See Section 4-5.2 for Site Suitability Criteria and setback distances.)

2. **Estimate volume of stormwater, V_{design}:**

   For eastern Washington, a single event hydrograph or value for the volume can be used, allowing a modeling approach such as StormShed to be conducted. For western Washington, a continuous hydrograph should generally be used, requiring a model such as MGSFlood to perform the calculations. (See Section 4-3 for western Washington methodology and Section 4-4 for eastern Washington methodology.)

3. **Develop a trial infiltration facility geometry based on length, width, and depth:**

   To accomplish this, either assume an infiltration rate based on previously available data, or use a default infiltration rate of 0.5 inches/hour. This trial geometry should be used to help locate the facility, and for planning purposes in developing the geotechnical subsurface investigation plan.

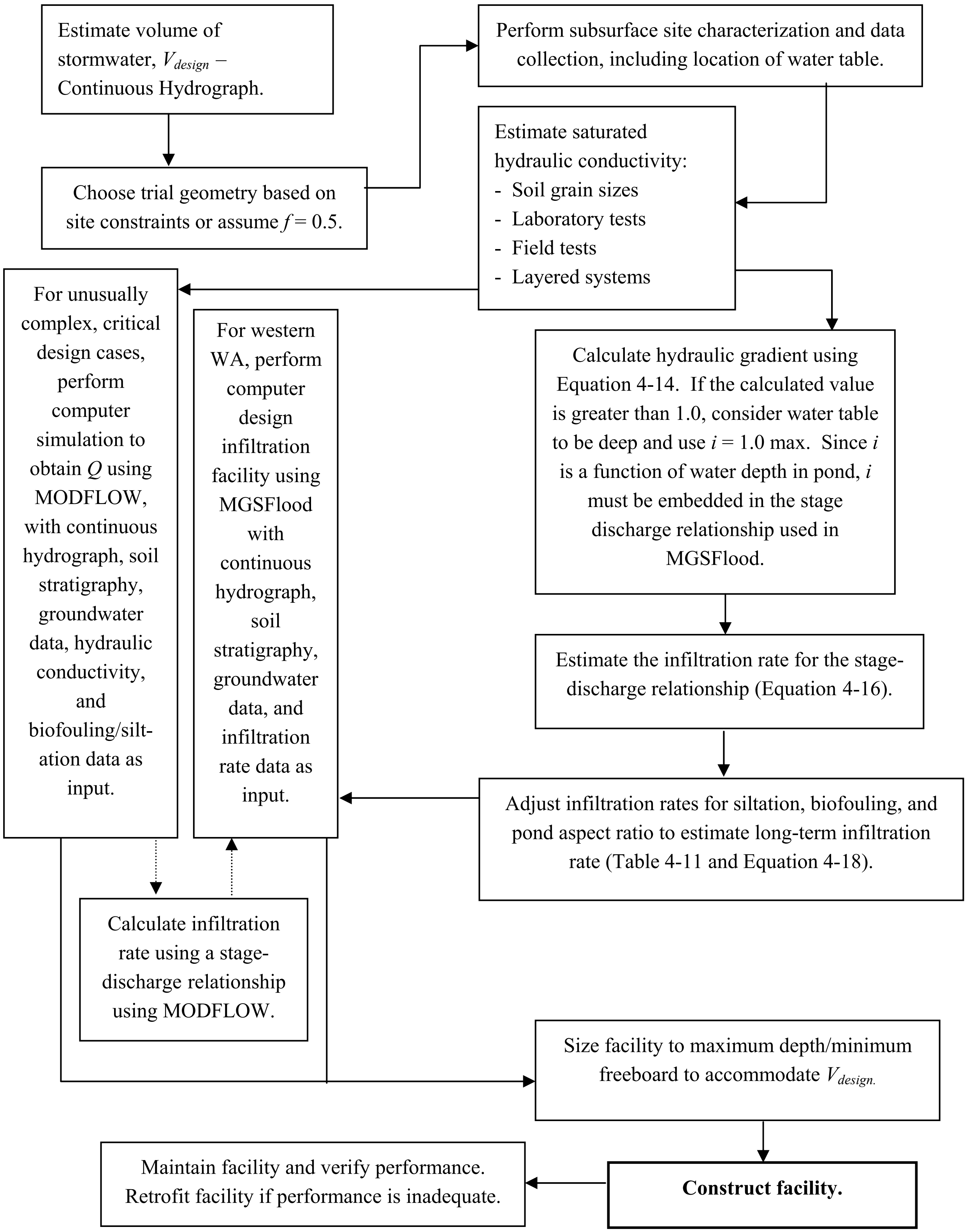


Figure 4-14. Engineering design steps for final design of infiltration facilities using the continuous hydrograph method (western Washington).

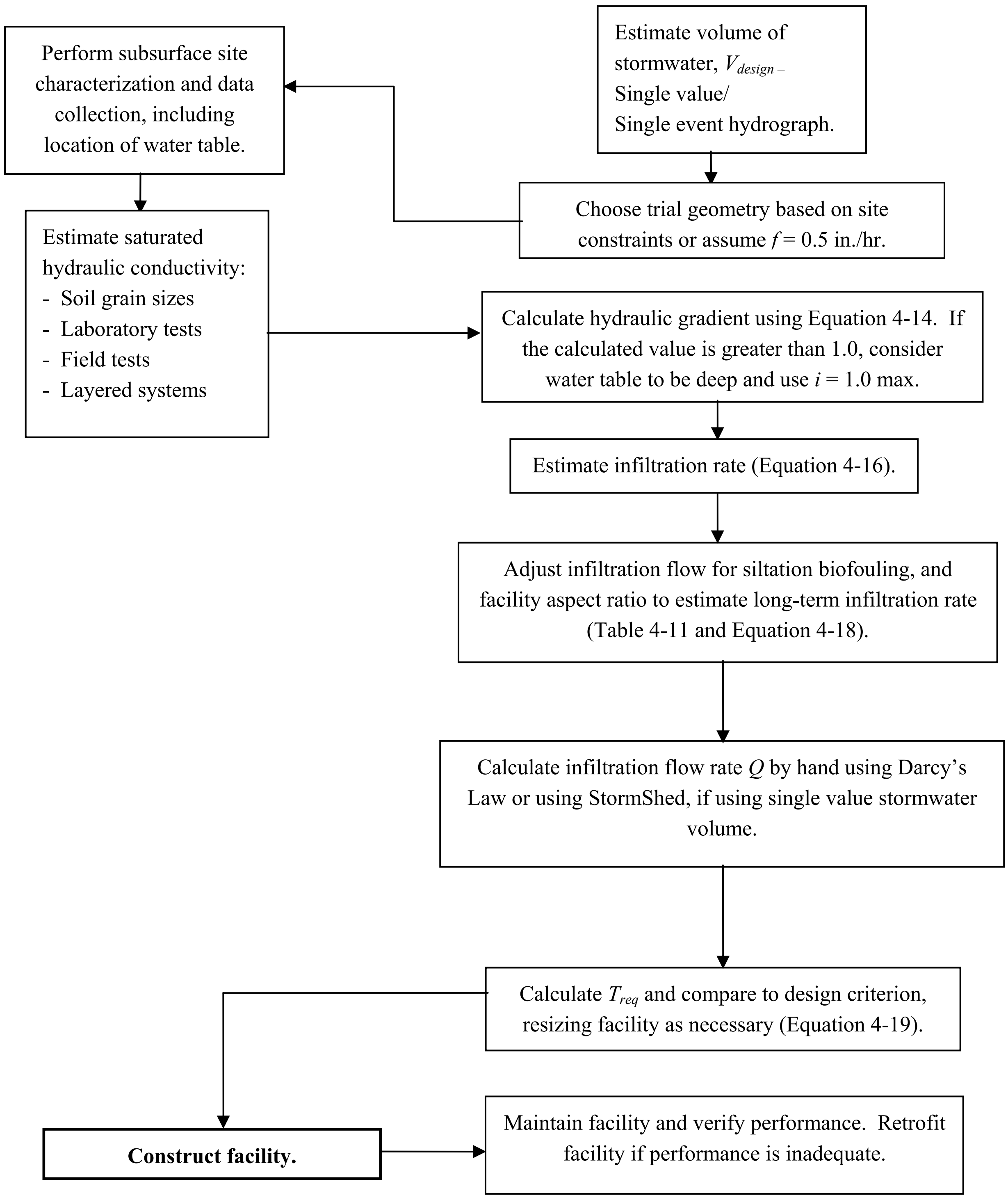


Figure 4-15. Engineering design steps for final design of infiltration facilities using the single hydrograph method (eastern Washington).

4. **Conduct a geotechnical investigation:**

A geotechnical investigation must be conducted to evaluate the site's suitability for infiltration; to establish the infiltration rate for design; and to evaluate slope stability, foundation capacity, and other geotechnical design information needed to design and assess constructibility of the facility. Geotechnical investigation requirements are provided below.

The depth, number of test holes or test pits, and sampling described below should be increased if a licensed engineer with geotechnical expertise (P.E.), or other licensed professional acceptable to WSDOT, judges that conditions are highly variable and make it necessary to increase the depth or the number of explorations to accurately estimate the infiltration system's performance. The exploration program described below may be decreased if a licensed engineer with geotechnical expertise (P.E.), or other licensed professional acceptable to WSDOT, judges that conditions are relatively uniform, or that design parameters are known to be conservative based on site-specific data or experience, and the borings/test pits omitted will not influence the design or successful operation of the facility.

- For infiltration basins (ponds), at least one test pit or test hole per 5,000 ft^2 of basin infiltrating bottom surface area.
- For infiltration trenches, at least one test pit or test hole per 100 feet of trench length.
- For drywells, samples should be collected from each layer beneath the facility to the depth of groundwater or to approximately 40 feet below the ground surface (approximately 30 feet below the base of the drywell).Subsurface explorations (test holes or test pits) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of at least 5 times the maximum design depth of water proposed for the infiltration facility, or at least 2 feet into the saturated zone.
- Continuous sampling to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of 2.5 times the maximum design depth of water proposed for the infiltration facility, or at least 2 feet into the saturated zone, but not less than 6 feet. Samples obtained must be adequate for the purpose of soil gradation/classification testing.
- Groundwater monitoring wells installed to locate the groundwater table and establish its gradient, direction of flow, and seasonal variations, considering both confined and unconfined aquifers. (Monitoring through at least one wet season is required, unless site historical data regarding groundwater levels is available.) In general, a minimum of three wells per infiltration facility, or three hydraulically connected surface or groundwater features, are needed to determine the direction of flow and gradient.

If gradient and flow direction are not required, and there is low risk of downgradient impacts, one monitoring well is sufficient. Alternative means of establishing the groundwater levels may be considered. If the groundwater in the area is known to be greater than 50 feet below the proposed facility, detailed investigation of the groundwater regime is not necessary.

- Laboratory testing as necessary to establish the soil gradation characteristics, and other properties as necessary, to complete the infiltration facility design. At a minimum, one grain-size analysis per soil stratum in each test hole must be conducted within 2.5 times the maximum design water depth, but not less than 6 feet. When assessing the hydraulic conductivity characteristics of the site, soil layers at greater depths must be considered if the licensed professional conducting the investigation determines that deeper layers will influence the rate of infiltration for the facility, requiring soil gradation/classification testing for layers deeper than indicated above.

5. **From the geotechnical investigation, determine the following, as applicable:**

- The stratification of the soil/rock below the infiltration facility, including the soil gradation (and plasticity, if any) characteristics of each stratum.
- The depth to the groundwater table and to any bedrock/impermeable layers.
- Seasonal variation of the groundwater table.
- The existing groundwater flow direction and gradient.
- The hydraulic conductivity or the infiltration rate for the soil/rock at the infiltration facility.
- The porosity of the soil below the infiltration facility, but above the water table.
- The lateral extent of the infiltration receptor.
- The impact of the infiltration rate and volume on flow direction and water table at the project site, and the potential discharge point or area of the infiltrating water.
- For other aspects of the geotechnical design of infiltration facilities, see Chapters 2 and 5.

6. **Determine the saturated hydraulic conductivity as follows:**

- For each defined layer below the pond to a depth below the pond bottom of 2.5 times the maximum depth of water in the pond, but not less than 6 feet, estimate the saturated hydraulic conductivity in cm/sec using the following relationship (see Massmann, 2003, and Massmann et al., 2003):

$$\log_{10}(K_{sat}) = -1.57 + 1.90D_{10} + 0.015D_{60} - 0.013D_{90} - 2.08f_{fines} \qquad \textbf{(4-12)}$$

  where: K_{sat} = the saturated hydraulic conductivity in cm/s
  D_{10}, D_{60} and D_{90} = grain sizes in mm for which 10%, 60%, and 90% of the sample is more fine
  f_{fines} = the fraction of the soil (by weight) that passes the number-200 sieve

  Use the following equation to convert K_{sat} from cm/s to ft/day:

  K_{sat} (ft/day) = K_{sat} (cm/s) x 2,834.65

  If the licensed professional conducting the investigation determines that deeper layers will influence the rate of infiltration for the facility, soil layers at greater depths must be considered when assessing the site's hydraulic conductivity characteristics. Massmann (2003) indicates that where the water table is deep, soil or rock strata up to 100 feet below an infiltration facility can influence the rate of infiltration. Note that only the layers near and above the water table or low permeability zone (e.g., a clay, dense glacial till, or rock layer) need to be considered, as the layers below the groundwater table or low permeability zone do not significantly influence the rate of infiltration. Also, note that this equation for estimating hydraulic conductivity assumes minimal compaction consistent with the use of tracked (i.e., low to moderate ground pressure) excavation equipment, as described in Section 5-4.2.1.

  If the soil layer being characterized has been exposed to heavy compaction, or is heavily overconsolidated due to its geologic history (e.g., overridden by continental glaciers), the hydraulic conductivity for the layer could be approximately an order of magnitude less than what would be estimated based on grain size characteristics alone (Pitt, 2003). In such cases, compaction effects must be taken into account when estimating hydraulic conductivity. For clean, uniformly graded sands and gravels, the reduction in K_{sat} due to compaction will be much less than an order of magnitude. For well-graded sands and gravels with moderate to high silt content, the reduction in K_{sat} will be close to an order of magnitude. For soils that contain clay, the reduction in K_{sat} could be greater than an order of magnitude.

- For critical designs, the in situ saturated conductivity of a specific layer can be obtained through field tests such as the packer permeability test (above or below the water table), the piezocone (below the water table), an air conductivity test (above the water table), or through the use of a pilot infiltration test (PIT), as described in Ecology's SMMWW. Note that these field tests generally provide a hydraulic conductivity combined with a hydraulic gradient (see Equation 4-16). In some of these tests, the hydraulic gradient may be close to 1.0; therefore, in effect, the magnitude of the test result is the same as the hydraulic conductivity. In other cases, the hydraulic gradient may be close to the gradient that is likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility. This issue will need to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis when interpreting the results of field tests. It is important to recognize that the gradient in the test may not be the same as the gradient likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility in the long-term (i.e., when groundwater mounding is fully developed).

- Once the saturated hydraulic conductivity for each layer has been identified, determine the effective average saturated hydraulic conductivity below the pond. Hydraulic conductivity estimates from different layers can be combined using the harmonic mean:

$$K_{equiv} = \frac{d}{\sum \frac{d_n}{K_{sat\_n}}} \qquad \textbf{(4-13)}$$

where: K_{equiv} = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity in ft/day
d = the total depth of the soil column in feet
d_n = the thickness of layer "*n*" in the soil column in feet
K_{sat_n} = the saturated hydraulic conductivity of layer "*n*" in the soil column in ft/day

The depth of the soil column, *d*, typically would include all layers between the pond bottom and the water table. However, for sites with very deep water tables (>100 feet) where groundwater mounding to the base of the pond is not likely to occur, it is recommended that the total depth of the soil column in Equation 4-13 be limited to approximately 20 times the depth of pond. This is to ensure that the most important and relevant layers are included in the hydraulic conductivity calculations. Deep layers that are not likely to affect the infiltration rate near the pond bottom should not be included in Equation 4-13. Equation 4-13 may over-estimate the effective hydraulic conductivity value at sites with low conductivity layers immediately beneath the infiltration pond. For sites where the lowest conductivity layer is within 5 feet of the base of the pond, it is suggested that this lowest hydraulic conductivity value be used as the equivalent hydraulic conductivity rather than the value from Equation 4-13. The harmonic mean given by Equation 4-13 is the appropriate effective hydraulic conductivity for flow that is perpendicular to stratigraphic layers, and will produce conservative results when flow has a significant horizontal component (such as could occur with groundwater mounding).

7. **For unusually complex, critical design cases, develop input data for a simulation model:**

Use MODFLOW, including trial geometry, continuous hydrograph data, soil stratigraphy, groundwater data, hydraulic conductivity data, and reduction in hydraulic conductivity due to siltation or biofouling on the surface of the facility. Use of this approach will generally be fairly rare. If necessary, the design office should contact consulting services for help in locating an appropriate resource to complete a MODFLOW analysis. Otherwise, skip this step and develop the data needed to estimate the hydraulic gradient, as shown in the following steps.

8. **Calculate the hydraulic gradient:**

The steady state hydraulic gradient is calculated as follows:

$$\text{gradient} = \text{i} \approx \frac{D_{wt} + D_{pond}}{138.62(K_{equiv}{}^{0.1})} CF_{size} \qquad \textbf{(4-14)}$$

where: i = steady state hydraulic gradient
D_{wt} = the depth from the base of the infiltration facility to the water table in feet
K_{equiv} = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity in feet/day
D_{pond} = the depth of water in the facility in feet (see Massmann et al., 2003, for the development of this equation)
CF_{size} = the correction for pond size

The correction factor was developed for ponds with bottom areas between 0.6 and 6 acres in size. For small ponds (ponds with area equal to 2/3 acre), the correction factor is equal to 1.0. For large ponds (ponds with area equal to 6 acres), the correction factor is 0.2, as shown in Equation 4-15.

$$CF_{size} = 0.73(A_{pond})^{-0.76} \qquad \textbf{(4-15)}$$

where: A_{pond} = the area of pond bottom in acres

This equation generally will result in a calculated gradient of less than 1.0 for moderate to shallow groundwater depths (or to a low permeability layer) below the facility, and conservatively accounts for the development of a groundwater mound. A more detailed groundwater mounding analysis, using a program such as MODFLOW, will usually result in a gradient that is equal to or greater than the gradient calculated using Equation 4-14. If the calculated gradient is greater than 1.0, the water table is considered to be deep, and a maximum gradient of 1.0 must be used.

Typically, a depth to groundwater of 100 feet or more is required to obtain a gradient of 1.0 or more using this equation. Since the gradient is a function of depth of water in the facility, the gradient will vary as the pond fills during the season. Therefore, the gradient must be calculated as part of the stage-discharge calculation used in MGSFlood for the continuous hydrograph method. For design using the single event hydrograph, it is sufficiently accurate to calculate the hydraulic gradient based on one half the maximum depth of water in the pond.

9. **Calculate the infiltration rate using Darcy's Law as follows:**

$$f = 0.5K_{equiv}\left(\frac{dh}{dz}\right) = 0.5K_{equiv}(i) \qquad \textbf{(4-16)}$$

where: f = the infiltration rate of water through a unit cross section of the infiltration facility (in/hr)
K_{equiv} = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity (ft/day)
dh/dz = the steady state hydraulic gradient
i = the steady state hydraulic gradient
0.5 = converts ft/day to in/hr

10. **Adjust the infiltration rate or infiltration stage-discharge relationship obtained in Steps 8 and 9:**

This is done to account for reductions in the rate resulting from long-term siltation and biofouling, taking into consideration the degree of long-term maintenance and performance monitoring anticipated, the degree of influent control (e.g., pre-settling ponds, biofiltration swales), and the potential for siltation, litterfall, moss buildup, etc., based on the surrounding environment. It should be assumed that an average to high degree of maintenance will be performed on these facilities. A low degree of maintenance should be considered only when there is no other option (e.g., access problems). The infiltration rates estimated in Steps 8 and 9 are multiplied by the reduction factors summarized in Table 4-11.

Table 4-11. Infiltration rate reduction factors to account for biofouling and siltation effects for ponds (Massmann, 2003).

Potential for Biofouling	Degree of Long-Term Maintenance/Performance Monitoring	Infiltration Rate Reduction Factor, $CF_{silt/bio}$
Low	Average to High	0.9
Low	Low	0.6
High	Average to High	0.5
High	Low	0.2

The values in this table assume that final excavation of the facility to the finished grade is deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected (e.g., construction runoff is not allowed into the facility after final excavation of the facility), as required in Section 5-4.2.1.

An example of a situation with a high potential for biofouling would be a pond located in a shady area where moss and litterfall from adjacent vegetation can build up on the pond bottom and sides, the upgradient drainage area will remain in a disturbed condition long-term, and no pretreatment (e.g., presettling ponds, biofiltration swales) is provided. A low degree of long-term maintenance includes, for example, situations where access to the facility for maintenance is very difficult or limited, or where there is minimal control of the party responsible for enforcing the required maintenance. A low degree of maintenance should be considered only when there is no other option.

Adjust this infiltration rate for the effect of pond aspect ratio by multiplying the infiltration rate determined in Step 9 (Equation 4-16) by the aspect ratio correction factor CF_{aspect} as shown in the following equation. In no case shall CF_{aspect} be greater than 1.4.

$$CF_{aspect} = 0.02A_r + 0.98 \qquad \textbf{(4-17)}$$

where: CF_{aspect} = the aspect ratio correction factor
A_r = the aspect ratio for the pond (length/width)

The final infiltration rate will therefore be as follows:

$$f = (0.5K_{equiv})(i)(CF_{aspect})(CF_{silt/bio}) \qquad \textbf{(4-18)}$$

The infiltration rates calculated based on Equations 4-16 and 4-17 are long-term design rates. No additional reduction factor or factor of safety is needed.

11. **Determine the infiltration flow rate *Q*:**

If the infiltration facility is located in eastern Washington, determine the infiltration flow rate Q using the Infiltration Calculation Spreadsheet at: http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm. If located in western Washington, determine the infiltration flow rate Q using MGSFlood.

12. **Size the facility:**

Use one of the following two approaches, depending on the type of hydrograph used:

- If using a continuous hydrograph for design, size the facility to ensure that the desirable pond depth is 3 feet, with 1-foot-minimum required freeboard. The maximum allowable pond depth is 6 feet.

- If using a single event/single hydrograph, calculate T_{req}, using StormShed to determine the time it takes the pond to empty, or from the value of Q determined from Step 11 and V_{design} from Step 2 as follows:

$$T_{req} = \frac{V_{design}}{Q} \tag{4-19}$$

where: T_{req} = the time required to infiltrate the design stormwater volume
V_{design} = volume of stormwater in cubic feet
Q = infiltration flow rate in cfs

This value of T_{req} must be less than or equal to the maximum allowed infiltration time specified in the Site Suitability Criteria in Section 4-5.2.

13. **Construct the facility:**

Maintain and monitor the facility for performance in accordance with the WSDOT *Maintenance Manual* (M 51-01).

4-5.2.2 Simplified Approach to Determining Infiltration Rates

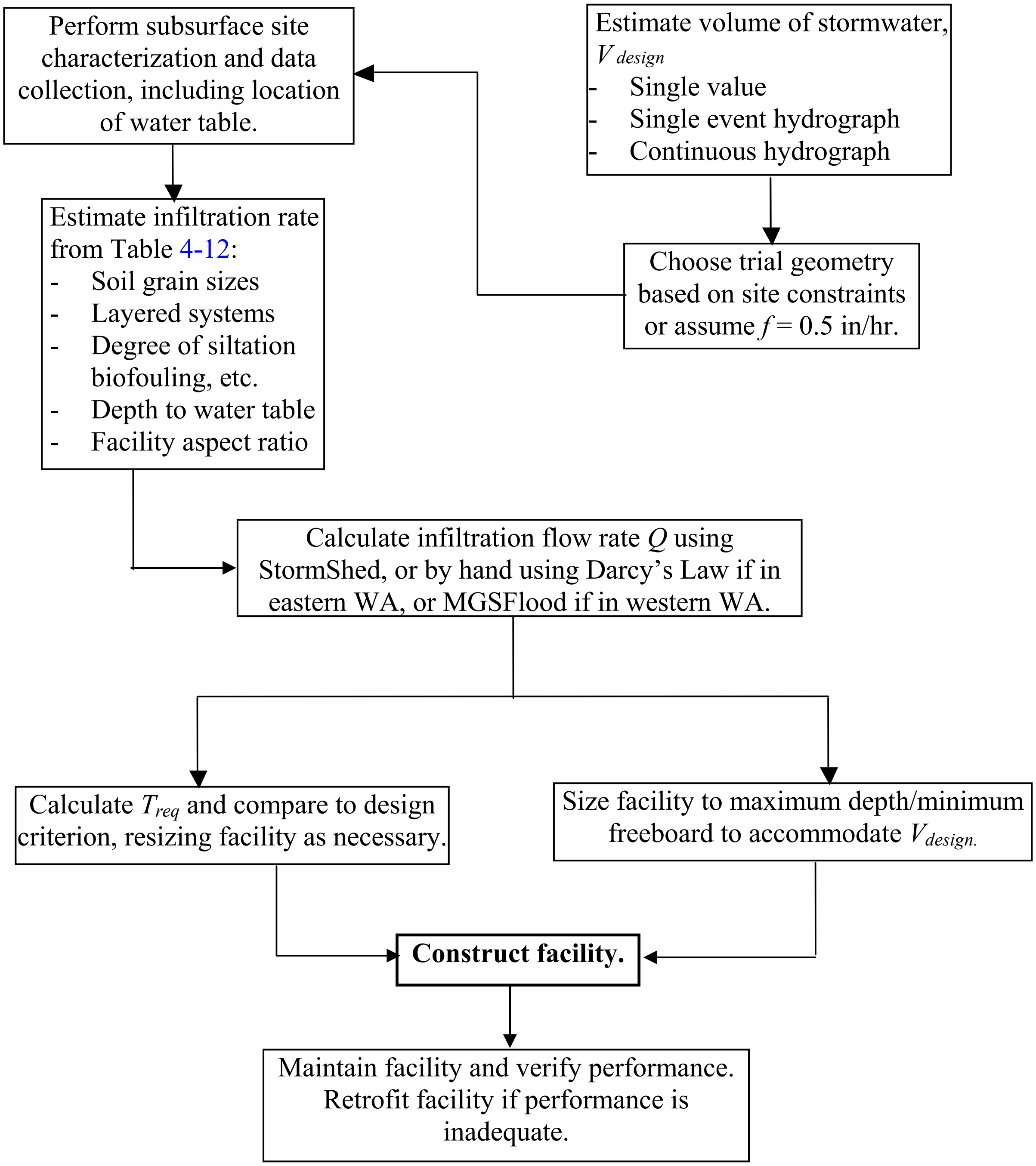
The simplified approach was derived from high groundwater and shallow pond sites in western Washington, and in general will produce conservative designs. Applying this method to eastern Washington will produce even more conservative designs. The simplified approach can be used when determining the trial geometry of the infiltration facility, for small or low-impact facilities, or for facilities where a more conservative design is acceptable. The simplified method must not be used for determining short-term soil infiltration rates for runoff treatment infiltration facilities in western Washington, as referenced in SSC 5. The simplified approach is applicable to ponds and trenches, and includes the following steps (see Figure 4-16 for a flowchart of this process):

1. **Select a location:**

This will be based on the ability to convey flow to the location and the expected soil conditions of the location. The minimum setback distances must also be met.

2. **Estimate volume of stormwater, V_{design}:**

For eastern Washington, a single value/single event hydrograph for the volume can be used, allowing for a simplified modeling approach such as StormShed. For western Washington, a continuous hydrograph should be used, requiring MGSFlood for the calculations.



(Note: Use for trial geometry, small or low-impact facilities, or for facilities where a more conservative design is acceptable.)

Figure 4-16. Engineering design steps for design of infiltration facilities – Simplified infiltration rate procedure.

3. **Develop trial infiltration facility geometry:**

   To accomplish this, an infiltration rate will need to be assumed based on previously available data, or a default infiltration rate of 0.5 inches/hour can be used. This trial facility geometry should be used to help locate the facility and for planning purposes in developing the geotechnical subsurface investigation plan.

4. **Conduct a geotechnical investigation:**

   The geotechnical investigation evaluates the suitability of the site for infiltration; establishes the infiltration rate for design; and evaluates slope stability, foundation capacity, and other geotechnical design information needed to design and assess constructibility of the facility. The geotechnical investigation is described in Section 4-5.2.1, Step 4 (Figures 4-14 and 4-15).

   Items to be determined or evaluated by the geotechnical investigation are described in Section 4-5.2.1, Step 5 (Figures 4-14 and 4-15).

5. **Determine the infiltration rate as follows:**

   Ecology's SMMWW provides a correlation between the D_{10} size of the soils **below the infiltration facility and the infiltration rate, as shown in Table 4-12,** which can be used to estimate the infiltration rate.

Table 4-12. Recommended infiltration rates based on ASTM Gradation Testing.

D_{10} Size from ASTM D422 Soil Gradation Test (mm)	Estimated Long-Term (Design) Infiltration Rate (inch/hour)
$\geq$ 0.4	9
0.3	6.5
0.2	3.5
0.1 2.0	
0.05	0.8

The data that form the basis for Table 4-12 were from soils that would be classified as sands or sandy gravels. No data were available for finer soils at the time the table was developed. However, additional data based on recent research (Massmann et al., 2003) for these finer soils are now available and are shown in Figure 4-17.

Figure 4-17 provides a plot of this relationship between the infiltration rate and the D_{10} of the soil, showing the empirical data upon which it is based. The figure provides an upper and lower bound range for this relationship, based on the empirical data. These upper and lower bound ranges can be used to adjust the design infiltration rate to account for site-specific issues and conditions.

The long-term rates provided in Table 4-12 represent average conditions regarding site variability, the degree of long-term maintenance, and pretreatment for TSS control. They also represent a moderate depth to groundwater below the pond. The long-term infiltration rates in Table 4-12 may need to be decreased (i.e., toward the lower bound in Figure 4-17) if the site is highly variable; the groundwater table is shallow; there is fine layering present that would not be captured by the soil gradation testing; or maintenance and influent characteristics are not well controlled. However, if influent control is good (e.g., water entering the pond is pretreated through a biofiltration swale or presedimentation pond); if a good, long-term maintenance plan will be implemented; and if the water table is moderate in depth, then an infiltration rate toward the upper bound in the figure could be used.

The infiltration rates provided in Figure 4-17 represent rates for homogeneous soil conditions. If more than one soil unit is located within 2.5 times the maximum design depth of water proposed for the infiltration facility, or at least 2 feet into the saturated zone, but no less than 6 feet below the base of the infiltration facility, use the lowest infiltration rate determined from each of the soil units as the representative site infiltration rate.

The rates shown in Table 4-12 and Figure 4-17 are long-term design rates. No additional reduction factor or factor of safety is needed.

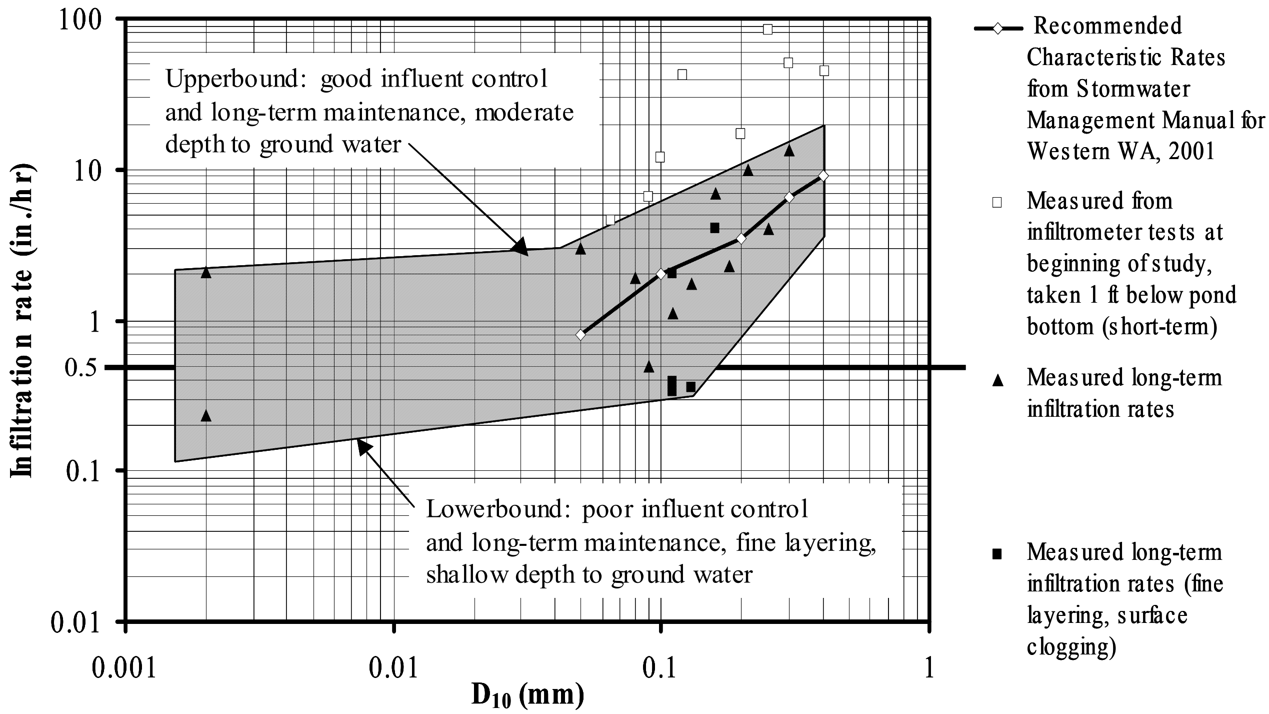
Note that Table 4-12 provides an infiltration rate, not a hydraulic conductivity that must be multiplied by a hydraulic gradient or other factors, as provided in Equation 4-18. The infiltration rates provided in this table assume a fully developed groundwater mound and very low hydraulic gradients. Hence, if the water table is relatively deep, the infiltration rate calculated from Equation 4-18 will likely be more accurate, but less conservative, than the infiltration rates provided in Table 4-12. For shallow water table situations, Equation 4-18 will produce infiltration rates similar to those provided in Table 4-12 and shown in Figure 4-17.

The minimum infiltration rate at which infiltration would be considered the primary function of the facility is 0.5 inches/hour. Infiltration can still be taken into account if the infiltration rate is lower, but it should be considered a secondary design parameter for the facility.

6. **Determine the infiltration flow rate *Q*:**

If the infiltration facility is located in eastern Washington, determine the infiltration flow rate *Q* using the Infiltration Calculation Spreadsheet at:
🖱 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm

If the infiltration facility is located in western Washington, determine the infiltration flow rate *Q* using MGSFlood or the Infiltration Pond Example Excel Spreadsheet (also at the web link noted above).



(Note: The mean values represent low-gradient conditions and relatively shallow ponds.)

Figure 4-17. Infiltration rate as a function of the D_{10} size of the soil for ponds in western Washington.

7. **Size the facility:**

Use one of the following two approaches, depending on the type of hydrograph used:

- If using a continuous hydrograph for design, size the facility to ensure that the maximum pond depth stays below the minimum required freeboard (see Section 4-5.1).
- If using a single value/single event hydrograph, calculate T_{req} using Equation 4-19 from the Detailed Approach (Section 4-5.2.1), using the value of Q determined from Step 7 and V_{design} from Step 2 of that approach. The value of T_{req} calculated must be less than or equal to the maximum allowed infiltration time specified in the Site Suitability Criteria in Section 4-5.2.

8. **Construct the facility:**

Maintain and monitor the facility for performance in accordance with the WSDOT *Maintenance Manual* (M 51-01).

4-5.2.3 Determi ning Infiltration Rates for Soil Amendment BMPs

It is necessary to establish the long-term infiltration rate of an amended soil when it is used as a BMP design component to achieve treatment or flow control requirements. The assumed design infiltration rate should be the lower of the estimated long-term rate of the engineered soil mix or the initial (short-term or measured) infiltration rate of the underlying soil profile. The underlying native soil can be tested using either the Detailed Approach in Section 4-5.2.1 or the Simplified Approach in Section 4-5.2.2. (See Table 4-6 for more detail on flow control modeling techniques related to low-impact development practices.)

The following guidance provides recommended test methods for engineered soil mixes when they are used as part of a stormwater management BMP application. Figure 4-18 also provides a flowchart of this process.

Compost-Amended Engineered Soil Mix

Depending on the size of contributing area, use one of the next two recommended test protocols:

Test 1

If the contributing area has less than 5,000 square feet of pollution-generating impervious surface; and less than 10,000 square feet of impervious surface; and less than ¾ acre of lawn and landscape:

- Use ASTM D 2434 Standard Test Method for Permeability of granular Soils (Constant Head) with a compaction rate of 80% using ASTM D1557 Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.
- Use 2 as the infiltration reduction factor.

Test 2

If the contributing area is equal to or exceeds any of the following limitations: 5,000 square feet of pollution-generating impervious surface; or 10,000 square feet of impervious surface; or ¾ acre of lawn and landscape:

- Use ASTM D 2434 Standard Test Method for Permeability of granular Soils (Constant Head) with a compaction rate of 80% using ASTM D 1557 Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort.
- Use 4 as the infiltration reduction factor.

Use the long-term infiltration rate of the engineered soil mix as the assumed infiltration rate of the overlying soil mix if it is higher than the underlying native soil. If the underlying native soil is lower than the engineered soil mix, use either the native soil infiltration rate or a varied infiltration rate that includes both the engineered soil mix infiltration rate and the native soil infiltration according to Section 4-5.2.1, Step 6. Also, refer to Table 4-6 for modeling guidelines to determine flow reduction benefits using MGSFlood.

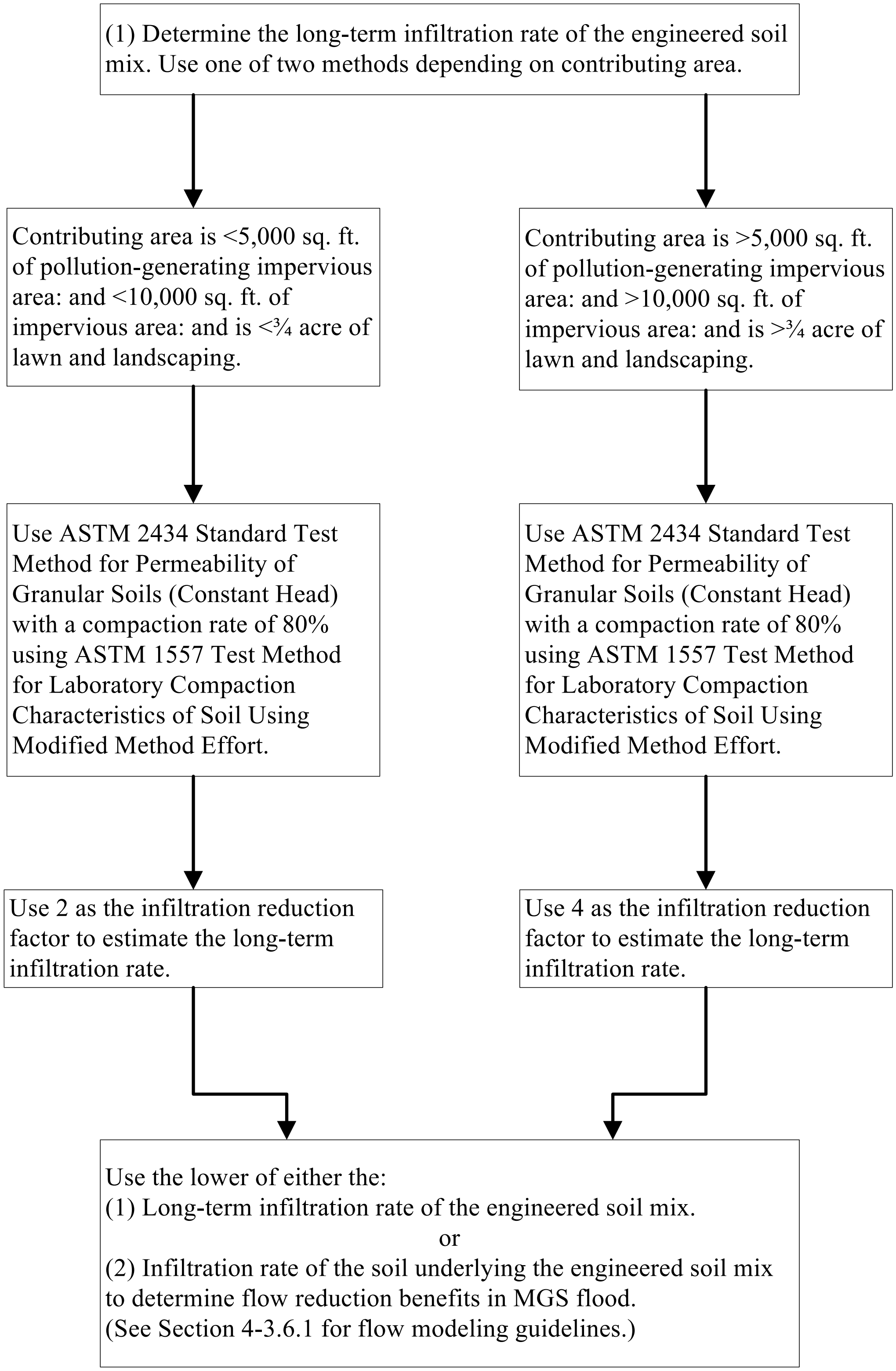


Figure 4-18. Determining infiltration rate of soil amendments.

Soil Specification

Proper soil specification, preparation, and installation are the most critical factors for LID BMP performance. Soil specifications can vary according to the design objectives and the in situ soil. For more information, see Section 5-4.3.2.

4-5.2.3.1 Design Procedure for Compost-Amended Vegetated Filter Strips (CAVFS) for Western Washington

The design for CAVFS is an iterative process that involves the design of multiple structures to adequately address the infiltrative capacity of the soils beneath the CAVFS, as well as of the CAVFS itself. The designer starts with an estimated width of CAVFS the length of the roadway being treated. An infiltration pond with zero side slopes and the dimensions of the CAVFS must be modeled first to determine the amount of runoff volume infiltrated by the underlying soils. The overflow of this infiltration pond is the inflow to the CAVFS. The CAVFS is modeled as a sand filter. The design goal is to verify that the volume of runoff infiltrated from the infiltration pond (underlying soils) and the volume of runoff filtered from the sand filter (CAVFS) is 91% of the total runoff volume. Flow control compliance is also given below.

1. **Follow Steps 1 through 11 in the Detailed Approach for ponds (Section 4-5.2.1):**

   In Step 6, the determination of saturated hydraulic conductivity discusses reduction factors that should be applied to account for compaction. Because the infiltration pond being designed in this procedure is to determine the infiltrative capacity of underlying soils, compaction must be accounted for in this analysis. As stated in Section 4-5.2.1, Step 6, a correction factor of 10 (i.e., $1/10^{th}$ of the estimated K_{sat} determined by Equation 4-12) should be used for "well-graded sands and gravels with moderate to high silt content." For clean, uniformly graded sands and gravels, a correction factor of 5 should be used, and a correction factor of 15 should be applied to K_{sat} for soils that contain clay.

   - **Alternate method of determining the hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat})**

     Refer to Ecology's SMMWW, Volume III, Appendix III-D, Procedure for Conducting a Pilot Infiltration Test. A correction factor of 1.5 to 6 should be applied to the measured infiltration rate (*f*) determined by this method. A correction factor on the lower end of the range should be applied to the infiltration rate if the designer can verify that the underlying fill material being tested is relatively consistent for the length of proposed CAVFS. Otherwise, a reduction factor toward the higher end of the range should be used. K_{sat} can be determined by using Equation 4-16. The hydraulic gradient will need to be established for the CAVFS area.

2. **Determine infiltration pond size and volume infiltrated:**

Using MGSFlood, the dimensions of the infiltration pond will be set as follows:

- Pond/Vault Geometry Tab

  maximum pond elevation: ¾ inch or 0.06 ft; add this to the chosen pond bottom elevation

  pond bottom length: longitudinal length of CAVFS (parallel to the roadway)

  pond bottom width: lateral width of the CAVFS being designed (perpendicular to the roadway)

  soil (saturated) hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}): determined from Step 1 above

  depth to water table: determined from project-specific soils testing at CAVFS location; contact the region's Materials Office

- Outlet Structure Tab

  Riser should be 0.01 ft below the maximum pond elevation. Specify a riser diameter of 10,000 inches and common length of 0.00. Only use the Riser Structure and disable all other control orifices and/or weir structure for this infiltration pond.

- Determine the volume of runoff infiltrated by the infiltration pond (representing the underlying soils) using MGSFlood.

- Land Use Tab

  All pervious and impervious areas tributary to the CAVFS should also be represented in the predeveloped and developed columns. In the predeveloped column, represent the CAVFS area as its current existing condition. In the developed column, represent the CAVFS area as pasture.

3. **Determine the sand filter size and volume filtered:**

The next structure to be designed is the sand filter. A new structure that is separate from the structure specified in Step 2 (above) needs to be defined in MGSFlood. This structure will be in line and downstream from the structure defined in Step 2. The sand filter design is a tab within the new structure. The dimensions should be set as follows:

- Pond/Vault Geometry Tab

  maximum pond elevation: 1.2 inches or 0.10 ft; add this to the Elevation of Top Filter chosen in the Sand Filter Tab below

  pond bottom length: longitudinal length of CAVFS (parallel to the roadway)

pond bottom width: lateral width of the CAVFS being designed (perpendicular to the roadway), but factored by 0.40 to account for 40% porosity (i.e., multiply the pond bottom width in Step 2 by 0.40)

soil (saturated) hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}): set to 0.000 (not used in sand filter design)

depth to water table: set to 100 (not used in sand filter design)

- Outlet Structure Tab

  To ensure no head build-up, the riser head (Crest Elevation) should be 0.01 ft (1/8 inch) with a riser diameter of 10,000 inches and common length of 0.00. Add 0.01 to the elevation of top filter value specified below in the Sand Filter tab. For example, if the pond bottom elevation was set at 100.00 ft, the elevation of Top Filter would be 100.00 for a 12-inch depth of CAVFS material and the Crest Elevation should be set at 101.01 ft. Use only the Riser Structure and disable all other control orifices and/or weir structure for this infiltration pond.

- Sand Filter Tab

  After enabling the sand filter design, input the following:

  - Elevation of Top Filter: Pond bottom elevation added to the total depth of CAVFS material, which includes the depth of compost and the depth of tilled soil.

4. **Determine that the volume of runoff infiltrated and filtered is 91% or greater of the total runoff volume:**

MGSFlood will output two values in the MGSFlood Project Report file. Per the current version of MGSFlood (3.07 at the time of this publication), the report file will give value of total inflow volume, total volume infiltrated, and percent infiltrated for the structures defined in Step 2 (infiltration pond) and Step 3 (sand filter). To determine the total percent infiltrated, add the total volume infiltrated by the infiltration pond to the total volume filtered by the sand filter and divide this sum by the total inflow volume of the infiltration pond. Then multiply this number by 100. If the total value is less than 91%, increase the width of the CAVFS and repeat Steps 1–3 above.

For example, assuming Link 1 represents the infiltration pond and Link 2 represents the Sand Filter, the MGSFlood Project Report will show the following:

Postdeveloped Infiltrated Water Statistics
Volume Statistics Computed for Entire Simulation

Statistic	Link: 1
Total Inflow Volume (ac-ft)	1026.
Total Volume Infiltrated (ac-ft)	614.
Percent Infiltrated	59.87 %

Post-Developed Sand Filter Performance Statistics
Volume Statistics Computed for Entire Simulation

Statistic	Link: 2
Total Inflow Volume (ac-ft)	411.56
Total Volume Filtered (ac-ft)	270.68
Percent Filtered	65.77 %

The total percent volume infiltrated would be ((614 + 270.68)/1026) x 100 = 86%. Since this value is less than 91% of the total runoff volume, the CAVFS would need to be increased in width to meet the runoff treatment requirements. Repeat Steps 1–4 above.

5. **Flow Control Compliance**

After a successful runoff treatment design (Steps 1–4 above), the designer may be able to widen the CAVFS to try to meet the flow duration standard if the particular TDA is required to provide flow control. Otherwise, a flow control structure should be linked downstream of the infiltration pond and sand filter to attenuate the resultant runoff from the CAVFS to meet the flow duration standard. Contact the region's Hydraulics Office for questions regarding flow control modeling.

4-5.3 Underground Injection Facilities

Purpose and Definitions

Infiltration is one of the preferred methods for disposing of excess stormwater in order to preserve natural drainage systems in Washington. Subsurface infiltration is regulated by the Underground Injection Control (UIC) Rule, which is intended to protect underground sources of drinking water (🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/uic/rule_rev.html). Information in this section will identify the extent to which the vadose zone may be presumed to provide sufficient treatment for a given pollutant loading surface, in order to meet Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5), Runoff Treatment.

By definition, a UIC facility includes a manmade fluid distribution system, which means an assemblage of perforated pipes, drain tiles, or other similar mechanisms intended to infiltrate fluids into the ground or a dug hole that is deeper than the largest surface dimension. Buried pipe and/or tile networks that serve to collect water and discharge that water to a conveyance system or to surface water are not UIC facilities. For the purposes of this section, infiltration systems include drywells, pipe or french drains, drain fields, and other similar devices that are designed to discharge stormwater directly into the ground.

The majority of UIC facilities receiving stormwater discharges can be authorized by the UIC rule, without requiring individual permits, where the discharge, the site, and the structure of the facility meet the requirements detailed in this section. (Surface infiltration trenches and ponds that are designed, constructed, operated, and maintained according to the specifications in Chapter 5 are also authorized by the UIC rule.) Those facilities must be registered with Ecology (see Construction Criteria in this section). However, if the facilities are designed, constructed, operated, and maintained according to the specifications of this manual and the WSDOT *Maintenance Manual*, they are rule authorized (no permits needed) and this section does not apply.

When facilities cannot meet the requirements of this section, application must be made to Ecology for individual permits. In some cases, the discharge may be prohibited. For more information on the UIC rule, see Ecology's SMMEW and WAC 173-218.

The unsaturated geologic material between the bottom of the infiltration facility and the top of an unconfined aquifer, called the vadose zone, usually provides some level of treatment by removing contaminants through filtration, adsorption, and/or degradation. In some cases, the treatment provided by the vadose zone is suitable for protecting groundwater quality from contamination by stormwater runoff. In other cases, additional pretreatment may be required to protect groundwater quality. This section defines site suitability, pretreatment requirements, and design criteria for UIC rule-authorized discharges of stormwater to infiltration systems.

This section does not apply to any UIC facilities that receive fluids other than stormwater (precluding accidental spills and illicit discharges, which are addressed below).

This section also does not address the infiltration capacity of the vadose zone below the UIC facility. For guidance on infiltration rates, see Section 4-5.1.

Application and Limitations

At this time, infiltration (UIC facilities) may be used to provide flow control of excess stormwater runoff in eastern Washington when:

- Pollutant concentrations that reach groundwater are not expected to exceed Washington State groundwater quality standards, or
- Flows are greater than the runoff treatment design storm, or

- Stormwater is adequately treated prior to discharge.

The maximum infiltration rate requirement is **not** waived if "pretreatment is required to remove solids" or "pretreatment is required to remove oil and solids" according to Table 4-15. This exemption is granted only for facilities being constructed in eastern Washington and only until Ecology has finalized its statewide guidance for UIC facilities, at which time Table 4-15 will likely be revised or superseded.

Under certain conditions, infiltration may be considered to provide an acceptable level of treatment for removing stormwater pollutants that exceed groundwater quality standards.

Rationale and evaluation criteria for authorization by rule: These criteria apply only to discharges of stormwater runoff to (and from) UIC facilities. The technical guidance for managing stormwater discharges to groundwater was developed using a risk-based approach. In order to be rule authorized, the discharge from a UIC structure must meet the “non-endangerment standard,” which requires that the discharge comply with state groundwater quality standards when it reaches the water table, or first comes into contact with an aquifer (see WAC 173-200).

1. **Potential Removal of Contaminants by the Vadose Zone**

   Studies of infiltration systems indicate that filtered and adsorbed pollutants accumulate in the vadose zone at depths of less than a few feet below the facilities at concentrations that may require soil cleanup activities upon decommissioning of a UIC facility (Mikkelsen et al., 1996 #1 and #2; Appleyard, 1993).

   Because contaminated soil removal and disposal costs can be considerable, project designers may wish to consider including pretreatment facilities to remove solids from stormwater runoff and avoid potential cleanup requirements following long-term use of the UIC facility. This caution is particularly addressed to UIC facilities receiving runoff from traffic areas with moderate to high use.

   Studies of pollutant concentrations in water through and below infiltration systems show mixed results in the effectiveness of vadose zone filtration in protecting groundwater quality (U.S. EPA, 1999; Pitt, 1999; Mason et al., 1999; and Appleyard, 1993). Many of the problems documented in these studies can be corrected by proper siting, design, and use of the facilities, as well as enhanced source control, additional pretreatment prior to discharge to the facilities, or prohibition of the discharge. The remainder of this section details guidance intended to ensure that UIC facilities are properly sited, designed, and operated to protect water quality.

   Project proponents may choose to follow either a presumptive or demonstrative approach to compliance with the UIC rule:

   - A *presumptive approach* to protecting groundwater quality uses the methods described in this section. This approach considers potential pollutant loading (based on the pollutant loading expected in storm runoff from a given land use or activity), and the treatment capacity of the vadose zone (based on subsurface geology and the thickness of the best naturally present matrices for removing pollutants).

The presumptive approach is based primarily on benefits provided by removal of the solid phase of pollutants in stormwater as it passes through the vadose zone. In almost all cases, removal of the solid phase of metals and most pesticides from stormwater results in meeting the groundwater standards. Filtration and separation are considered the most effective means of removing fecal coliform.

- A *demonstrative approach* to protecting groundwater quality may consider site-specific information that modifies either the pollutant loading category or the treatment capacity of the vadose zone (or both) for a stormwater discharge to an infiltration system. A demonstrative approach to protecting groundwater quality may also use a site-specific analysis, which otherwise demonstrates that the proposed discharge will comply with groundwater quality standards. Local governments might also modify the presumptive approach based on local information and planning, which results in adoption of a UIC management plan that meets the nonendangerment standard.

2. **Necessary Source Control Activities**

   Additional, programmatic, or source control activities may be necessary to protect groundwater from soluble pesticides and nitrates, as well as road salts and other anti-icers and deicers. To the maximum extent practicable, exposure of stormwater to these chemicals must be reduced by one or more of the following: a reduction in application rate or more selective use; increased source control activities; or separation of the areas of use from the contributing area draining to the UIC facility. Please refer to SSC 8 for guidance.

Siting Criteria and Treatment Requirements

Prior to evaluating runoff treatment considerations, the designer should be certain that the site meets the criteria for infiltration found in Chapters 4 and 5 of this manual.

Where geologic and groundwater depth information is available, Tables 4-13, 4-14, and 4-15 can be used to evaluate whether a stormwater discharge from a road or highway to a UIC facility meets the nonendangerment standard. (For nonhighway or road applications, see Ecology's SMMWW.) Used together, the tables identify the extent to which the vadose zone may be presumed to provide sufficient treatment for a given pollutant loading surface in order to meet groundwater quality standards (see also the exceptions to Table 4-15).

At sites where the vadose zone is considered to provide sufficient treatment to protect groundwater quality ("Suitable for all UIC facilities" or "Suitable for 2-stage drywell" in Table 4-15), pretreatment is not required, but presettling for the "Suitable for 2-stage drywell" is required. If the proposed UIC facility cannot meet the depth/thickness requirements in Table 4-13, or in the exceptions below, the design must include pretreatment for removal of solids. All high-category pollutant loadings must provide pretreatment for removal of oil. All project proponents should read Accidental Spills and Illicit Discharges, and Prohibitions in this section for additional considerations that may apply to their sites.

- **Evaluation of the Treatment Capacity of the Vadose Zone**

  Several alternative approaches are provided in Table 4-13 for identifying the proper treatment capacity classification of the vadose zone matrix. The designer can use grain size distribution and or/ratios, typical categories assigned by well drillers, and/or geologic names. Geologic materials have been classified as having high, medium, low, or no treatment capacity. Keep in mind that the focus of this table is on a treatment layer, and not the depth to groundwater.

  Native materials in the *"high treatment capacity"* category provide filtration combined with some chemically reactive characteristics; specifically cation exchange capacity. Native organic matter improves adsorption and filtration (Igloria et al., 1997), but is rarely found at depths below UIC facilities, so this category generally relies on clay or fine silt materials to provide chemical reactivity. These may be mixtures of materials where silt and clay fill the pore spaces in the matrix—the coarser materials. The more compacted, the better the filtration.

  Native materials in the *"medium treatment capacity"* category provide moderate to high filtration and have minor or no chemically reactive characteristics.

  Native materials in the *"low treatment capacity"* category provide some minimal filtration. The sand and gravel mixtures in this category may provide moderate filtration when a UIC facility is initially installed, but typically will yield preferential flow paths where treatment capacity is reduced.

  Materials in the *"no treatment capacity"* category do not provide any filtration to remove pollutants.

  Table 4-13 is intended for use in meeting the presumptive approach. Project proponents and local jurisdictions using the demonstrative approach may define other treatment capacity categories.

Table 4-13. Treatment capacity of vadose zone materials for removing contaminants from stormwater discharged to UIC facilities.

Presumed Treatment Capacity and Conditions	Description of Vadose Zone Layer
HIGH A minimum thickness of 10 feet of these materials must be naturally present between the bottom of the UIC structure and the top of the highest known seasonal water table.*	Materials with average grain size <0.125mm *or* having a sand to silt/clay ratio of less than 1:1 and sand plus gravel less than 50%. • Lean, fat, or elastic clay • Sandy or silty clay • Silt • Clayey or sandy silt • Sandy loam or loamy sand • Silt/clay with inter-bedded sand • Well-compacted, poorly-sorted materials *This category generally includes till, hardpan, caliche, and loess.*
MEDIUM A minimum thickness of 15 feet of these materials must be naturally present between the bottom of the UIC structure and the top of the highest known seasonal water table.*	Materials with average grain size 0.125mm to 4mm *or* having a sand to silt/clay ratio between 1:1 and 9:1 and percent sand greater than or equal to percent gravel. • Fine, medium, or coarse sand • Gravelly sand • Sand with inter-bedded clay and/or silt • Poorly-graded/sorted, silty, or muddy gravel • Poorly-compacted, poorly-sorted materials *This category includes most outwash deposits, noncavernous limestone, and some alluvium.*
LOW A minimum thickness of 50 feet of these materials must be naturally present between the bottom of the UIC structure and the top of the highest known seasonal water table.	Materials with average grain size >4mm to 64mm *or* having a sand to silt/clay ratio greater than 9:1 and percent sand less than percent gravel. • Well-graded/sorted or clean gravel • Sandy gravel *or* sand and gravel *This category includes some alluvium and outwash deposits*.
NONE	Materials with average grain size >64mm *or* having total fines (sand and mud) less than 5% • Boulders and/or cobbles • Fractured rock *This category generally includes fractured basalt, other fractured bedrock, and cavernous limestone.*

* See Application and Limitations in this section for possible exceptions to the thickness requirement.

Table 4-14. Stormwater pollutant loading classifications for UIC facilities receiving stormwater runoff.

Pollutant Loading Classification	Proposed Land Use or Site Characteristics*
INSIGNIFICANT	Impervious surfaces not subject to motorized vehicle traffic or application of sand or deicing compounds Unmaintained open space
LOW	Urban roads with ADT < 7,500 vehicles per day Freeways with ADT < 15,000 vehicles per day Parking areas with < 40 trip ends per 1,000 SF of gross building area or < 100 total trip ends (e.g., most residential parking and employee-only parking areas for small office parks or other commercial buildings) Most public parks (see Prohibitions for exceptions) Roofs that are subject only to atmospheric deposition and normal heating, ventilation, and air conditioning system outputs Other land uses with similar traffic/use characteristics
MEDIUM	Urban roads with ADT between 7,500 and 30,000 vehicles per day Freeways with ADT between 15,000 and 30,000 vehicles per day Parking areas with between 40 and 100 trip ends per 1,000 SF of gross building area or between 100 and 300 total trip ends (e.g., visitor parking for small to medium commercial buildings with a limited number of daily customers) Primary access points for high-density residential apartments Most intersections controlled by traffic signals Transit center bus stops Some high-density residential roads and parking areas Roofs that are subject to ventilation systems that are specifically designed to remove commercial indoor pollutants Other land uses with similar traffic/use characteristics
HIGH	All roads with ADT > 30,000 vehicles per day High-density intersections (see definition in Section 3-2.5) Parking areas with > 100 trip ends per 1,000 SF of gross building area or > 300 total trip ends (e.g., commercial buildings with a frequent turnover of visitors, such as grocery stores, shopping malls, restaurants, or drive-through services) On-street parking areas of municipal streets in commercial and industrial areas Highway rest areas Other land uses with similar traffic/use characteristics

* See Prohibitions in this section. Average daily traffic (ADT) count and trip ends must be calculated for the design life of the project and may be determined using "Trip Generation," published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers.

- **Subsurface Geologic Data**

  Geologic information may be available from regional subsurface geology maps in publications from DNR or the U.S. Geological Survey; from a well borehole log(s) in the same quarter section on Ecology's web site; or from local governments. Surface soils maps generally do *not* provide adequate information, although the parent material information provided may be helpful in some locations. Well borehole log locations should be verified, as electronic databases contain many errors of this type.

  When using borehole logs, a "nearby" site is generally within a quarter of a mile. Subsurface geology can vary considerably in a very short horizontal distance in many areas of the state, so professional judgment should be used to determine whether the available data are adequate or site exploration is necessary.

  Where reliable regional information or nearby borehole logs are not readily available, it will be necessary to obtain data through site exploration. Alternatively, for small projects where site exploration is not cost effective, a design professional might apply a conservative design approach, subject to the approval of region or HQ hydraulics staff and/or the Materials Lab.

For treatment capacity and pollutant loading definitions, see Tables 4-13 and 4-14. All project proponents should read Section 4-5.2 for exceptions or other requirements that apply in certain situations. Appropriate pretreatment and presettling requirements must be determined using the information provided in Chapter 5, treatment facility selection process. Surface infiltration facilities being constructed in eastern Washington may be exempt from the maximum infiltration rate requirement under the following conditions in Table 4-15:

Table 4-15. Matrix for determining suitability of discharge of stormwater from commercial and residential land uses to new UIC facilities.

Treatment Capacity / Pollutant Loading	HIGH MEDI	UM	LOW	NONE
INSIGNIFICANT	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Suitable for all UIC facilities
LOW	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Suitable for all UIC facilities	Pretreatment required to remove solids[1]
MEDIUM	Suitable for 2-stage drywell*	Suitable for 2-stage drywell*	Pretreatment required to remove solids[1]	Pretreatment required to remove solids[1]
HIGH**	Pretreatment required to remove oil[2]	Pretreatment required to remove oil[2]	Pretreatment required to remove oil and solids[1, 2]	Pretreatment required to remove oil and solids[1, 2]

*A two-stage drywell includes a catch basin or spill control structure that traps small quantities of oils and solids; the spill control device may be a turned-down pipe elbow or other passive device. Also, presettling basin with a volume approximately 30% of the runoff generated by the 6-month storm per Table 4-8 precedes the basin.

**Note that the prohibitions (listed in Prohibitions in this section) still apply.

[1] Treatment to remove solids means basic treatment as defined in Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5) and Chapter 5 treatment facility selection process. Removal of solids should also remove a large portion of the metals in most stormwater runoff. Also, presettling basin with a volume approximately 30% of the runoff generated by the 6-month storm per Table 4-8 precedes the basin.

[2] Treatment to remove oil means oil control as defined in Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5). Also, presettling basin with a volume approximately 30% of the runoff generated by the 6-month storm per Table 4-8 precedes the basin.

4-5.3.1 Design Procedure for Infiltration Trenches

The detailed approach for infiltration trenches was obtained from Massmann (2003). Procedures for the detailed approach are as follows:

1. **Follow Steps 1 through 7 in the Detailed Approach for ponds (Section 4-5.2.1).**

2. **Calculate the hydraulic gradient:**

   If using a single value/single event hydrograph or continuous hydrograph, calculate the hydraulic gradient for trenches as follows:

$$gradient = i_t \approx \frac{D_{wt} + D_{trench}}{78(K_{equiv}^{\ 0.05})} \quad \textbf{(4-20)}$$

where: i_t = steady state hydraulic gradient in the trench
D_{wt} = the depth from the base of the infiltration facility to the water table in feet

K_{equiv} = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity in feet/day
D_{trench} = the depth of water in the trench, in feet

As is true of Equation 4-14, Equation 4-20 is applicable to conditions where a full groundwater mound develops.

If the calculated gradient is greater than 1.0, the water table is considered to be deep, and a maximum gradient of 1.0 must be used. It is sufficiently accurate to calculate the hydraulic gradient assuming that D_{trench} is equal to one half the trench depth.

3. **Follow Step 9 in the Detailed Approach for ponds (Section 4-5.2.1).**

4. **Adjust the infiltration rate or infiltration stage-discharge relationship obtained in Step 9:**

This accounts for reductions in the rate resulting from long-term siltation and biofouling, taking into consideration the degree of long-term maintenance and performance monitoring anticipated, the degree of influent control (e.g., pre-settling ponds, biofiltration swales), and the potential for siltation, bio-buildup, etc., based on the surrounding environment. It should be assumed that an average to high degree of maintenance will be performed on these facilities. A low degree of maintenance should be considered only when there is no other option (e.g., access problems). The infiltration rate estimated in Step 9 is multiplied by the reduction factors summarized in Table 4-16. The final infiltration rate is therefore as follows:

$$f = (0.5K_{equiv})(i_t)(CF_{silt/bio}) \quad \textbf{(4-21)}$$

The infiltration rates, which were calculated based on Equation 4-21, are long-term design rates. No additional reduction factor or factor of safety is needed.

Table 4-16. Infiltration rate reduction factors to account for biofouling and siltation effects for trenches (Massmann, 2003).

Potential for Biofouling	Degree of Long-Term Maintenance/Performance Monitoring	Infiltration Rate Reduction Factor, $CF_{silt/bio}$
Low	Average to High	0.9
Low	Low	0.8
High	Average to High	0.75
High	Low	0.6

Although siltation and biofouling may be less prevalent in infiltration trenches than in infiltration ponds, field data have not been collected that would allow correction factors to be estimated for trenches. However, the computer simulation results described in Massmann et al. (2003) suggest that reductions in hydraulic conductivity due to bottom clogging from siltation and biofouling may have relatively small effects on overall infiltration rates and gradients for trenches. This is because of the larger amounts of lateral flow that occur in trenches compared to ponds. Reductions in vertical flow from the bottom of the trench are offset by increases in lateral flow, particularly for trenches with deeper water levels.

5. **Follow Steps 11 through 13 in the Detailed Approach for ponds (Section 4-5.2.1).**

4-5.3.2 Design Procedure for Drywells

This design procedure was obtained from Massmann (2004). Steps for this procedure are as follows:

1. **Estimate volume of stormwater, V_{design}:**

   For eastern Washington, a single event hydrograph or value for the volume can be used, allowing a modeling approach such as StormShed to be conducted. For western Washington, a continuous hydrograph generally should be used, requiring a model such as MGSFlood to perform the calculations. (See Section 4-3 for western Washington methodology and Section 4-4 for eastern Washington methodology.)

2. **Follow Steps 4 through 5 in the Detailed Approach for ponds (Section 4-5.2.1).**

3. **Determine the saturated hydraulic conductivity as follows:**

   The determination of the saturated hydraulic conductivity is described in the first two bulleted items of Section 4-5.2.1, Step 6. Once the saturated hydraulic conductivity for each layer has been identified, the designer must convert the hydraulic conductivity to (ft/min) and then calculate the geometric mean of the multiple hydraulic conductivity values.

   The geometric mean for hydraulic conductivity value is given by the following expressions:

$$K_{geometric} = e^{Yaverage} \qquad \textbf{(4-22)}$$

   where: $K_{geometric}$ = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity in ft/min
   $Y_{average}$ = the average of the natural logarithms of the hydraulic conductivity values:

$$Y_{average} = \frac{1}{n}\sum Y_i = \frac{1}{n}\sum \ln(K_i) \qquad \textbf{(4-23)}$$

4. **Estimate the uncorrected, steady-state infiltration rate for drywells:**

   The results of the computer simulations included in Massmann (2004) were used to develop regression equations relating steady-state flow rates with saturated hydraulic conductivity values and the depth to groundwater. The following two regression equations were derived from the results of these computer simulations:

Double-barrel wells: $Q = K[3.55 \ln(D_{wt}) + 12.32]$ **(4-24)**

Single-barrel wells: $Q = K[1.34 \ln(D_{wt}) + 8.81]$ **(4-25)**

where: Q = the infiltration rate in cfs
K = the average saturated hydraulic conductivity value in ft/minute
D_{wt} = the depth from the bottom of the drywell to groundwater in feet

Uncorrected steady-state infiltration rates for single- and double-barrel configurations can be estimated using the regression equations given by Equations 4-24 and 4-25.

5. **Apply correction factor for siltation:**

Siltation and plugging may reduce the equivalent hydraulic conductivity values of the facilities by an order of magnitude or more. This will result in a corresponding reduction in infiltration rate. If pretreatment cannot be provided, the design infiltration rates calculated in Step 3 above should be reduced by a factor on the order of 0.5 or less.

6. **Size the facility:**

Use one of the following two approaches, depending on the type of hydrograph used:

- If using a continuous hydrograph for design, calculate T_{req} using Equation 4-19 from the Detailed Approach (Section 4-5.2.1), using the value of Q determined from Step 5, and V_{design} from Step 1 noted above. The value of T_{req} calculated must be less than or equal to the maximum allowed infiltration time specified in the Site Suitability Criteria in Section 4-5.2. No overflow to surface waters is allowed in western Washington.
- If using a single value/single event hydrograph, calculate T_{req} using Equation 4-19 from the Detailed Approach (Section 4-5.2.1), using the value of Q determined from Step 5, and V_{design} from Step 1 noted above. The value of T_{req} calculated must be less than or equal to the maximum allowed infiltration time specified in the Site Suitability Criteria in Section 4-5.2.

7. **Construct the facility:**

Maintain and monitor the facility for performance in accordance with the WSDOT *Maintenance Manual* (M 51-01).

4-6 Wetland Hydroperiods

An important consideration in the stewardship of certain wetland functions is the protection and control of a wetland's *hydroperiod***.** The hydroperiod is the pattern of fluctuation of water depth and the frequency and duration of water levels on the site. This includes the duration and timing of drying in the summer. A hydrologic assessment is useful to measure or estimate elements of the hydroperiod under existing **preproject** and anticipated **postproject** conditions. This assessment involves reviewing and applying the best available science to assess potential impacts, and deciding whether hydrological modeling is warranted.

Wetland hydroperiod analysis is of concern when proposing to discharge stormwater into or detract from a natural wetland (not constructed). The purpose of the analysis is to determine if the stormwater will change the natural hydroperiod beyond the limits allowed. When this is an issue on a project, contact the region environmental staff for assistance. Refer to Minimum Requirement 7 (see Section 3-3.7) for the process, if applicable.

4-7 Closed Depression Analysis

Analysis of closed depressions requires careful assessment of the existing hydrologic performance in order to evaluate a proposed project's potential impacts. The applicable flow control requirements (see Minimum Requirement 6, Section 3-3.6) and the local government's Sensitive Areas Ordinance and Rules (if applicable) should be thoroughly reviewed prior to proceeding with the analysis. A calibrated continuous simulation hydrologic model must be used for closed depression analysis and design of mitigation facilities. Where an adequately calibrated continuous simulation model is not available, the procedures listed below can be followed.

4-7.1 Analysis and Design Criteria

The infiltration rates used in the analysis of closed depressions must be determined according to the procedures in Section 4-5. For closed depressions containing standing water, soil texture tests must be performed on dry land adjacent to, and on opposite sides of, the standing water (as feasible). The elevation of the testing surface at the bottom of the test pit must be 1 foot above the standing water elevation. A minimum of four tests must be performed to estimate an average surface infiltration rate.

Projects proposing to modify or compensate for replacement storage in a closed depression must meet the design criteria for detention ponds as described in Chapter 5.

4-7.2 Western Washington Method of Analysis

Closed depressions are analyzed using hydrographs routed as described in Section 4-5. Infiltration must be addressed where appropriate. In assessing the impacts of a proposed project on the performance of a closed depression, there are three cases that dictate different approaches to meeting Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6) and applicable local requirements. (Note that where there is a flooding potential, concern about rising groundwater levels, or local sensitive area ordinances and rules, this analysis may not be sufficient and local governments may require more stringent analysis.)

Case 1

The 100-year recurrence interval storm runoff from an approved continuous simulation program, flowing from the TDA to the closed depression, is routed into the closed depression using only infiltration as outflow. If predevelopment runoff does not overflow the closed depression, then no runoff may leave the closed depression at the 100-year recurrence interval following development of a proposed project. This may be accomplished by excavating additional storage volume in the closed depression (subject to all applicable requirements; for example, providing a defined overflow system).

Case 2

The 100-year recurrence interval storm runoff from an approved continuous simulation program, from the TDA to the closed depression, is routed into the closed depression using only infiltration as outflow. If runoff overflows the closed depression under existing conditions during the 100-year recurrence interval storm, the performance objective can be met by excavating additional storage volume in the closed depression (subject to all applicable requirements; for example, providing a defined overflow system).

Case 3

The 100-year recurrence interval storm runoff from an approved continuous simulation program, from the TDA to the closed depression, is routed into the closed depression using only infiltration as outflow, and both cause overflow to occur. The closed depression must then be analyzed as a detention/infiltration pond. The required performance, therefore, is to meet the runoff duration standard specified in Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6), using an adequately calibrated continuous simulation model. This will require a control structure, emergency overflow spillway, access road, and other design criteria. Also, depending on who will maintain the system, it will require placing the closed depression in a tract dedicated to the responsible party.

4-7.3 Eastern Washington Method of Analysis

The SMMEW states that local jurisdiction guidelines should be followed. The Spokane County Guidelines are included below. Other eastern Washington regions are encouraged to provide comment on their local guidelines and compare them to those stated below.

Depending upon soil characteristics, a closed depression may or may not accumulate surface water during periods of the year. Some closed depressions may be classified as wetlands. The design team must coordinate its stormwater design with consideration of any wetland area, as defined by applicable regulations that may govern wetland areas. If the proper authorities agree that none of these closed areas is a wetland, and the design team desires to fill these natural depressions, the designer evaluating the site and formulating a stormwater disposal concept will consider these natural depressions and replace any disturbed depressions. Normally, the natural storage volume lost due to the proposed earthwork must be replaced using a 1:1 ratio as a minimum. A higher ratio may be required if the new area infiltrates water at a lower rate than occurred in the natural depression. The road and drainage plans must include a grading plan of the closed depression area to be filled in. The grading plan must show both existing and finished grade contours. Compaction and fill material requirements must also be shown in the plans.

For natural depressions that are capable of complete water disposal within 72 hours by infiltrating the runoff generated from a 100-year, 24-hour storm event, a properly designed grassed percolation area, or combination grassed percolation area/drywell that is equal or greater in volume and that will also completely infiltrate the runoff from a 100-year, 24-hour storm event within a 72-hour time period, could be an acceptable substitution.

For natural depressions that do not drain within 72 hours, it is acceptable to consolidate all the volumes of the depressions from the subject site that are proposed for filling into one or more infiltration/evaporative ponds that will emulate the natural condition. If the site has a disposal area that will allow increased percolation from the natural condition, a Design Deviation may be granted for increased infiltration, if it can be demonstrated that the groundwater levels in the area will not be adversely affected and runoff treatment problems will not increase.

For sites with natural depressions, the designer must clearly identify the location of all depressions that could contain more than 50 cubic feet of stormwater. For these types of depressions, the designer must survey each depression and show the maximum volume that each could hold, as well as show the maximum storage capacity water elevation contour line on the predeveloped condition basin map. The basin map should show adequate survey data points to demonstrate that accurate volume calculations can be made from them. If the site contains many small depressions that will hold water, but are smaller than 50 cubic feet in size, the designer must adjust the runoff factors to allow for this retention of stormwater, or make other adjustments to the runoff model that are approved in writing by region or HQ hydraulics staff. If the site had depression storage in its historic natural state, and grading and filling has been done to these natural features, the designer must reasonably estimate the depression storage that was on the site and comply with the provisions of this section.

If the total storage capacity of a closed depression exceeds the maximum volume used (as computed using the water budget method), both volumes must be clearly identified in the Hydraulic Report, and both of these water surface elevation contour lines are to be shown in the basin map.

If a closed depression is to remain or be replaced, the lowest floor elevation or road grade of any building or road adjacent to it must be at or above the maximum water elevation, and outside the limits of the closed depression. The maximum water elevation must be computed using the water budget method as per the standards for an evaporative systems design, unless the pond can naturally drain within 72 hours following a 100-year, 24-hour storm event. If the depression can drain within the 72-hour time period, the maximum water elevation is computed as being the elevation containing the runoff from a 100-year, 24-hour storm event. If the limits of the high water in the infiltration facility are considered in the design, a geotechnical report must be provided that shows site-specific infiltration testing results and verifies that each depression being used will drain within the 72-hour period, unless waived by region or HQ hydraulics staff, based on knowledge of approved soils under the site. The closed depression must be placed in a drainage easement or separate tract if the development is noncommercial. The easement must be granted to WSDOT and any other entity responsible for maintaining the closed depression.

4-8 References

Brater, E.F. and H.W. King. 1976. Handbook of Hydraulics. McGraw-Hill Company, New York.

Chow, V.T. 1959. Open Channel Hydraulics. McGraw-Hill Book Company.

Daughtery, R.L. and J.B. Franzini. 1977. Fluid Mechanics with Engineering Applications. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Ecology, Washington State Department of. *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington*. August 2005.

Ecology, Washington State Department of. *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington*. September 2004.

King County Surface Water Management Division. 1999. King County Runoff Timeseries (KCRTS), *Computer Software Reference Manual*, Version 4.4. January 1999.

King County. *Washington Surface Water Design Manual*. September 1998.

"Low-Impact Development Design Strategies, An Integrated Design Approach," prepared by Prince George's County Maryland, Department of Environmental Resources, Programs and Planning Divisions, June 1999.

Maryland *Stormwater Manual.*

Massman, Joel, Carolyn Butchart, and Stephanie Stolar. 2003. University of Washington, Final Research Report-T1803, Task 12, "Infiltration Characteristics, Performance, and Design of Stormwater Facilities."

Massmann, J.W. 2003. *A Design Manual for Sizing Infiltration Ponds*. WSDOT, WA-RD 578.2. 61 pp.

Massmann, J.W. April 2004, *An Approach For Estimating Infiltration Rates For Stormwater Infiltration Drywells*, WSDOT, Agreement Y-7717 Task Order AU.

Miller, J.F., R.H. Frederick, and R.S. Tracey. 1973. NOAA Atlas 2, Precipitation Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX-Washington. U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA, National Weather Service, Washington D.C.

Oregon Climate Service. 1997. Mean Annual Precipitation Maps for Western United States, prepared with PRISM Model for NRCS, Corvallis, Oregon.

Pierce County *Stormwater Manual*.

Pitt, R., S.E. Chen, S. Clark, J. Lantrip, C.K. Ong, and J. Voorhees. 2003. "Infiltration Through Compacted Urban Soils and Effects on Biofiltration Design," *Stormwater and Urban Water Systems Modeling, Models, and Applications to Urban Water Systems*, Ed. – W. James, CHI, Guelph, Ontario, Vol. 11. pp. 217-252.

Schaefer, M.G. 1981. "Shaft Spillways, Fundamental Hydraulics and Hydrology of Dam Design." University of Missouri Short Course, available through Dam Safety Section, Washington Department of Ecology. May 1981.

Schaefer, M.G. and B.L. Barker. 2002. "Extended Precipitation Time Series for continuous hydrological modeling in Western Washington," prepared for Washington State Department of Transportation by MGS Consulting Inc. April 2002.

Schaefer, M.G. and B.L. Barker. 2003. MGS Flood – *Proprietary Version User Manual*, prepared for Washington State Department of Transportation by MGS Consulting Inc., Version 2.2. March 2003.

U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. 1987. Design of Small Dams. U.S. Department of Interior, U.S. Government Printing Office, 3rd edition.

USDA-SCS. 1986. Technical Release No. 55: Urban Hydrology for Small Watershed.

U.S. EPA. 1984. *Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran HSPF User Manual* for Release 9. EPA 600/3-84-066. Environmental Research Laboratory, Athens, GA. June 1984.

APPENDIX 4A

Web Links

Appendix 4A. Web Links

Western Washington Updated Isopluvial Map, March 2002
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/default.htm#HRM
Also available on the Environmental Workbench in ArcMap:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/envinfo/EGWbHome.htm

Mean Annual Precipitation for the State of Washington
🖰 http://www.ocs.orst.edu/pub/maps/Precipitation/Total/States/WA/wa.gif
🖰 http://www.ocs.orst.edu/prism/
Also available on the Environmental Workbench in ArcMap:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/environment/envinfo/EGWbHome.htm

Eastern Washington Isopluvial NOAA ATLAS 2 VOL IX 1970
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/default.htm#HRM
🖰 http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/CLIMATEDATA.html

MGSFlood Users Manual
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/pdf/MGSFloodUsersManual.pdf

MGSFlood Example
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm

StormShed
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm

StormShed Example
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm

Downstream Analysis
Provided in the 2006 *Hydraulics Manual,* Chapter 4:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/default.htm#HydMan

Low-Impact Development (LID) Modeling
Provides guidance on how to model LID:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/#HRM

APPENDIX 4B

TR55 Curve Number Tables

Appendix 4B. List of Tables

Table 4B-1. Hydrologic soil series for selected soils in Washington State.

Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group
Agnew	C	Dimal	D
Ahl	B	Dragoon	C
Aits	C	Dupont	D
Alderwood	C	Earlmont	C
Arents, Alderwood	B	Edgewick	C
Arents, Everett	B	Eld	B
Ashoe	B	Eloika	B
Athena	B	Elwell	B
Baldhill	B	Emdent	D
Barneston	C	Esquatzel	B
Baumgard	B	Everett	A
Beausite	B	Everson	D
Belfast	C	Freeman	C
Bellingham	D	Galvin	D
Bellingham variant	C	Garfield	C
Bernhill	B	Garrison	B
Boistfort	B	Getchell	A
Bong	A	Giles	B
Bonner	B	Glenrose	B
Bow	D	Godfrey	D
Brickel	C	Green Bluff	B
Bridgeson	D	Greenwater	A
Briscot	D	Grove	C
Buckley	C	Hagen	B
Bunker	B	Hardesty	B
Cagey	C	Harstine	C
Caldwell	C	Hartnit	C
Carlsborg	A	Hesseltine	B
Casey	D	Hoh	B
Cassolary	C	Hoko	C
Cathcart	B	Hoodsport	C
Cedonia	B	Hoogdal	C
Centralia	B	Hoypus	A
Chehalis	B	Huel	A
Cheney	B	Indianola	A
Chesaw	A	Jonas	B
Cinebar	B	Jumpe	B
Clallam	C	Kalaloch	C
Clayton	B	Kapowsin	C/D
Coastal beaches	variable	Katula	C
Cocolalla	D	Kilchis	C
Colter	C	Kitsap	C
Custer	D	Klaus	C
Custer, Drained	C	Klone	B
Dabob	C	Konner	D
Dearyton	C	Lakesol	B
Delphi	D	Laketon	C
Dick	A	Lance	B

Table 4B-1. Hydrologic soil series for selected soils in Washington State (continued).

Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group
Larkin	B	Poulsbo	C
Latah	D	Prather	C
Lates	C	Puget	D
Lebam	B	Puyallup	B
Lummi	D	Queets	B
Lynnwood	A	Quilcene	C
Lystair	B	Ragnar	B
Mal	C	Rainier	C
Manley	B	Raught	B
Marble	A	Reardan	C
Mashel	B	Reed	D
Maytown	C	Reed, Drained or Protected	C
McKenna	D	Renton	D
McMurray	D	Republic	B
Melbourne	B	Riverwash	variable
Menzel	B	Rober	C
Mixed Alluvial	variable	Salal	C
Molson	B	Salkum	B
Mondovi	B	Sammamish	D
Moscow	C	San Juan	A
Mukilteo	C/D	Scamman	D
Naff	B	Schneider	B
Narcisse	C	Schumacher	B
Nargar	A	Seattle	D
National	B	Sekiu	D
Neilton	A	Semiahmoo	D
Newberg	B	Shalcar	D
Nez Perce	C	Shano	B
Nisqually	B	Shelton	C
Nooksack	C	Si	C
Norma	C/D	Sinclair	C
Ogarty	C	Skipopa	D
Olete	C	Skykomish	B
Olomount	C	Snahopish	B
Olympic	B	Snohomish	D
Orcas	D	Snow	B
Oridia	D	Solduc	B
Orting	D	Solleks	C
Oso	C	Spana	D
Ovall	C	Spanaway	A/B
Palouse	B	Speigle	B
Pastik	C	Spokane	C
Peone	D	Springdale	A
Pheeney	C	Sulsavar	B
Phelan	D	Sultan	C
Phoebe	B	Sultan variant	B
Pilchuck	C	Sumas	C
Potchub	C	Swantown	D

Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group
Tacoma	D	Vailton	B
Tanwax	D	Vassar	B
Tanwax, Drained	C	Verlot	C
Tealwhit	D	Wapato	D
Tekoa	C	Warden	B
Tenino	C	Wethey	C
Tisch	D	Whidbey	C
Tokul	C	Wilkeson	B
Townsend	C	Winston	A
Triton	D	Wolfeson	C
Tukwila	D	Woodinville	B
Tukey	C	Yelm	C
Uhlig	B	Zynbar	B
Urbana	C		

Notes:

Hydrologic Soil Group Classifications, as defined by the Soil Conservation Service:

A = (Low runoff potential) Soils having low runoff potential and high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted. They consist chiefly of deep, well- to excessively drained sands or gravels, and have a high rate of water transmission (greater than 0.30 in/hr).

B = (Moderately low runoff potential) Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consisting chiefly of moderately deep to deep, moderately well- to well-drained soils, with moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission (0.15-0.3 in/hr).

C = (Moderately high runoff potential) Soils having low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, and soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a low rate of water transmission (0.05-0.15 in/hr).

D = (High runoff potential) Soils having high runoff potential. They have very low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential; soils with a permanent high water table; soils with a hardpan or clay layer at or near the surface; and shallow soils over nearly impervious material. These soils have a very low rate of water transmission (0-0.05 in/hr).

* = From SCS, TR-55, Second Edition, June 1986, Exhibit A-1. Revisions made from SCS, Soil Interpretation Record, Form #5, September 1988 and various county soil surveys.

Table 4B-2. Runoff curve numbers for selected agricultural, suburban, and rural areas (western Washington).

	CNs for hydrologic soil group			
Cover Type and Hydrologic Condition	**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**
Curve Numbers for Predevelopment Conditions				
Pasture, Grassland, or Range – Continuous Forage for Grazing:				
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
Woods:				
Fair (woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)	36	60	73	79
Good (woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil)	30	55	70	77
Curve Numbers for Postdevelopment Conditions				
Open Space (lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, landscaping, etc.):[1]				
Fair condition (grass cover on 50% to 75% of the area)	77	85	90	92
Good condition (grass cover on >75% of the area)	68	80	86	90
Impervious Areas:				
Open water bodies: lakes, wetlands, ponds, etc.	100	100	100	100
Paved parking lots, roofs,[2] driveways, etc. (excluding right-of-way)	98	98	98	98
Porous Pavers and Permeable Interlocking Concrete (assumed as 85% impervious and 15% lawn):				
Fair lawn condition (weighted average CNs)	95	96	97	97
Good lawn condition (weighted average CNs)	94	95	96	97
Paved	98	98	98	98
Gravel (including right-of-way)	76	85	89	91
Dirt (including right-of-way)	72	82	87	89
Pasture, Grassland, or Range – Continuous Forage for Grazing:				
Poor condition (ground cover <50% or heavily grazed with no mulch)	68	79	86	89
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
Woods:				
Poor (forest litter, small trees, and brush are destroyed by heavy grazing or regular burning)	45	66	77	83
Fair (woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)	36	60	73	79
Good (woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil)	30	55	70	77
Single Family Residential:[3] Dwelling Unit/Gross Acre	Should only be used for subdivisions >50 acres	Average percent impervious area[3,4]		
1.0 DU/GA		15	Separate curve number	
1.5 DU/GA		20	must be selected for	
2.0 DU/GA		25	pervious & impervious	
2.5 DU/GA		30	portions of the site or	
3.0 DU/GA		34	basin	
3.5 DU/GA		38		
4.0 DU/GA		42		
4.5 DU/GA		46		
5.0 DU/GA		48		
5.5 DU/GA		50		
6.0 DU/GA		52		
6.5 DU/GA		54		
7.0 DU/GA		56		
7.5 DU/GA		58		
PUDs, condos, apartments, commercial businesses, industrial areas, and subdivisions <50 acres	% impervious must be computed	Separate curve numbers must be selected for pervious and impervious portions of the site		

For a more detailed and complete description of land use curve numbers, refer to Chapter Two (2) of the Soil Conservation Service's Technical Release No. 55 , (210-VI-TR-55, Second Ed., June 1986).

[1] Composite CNs may be computed for other combinations of open space cover type.

[2] Where roof runoff and driveway runoff are infiltrated or dispersed according to the requirements in Chapter 3, the average percent impervious area may be adjusted in accordance with the procedure described under "Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Infiltration" and "Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Dispersion."

[3] Assumes roof and driveway runoff is directed into street/storm system.

[4] All remaining pervious area (lawn) is considered to be in good condition for these curve numbers.

Table 4B-3. Runoff curve numbers for selected agricultural, suburban and rural areas (eastern Washington).

	CNs for hydrologic soil group			
Cover Type and Hydrologic Condition	**A B**		**C D**	
Open Space (lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, landscaping, etc.):[1]				
Poor condition (grass cover on <50% of the area)	68	79	86	89
Fair condition (grass cover on 50% to 75% of the area)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (grass cover on >75% of the area)	39	61	74	80
Impervious Areas:				
Open water bodies: lakes, wetlands, ponds etc.	100	100	100	100
Paved parking lots, roofs, driveways, etc. (excluding right-of-way)	98	98	98	98
Porous Pavers and Permeable Interlocking Concrete (assumed as 85% impervious and 15% lawn):				
Fair lawn condition (weighted average CNs)	95	96	97	97
Gravel (including right-of-way)	76	85	89	91
Dirt (including right-of-way)	72	82	87	89
Pasture, Grassland, or Range – Continuous Forage for Grazing:				
Poor condition (ground cover <50% or heavily grazed with no mulch)	68	79	86	89
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
Cultivated Agricultural Lands:				
Row Crops (good) e.g., corn, sugar beets, soy beans	64	75	82	85
Small Grain (good) e.g., wheat, barley, flax	60	72	80	84
Meadow (continuous grass, protected from grazing, and generally mowed for hay):	30	58	71	78
Brush (brush-weed-grass mixture, with brush the major element):				
Poor (<50% ground cover)	48	67	77	83
Fair (50% to 75% ground cover)	35	56	70	77
Good (>75% ground cover)	30[2]	48	65	73
Woods-Grass Combination (orchard or tree farm):[3]				
Poor	57	73	82	86
Fair	43	65	76	82
Good	32	58	72	79
Woods:				
Poor (forest litter, small trees, and brush are destroyed by heavy grazing or regular burning)	45	66	77	83
Fair (woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)	36	60	73	79
Good (woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil)	30	55	70	77
Herbaceous (mixture of grass, weeds, and low-growing brush, with brush the minor element):[4]				
Poor (<30% ground cover)		80	87	93
Fair (30% to 70% ground cover)		71	81	89
Good (>70% ground cover)		62	74	85
Sagebrush With Grass Understory:[4]				
Poor (<30% ground cover)		67	80	85
Fair (30% to 70% ground cover)		51	63	70
Good (>70% ground cover)		35	47	55

For a more detailed and complete description of land use curve numbers, refer to Chapter Two (2) of the Soil Conservation Service's Technical Release No. 55 (210-VI-TR-55, Second Ed., June 1986).

[1] Composite CNs may be computed for other combinations of open space cover type.

[2] Actual curve number is less than 30; use CN = 30 for runoff computations.

[3] CNs shown were computed for areas with 50% woods and 50% grass (pasture) cover. Other combinations of conditions may be computed from the CNs for woods and pasture.

[4] Curve numbers have not been developed for Group A soils.

Table 4B-4. Curve number conversions for different antecedent moisture conditions (case Ia = 0.2 S).

CN for AMC II	CN for AMC I	CN for AMC III
100	100	100
99	97	100
98	94	99
97	91	99
96	89	99
95	87	98
94	85	98
93	83	98
92	81	97
91	80	97
90	78	96
89	76	96
88	75	95
87	73	95
86	72	94
85	70	94
84	68	93
83	67	93
82	66	92
81	64	92
80	63	91
79	62	91
78	60	90
77	59	89

CN for AMC II	CN for AMC I	CN for AMC III
76	58	89
75	57	88
74	55	88
73	54	87
72	53	86
71	52	86
70	51	85
69	50	84
68	48	84
67	47	83
66	46	82
65	45	82
64	44	81
63	43	80
62	42	79
61	41	78
60	40	78
59	39	78
58	38	76
57	37	75
56	36	75
55	35	74
54	34	73
50	31	70

Source: SCS-NEH4. Table 10.1.

Table 4B-5. "n" and "k" values used in time calculations for hydrographs.

"n_s" Sheet Flow Equation Manning's Values (for the initial 300 ft. of travel)	
Manning's Values for sheet flow only; from Overton and Meadows 1976 (See TR-55, 1986)	**n_s**
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, or bare hand-packed soil)	0.011
Fallow fields or loose soil surface (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated soil with residue cover ≤20%	0.06
Cultivated soil with residue cover >20%	0.17
Short prairie grass and lawns	0.15
Dense grasses	0.24
Bermuda grass	0.41
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods or forest with light underbrush	0.40
Woods or forest with dense underbrush	0.80
(210-VI-TR-55, Second Ed., June 1986)	
"k" Values Used in Travel Time/Time of Concentration Calculations	
Shallow Concentrated Flow (After the initial 300 ft. of sheet flow, R = 0.1)	**k_s**
1. Forest with heavy ground litter and meadows (n = 0.10)	3
2. Brushy ground with some trees (n = 0.060)	5
3. Fallow or minimum tillage cultivation (n = 0.040)	8
4. High grass (n = 0.035)	9
5. Short grass, pasture, and lawns (n = 0.030)	11
6. Nearly bare ground (n = 0.025)	13
7. Paved and gravel areas (n = 0.012)	27
Channel Flow (Intermittent) (At the beginning of visible channels R = 0.2)	**k_c**
1. Forested swale with heavy ground litter (n = 0.10)	5
2. Forested drainage course/ravine with defined channel bed (n = 0.050)	10
3. Rock-lined waterway (n = 0.035)	15
4. Grassed waterway (n = 0.030)	17
5. Earth-lined waterway (n = 0.025)	20
6. CMP pipe, uniform flow (n = 0.024)	21
7. Concrete pipe, uniform flow (0.012)	42
8. Other waterways and pipe	0.508/n
Channel Flow (Continuous stream, R = 0.4)	**k_c**
9. Meandering stream with some pools (n = 0.040)	20
10. Rock-lined stream (n = 0.035)	23
11. Grass-lined stream (n = 0.030)	27
12. Other streams, manmade channels, and pipe	0.807/n

Table 4B-6. Values of the roughness coefficient, "n."

Type of Channel and Description	Manning's "n"* (Normal)	Type of Channel and Description	Manning's "n"* (Normal)
A. Constructed Channels		6. Sluggish reaches, weedy	
a. *Earth, straight and uniform*		deep pools	0.070
1. Clean, recently completed	0.018	7. Very weedy reaches, deep	
2. Gravel, uniform selection,	0.025	pools, or floodways with	
clean		heavy stand of timber and	
3. With short grass, few	0.027	underbrush	0.100
weeds		b. *Mountain streams, no vegetation*	
b. *Earth, winding and sluggish*		*in channel, banks usually steep,*	
1. No vegetation	0.025	*trees and brush along banks*	
2. Grass, some weeds	0.030	*submerged at high stages*	
3. Dense weeds or aquatic		1. Bottom: gravel, cobbles, and	
plants in deep channels	0.035	few boulders	0.040
4. Earth bottom and rubble		2. Bottom: cobbles with large	
sides	0.030	boulders	0.050
5. Stony bottom and weedy		B-2 Flood plains	
banks	0.035	a. *Pasture, no brush*	
6. Cobble bottom and clean		1. Short grass	0.030
sides	0.040	2. High grass	0.035
c. *Rock-lined*		b. *Cultivated areas*	
1. Smooth and uniform	0.035	1. No crop	0.030
2. Jagged and irregular	0.040	2. Mature row crops	0.035
d. *Channels not maintained,*		3. Mature field crops	0.040
weeds and brush uncut		c. *Brush*	
1. Dense weeds, high as flow		1. Scattered brush, heavy	
depth	0.080	weeds	0.050
2. Clean bottom, brush on		2. Light brush and trees	0.060
sides	0.050	3. Medium to dense brush	0.070
3. Same, highest stage of		4. Heavy, dense brush	0.100
flow	0.070	d. *Trees*	
4. Dense brush, high stage	0.100	1. Dense willows, straight	0.150
B. Natural Streams		2. Cleared land with tree	
B-1 Minor streams (top width at		stumps, no sprouts	0.040
flood stage < 100 ft.)		3. Same as above, but with	
a. *Streams on plain*		heavy growth of sprouts	0.060
1. Clean, straight, full stage,		4. Heavy stand of timber, a few	
no rifts or deep pools	0.030	downed trees, little	
2. Same as above, but more		undergrowth, flood stage	
stones and weeds	0.035	below branches	0.100
3. Clean, winding, some		5. Same as above, but with	
pools and shoals	0.040	flood stage reaching	
4. Same as above, but some		branches	0.120
weeds	0.040		
5. Same as 4, but more stones	0.050		

* Note: These "n" values are "normal" values for use in analysis of channels. For conservative design for channel capacity, the maximum values listed in other references should be considered. For channel bank stability, the minimum values should be considered.

APPENDIX 4C

Eastern Washington
Design Storm Events

Appendix 4C. Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Appendix 4C.
Eastern Washington Design Storm Events

The design storms to be used in eastern Washington are based on two parameters:

- Total rainfall volume (depth in inches)
- Rainfall distribution (dimensionless)

The design storm event is specified by return period (months and/or years) and duration. The following sections explain total rainfall depth and rainfall distribution associated with a design storm.

All storm event hydrograph methods require the input of a rainfall distribution or design storm hyetograph. Essentially, the design storm hyetograph is a plot of rainfall depth versus time for a given design period and duration. It is usually presented as a dimensionless plot of unit rainfall depth (incremental rainfall depth for each time interval divided by the total rainfall depth) versus time.

Design storm distribution for all eastern Washington Climatic Regions – 1, 2, 3, and 4:

- **Flow-Based BMPs**: The short-duration storm distribution.
- **Volume-Based BMPs**: The SCS Type 1A storm distribution (Regions 2 and 3) or the Regional Long Duration Storm (Regions 1–4).

4C-1 SCS Type II and Type 1A Hyetographs

The Type II hyetograph is a standard SCS (NRCS) rainfall distribution that has a high intensity peak. It has been used in eastern Washington since the 1970s, and is also used throughout much of the United States. The Type IA hyetograph is also a standard NRCS rainfall distribution. It is applicable to western Washington and Climatic Regions 2 and 3 in eastern Washington. These are two of four 24-hour storm distribution types commonly used in SCS hydrograph methods.

For graphical representation of these two SCS hyetographs, see Figures 4C-1 and 4C-2. Tabular values of these hyetographs are in Tables 4C-3 and 4C-4.

4C-2 Custom Design Storm Hyetographs

When rainfall patterns during storms were analyzed in eastern Washington (see Appendix 4A), it was concluded that the SCS Type II rainfall distribution does not match the historical records for two storm types of interest for stormwater analyses in eastern Washington: the short-duration thunderstorm and the long-duration winter storm.

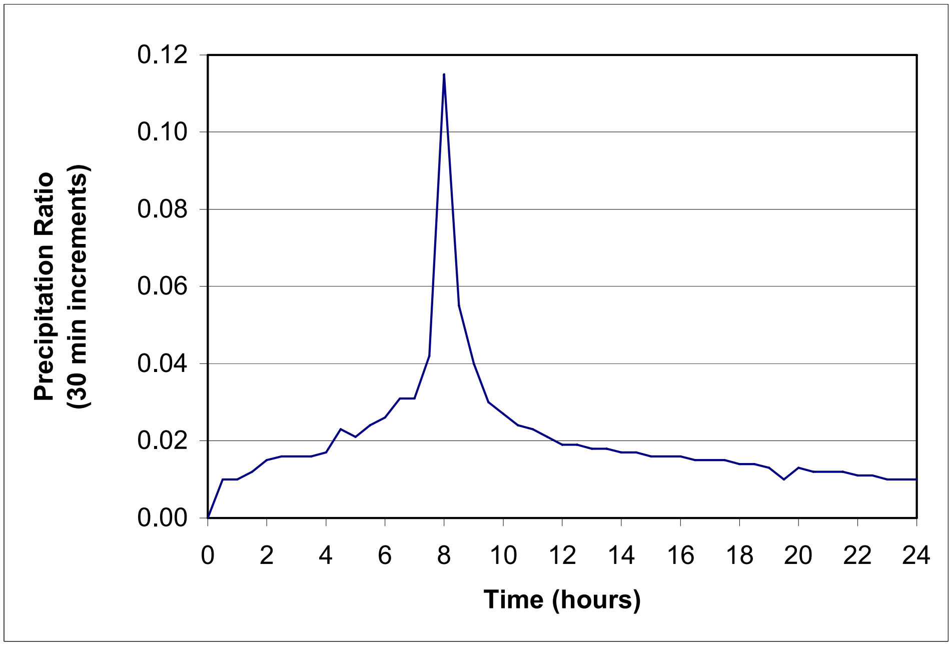


Figure 4C-1. SCS Type 1A hyetograph.

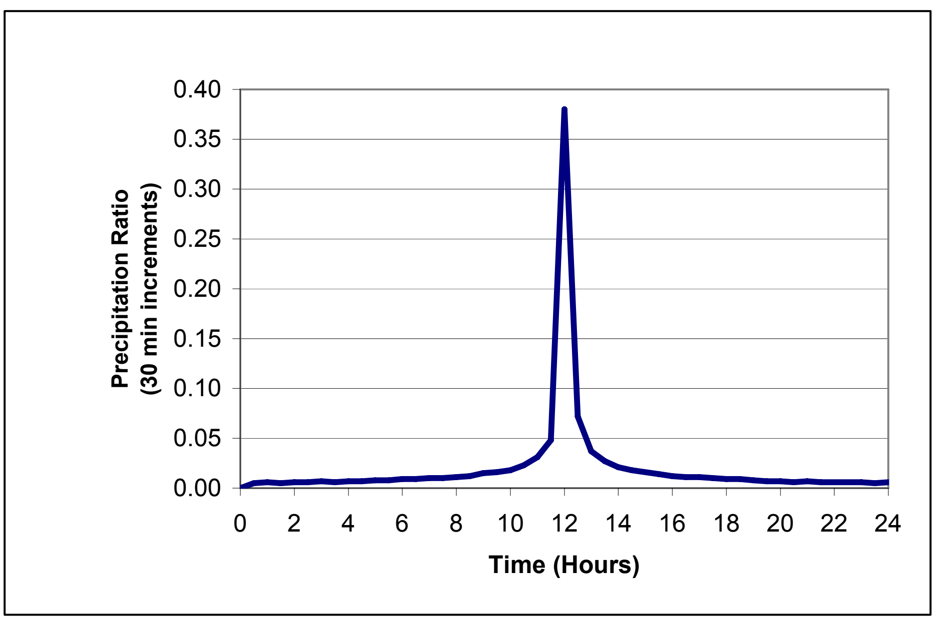
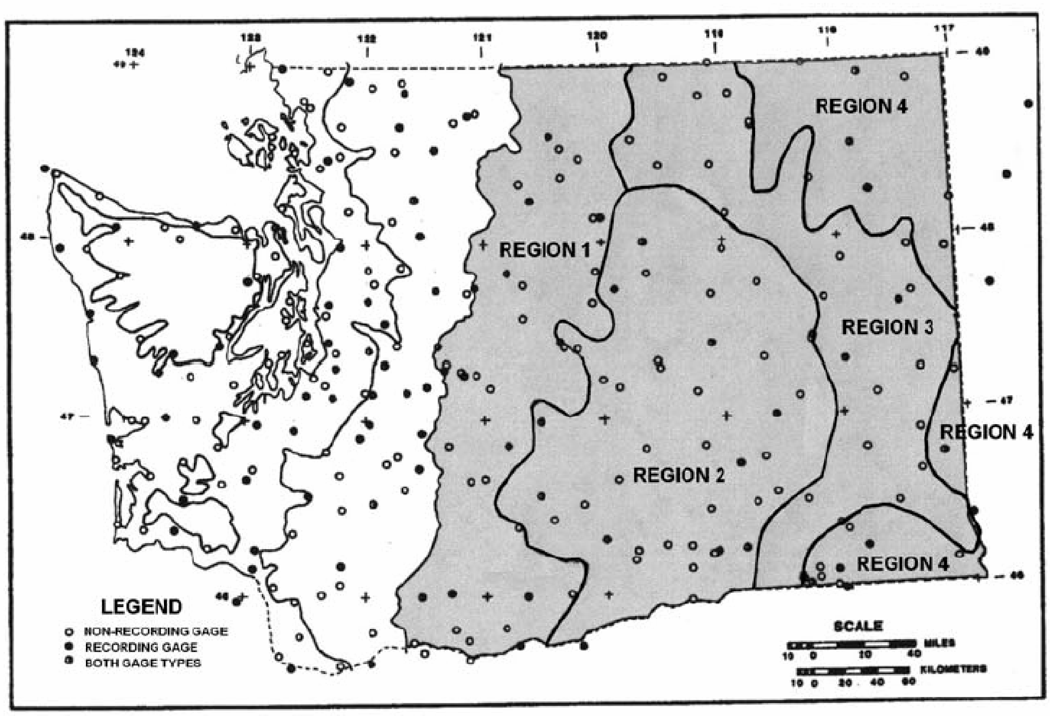


Figure 4C-2. SCS Type II hyetograph.

Short-duration thunderstorms can occur in late spring through early fall and are characterized by high intensities for short periods of time over localized areas. These types of storms can produce high rates of runoff and flash flooding in urban areas, and are important where flood peak discharge and/or erosion are design considerations.

Long-duration general storms can occur at any time of the year, but are more common in late fall through winter, and in late spring and early summer. General storms in eastern Washington are characterized by sequences of storms and intervening dry periods, often occurring over several days. Low to moderate intensity precipitation is typical during the periods of storm activity. These types of events can produce floods with moderate peak discharge and large runoff volumes. The runoff volume can be augmented by snowmelt when precipitation falls on snow during winter and early spring storms. These types of storm events are important where both runoff volume and peak discharge are design considerations.

When using the custom design storms, it is necessary to note that eastern Washington has been divided into four climatic regions to reflect the differences in storm characteristics and the seasonality of storms. The four climatic regions include:



Region 1 – East Slopes of the Cascade Mountains

This region is comprised of mountain areas on the east slopes of the Cascade Mountains. It is bounded on the west by the Cascade crest and generally bounded to the east by the contour line of 16-inches mean annual precipitation.

Region 2 – Central Basin

The Central Basin region is comprised of the Columbia Basin and adjacent low elevation areas in central Washington. It is generally bounded on the west by the contour line of 16-inches mean annual precipitation at the base of the east slopes of the Cascade Mountains. The region is bounded on the north and east by the contour line of 12-inches mean annual precipitation. Most of this region receives about 8 inches of mean annual precipitation. Many of the larger cities in eastern Washington are in this region, including Ellensburg, Kennewick, Moses Lake, Pasco, Richland, Wenatchee, and Yakima.

Region 3 – Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse

This region is comprised of intermountain areas and includes areas near Okanogan, Spokane, and the Palouse. It is bounded on the northwest by the contour line of 16-inches mean annual precipitation at the base of the east slopes of the Cascade Mountains. It is bounded on the south and west by the contour line of 12-inches mean annual precipitation at the eastern edge of the Central Basin. It is bounded on the northeast by the Kettle River Range and Selkirk Mountains at approximately the contour line of 22-inches mean annual precipitation. It is bounded on the southeast by the Blue Mountains; also at the contour line of 22-inches mean annual precipitation.

Region 4 – Northeastern Mountains and Blue Mountains

This region is comprised of mountain areas in the easternmost part of Washington State. It includes portions of the Kettle River Range and Selkirk Mountains in the northeast, and the Blue Mountains in the southeast corner of eastern Washington. Mean annual precipitation ranges from a minimum of 22 inches to over 60 inches. The western boundary of this region is the contour line of 22-inches mean annual precipitation.

4C-3 Storm Analysis

Based on analyses of historical storms in eastern Washington, it has been concluded that the short-duration summer thunderstorm typically generates the greatest peak discharges for small urban watersheds. Use of short-duration thunderstorms is therefore appropriate for designing conveyance structures and biofiltration swales. Analyses also indicate that the long-duration winter storm typically generates the greatest runoff volume. Long-duration design storms are therefore appropriate for designing stormwater detention and runoff treatment facilities where runoff volume is the primary concern. The Type 1A storm distribution is used for volume-based BMPs in Climatic Regions 2 and 3, or the regional long-duration distribution can be used in Climatic Regions 1–4.

Based on these analyses, synthetic design storms were developed for the short-duration thunderstorm and long-duration winter storm. The design storms were developed in a manner that replicated temporal characteristics observed in storms from areas climatologically similar to eastern Washington.

- **Short-Duration Storm**

  Short duration, high intensity, and smaller volumes characterize summer thunderstorms. The short-duration storm was selected to be 3 hours in duration. The storm temporal pattern is shown in Figure 4C-3 as a unit hyetograph. Tabular values are listed in Table 4C-5. Total precipitation is 1.06 times the 2-year, 2-hour precipitation amount to derive the 2-year, 3-hour storm. (See Table 4C-12 for further guidance.) There is one short-duration storm for all climatic regions in eastern Washington.

- **Long-Duration Storm** (varies by region)

  The long-duration storm varies by region and is comprised of a series of storm events separated by a dry intervening period, occurring during a 72-hour period of time. A sample 72-hour long-duration storm hyetograph is shown in Figure 4C-4.

The smaller event (from 6 to 21 hours, above) is insufficient to generate runoff that is present when the larger precipitation commences. For that reason, it is not necessary to directly model the smaller precipitation event. Only the larger portion (commencing at 36 hours, as shown above) is necessary to directly model.

The larger portion is similar to the 24-hour SCS Type 1A storm. For Climatic Regions 2 and 3, the SCS Type IA storm is sufficiently similar to the four regional long-duration storm hyetographs to use directly.

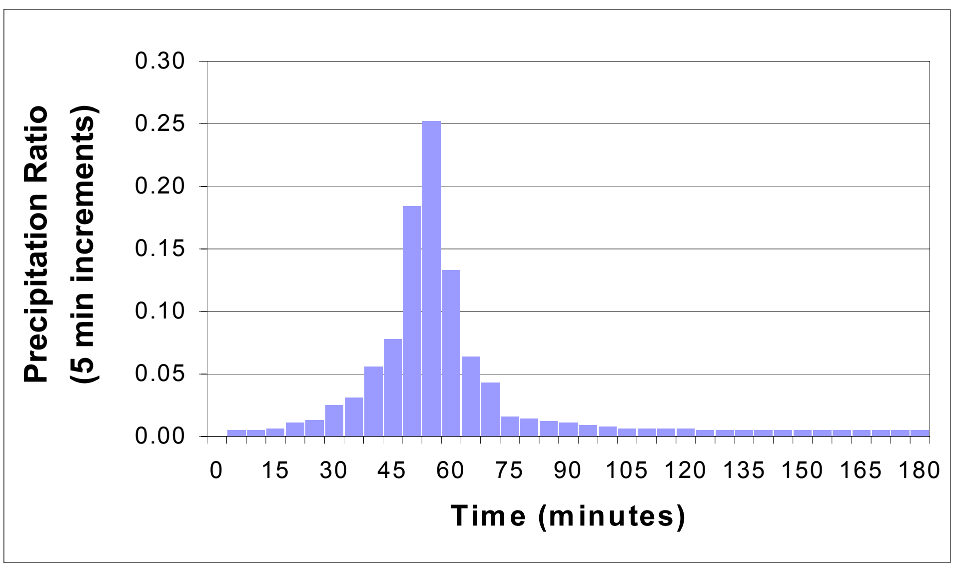


Figure 4C-3. Short-duration storm unit hyetograph.

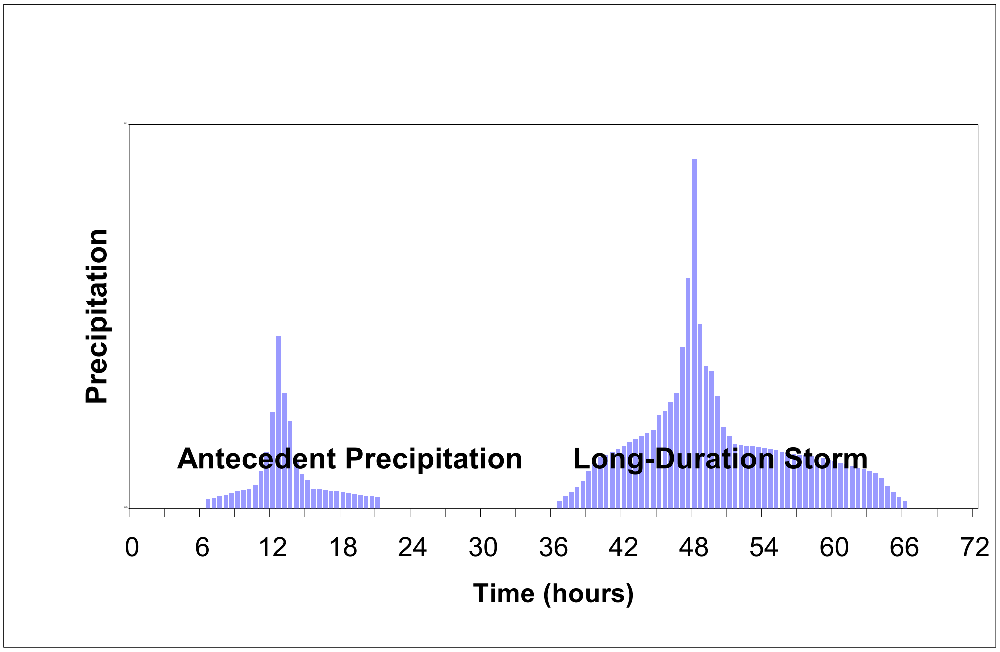


Figure 4C-4. Sample long-duration storm hyetograph.

Tabular values of the regional long-duration storm hyetographs are listed in Tables 4C-8 to 4C-11.

If the 24-hour SCS Type 1A storm is used for the long-duration storm, the precipitation totals are the 24-hour amounts without adjustment. If the regional long-duration hyetographs are used, the precipitation totals need to be adjusted as indicated for Regions 1 and 4, using Table 4C-11.

4C-4 Antecedent Moisture Condition

Regardless whether the 24-hour SCS Type 1A or regional hyetographs are used for long-duration storm modeling, the prior soil wetting produced by the smaller storm event (from 6 hours to 21 hours, above) that is not modeled needs to be accounted for. The amount of antecedent precipitation can be expressed as a percentage of the total precipitation modeled, as shown in Table 4C-3.

Curve number adjustments are to be considered, based on engineering analysis and judgment of the antecedent precipitation, soils characteristics, and surface conditions. The Antecedent Moisture Condition (AMC) is one basis for adjustment. Another is use of the Soil Conservation Service county surveys that include estimates of permeability and/or infiltration rates. Below is an example of the AMC:

For a 25-year Type 1A storm in Spokane (2.2"), determine whether AMC adjustments need to be considered in the analysis. If so, take the following steps:

1. From Table 4C-1, multiply 2.2" by 27% (Region 3), which equals 0.7". This is the amount of precipitation from the first hump of the long duration storm.

Table 4C-1. Antecedent precipitation prior to long-duration storm.

Region #	Region Name	Antecedent Precipitation as Percentage of 24-Hour SCS Type 1A Storm Precipitation
1	East Slope Cascades	33%
2	Central Basin	19%
3	Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse	27%
4	NE & Blue Mountains	36%

Region #	Region Name	Antecedent Precipitation as Percentage of Regional Long-Duration Storm Hyetograph Precipitation
1	East Slope Cascades	28%
2	Central Basin	19%
3	Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse	25%
4	NE & Blue Mountains	34%

2. Next, determine if the AMC will affect the CN values using Table 4C-2. If the precipitation from the first storm is over 1.1 or less than 0.5, the CN value will need to be adjusted using Appendix 4B. CN values are generally assumed to be AMC II.

Table 4C-2. Total 5-day antecedent rainfall (inches).

AMC	Dormant Season	Growing Season
I	Less than 0.5	Less than 1.4
II	0.5 to 1.1	1.4 to 2.1
III	Over 1.1	Over 2.1

4C-5 Precipitation Magnitude/Frequency Analysis

The current source for precipitation magnitude-frequency estimates is NOAA Atlas II, which is based on data collected from about 1940 through 1966, and NOAA Technical Report Number 36, which uses data through the late 1970s. In both of these studies, precipitation statistics were computed for each gage and used to produce point precipitation estimates at each site. The accuracy of the estimates was strongly related to the length of record at each site. Better estimates were obtained for more common events, with lesser accuracy for more rare events.

NOAA published the total depth of rainfall (in tenths of an inch) for storms of 24-hour duration and 2-, 5-, 10-, 25-, 50-, and 100-year recurrence intervals. The information is presented in the form of "isopluvial" maps for each state. Isopluvial maps are contour maps where the contours represent total inches of rainfall for a specific duration.

The web link to the isopluvial map for eastern Washington for the 2-year recurrence interval for the 2-hour duration storm event can be found in Appendix 4A. This map is from the Dam Safety Guidelines, Technical Note 3, Design Storm Construction, Washington State Department of Ecology, Water Resources Program, Report 92-55G, April 1993. This map is used for designs based on the short-duration storm.

Web links to the isopluvial maps for eastern Washington for the 2-, 10-, 25-, 50- and 100-year recurrence interval for 24-hour duration storm events can be found in Appendix 4A. These are excerpted from NOAA Atlas 2. The 24-hour isopluvial maps are used for designs based on the long-duration storm and 24-hour storms.

Table 4C-3. SCS Type 1A storm hyetograph values.

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.000	0.000
0.1	0.002	0.002
0.2	0.002	0.004
0.3	0.002	0.006
0.4	0.002	0.008
0.5	0.002	0.010
0.6	0.002	0.012
0.7	0.002	0.014
0.8	0.002	0.016
0.9	0.002	0.018
1.0	0.002	0.020
1.1	0.003	0.023
1.2	0.003	0.026
1.3	0.003	0.029
1.4	0.003	0.032
1.5	0.003	0.035
1.6	0.003	0.038
1.7	0.003	0.041
1.8	0.003	0.044
1.9	0.003	0.047
2.0	0.003	0.050
2.1	0.003	0.053
2.2	0.003	0.056
2.3	0.004	0.060
2.4	0.003	0.063
2.5	0.003	0.066
2.6	0.003	0.069
2.7	0.003	0.072
2.8	0.004	0.076
2.9	0.003	0.079
3.0	0.003	0.082
3.1	0.003	0.085
3.2	0.003	0.088
3.3	0.003	0.091
3.4	0.004	0.095
3.5	0.003	0.098
3.6	0.003	0.101
3.7	0.004	0.105
3.8	0.004	0.109
3.9	0.003	0.112
4.0	0.004	0.116
4.1	0.004	0.120
4.2	0.003	0.123
4.3	0.004	0.127
4.4	0.004	0.131
4.5	0.004	0.135
4.6	0.004	0.139
4.7	0.004	0.143
4.8	0.004	0.147
4.9	0.005	0.152
5.0	0.004	0.156
5.1	0.005	0.161
5.2	0.004	0.165
5.3	0.005	0.170
5.4	0.005	0.175
5.5	0.005	0.180
5.6	0.005	0.185
5.7	0.005	0.190
5.8	0.005	0.195
5.9	0.005	0.200
6.0	0.006	0.206
6.1	0.006	0.212
6.2	0.006	0.218
6.3	0.006	0.224
6.4	0.007	0.231
6.5	0.006	0.237
6.6	0.006	0.243
6.7	0.006	0.249
6.8	0.006	0.255
6.9	0.006	0.261
7.0	0.007	0.268
7.1	0.007	0.275
7.2	0.008	0.283
7.3	0.008	0.291
7.4	0.009	0.300
7.5	0.010	0.310
7.6	0.021	0.331
7.7	0.024	0.355
7.8	0.024	0.379
7.9	0.024	0.403
8.0	0.022	0.425
8.1	0.014	0.439
8.2	0.013	0.452
8.3	0.010	0.462
8.4	0.010	0.472
8.5	0.008	0.480
8.6	0.009	0.489
8.7	0.009	0.498
8.8	0.007	0.505
8.9	0.008	0.513
9.0	0.007	0.520
9.1	0.007	0.527
9.2	0.006	0.533
9.3	0.006	0.539
9.4	0.006	0.545
9.5	0.005	0.550
9.6	0.006	0.556
9.7	0.005	0.561
9.8	0.006	0.567
9.9	0.005	0.572
10.0	0.005	0.577
10.1	0.005	0.582
10.2	0.005	0.587
10.3	0.005	0.592
10.4	0.004	0.596
10.5	0.005	0.601
10.6	0.005	0.606
10.7	0.004	0.610
10.8	0.005	0.615
10.9	0.005	0.620
11.0	0.004	0.624
11.1	0.004	0.628
11.2	0.005	0.633
11.3	0.004	0.637
11.4	0.004	0.641
11.5	0.004	0.645
11.6	0.004	0.649
11.7	0.004	0.653
11.8	0.004	0.657
11.9	0.003	0.660
12.0	0.004	0.664
12.1	0.004	0.668
12.2	0.003	0.671
12.3	0.004	0.675
12.4	0.004	0.679
12.5	0.004	0.683
12.6	0.004	0.687
12.7	0.003	0.690
12.8	0.004	0.694
12.9	0.003	0.697
13.0	0.004	0.701
13.1	0.004	0.705
13.2	0.003	0.708
13.3	0.004	0.712
13.4	0.004	0.716

Table 4C-3. SCS Type IA storm hyetograph values (continued).

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
13.5	0.003	0.719
13.6	0.003	0.722
13.7	0.004	0.726
13.8	0.003	0.729
13.9	0.004	0.733
14.0	0.003	0.736
14.1	0.003	0.739
14.2	0.004	0.743
14.3	0.003	0.746
14.4	0.003	0.749
14.5	0.004	0.753
14.6	0.003	0.756
14.7	0.003	0.759
14.8	0.004	0.763
14.9	0.003	0.766
15.0	0.003	0.769
15.1	0.003	0.772
15.2	0.004	0.776
15.3	0.003	0.779
15.4	0.003	0.782
15.5	0.003	0.785
15.6	0.003	0.788
15.7	0.004	0.792
15.8	0.003	0.795
15.9	0.003	0.798
16.0	0.003	0.801
16.1	0.003	0.804
16.2	0.003	0.807
16.3	0.003	0.810
16.4	0.003	0.813
16.5	0.003	0.816
16.6	0.003	0.819
16.7	0.003	0.822
16.8	0.003	0.825
16.9	0.003	0.828
17.0	0.003	0.831
17.1	0.003	0.834
17.2	0.003	0.837
17.3	0.003	0.840
17.4	0.003	0.843
17.5	0.003	0.846
17.6	0.003	0.849
17.7	0.002	0.851
17.8	0.003	0.854
17.9	0.003	0.857

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
18.0	0.003	0.860
18.1	0.003	0.863
18.2	0.002	0.865
18.3	0.003	0.868
18.4	0.003	0.871
18.5	0.003	0.874
18.6	0.002	0.876
18.7	0.003	0.879
18.8	0.003	0.882
18.9	0.002	0.884
19.0	0.003	0.887
19.1	0.003	0.890
19.2	0.002	0.892
19.3	0.003	0.895
19.4	0.002	0.897
19.5	0.003	0.900
19.6	0.003	0.903
19.7	0.002	0.905
19.8	0.003	0.908
19.9	0.002	0.910
20.0	0.003	0.913
20.1	0.002	0.915
20.2	0.003	0.918
20.3	0.002	0.920
20.4	0.002	0.922
20.5	0.003	0.925
20.6	0.002	0.927
20.7	0.003	0.930
20.8	0.002	0.932
20.9	0.002	0.934
21.0	0.003	0.937
21.1	0.002	0.939
21.2	0.002	0.941
21.3	0.003	0.944
21.4	0.002	0.946
21.5	0.002	0.948
21.6	0.003	0.951
21.7	0.002	0.953
21.8	0.002	0.955
21.9	0.002	0.957
22.0	0.002	0.959
22.1	0.003	0.962
22.2	0.002	0.964
22.3	0.002	0.966
22.4	0.002	0.968

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
22.5	0.002	0.970
22.6	0.002	0.972
22.7	0.002	0.974
22.8	0.002	0.976
22.9	0.002	0.978
23.0	0.002	0.980
23.1	0.002	0.982
23.2	0.002	0.984
23.3	0.002	0.986
23.4	0.002	0.988
23.5	0.002	0.990
23.6	0.002	0.992
23.7	0.002	0.994
23.8	0.002	0.996
23.9	0.002	0.998
24.0	0.002	1.000

Table 4C-4. SCS Type II storm hyetograph values.

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.000	0.000
0.1	0.001	0.001
0.2	0.001	0.002
0.3	0.001	0.003
0.4	0.001	0.004
0.5	0.001	0.005
0.6	0.001	0.006
0.7	0.001	0.007
0.8	0.001	0.008
0.9	0.001	0.009
1.0	0.002	0.011
1.1	0.001	0.012
1.2	0.001	0.013
1.3	0.001	0.014
1.4	0.001	0.015
1.5	0.001	0.016
1.6	0.001	0.017
1.7	0.001	0.018
1.8	0.002	0.020
1.9	0.001	0.021
2.0	0.001	0.022
2.1	0.001	0.023
2.2	0.001	0.024
2.3	0.002	0.026
2.4	0.001	0.027
2.5	0.001	0.028
2.6	0.001	0.029
2.7	0.002	0.031
2.8	0.001	0.032
2.9	0.001	0.033
3.0	0.002	0.035
3.1	0.001	0.036
3.2	0.001	0.037
3.3	0.001	0.038
3.4	0.002	0.040
3.5	0.001	0.041
3.6	0.001	0.042
3.7	0.002	0.044
3.8	0.001	0.045
3.9	0.002	0.047
4.0	0.001	0.048
4.1	0.001	0.049
4.2	0.002	0.051
4.3	0.001	0.052
4.4	0.002	0.054
4.5	0.001	0.055
4.6	0.002	0.057
4.7	0.001	0.058
4.8	0.002	0.060
4.9	0.001	0.061
5.0	0.002	0.063
5.1	0.002	0.065
5.2	0.001	0.066
5.3	0.002	0.068
5.4	0.002	0.070
5.5	0.001	0.071
5.6	0.002	0.073
5.7	0.002	0.075
5.8	0.001	0.076
5.9	0.002	0.078
6.0	0.002	0.080
6.1	0.002	0.082
6.2	0.002	0.084
6.3	0.001	0.085
6.4	0.002	0.087
6.5	0.002	0.089
6.6	0.002	0.091
6.7	0.002	0.093
6.8	0.002	0.095
6.9	0.002	0.097
7.0	0.002	0.099
7.1	0.002	0.101
7.2	0.002	0.103
7.3	0.002	0.105
7.4	0.002	0.107
7.5	0.002	0.109
7.6	0.002	0.111
7.7	0.002	0.113
7.8	0.003	0.116
7.9	0.002	0.118
8.0	0.002	0.120
8.1	0.002	0.122
8.2	0.003	0.125
8.3	0.002	0.127
8.4	0.003	0.130
8.5	0.002	0.132
8.6	0.003	0.135
8.7	0.003	0.138
8.8	0.003	0.141
8.9	0.003	0.144
9.0	0.003	0.147
9.1	0.003	0.150
9.2	0.003	0.153
9.3	0.004	0.157
9.4	0.003	0.160
9.5	0.003	0.163
9.6	0.003	0.166
9.7	0.004	0.170
9.8	0.003	0.173
9.9	0.004	0.177
10.0	0.004	0.181
10.1	0.004	0.185
10.2	0.004	0.189
10.3	0.005	0.194
10.4	0.005	0.199
10.5	0.005	0.204
10.6	0.005	0.209
10.7	0.006	0.215
10.8	0.006	0.221
10.9	0.007	0.228
11.0	0.007	0.235
11.1	0.008	0.243
11.2	0.008	0.251
11.3	0.010	0.261
11.4	0.010	0.271
11.5	0.012	0.283
11.6	0.024	0.307
11.7	0.047	0.354
11.8	0.077	0.431
11.9	0.137	0.568
12.0	0.095	0.663
12.1	0.019	0.682
12.2	0.017	0.699
12.3	0.014	0.713
12.4	0.012	0.725
12.5	0.010	0.735
12.6	0.008	0.743
12.7	0.008	0.751
12.8	0.008	0.759
12.9	0.007	0.766
13.0	0.006	0.772
13.1	0.006	0.778
13.2	0.006	0.784
13.3	0.005	0.789
13.4	0.005	0.794

Table 4C-4. SCS Type II storm hyetograph values (continued).

Time (0.1 hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
13.5	0.005	0.799
13.6	0.005	0.804
13.7	0.004	0.808
13.8	0.004	0.812
13.9	0.004	0.816
14.0	0.004	0.820
14.1	0.004	0.824
14.2	0.003	0.827
14.3	0.004	0.831
14.4	0.003	0.834
14.5	0.004	0.838
14.6	0.003	0.841
14.7	0.003	0.844
14.8	0.003	0.847
14.9	0.003	0.850
15.0	0.004	0.854
15.1	0.002	0.856
15.2	0.003	0.859
15.3	0.003	0.862
15.4	0.003	0.865
15.5	0.003	0.868
15.6	0.002	0.870
15.7	0.003	0.873
15.8	0.002	0.875
15.9	0.003	0.878
16.0	0.002	0.880
16.1	0.002	0.882
16.2	0.003	0.885
16.3	0.002	0.887
16.4	0.002	0.889
16.5	0.002	0.891
16.6	0.002	0.893
16.7	0.002	0.895
16.8	0.003	0.898
16.9	0.002	0.900
17.0	0.002	0.902
17.1	0.002	0.904
17.2	0.002	0.906
17.3	0.002	0.908
17.4	0.002	0.910
17.5	0.002	0.912
17.6	0.002	0.914
17.7	0.001	0.915
17.8	0.002	0.917
17.9	0.002	0.919
18.0	0.002	0.921
18.1	0.002	0.923
18.2	0.002	0.925
18.3	0.001	0.926
18.4	0.002	0.928
18.5	0.002	0.930
18.6	0.001	0.931
18.7	0.002	0.933
18.8	0.002	0.935
18.9	0.001	0.936
19.0	0.002	0.938
19.1	0.001	0.939
19.2	0.002	0.941
19.3	0.001	0.942
19.4	0.002	0.944
19.5	0.001	0.945
19.6	0.002	0.947
19.7	0.001	0.948
19.8	0.001	0.949
19.9	0.002	0.951
20.0	0.001	0.952
20.1	0.001	0.953
20.2	0.002	0.955
20.3	0.001	0.956
20.4	0.001	0.957
20.5	0.001	0.958
20.6	0.002	0.960
20.7	0.001	0.961
20.8	0.001	0.962
20.9	0.002	0.964
21.0	0.001	0.965
21.1	0.001	0.966
21.2	0.001	0.967
21.3	0.001	0.968
21.4	0.002	0.970
21.5	0.001	0.971
21.6	0.001	0.972
21.7	0.001	0.973
21.8	0.002	0.975
21.9	0.001	0.976
22.0	0.001	0.977
22.1	0.001	0.978
22.2	0.001	0.979
22.3	0.002	0.981
22.4	0.001	0.982
22.5	0.001	0.983
22.6	0.001	0.984
22.7	0.001	0.985
22.8	0.001	0.986
22.9	0.002	0.988
23.0	0.001	0.989
23.1	0.001	0.990
23.2	0.001	0.991
23.3	0.001	0.992
23.4	0.001	0.993
23.5	0.001	0.994
23.6	0.002	0.996
23.7	0.001	0.997
23.8	0.001	0.998
23.9	0.001	0.999
24.0	0.001	1.000

Table 4C-5. Short-duration storm hyetograph values: all regions.

Use 2-hour precipitation value times 1.06 to determine 3-hour total precipitation amount.

Time (minutes)	Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0	0	0.0000	0.0000
5	0.08	0.0047	0.0047
10	0.17	0.0047	0.0094
15	0.25	0.0057	0.0151
20	0.33	0.0104	0.0255
25	0.42	0.0123	0.0378
30	0.50	0.0236	0.0614
35	0.58	0.0292	0.0906
40	0.67	0.0528	0.1434
45	0.75	0.0736	0.2170
50	0.83	0.1736	0.3906
55	0.92	0.2377	0.6283
60	1.00	0.1255	0.7538
65	1.08	0.0604	0.8142
70	1.17	0.0406	0.8548
75	1.25	0.0151	0.8699
80	1.33	0.0132	0.8831
85	1.42	0.0113	0.8944
90	1.50	0.0104	0.9048
95	1.58	0.0085	0.9133
100	1.67	0.0075	0.9208
105	1.75	0.0057	0.9265
110	1.83	0.0057	0.9322
115	1.92	0.0057	0.9379
120	2.00	0.0057	0.9436
125	2.08	0.0047	0.9483
130	2.17	0.0047	0.9530
135	2.25	0.0047	0.9577
140	2.33	0.0047	0.9624
145	2.42	0.0047	0.9671
150	2.50	0.0047	0.9718
155	2.58	0.0047	0.9765
160	2.67	0.0047	0.9812
165	2.75	0.0047	0.9859
170	2.83	0.0047	0.9906
175	2.92	0.0047	0.9953
180	3.00	0.0047	1.0000

Table 4C-6. Long-duration storm hyetograph values: Region 1 – Cascade Mountains.

Use 24-hour precipitation value times 1.16 to determine long-duration storm precipitation total.

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.0000	0.0000
0.5	0.0024	0.0024
1.0	0.0036	0.0060
1.5	0.0040	0.0101
2.0	0.0047	0.0148
2.5	0.0051	0.0199
3.0	0.0054	0.0253
3.5	0.0058	0.0311
4.0	0.0062	0.0374
4.5	0.0066	0.0439
5.0	0.0078	0.0517
5.5	0.0096	0.0614
6.0	0.0120	0.0733
6.5	0.0138	0.0871
7.0	0.0150	0.1022
7.5	0.0157	0.1179
8.0	0.0164	0.1343
8.5	0.0171	0.1513
9.0	0.0178	0.1691
9.5	0.0185	0.1876
10.0	0.0192	0.2067
10.5	0.0198	0.2266
11.0	0.0205	0.2471
11.5	0.0212	0.2683
12.0	0.0220	0.2904
12.5	0.0226	0.3130
13.0	0.0235	0.3364
13.5	0.0243	0.3608
14.0	0.0297	0.3905
14.5	0.0338	0.4243
15.0	0.0507	0.4750
15.5	0.0315	0.5066
16.0	0.0283	0.5349
16.5	0.0257	0.5606
17.0	0.0231	0.5837
17.5	0.0214	0.6051
18.0	0.0183	0.6234
18.5	0.0168	0.6402
19.0	0.0165	0.6566
19.5	0.0161	0.6728
20.0	0.0158	0.6886
20.5	0.0154	0.7040
21.0	0.0151	0.7191
21.5	0.0148	0.7339
22.0	0.0144	0.7483
22.5	0.0141	0.7623
23.0	0.0137	0.7761
23.5	0.0134	0.7894
24.0	0.0130	0.8025
24.5	0.0127	0.8151
25.0	0.0123	0.8275
25.5	0.0120	0.8395
26.0	0.0117	0.8512
26.5	0.0115	0.8627
27.0	0.0112	0.8739
27.5	0.0110	0.8849
28.0	0.0107	0.8956
28.5	0.0104	0.9060
29.0	0.0102	0.9162
29.5	0.0099	0.9261
30.0	0.0097	0.9358
30.5	0.0088	0.9446
31.0	0.0079	0.9525
31.5	0.0071	0.9596
32.0	0.0063	0.9659
32.5	0.0058	0.9717
33.0	0.0054	0.9772
33.5	0.0050	0.9822
34.0	0.0047	0.9869
34.5	0.0043	0.9912
35.0	0.0039	0.9950
35.5	0.0030	0.9981
36.0	0.0019	1.0000

Table 4C-7. Long-duration storm hyetograph values: Region 2 – Central Basin.

Use 24-hour precipitation value times 1.00 to determine long-duration storm precipitation total.

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.0000	0.0000
0.5	0.0054	0.0054
1.0	0.0086	0.0140
1.5	0.0100	0.0240
2.0	0.0120	0.0360
2.5	0.0130	0.0490
3.0	0.0140	0.0630
3.5	0.0150	0.0780
4.0	0.0160	0.0940
4.5	0.0170	0.1110
5.0	0.0187	0.1297
5.5	0.0228	0.1525
6.0	0.0283	0.1808
6.5	0.0305	0.2113
7.0	0.0335	0.2448
7.5	0.0365	0.2813
8.0	0.0484	0.3297
8.5	0.0622	0.3919

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
9.0	0.0933	0.4852
9.5	0.0527	0.5380
10.0	0.0402	0.5782
10.5	0.0372	0.6154
11.0	0.0348	0.6502
11.5	0.0331	0.6833
12.0	0.0289	0.7122
12.5	0.0252	0.7374
13.0	0.0219	0.7593
13.5	0.0191	0.7783
14.0	0.0167	0.7950
14.5	0.0148	0.8098
15.0	0.0134	0.8232
15.5	0.0123	0.8355
16.0	0.0116	0.8471
16.5	0.0110	0.8581
17.0	0.0105	0.8686
17.5	0.0103	0.8789

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
18.0	0.0103	0.8892
18.5	0.0104	0.8996
19.0	0.0105	0.9100
19.5	0.0105	0.9205
20.0	0.0104	0.9309
20.5	0.0102	0.9412
21.0	0.0100	0.9512
21.5	0.0097	0.9609
22.0	0.0093	0.9702
22.5	0.0087	0.9789
23.0	0.0083	0.9872
23.5	0.0078	0.9950
24.0	0.0050	1.0000

Table 4C-8. Long-duration storm hyetograph values: Region 3 – Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse.

Use 24-hour precipitation value times 1.06 to determine long-duration storm precipitation total.

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.0000	0.0000
0.5	0.0017	0.0017
1.0	0.0030	0.0047
1.5	0.0041	0.0088
2.0	0.0053	0.0141
2.5	0.0068	0.0209
3.0	0.0092	0.0301
3.5	0.0108	0.0409
4.0	0.0126	0.0535
4.5	0.0132	0.0667
5.0	0.0139	0.0806
5.5	0.0147	0.0952
6.0	0.0154	0.1106
6.5	0.0162	0.1268
7.0	0.0169	0.1437
7.5	0.0177	0.1614
8.0	0.0184	0.1798
8.5	0.0192	0.1990
9.0	0.0228	0.2219
9.5	0.0238	0.2457
10.0	0.0260	0.2717
10.5	0.0282	0.2999
11.0	0.0395	0.3394
11.5	0.0564	0.3958
12.0	0.0855	0.4813
12.5	0.0451	0.5265
13.0	0.0348	0.5612
13.5	0.0335	0.5948
14.0	0.0276	0.6223
14.5	0.0199	0.6422
15.0	0.0179	0.6601
15.5	0.0158	0.6759
16.0	0.0156	0.6915
16.5	0.0154	0.7069
17.0	0.0152	0.7221
17.5	0.0150	0.7372
18.0	0.0148	0.7519
18.5	0.0145	0.7664
19.0	0.0142	0.7806
19.5	0.0139	0.7945
20.0	0.0136	0.8081
20.5	0.0133	0.8215
21.0	0.0131	0.8346

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
21.5	0.0130	0.8475
22.0	0.0128	0.8603
22.5	0.0126	0.8729
23.0	0.0123	0.8852
23.5	0.0120	0.8972
24.0	0.0116	0.9088
24.5	0.0112	0.9200
25.0	0.0108	0.9308
25.5	0.0104	0.9412
26.0	0.0100	0.9512
26.5	0.0096	0.9607
27.0	0.0092	0.9699
27.5	0.0086	0.9785
28.0	0.0074	0.9859
28.5	0.0054	0.9913
29.0	0.0040	0.9953
29.5	0.0030	0.9983
30.0	0.0017	1.0000

Table 4C-9. Long-duration storm hyetograph values: Region 4 – Northeastern Mountains and Blue Mountains.

Use 24-hour precipitation value times 1.07 to determine long-duration storm precipitation total.

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
0.0	0.0000	0.0000
0.5	0.0015	0.0015
1.0	0.0031	0.0046
1.5	0.0047	0.0094
2.0	0.0064	0.0158
2.5	0.0082	0.0239
3.0	0.0104	0.0343
3.5	0.0115	0.0458
4.0	0.0123	0.0581
4.5	0.0130	0.0711
5.0	0.0137	0.0848
5.5	0.0145	0.0993
6.0	0.0152	0.1145
6.5	0.0160	0.1305
7.0	0.0167	0.1472
7.5	0.0174	0.1646
8.0	0.0182	0.1828
8.5	0.0190	0.2019
9.0	0.0207	0.2226
9.5	0.0232	0.2458
10.0	0.0260	0.2717
10.5	0.0278	0.2996
11.0	0.0399	0.3394
11.5	0.0531	0.3925
12.0	0.0796	0.4722
12.5	0.0441	0.5162
13.0	0.0329	0.5492
13.5	0.0303	0.5795
14.0	0.0291	0.6086
14.5	0.0199	0.6284
15.0	0.0166	0.6451
15.5	0.0155	0.6606
16.0	0.0153	0.6759
16.5	0.0151	0.6910
17.0	0.0149	0.7059
17.5	0.0148	0.7207
18.0	0.0146	0.7353
18.5	0.0144	0.7496
19.0	0.0142	0.7639
19.5	0.0140	0.7779
20.0	0.0137	0.7915
20.5	0.0134	0.8049
21.0	0.0132	0.8181

Time (hours)	Incremental Rainfall	Cumulative Rainfall
21.5	0.0131	0.8312
22.0	0.0129	0.8441
22.5	0.0129	0.8570
23.0	0.0128	0.8697
23.5	0.0127	0.8825
24.0	0.0127	0.8951
24.5	0.0126	0.9077
25.0	0.0124	0.9201
25.5	0.0121	0.9322
26.0	0.0116	0.9438
26.5	0.0109	0.9547
27.0	0.0101	0.9647
27.5	0.0090	0.9738
28.0	0.0077	0.9814
28.5	0.0061	0.9875
29.0	0.0051	0.9926
29.5	0.0045	0.9971
30.0	0.0029	1.0000

4C-6 Precipitation Magnitude for 24-Hour and Long- and Short-Duration Runoff Treatment Storm

The frequency of the long-duration runoff treatment storm is a 6-month recurrence interval or twice per year return period. Unfortunately, the NOAA Atlas 2 maps require the conversion of 2-year, 24-hour precipitation to 6-month, 24-hour precipitation.

The following equation is used to determine the 6-month precipitation:

$$P_{wqs} = C_{wqs} (P_{2yr24hr})$$

where: P_{wqs} is the 24-hour precipitation (inches) for the storm recurrence interval of 6 months (this precipitation is used with the long-duration storm hyetograph or 24-hour SCS (NRCS) Type IA or Type II hyetographs, depending on the design storm option selected by the jurisdiction;

C_{wqs} is a coefficient from Table 4C-10 for computing the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation based on the climatic region; and

$P_{2yr24hr}$ is the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation in Appendix 4A.

Values of the coefficient C_{wqs} are shown in Table 4C-10 for all four regions.

Table 4C-10. Coefficients C_{wqs} for computing 6-month/year 24-hour precipitation.

Region #	Region Name	C_{wqs}
1	East Slope Cascades	0.70
2	Central Basin	0.66
3	Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse	0.69
4	NE & Blue Mountains	0.70

4C-7 Precipitation Magnitude for Long-Duration Storms

Table 4C-11 provides the multipliers, by region, for the conversion of the 24-hour precipitation to the regional long-duration storm precipitation. Using the precipitation values from the isopluvial maps and the conversion factor in Table 4C-11, the precipitation can be adjusted for the long-duration hyetograph. The design of volume-based BMPs requires the Regional Long Duration Storm in Regions 1 and 4. For Regions 2 and 4, designers can choose either the SCS Type 1A storm distribution or the Regional Long Duration Storm. When the Type 1A storm distribution is used, the conversion factors in Table 4C-11 do not apply.

Table 4C-11. Conversion factor for 24-hour to Regional Long-Duration Storm precipitation.

Region #	Region Name	Conversion Factor
1	East Slope Cascades	1.16
2	Central Basin	1.00
3	Okanogan, Spokane, Palouse	1.06
4	NE & Blue Mountains	1.07

The following equation is used to determine the long duration precipitation for a selected return period.

$$P_{sds} = C_F \left(P_{N\text{-yr } 24\text{-hr}}\right)$$

where: P_{sds} is the precipitation (inches) adjusted for a selected long-duration hyetograph;

C_F is a conversion factor from Table 4C-11, by region, for converting the 24-hour precipitation to the Regional Long-Duration Storm precipitation; and

$P_{N\text{-yr } 24\text{-hr}}$ is the precipitation from the isopluvial maps for N years and 24 hours, Appendix 4A.

4C-7.1 Precipitation Magnitude for Short-Duration Storms

The only mapped frequency of the short-duration storm is a 2-year, 2-hour recurrence interval. The design of flow-based treatment BMPs using the Single Event Hydrograph Model requires conversion of the 2-year, 2-hour precipitation to the 6-month, 2-hour precipitation. The design of other BMPs or conveyance elements based on the short-duration storm could also require the conversion of the 2-year, 2-hour precipitation to a different recurrence interval.

The following equation is used to determine the 3-hour precipitation for a selected return period:

$$P_{sds} = C_{sds} \left(P_{2yr2hr}\right)$$

where: P_{sds} is the 3-hour precipitation (inches) for a selected return period for the short-duration storm;

C_{sds} is a coefficient from Table 4C-12 for computing the 2-hour precipitation for a selected return period based on the 2-year, 2-hour precipitation; and

P_{2yr2hr} is the 2-year, 2-hour precipitation in Appendix 4A.

Values of the coefficient C_{sds} are based on the Generalized Extreme Value (GEV) distribution, whose distribution parameters can be expressed as a function of mean annual precipitation for eastern Washington. Table 4C-12 lists values of the coefficient C_{sds} for selected return periods for various magnitudes of mean annual precipitation. The web link for an isopluvial map of mean annual precipitation can be found in Appendix 4A (the map can be used to determine the mean annual precipitation for the site).

Table 4C-12. Precipitation for selected return periods (C_{sds}).

Region #	Mean Annual Precipitation (in.)	6-Month	1-Year	2-Year	10-Year	25-Year	50-Year	100-Year
	6-8	0.65	0.84	1.06	1.73	2.30	2.84	3.49
	8-10	0.66	0.85	1.06	1.70	2.22	2.70	3.28
2	10-12	0.68	0.86	1.06	1.65	2.14	2.59	3.10
2, 3	12-16	0.70	0.87	1.06	1.60	2.01	2.40	2.82
3	16-22	0.71	0.88	1.06	1.56	1.93	2.26	2.63
	22-28	0.73	0.89	1.06	1.52	1.84	2.13	2.45
	28-40	0.74	0.90	1.06	1.48	1.78	2.04	2.32
	40-60	0.76	0.91	1.06	1.44	1.71	1.93	2.17
1, 4	60-120	0.78	0.92	1.06	1.41	1.64	1.84	2.05

CHAPTER 5

Stormwater Best Management Practices

Chapter 5. Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 5. Stormwater Best Management Practices

5-1 Introduction

The intent of this chapter is to provide designers of Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) facilities with specific guidance on the proper selection, design, and application of stormwater management techniques. A selection process is presented, along with design considerations for each best management practice (BMP). This chapter also presents ways to combine or enhance these different types of facilities to maximize their efficiency or to better fit within the project site.

Stormwater BMPs are the physical, structural, and managerial practices that, when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the detrimental impacts of stormwater, such as the pollution of water, degradation of channels, damage to structures, and flooding. These BMPs can be further characterized as performing three essential, yet distinct, functions:

- **Source control:** Prevents or reduces the introduction of pollutants to stormwater
- **Flow control:** Offsets and attenuates the increased rate of discharge caused by impervious surfaces
- **Runoff treatment:** Intercepts and reduces the physical, chemical, and biological pollutant loads generated primarily from highway use

The typical pollutants found in highway runoff that must be considered for treatment include total suspended solids (TSS) and sediments; dissolved metals (e.g., cadmium, copper, zinc, and lead); polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs); oil and grease; road salts and deicing agents; temperature; and, in some watersheds, nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorus).

The BMPs in this manual have been developed using the best available science, and they have been approved by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology). The required application of these BMPs is based on the state-adopted standard of using all known, available, and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment (AKART). When used and maintained in conjunction with operational source controls, BMPs can provide a long-term, effective means of preventing violations of water quality standards. However, it is essential that utmost care be taken in the proper selection and site application of the various BMPs for every project to ensure that the maximum benefit is obtained.

Many of the BMPs covered in this manual include general recommendations regarding the conditions under which a practice applies, as well as the advantages and disadvantages of that practice. However, it is strongly recommended that designers take an iterative approach to selecting BMPs based on site-specific criteria. This entails being flexible and somewhat creative when determining a final stormwater management solution that works best in each situation. It also requires that stormwater management considerations be wholly integrated throughout the entire project development decision-making process (see Chapter 2 for further guidance).

Design guidelines for most of the commonly used permanent BMPs for highway applications can be found in Section 5.4 of this chapter. Guidelines for the design of temporary BMPs used during construction are given in Appendix 6A. For guidance on the design of source control BMPs, refer to Volume IV of Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SMMWW) and Chapter 8 of Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington* (SMMEW). For guidance on the design and application of temporary spill prevention and containment BMPs during construction, see Section 6-3.

5-2 Types of Permanent Stormwater BMPs and Their Functions

This section of the manual provides a general overview of the currently available BMPs and the circumstances under which they are typically used. Specific design criteria for each BMP can be found in Section 5-4.

Permanent stormwater BMPs are management features that are designed into a project and remain in place throughout the service life of the project. The designer must make sure that the BMPs will provide the desired results and can be maintained within the guidelines established in Section 5-5. The project should be designed to take advantage of the topography, soils, waterways, and natural vegetation at the site. At each stage of the design, the designer should evaluate the potential for stormwater degradation and choose the design with the least impact. The designer must plan the project so that construction activities will not generate excessive sediment and runoff leaving the site. Finally, the project must be designed so that stormwater facilities are reasonably accessible to perform the required maintenance.

5-2.1 BMPs for Stormwater Source Control

The first consideration in design should be source control. Stormwater source controls are designed to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater by eliminating the source of pollution or by preventing the contact of pollutants with rainfall and runoff. Source control BMPs must be applied to the entire project, both existing and new project areas. According to Volume IV, Chapter 3, of the SMMWW and Chapter 8 of the SMMEW, source control BMPs apply to the following WSDOT activities or settings:

- Deicing and anti-icing for streets/highways
- Dust control at disturbed land areas and unpaved roadways and parking lots
- Fueling at dedicated stations

- Illicit connections to storm drains (i.e., unpermitted sanitary or process water discharges to a storm drain, rather than a sanitary sewer connection)
- Landscaping and lawn/vegetation management
- Maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment
- Maintenance of roadside ditches
- Maintenance of stormwater drainage and treatment systems
- Painting of buildings and structures (bridges and docks)
- Parking and storage of vehicles and equipment
- Railroad yards
- Spills of oil and hazardous substances
- Storage or transfer (outside) of solid raw materials, byproducts, or finished products
- Urban streets
- Washing and steam cleaning of vehicles, equipment, and building structures

Only a few permanent source control BMPs can be regularly used for a roadway (e.g., street sweeping, deicing, and spill control). Source control BMPs are used more commonly during construction and for the permanent portion of nonroadway projects such as rest areas and park-and-ride lots. The source control BMPs for use during construction are detailed in Chapter 6. When a project involves the storage or transfer of hazardous materials or waste products, the designer should refer to Volume IV of the SMMWW for guidance on selecting proper source control BMPs, and contact the Hazardous Materials Program Office for further assistance.

5-2.2 BMPs for Stormwater Runoff Treatment

Runoff treatment BMPs designed to remove pollutants contained in runoff use a variety of mechanisms including sedimentation, filtration, plant uptake, ion exchange, adsorption, precipitation, and bacterial decomposition.

Hydrologic criteria and analysis methods for sizing runoff treatment BMPs in western Washington are discussed in Section 4-3. Hydrologic criteria and analysis methods for sizing runoff treatment BMPs in eastern Washington are discussed in Section 4-4. The following overview provides information on the most commonly used runoff treatment BMPs available for highway application.

5-2.2.1 Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration BMPs for runoff treatment are discussed in Section 5-4.1.1 and include the following:

- IN.01, Bioinfiltration Pond
- IN.02, Infiltration Pond
- IN.03, Infiltration Trench
- IN.04, Infiltration Vault

In addition to being the preferred method for flow control, infiltration is a preferred method for runoff treatment, offering the highest level of pollutant removal. Treatment is achieved through settling, biological action, and filtration. One important advantage to using infiltration is that it recharges the groundwater, thereby helping to maintain summertime base flows of streams. Infiltration also produces a natural reduction in stream temperature, which is an important factor in maintaining a healthy habitat for resident species and other in-stream biota.

Infiltration facilities must be preceded by a presettling basin for removing most of the sediment particles that would otherwise reduce the infiltrative capacity of the soil. Infiltration strategies intended to meet runoff treatment goals may be challenging for many project locations in western Washington due to the large space requirements and strict soil and water table requirements (see Sections 5-4.1.1 and 5-4.2.1 for site restrictions). There are generally more opportunities for the use of infiltration BMPs in eastern Washington.

5-2.2.2 Dispersi on BMPs

Dispersion BMPs are discussed in Section 5-4.1.2 and include the following:

- FC.01, Natural Dispersion
- FC.02, Engineered Dispersion

Perhaps the single most promising and effective approach to mitigating the effects of highway runoff in nonurbanized areas is to look for opportunities to use the existing natural area capacity to remove pollutants. Natural dispersion requires that runoff cannot become concentrated in any way as it flows into a preserved naturally vegetated area. The preserved naturally vegetated area must have topographic, soil, and vegetation characteristics that provide for the removal of pollutants. Pollutant removal typically occurs through a combined process of vegetative filtration and shallow surface infiltration.

The most notable benefits associated with natural dispersion are that it maintains and preserves the natural functions, reduces the possibility of further impacts to the adjacent natural areas associated with the construction of physical treatment facilities, and can be very cost effective. In most cases, this method not only meets the requirements for runoff treatment, but also provides flow attenuation. If channelized drainage features are present and close to the runoff areas requiring treatment, then other types of engineered solutions might be more appropriate.

Engineered dispersion techniques use the same removal processes as natural dispersion. For engineered dispersion, a manmade conveyance system directs concentrated runoff to the dispersion area (via storm sewer pipe, ditch, etc.). The concentrated flow is dispersed at the end of the conveyance system to mimic sheet flow conditions into the dispersion area. Engineered dispersion techniques enhance the modified area with compost-amended soils and additional vegetation. These upgrades help ensure that the dispersion area has the capacity and ability to infiltrate surface runoff.

Like any other stormwater BMP, preservation and maintenance protocols must be followed when dispersion techniques are used. Because the terrain features used to provide treatment are, for the most part, indistinguishable from other typical natural or landscaped areas, it is essential that these areas be readily identifiable so that they are not altered or destroyed by general maintenance practices or future development (see Section 5-5 for further guidance).

5-2.2.3 Biofiltration BMPs

Biofiltration BMPs are discussed in Section 5-4.1.3 and include the following:

- RT.02, Vegetated Filter Strip (basic, narrow area, and compost-amended or CAVFS)
- RT.04, Biofiltration Swale
- RT.05, Wet Biofiltration Swale
- RT.06, Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale
- RT.07, Ecology Embankment

Runoff treatment to remove pollutants can be best accomplished before concentrating the flow. A vegetated filter strip provides a very efficient and cost-effective runoff treatment option. Vegetated filter strips function by slowing runoff velocities and filtering out sediment and other pollutants, and by providing some infiltration into underlying soils. Vegetated filter strips consist of gradually sloping areas that run adjacent to the roadway. As highway runoff sheets off the roadway surface, it flows through the grass filter. The flow can then be intercepted by a ditch or other conveyance system and routed to a flow control BMP or outfall.

One challenge associated with vegetated filter strips, is that sheet flow can sometimes be difficult to maintain. Consequently, vegetated filter strips can be short-circuited by concentrated flows, which create eroded rills or flow channels across the strips. This results in little or no treatment of stormwater runoff. Vegetated filter strips are not recommended for use in arid climates. In semiarid climates, drought-tolerant grasses should be specified.

Biofiltration swales also provide an effective means of removing conventional pollutants and offer a relatively low-cost treatment solution. A biofiltration swale consists of a flat-bottomed, shallow-sloped swale planted with grasses. The swales function by slowing runoff velocities, filtering out sediment and other pollutants, and providing some infiltration into underlying soils. Concentrated flow from the roadway section is directed to the high end of the swale. For wider swales, flow spreaders or diffusers are often incorporated into the bioswale to maintain sheet flow and to prevent the formation of small channels within the swale bottom. In addition, the swale design should be analyzed for erosion potential from larger storm events.

Biofiltration swales can also be integrated into the stormwater conveyance system. Existing roadside ditches may be good candidates for upgrading to biofiltration swales. Biofiltration swales are not recommended for use in arid climates. In semiarid climates, drought-tolerant grasses should be specified.

A wet biofiltration swale (a variation of a basic biofiltration swale) is for use where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow will likely result in saturated soil conditions.

Another variation of a basic biofiltration swale is the continuous inflow biofiltration swale for applications where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope, rather than being concentrated at the upstream end.

A number of BMPs are available that integrate amendments into their soil composition. Soil amendments can be a variety of materials but usually consist of a 2- to 6-inch-thick blanket of compost, spread over the existing soil. They may be left as a blanket or incorporated into the soil to improve soil quality and texture, and thus improve infiltration. Soil amendments bind to dissolved metals, while biota in organic soil break down and neutralize the surface runoff pollutants. Soil amendments also have a very high capacity to hold moisture (up to 1½ times their weight) and can significantly reduce off-site flows. For more information on soil properties and composition, see Section 5-4.3.2, Soil Amendments.

The ecology embankment is another option to provide significant pollution reduction and flow attenuation by simply modifying the effective treatment surface of the roadway prism beyond the edge of pavement. Its application is limited to highways located in relatively flat terrain, but this BMP can often be constructed with little or no additional right-of-way, making it a cost-effective solution to managing highway runoff.

Another similar and effective BMP using soil amendments is the compost-amended vegetated filter strip (CAVFS), which is a variation of the standard vegetated filter strip. This BMP incorporates compost amendments and subsurface gravel courses to augment the vegetation's basic treatment properties, while also supplementing the need for a flow control system by providing a limited amount of storage.

5-2.2.4 Wet Pool BMPs

Wet pool BMPs are discussed in Section 5-4.1.4 and include the following:

- RT.12, Wet Pond

- CO.01, Combined Wet/Detention Pond
- RT.13, Constructed Stormwater Treatment Wetland
- CO.02, Combined Stormwater Treatment Wetland/Detention Pond

Wet ponds are constructed basins containing a permanent pool of water throughout the wet season. Wet ponds function by settling suspended solids. The biological action of plants and bacteria provides some additional treatment. Not only can wet ponds be designed for the treatment of conventional pollutants, they can also be modified to enhance removal of nutrients or dissolved metals. Wet ponds are usually more effective and efficient when constructed using multiple cells (a series of individual smaller basins) where coarser sediments become trapped in the first cell or forebay. Wet pond designs can also provide flow control by adding detention volume (live storage) above the dead storage. Because the function of a wet pond depends upon maintaining a permanent pool of water to provide treatment, this BMP is generally not recommended for use in arid or semiarid climates.

A wet pool BMP must be an on-line facility receiving runoff from only new impervious areas or equivalent areas. If a decision has been made to treat runoff from existing impervious surfaces per the retrofit instructions in Chapter 3, then the wet pool BMP would be an on-line facility receiving runoff from the new plus existing impervious areas or equivalent areas.

Constructed stormwater treatment wetlands can be designed for runoff treatment alone or to serve the dual function of runoff treatment and flow control. This BMP requires the collection and conveyance of stormwater to the facility inlet. Sediment and associated pollutants are removed in the first cell of these systems via settling. The processes of settling, biofiltration, biodegradation, and bioaccumulation provide additional treatment in the subsequent cell or cells. In general, constructed stormwater treatment wetlands could be incorporated into the drainage design wherever water can be collected and conveyed to a maintainable artificial basin.

Constructed stormwater treatment wetlands offer a suitable alternative to wet ponds or biofiltration swales and can also provide treatment for dissolved metals. However, designers must consider the availability of water and the water needs of plants used in the stormwater wetland. The landscape context for stormwater wetland placement must be appropriate for the creation of an artificial wetland (groundwater, soils, and surrounding vegetation). Natural wetlands cannot be used for stormwater treatment purposes (see Section 3-3.7 for further guidance on protecting existing wetlands).

Very few constructed stormwater wetlands exist in Washington State. Limited information is available concerning the long-term viability of vegetation installed in these facilities and the maintenance requirements. However, constructed stormwater wetlands can be a preferred option for stormwater management relative to other surface treatment and flow control facilities. In general, this option is a more aesthetically appealing alternative to ponds. Secondary functions include the creation of habitat for terrestrial wildlife, visual screening, and reduced obtrusiveness of drainage facilities.

5-2.2.5 Oil Control BMPs

Oil control BMPs are discussed in Section 5-4.1.5 and include the following:

- RT.22, Oil Containment Boom
- IN.01, Bioinfiltration Pond (eastern Washington only)

An oil control BMP should be placed as close to the source as possible, but protected from sediment. Sorptive oil containment booms can be placed on top of the water in sediment control devices, and can be used in ponds and vaults.

5-2.3 BMPs for Stormwater Flow Control

Stormwater flow control BMPs are designed to control the flow rate or the amount of runoff leaving a site after development. The primary mechanisms used to manage flow control include dispersion, infiltration, and detention. Increased flows can cause downstream damage due to flooding, erosion, and scour, as well as degradation of water quality and in-stream habitat because of channel and streambank erosion.

Hydrologic criteria and analysis methods for sizing flow control BMPs in western Washington are discussed in Section 4-3. Hydrologic criteria and analysis methods for sizing flow control BMPs in eastern Washington are discussed in Section 4-4. The following provides an overview of the most commonly used flow control BMPs for highway application.

5-2.3.1 Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration BMPs for flow control are discussed in Section 5-4.2.1 and include the following:

- IN.01, Bioinfiltration Pond (eastern Washington only)
- IN.02, Infiltration Pond
- IN.03, Infiltration Trench
- IN.04, Infiltration Vault
- IN.05, Drywell
- IN.06, Permeable Pavement Surfaces

A bioinfiltration pond is categorized in this manual under infiltration BMPs for convenience and consistency. It actually functions as both a filtering BMP and an infiltration BMP and can therefore provide runoff treatment and flow control on a limited basis.

Two commonly used types of infiltration systems are infiltration basins and subsurface infiltration. An infiltration basin consists of a shallow impoundment designed to infiltrate stormwater into the soil. Subsurface infiltration may occur via an infiltration trench, vault, or drywell subject to the underground injection control (UIC) rules (http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/uic/index.html). (See Sections 2-6.1.3 and 4-5.2 for further guidance on wellhead protection areas.) An infiltration trench (also termed an infiltration gallery) consists of a rock-filled trench with no outlet. Typically, the trench also incorporates a large underdrain pipe to increase capacity. Runoff is then stored in the pipe and rock voids and slowly infiltrates through the bottom and sides of the trench and into the soil matrix over a couple of days. For trenches, this process is also referred to as exfiltration. Drywells consist of perforated manhole structures surrounded by drain rock, and function similarly to trenches.

Infiltration systems are practical only in areas where groundwater tables are sufficiently below the bottom of the facility and in highly permeable soil conditions. Infiltration systems can help recharge the groundwater, thus restoring base flows to stream systems. However, to protect the groundwater and to prevent clogging of the system, stormwater runoff must first pass through some combination of pretreatment measures, such as a swale or sediment basin, before entering an infiltration system. Compared with other stormwater flow control practices, infiltration systems can be problematic due to siltation.

Subsurface infiltration systems should be considered only when room is inadequate to construct an infiltration basin. These systems are difficult to maintain and/or to verify whether they are functioning properly.

5-2.3.2 Dispersion BMPs

Dispersion BMPs for flow control are discussed in Section 5-4.2.2 and include the following:

- FC.01, Natural Dispersion
- FC.02, Engineered Dispersion

For an overview of dispersion techniques, see Section 5-2.2.2.

5-2.3.3 Detention BMPs

Detention BMPs are discussed in Section 5-4.2.3 and include the following:

- FC.03, Detention Pond

Detention facilities generally take the form of either a pond or an underground vault or tank. They operate by providing a volume of live storage with an outlet control structure designed to release flow at a reduced rate over time. A pond can be configured as a dry pond to control flow only or combined with a wet pond to also provide runoff treatment within the same footprint.

5-3 BMP Selection Process

This section provides guidance to the designer on the selection of permanent BMPs for WSDOT projects. BMP selection is necessary to address permanent stormwater management for a project and complete the Hydraulic Report. The following subsections outline the decision-making process for selecting BMPs for projects.

5-3.1 Part I: Determine the Applicable Minimum Requirements and Project-Specific Considerations

Read Chapter 3 to determine the applicable minimum requirements for the project. Start at Section 3-2.1 and analyze the project as a whole. Minimum requirements apply to the project based on the project size from beginning project limit to end project limit within right-of-way boundaries (use Figure 3.1 as a guide to determine which minimum requirements apply). Next, go to those subsequent sections in Chapter 3 for each applicable minimum requirement and thoroughly read and understand each minimum requirement. At this point, the analysis and applicable triggers are based on both the entire project and smaller threshold discharge areas (TDAs) within the project.

Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3-3.5 has a list of water bodies that require only basic treatment. Project threshold discharge areas (TDAs) that discharge to water bodies on this list must provide basic runoff treatment, but not enhanced treatment for phosphorus or dissolved metals removal. Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) in Section 3-3.6 lists exempted water bodies. Project TDAs discharging to water bodies on this list do not require flow control. Section 1-1.5 points out where local stormwater requirements could supersede or supplement the guidance provided herein. Check with a region or HQ Hydraulics Office representative when there are questions regarding local jurisdictional requirements.

The existing stormwater outfalls along the project limits should have been identified during the scoping phase of the project (see Section 2-3 for guidance). If any existing outfalls will be retrofitted, determine the design requirements before continuing the BMP selection process. Check with a region or HQ Hydraulics Office representative, or the HQ Environmental Services Office (ESO) Water Quality Program for more information about stormwater outfalls and the necessary design requirements.

5-3.2 Part II: Select Source Control BMPs

Certain types of activities and facilities may require source control BMPs. Determine whether there are pollutant-generating activities or facilities in the project that warrant source controls. For detailed descriptions of the source control activities and associated BMPs, see Section 2.2 of Volume IV of Ecology's SMMWW or Chapter 8 of the SMMEW. Source control BMPs for the activities listed in Section 5-2.1 must be specified to reduce pollutants. Any deviations from the source control BMPs listed in either the SMMWW or the SMMEW must provide equivalent pollution source control benefits. The Project File must include documentation for why the deviation is considered equivalent. The project may have additional source control responsibilities as a result of area-specific pollution control plans (e.g., watershed or basin plans, water cleanup plans, groundwater management plans, or lake management plans), ordinances, and regulations.

5-3.3 Part III: Determine Runoff Treatment and Flow Control Requirements for Threshold Discharge Areas

If Minimum Requirements 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3-3.5 and/or 6 (Flow Control) in Section 3-3.6 are necessary, determine the individual TDAs within the limits of the project and evaluate them for runoff treatment and flow control BMP requirements. If a TDA exceeds the applicable triggers, then the appropriate level of runoff treatment and flow control must be applied to that TDA. Stormwater controls must be applied to each TDA that exceeds the applicable thresholds to ensure that mitigation is proportional to the associated impacts to that area.

This section outlines the general process for determining if flow control and/or runoff treatment are needed for TDAs in the project. The designer should follow the detailed process outlined in Chapter 3 to ensure that project thresholds are actually exceeded and that the project does not qualify for any applicable flow control and/or runoff treatment exemptions.

The intent of this section is to show the major steps in decision-making for stormwater design. The decision process below outlines Sections 3-3.5.3 and 3-3.6.3. The process assumes that the project meets the requirements for applying Minimum Requirements 1–9 to the new (and possibly replaced) impervious surfaces on the project per Figure 3.1. The process also assumes that the project does not have any flow control or runoff treatment exemptions per Sections 3-3.5.2 and 3-3.6.2. The designer should verify that the above assumptions for the given project are valid before proceeding with the outline below.

A) Read the definitions of the following terms in the Glossary: converted pervious surface, net-new impervious surface, effective impervious surface, effective pollution-generating impervious surface, noneffective impervious surface, noneffective PGIS, new impervious surface, replaced impervious surface, pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS), pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS), impervious surface, native vegetation, nonroad-related projects, project limits, road/parking lot-related projects, and threshold discharge area (TDA).

B) Check Step 1 in Section 3-3.6.3 (Flow Control) and Step 1 in Section 3-3.5.3 (Runoff Treatment).

The thresholds in these sections are applicable at the project level. If the project threshold is exceeded for one or both sections, proceed to “C” below.

C) Outline the TDAs for the project site.

Refer to Section 4-2.5 for general guidelines on mapping project TDAs.

D) If the flow control threshold was exceeded in Step 1 of Section 3-3.6.3, determine the area of effective impervious surfaces and converted pervious surfaces in each TDA.

Compare these values to the thresholds listed in Step 2 of Section 3-3.6.3 to determine if a flow control BMP is necessary for that particular TDA. If a threshold is exceeded for a given TDA, go to Section 5-3.4. Note that eastern Washington and western Washington have different thresholds.

E) If the runoff treatment threshold was exceeded in Step 1 of Section 3-3.5.3, determine the area of effective PGIS and PGPS in each TDA.

Compare these values to the thresholds listed in Step 2 of Section 3-3.5.3 to determine if a runoff treatment BMP is necessary for that particular TDA. If a threshold is exceeded for a given TDA, go to Section 5-3.5.

5-3.4 Part IV: Select Flow Control BMPs

Part III established whether flow control and runoff treatment apply to any or all of the TDAs throughout the project site. ***For each TDA in the project that exceeds the triggers set forth in Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6) and that cannot apply a flow exemption listed in Section 3-3.6.2, select a flow control BMP by using the following process (see Figure 5.3.1):***

Step 1: Determine whether stormwater mitigation and management can be handled by the natural landscape or infiltration.

Closely examine the following three stormwater management options for applicability to the project site.

Option 1: The first option is dispersion, which has two components: natural dispersion and engineered dispersion.

- **Natural dispersion** (see BMP FC.01 in Section 5-4.2.2) is further divided into two types of dispersion:
  - ☐ Sheet flow dispersion, which discharges unconcentrated runoff directly into areas adjacent to the roadway that are naturally vegetated
  - ☐ Channeled flow dispersion, which collects, conveys, and redisperses runoff into areas that are naturally vegetated

- **Engineered dispersion** (see BMP FC.02 in Section 5-4.2.2) implies that the project is collecting and conveying stormwater to an area that has been landscaped and redeveloped to mimic the benefits of a forested area. The stormwater may not have flowed to the engineered dispersion area before the project. Channeled flows must be redispersed with a flow spreading or dispersal structure.

Option 2: The second option is to infiltrate runoff through soils that meet the site characterization and site suitability criteria for both flow control and runoff treatment. Infiltration treatment facilities must be preceded by a pretreatment facility such as a presettling basin (see Section 5-4.3.1) to reduce plugging. Any of the basic runoff treatment BMPs can also be used for pretreatment. The facility would be designed to meet the requirements for runoff treatment and flow control. However, because such a facility would have to be located on-line, it would need to be quite large to achieve the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement 6 in Section 3-3.6. Sections 4-5 and 5-4.2.1 provide guidance on applications and design of infiltration facilities (see BMPs IN.01, IN.02, IN.03, and IN.04) that provide both flow control and runoff treatment.

Option 3: The third option is to infiltrate runoff through rapidly draining soils that do not meet the site characterization and site suitability criteria for providing adequate runoff treatment. Refer to Section 5-4.2.1 for design criteria for infiltration facilities intended to provide flow control without runoff treatment (see BMPs IN.02 through IN.05). In this option, a basic runoff treatment facility must be added upstream of the facility. The treatment facility would be located off-line with a capacity to treat the runoff treatment design flow rate to the applicable performance goal. (Note that volume-based runoff treatment BMPs are always on-line.) Flow in excess of the design runoff treatment flow rate would bypass untreated into the infiltration basin. The infiltration facility must provide adequate storage volume to achieve the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6).

Step 2: Determine whether a regional detention facility is within or near the project limits.

Regional detention facilities are usually owned and operated by the local jurisdiction. A fee is paid to the local jurisdiction to allow project stormwater to flow to the regional facility. This method of stormwater mitigation is useful when the project is within a well-developed watershed with very little right-of-way to allow for infiltration, dispersion, or detention BMPs.

The designer must work with the local jurisdiction to determine whether the regional detention facility has adequate capacity and the ability to meet target discharge rates to mitigate for project stormwater. This requires that the designer verify with the local jurisdiction the design criteria used to size the pond and outlet control structure. If the regional facility was not designed to control flow durations or has not received approval from Ecology as an alternative in accordance with Ecology's SMMWW or the SMMEW, then WSDOT cannot rely fully on that facility to meet its flow control needs.

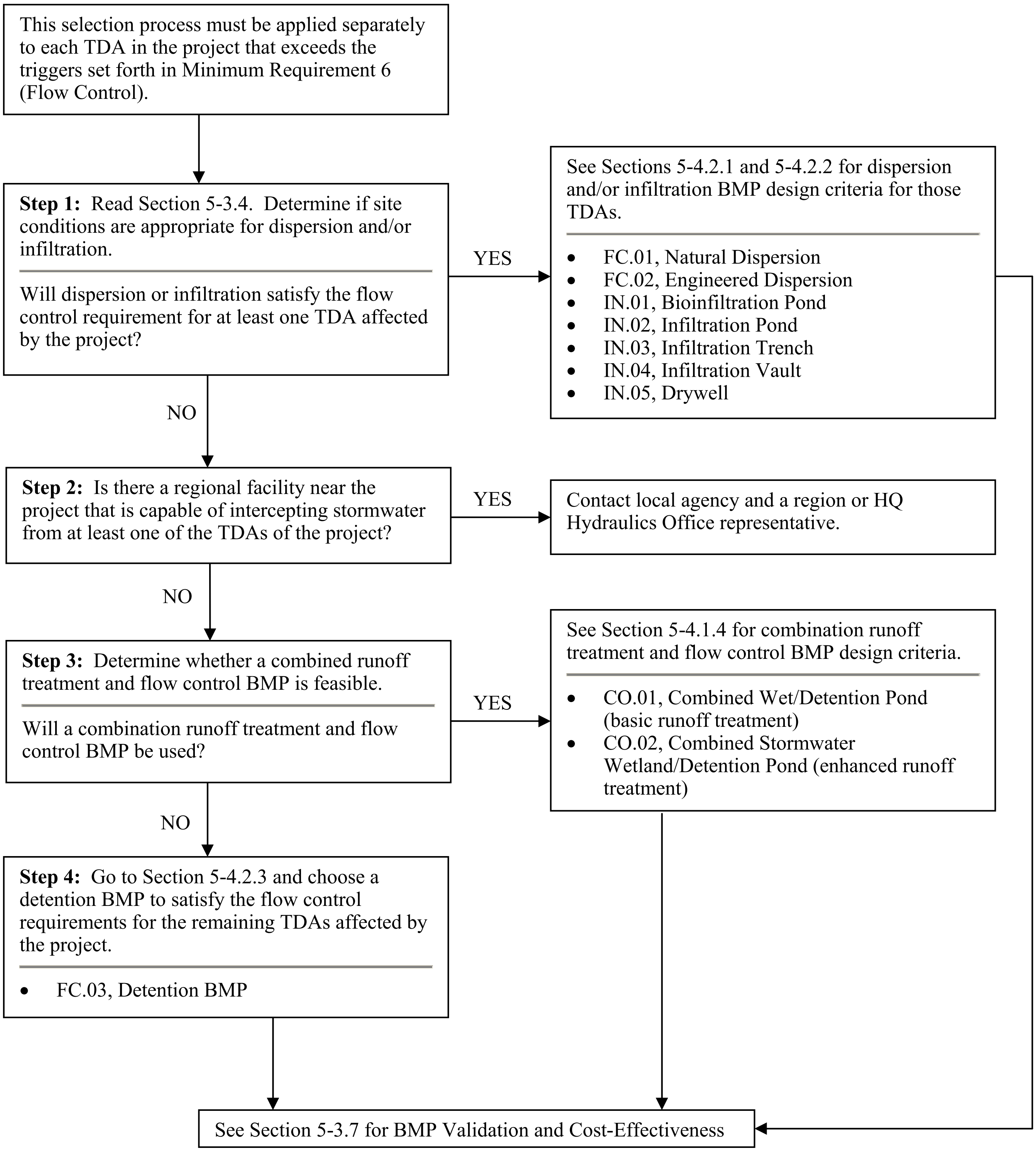


Figure 5.3.1. Flow control BMP selection process.

Step 3: Determine whether a combined flow control and runoff treatment facility can be designed for the project.

Combination stormwater BMPs provide both runoff treatment and flow control in one facility; therefore, a combined facility is often less expensive to construct and has reduced maintenance costs when compared to two separate facilities. If the project must provide enhanced runoff treatment, evaluate whether a combination stormwater wetland/detention pond should be used. Items to consider with this BMP are maintenance and monitoring. Please refer to BMPs CO.01 and CO.02 in Section 5-4.1.4 for design criteria for combination stormwater BMPs. A bioinfiltration pond (see BMP IN.01) combined with a drywell (see BMP IN.05) can also be used as a combination facility.

Step 4: Select a detention BMP.

If the strategies listed in the preceding three steps cannot mitigate for all project flow control requirements, choose a detention BMP (FC.03) from Section 5-4.2.3.

5-3.5 Part V: Select Runoff Treatment BMPs

For each TDA in the project that has to apply Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3-3.5, select BMPs for each TDA that exceeds the triggers set forth in Minimum Requirement 5 by using the following process (see Figure 5.3.2):

Step 1: If Option 1 or 2 of Part IV, Step 1, was selected, no further steps in Part V are required.

Step 2: Determine the receiving waters, possible pollutants of concern, and any additional local jurisdictional requirements.

To obtain a more complete determination of the potential impacts of a stormwater discharge, conduct an off-site analysis to determine the natural receiving waters for the stormwater drainage from the project site (groundwater, wetland, lake, river, stream, or marine water). This is necessary to determine the applicable treatment menu from which to select treatment facilities. Verify the receiving waters with the local jurisdiction having review responsibility. If the discharge is to a local municipal storm drainage system, the receiving waters for the drainage system must be determined.

Consult the local jurisdiction to determine whether any type of water quality management plans, local ordinances, or local regulations have established specific requirements for the receiving waters. If approved by Ecology, requirements in these documents should replace or supplement guidance given herein with regard to stormwater flow control and runoff treatment. Examples of such plans include the following:

- Watershed or basin plans: These plans may cover a wide variety of geographic scales (e.g., water resource inventory areas or subbasins of a few square miles).

They may be focused solely on establishing stormwater requirements (e.g., stormwater basin plans) or may address a number of pollution and water quantity issues, including urban stormwater (e.g., Puget Sound nonpoint action plans).

- Water cleanup plans: These plans are written to establish a total maximum daily load (TMDL) of a pollutant or pollutants in a specific receiving water or basin and to identify actions necessary to remain below that maximum loading. The plans may identify discharge limitations or management limitations (e.g., use of specific treatment facilities) for stormwater discharges from new and redevelopment projects.
- Groundwater management plans (wellhead protection plans and sole-source aquifers): To protect groundwater quality and/or quantity, these plans may identify actions required of stormwater discharges.
- Lake management plans: These plans are developed to protect lakes from eutrophication due to inputs of phosphorus from the drainage basin. Control of phosphorus from new development is a likely requirement in any such plans.

Step 3: Determine whether an oil control facility or device is required.

Oil control devices are required for projects that involve:

- A road intersection with a measured design year average daily traffic (ADT) count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian- or bicycle-use improvements.
- Rest areas that exceed the design year ADT turnover rate of 100 cars per 1,000 square feet of gross building.
- Maintenance facilities that park, store, or maintain 25 or more vehicles that exceed 10 tons gross weight (trucks or heavy equipment).

Note: The traffic count can be estimated using information from "Trip Generation," published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared under the supervision of a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation.

If oil control is required, select and apply an oil treatment facility (see Figure 5.3.2 for available options that provide oil control).

Step 4: Determine whether control of phosphorus is required.

Please refer to the plans, ordinances, and regulations mentioned in Step 2 as sources of information. The requirement to provide phosphorus control is determined by the local jurisdiction, Ecology, or the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (U.S. EPA).

The local jurisdiction may have developed a management plan and implementing ordinances or regulations for control of phosphorus discharging to receiving waters from runoff of the new/development areas.

If phosphorus control is required, select and apply a phosphorus treatment facility (see Figure 5.3.2 for available options that provide phosphorus control). If enhanced treatment for dissolved metals removal is required in addition to phosphorus control, investigate the use of a runoff treatment BMP or treatment train that provides both phosphorus and enhanced treatment.

Step 5: Determine whether enhanced treatment is required.

Figure 5.3.3 is a decision matrix intended for use as a guide when determining whether enhanced runoff treatment for dissolved metals removal is required for project TDAs. First check with Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3-3.5 for a list of water bodies that require only basic water runoff treatment. If the project TDAs do not discharge to a water body on this list, determine the roadway's design year ADT. If the design year ADT is less than 30,000, then enhanced treatment is not required.

If the design year ADT is greater than or equal to 30,000, determine whether there is a surface discharge from the TDA to a stream, lake, river, creek, wetland, or sensitive area. If there is not a surface discharge, then enhanced treatment is not required. Dispersion of runoff and disconnection of pollutant-generating surfaces from draining to sensitive areas may eliminate surface discharges and therefore the need to provide enhanced treatment in many locations.

If enhanced treatment is required for a TDA, select and apply an appropriate enhanced treatment facility from Section 5-4.1.

Step 6: Select a basic treatment facility.

If basic treatment is required for a TDA as specified in Minimum Requirement 5 (see Section 3-3.5), select and apply an appropriate basic treatment facility shown in Section 5-4.1.

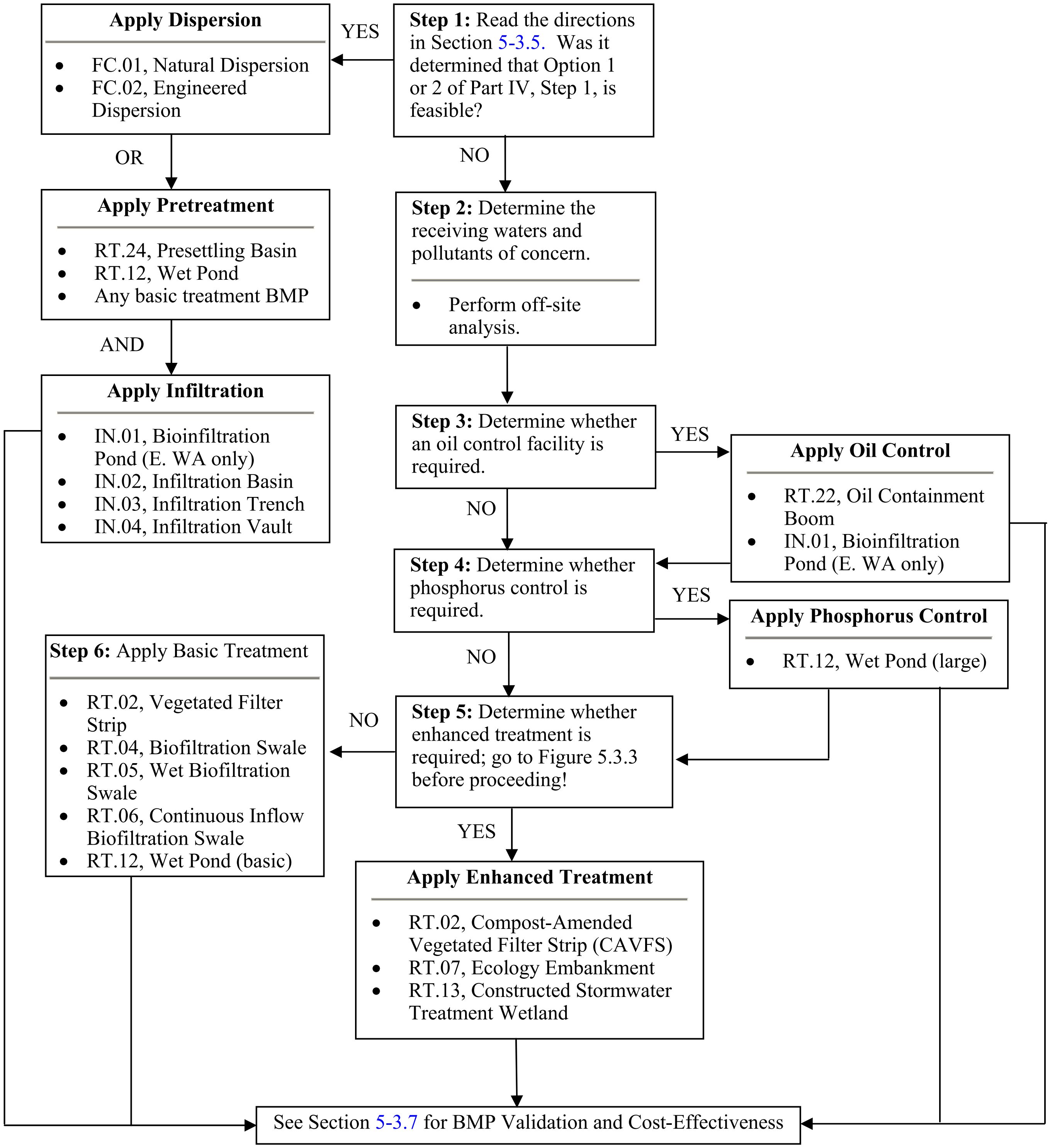


Figure 5.3.2. Runoff treatment BMP selection process.

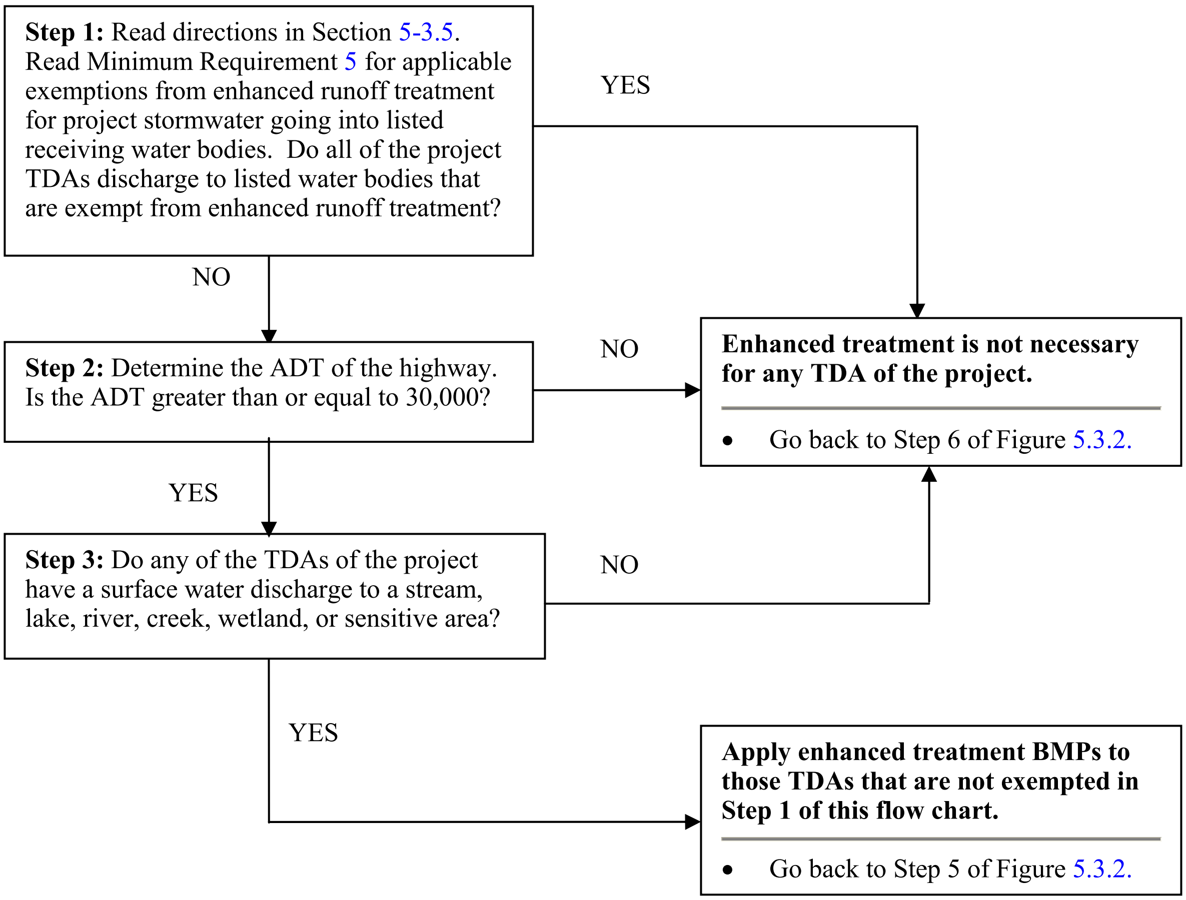


Figure 5.3.3. Enhanced treatment criteria matrix.

5-3.6 Seeking Authorization for Alternative BMP Options

Note: Prior to seeking approval, designers should consult WSDOT's online *Highway Runoff Manual* (HRM) post-publication updates to check if the alternative BMP has been added as an available option.

This chapter contains Ecology-approved permanent BMPs that WSDOT finds acceptable for highway applications. However, site and project constraints or programmatic constraints may compel a designer to consider alternatives to BMPs available in this manual. The pursuit of alternative options falls into the following categories:

1. Ecology-approved BMPs not included in this manual because WSDOT does not consider them viable for widespread highway application due to cost considerations associated with their maintenance. BMPs falling under this category received approval for *general use* by Ecology.

2. BMPs with potential for widespread highway applications that have not received *general use* approval by Ecology. A BMP falling under this category is considered an emerging technology, and may or may not have received a *conditional use* or *pilot use* designation by Ecology.

3. Project- or site-specific approaches for seeking compliance with federal and state water quality regulations via the *demonstrative approach*.

Figures 5.3.6.1 and 5.3.6.2 are general descriptions of the processes for seeking approval for runoff treatment and flow control BMPs not currently contained in the HRM. ***To help avoid delays in processing requests, consult region Hydraulics and HQ ESO Water Quality Program staff prior to initiating this process***.

Category 1: Ecology-Approved BMPs Not in the HRM

Ecology-approved BMPs not included in the HRM require region Hydraulics **and** Maintenance Superintendent approval for use. Design criteria for these BMPs are available on WSDOT's HRM web site:. http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/NR/rdonlyres/A298F932-2F96-469D-AC3D-56CBEF1D782B/0/Category1BMP.pdf However, if WSDOT approval is not granted, an acceptable alternative must be selected.

5-3.6.1 Category 2: Emerging Technologies

Ecology's stormwater management guidance manuals make provisions for using emerging BMP technologies, which it defines as:

> *Technologies that have not been evaluated using approved protocols, but for which preliminary data indicate that they may provide a desirable level of stormwater pollutant removal.*

Use of an emerging technology requires WSDOT as well as Ecology approvals, as described in Figure 5.3.6.2.[1] Designers should seek authorization far enough in advance to allow for contingencies should use of the emerging technology be denied. For example, internal review and approval of an emerging technology's conceptual design and approach can take at least three months.

In some instances, an emerging technology may have already received a *pilot use* or *conditional use* designation from Ecology.[2] For emerging technologies not currently in widespread use, the *pilot use* designation allows limited use by projects to enable field-testing of its performance, subject to an Ecology-approved monitoring plan and the limitations imposed on the number and location of such installations.

[1] Ecology's *Emerging Technologies* web page contains additional information regarding Ecology's program to evaluate emerging stormwater treatment technologies.
[2] Ecology's *Emerging Technologies* web page contains the designation status of emerging technologies undergoing evaluation.

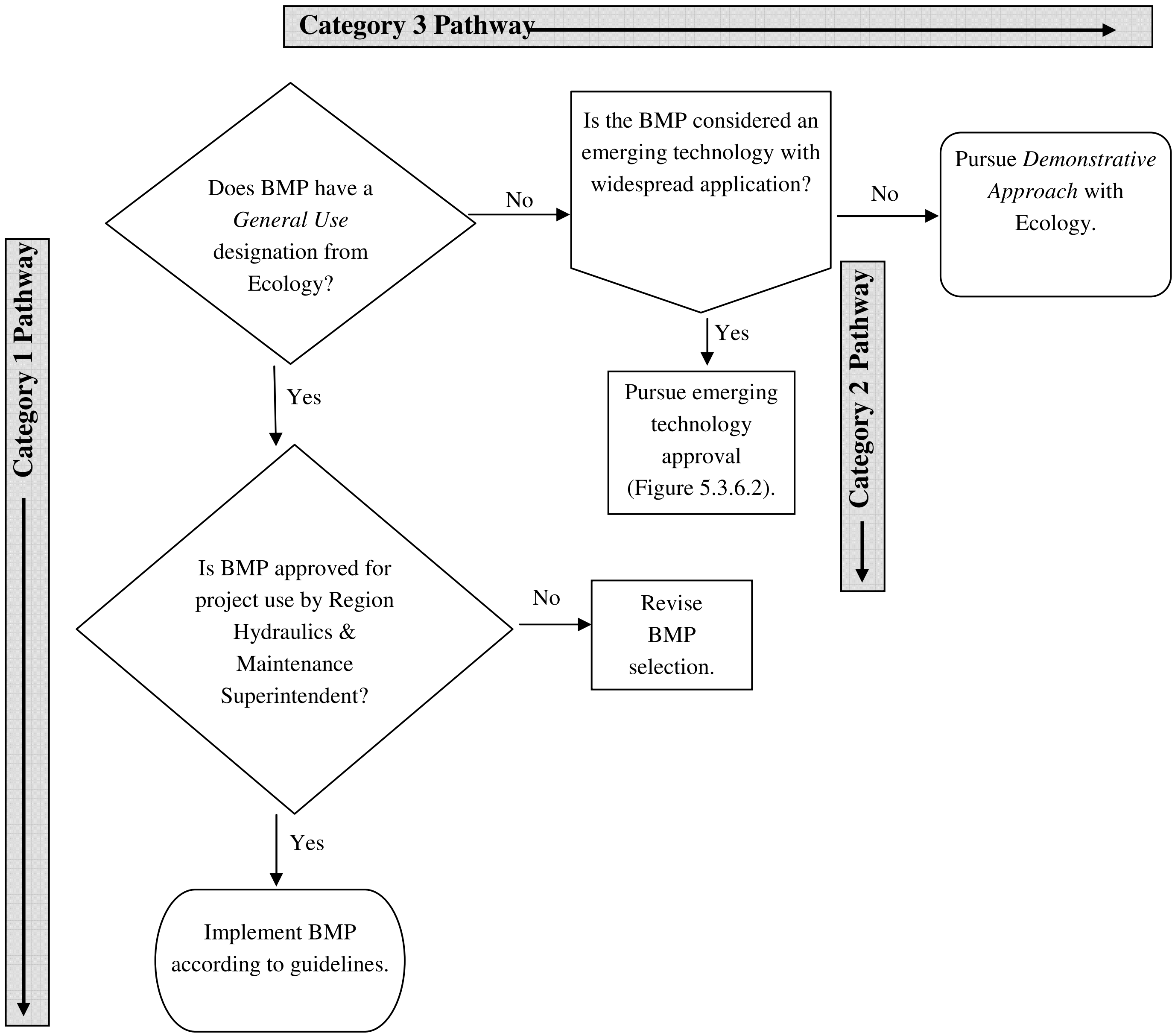


Figure 5.3.6.1. Process for using Best Management Practices not in the HRM.

Ecology's *conditional use* designation applies to emerging technologies currently in widespread use in Washington (or considered equivalent to Ecology-approved technologies) that it considers likely to attain a *general use* designation, provided that a necessary field evaluation to obtain a *general use* designation is completed within a specified time period.

Conditional use BMPs **included** in the HRM can be used on any project location that meets the terms of the *conditional use* designation. However, the designer must contact HQ ESO's Water Quality Program to learn whether WSDOT wants to use the site to fulfill the monitoring requirement of the *conditional use* designation.

Ideally, the project design team identifies the need for potentially pursuing an emerging technologies approach during scoping (i.e., the project definition phase) or early in the design phase. This allows the design team, in consultation with the HQ ESO Water Quality Program, to account for the expenses involved in monitoring and evaluating the BMP's performance when programming project costs.

During the project design phase, the design team develops the conceptual design and documents the technical and engineering basis for the approach (i.e., *conceptual design thesis*). The *conceptual design thesis* provides the necessary background to enable the region Hydraulics Office and the HQ ESO Water Quality Program to make an informed decision as to whether it is in the department's interest to invest in the evaluation of the technology.[1] Region Hydraulics Office and HQ ESO Water Quality Program assistance may be sought in preparing this documentation, which should include:

- A description of the emerging technology and its application.
- Rationale for its development and use.
- Existing hydraulic and treatment performance data for the emerging technology (if available).
- General design and construction considerations.
- Site-suitability characteristics.
- Hydraulic design.
- Operation and maintenance requirements.

Pursuing evaluation of an emerging proprietary technology requires coordination with the technology's vendor to follow Ecology's Technology Assessment Protocol (TAPE) and evaluation process. Additional information on the TAPE protocol can be found on Ecology's *Emerging Technologies* web page.

[1] This documentation already exists for BMPs with an Ecology *pilot-* or *conditional-use* designation and is available on Ecology's *Emerging Technologies* web page.

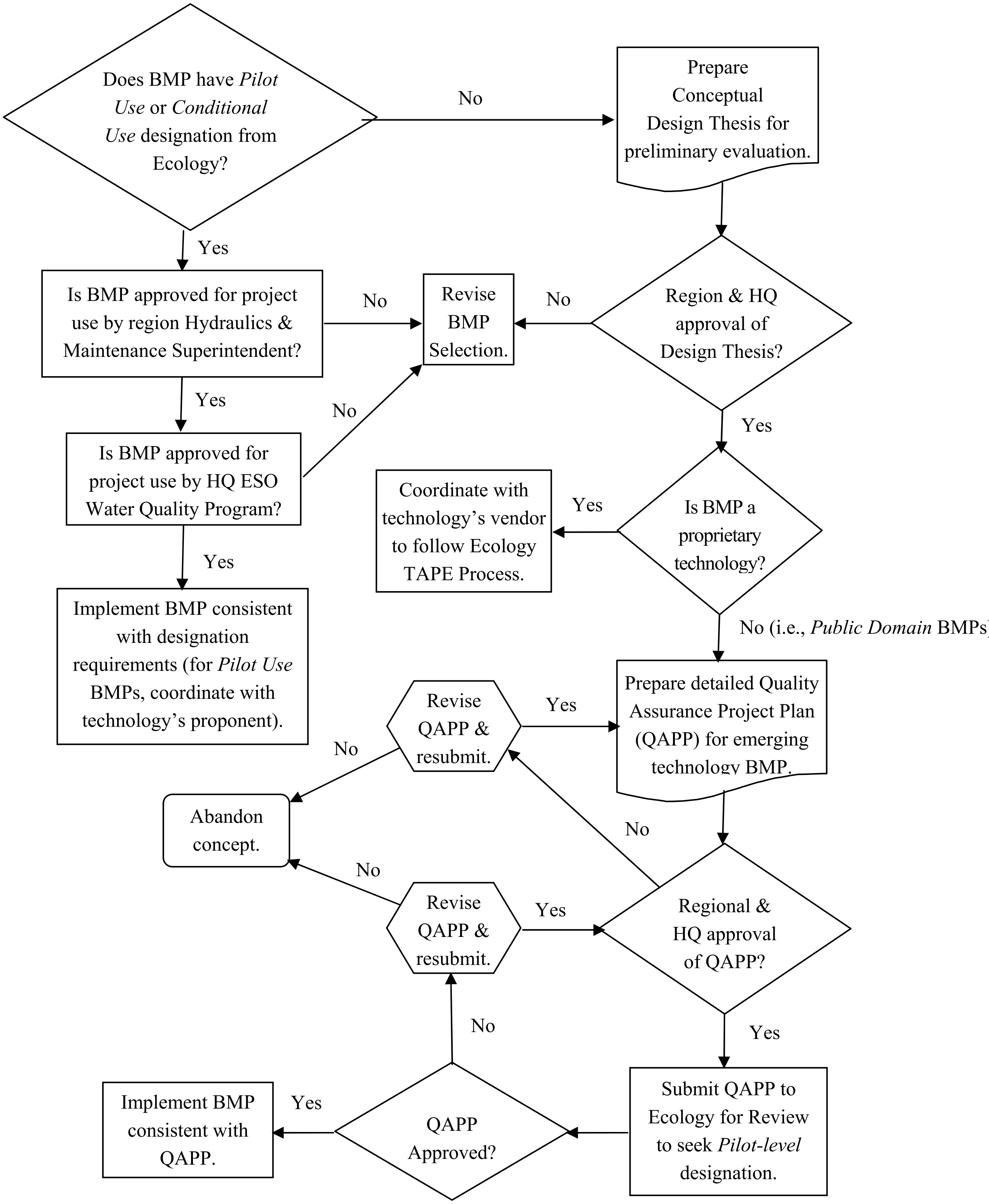


Figure 5.3.6.2. Emerging technology approval process (Category 2 pathway).

Public domain technologies require preparation of a detailed Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) for evaluating the proposed emerging technology that is acceptable to WSDOT and Ecology. In addition to covering the elements included in the *design thesis*, the QAPP describes the procedures to be followed in evaluating the emerging technology. Region Hydraulics Office and HQ ESO Water Quality Program assistance should be sought in preparing the QAPP. Ecology's July 2004 publication, *Guidelines for Preparing Quality Assurance Project Plans for Environmental Studies*, presents detailed guidance on preparing a QAPP. The project's environmental permit coordinator needs to include the *design thesis* and *QAPP* in project submittals early in the permitting process. Upon Ecology's approval of the QAPP, the design team must remain involved through completion of construction to ensure proper installation of the facility and any monitoring-related elements.

Once the facility is operational, HQ ESO Water Quality Program staff will assist the region in implementing the QAPP; completing the evaluation package (including monitoring data and data analysis); petitioning Ecology for evaluation and assignment of use-level designation; and continuing development of the technology where applicable.

5-3.6.3 Category 3: The Demonstrative Approach

Projects have the option of seeking compliance with water quality regulations via the *demonstrative approach* (see Section 1-1.3 for a comparison of the *demonstrative approach* with the *presumptive approach*). The *demonstrative approach* requires submittal of a site-specific stormwater management proposal to Ecology for review and approval.

Ecology approval requires demonstrating that the project will not adversely affect water quality by providing appropriate supporting data showing that the alternative approach satisfies state and federal water quality laws. In developing alternate treatment and control options, it is important to consider and document the site limitations using the *Engineering and Economic Feasibility Evaluation Checklist* (see Section 2-7.4 and Appendix 2A). Projects pursuing this approach should contact Ecology directly, as the timeline and expectations for providing this technical justification may be extensive (depending on the complexity of the individual project and the nature of the receiving water environment).

5-3.7 BMP Validation and Cost-Effectiveness

Once a stormwater BMP is selected, the designer should be aware that there are costs and obligations involved in the long-term operation and maintenance of the BMP. For this reason, the designer should contact the local maintenance office and discuss the proposed stormwater BMPs and overall stormwater design to determine any area-specific BMP restrictions or requirements. Table 5.3.1 helps the designer evaluate the cost-effectiveness of different stormwater BMPs by assessing typical construction costs, annual operation and maintenance (O&M) expenses, and effective life (how soon the BMP may need to be replaced).

5-3.7.1 General Maintenance Requirements

Design with maintenance in mind. Maintenance is crucial to performance of runoff treatment and flow control BMPs; therefore, provisions to facilitate maintenance operations must be built into the project when the BMP is installed. Maintenance must be a basic consideration in design and in determination of cost. Include maintenance personnel early and throughout the design process. During discussions with maintenance personnel, describe the maintenance procedures that will need to be performed on the BMP. This will help ensure that future maintenance work and potential access needs are clearly understood.

General Maintenance Access Requirements

Access Roads

- Maximum grade for access roads will vary depending on what type of vehicle the local area maintenance office uses. The designer should contact the local area maintenance office to discuss this issue.
- Outside turning radius should be a minimum of 40 feet.
- Access roads should be 15 feet wide on curves and 12 feet wide (minimum) on straight sections.
- Access roads may be constructed with an asphalt or gravel surface or with modular grid pavement. All surfaces must conform to the WSDOT Standard Specifications and to manufacturer's specifications if the surfacing material is a vendor product.
- A paved apron must be provided where access roads connect to paved public roadways.
- Access roads used by Vactor trucks must be built to support loads up to 80,000 pounds.
- Access roads used by trackhoes or dump trucks must be built to support loads up to 40,000 pounds.
- Other access roads must be built to support loads up to 30,000 pounds.
- Fence gates should be located only on straight sections of road.
- If a fence is required, access should be limited by a double-posted gate or by bollards—that is, two fixed bollards on each side of the access road and two removable bollards located equally between the fixed bollards. (See the WSDOT *Design Manual*, Chapter 1460, for guidance on fencing requirements).
- The fence gate should be located so there is an adequate area in front of the gate to park a vehicle, out of traffic, while the gate is being opened. The parking area should be sized based on the largest vehicle that will be needed to perform BMP maintenance.

Table 5.3.1. Relative rankings of cost elements and effective life of BMP options.

BMP	Capital Costs	O&M Costs	Effective Life[1]
Vegetated Filter Strip	Low	Low 20–50	years
Wet Biofiltration Swale	Low to Moderate	Low to Moderate	5–20 years
Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale	Low to Moderate	Low	5–20 years
Ecology Embankment	Low	Low to Moderate	5–20 years[2]
Compost-Amended Vegetated Filter Strip	Low	Low	5–20 years[2]
Wet Pond	Moderate to High	Low to Moderate	20–50 years
Combined Wet/Detention Pond	Moderate	Low to Moderate	20–50 years
Constructed Stormwater Treatment Wetland	Moderate to High	Moderate	20–50 years
Combined Stormwater Wetland/Detention Pond	Low to Moderate	Moderate	20–50 years
Wet Vault (Category 1 BMP)	Moderate to High	High	50–100 years
Combined Wet/Detention Vault (Category 1 BMP)	Moderate to High	High	50–100 years
Bioinfiltration Pond	Low to Moderate	Low	5–20 years
Infiltration Pond	Moderate	Moderate	5–10 years before deep tilling required.
Infiltration Trench	Moderate to High	Moderate	10–15 years
Infiltration Vault	Moderate	Moderate to High	5–10 years
Drywell	Low to Moderate	Low to Moderate	5–20 years
Engineered Dispersion	Low	Low	
Detention Pond	Moderate	Low	20–50 years
Detention Vault (Category 1 BMP)	Moderate to High	High	50–100 years
Detention Tank (Category 1 BMP)	Moderate to High	High	50–100 years
Presettling Basin	Low to Moderate	Moderate	
Proprietary Presettling Devices	Moderate Moderate 50–100		years

Sources: Adapted from Young et al. (1996); Claytor and Schueler (1996); U.S. EPA (1993); and others.
[1] Assumes regular maintenance, occasional removal of accumulated materials, and removal of any clogged media.
[2] Estimated based on best professional judgment.

Other

- Side slopes for earthen/grass embankments should not exceed 3H:1V to facilitate mowing. If side slopes are greater than 3H:1V, consult with local area maintenance personnel to ensure that tall grass does not restrict site access or pose other issues. Steep embankments may need to be planted with low-maintenance, low-growing ground cover.
- It is recommended that BMPs that require removal of sediment have a fixed vertical sediment depth marker installed in the structure to measure sediment deposition over time. Consult the local area maintenance office regarding the design and use of this marker.

Vaults/Tanks/Catch Basins/Manholes

Access Roads

- Vaults and tanks should be located out of the roadway prism whenever possible. In most areas, closure of traffic lanes to clean vaults or tanks is not allowed during daylight hours. Maintenance at night involves additional risk, and requires worksite lighting and possibly noise restrictions.
- Access roads are needed to the stormwater structure access panel (if applicable), the inlet and outlet control structure, and at least one access point per cell.
- Manhole and catch basin lids must be set within or at the edge of the access road and at least 3 feet from a property line. Manhole and catch basin lids for control structures must be locking, and rim elevations must match proposed finish grade.
- The Vactor truck needs to park directly adjacent to the stormwater structure. Within 6 feet of the truck, the boom has swing-and-lift capability; but for most vaults, the operator needs to be able to center the boom directly over the suction point. For deep vaults, the operator typically starts at one end and moves the Vactor truck along the vault to clean it from end to end. The deeper the suction tubes, the harder it becomes to drag the boom around, so it must be centered directly above the crew person working down in the stormwater structure.
- Right-of-way may be needed for vault and tank maintenance. It is recommended that any tract not abutting WSDOT right-of-way have a 15- to 20-foot-wide extension of the tract to an acceptable access location. Enough room must be designed around all underground vaults and tanks to provide space for necessary support equipment, including holding tanks, towed pumps, and equipment for confined-space entry. Consult with the local area maintenance office on access needs for support equipment.

Openings

- Access must be provided over the inlet pipe, over the outlet structure, and to each cell.
- Access openings must be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the vault or tank. Additional access points may be needed on large vaults and tanks.
- If more than one V is provided in the vault floor, access to each V must be provided.
- For vaults with greater than 1,250 square feet of floor area, a 5- by 10-foot removable panel should be provided over the inlet pipe (instead of a standard frame, grate, and solid cover).

- Removable panels over vaults must be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- Vaults with widths of 10 feet or less must have removable lids.
- For vaults under roadways, the removable panel must be located outside the travel lanes. Alternatively, multiple standard locking manhole covers may be provided.
- All access openings, except those covered by removable panels, may have round, solid locking lids or 3-foot-square, locking diamond plate covers.
- Tank access openings may have round, solid locking lids (usually ½- to 5/8-inch-diameter Allen-head cap screws).
- For tanks, riser-type manholes constructed of 36-inch-minimum-diameter corrugated metal pipe (see Standard Plan B-23d—Manhole Type 4) of the same gage as the tank material may be used for access along the length of the tank and at the upstream terminus of the tank in a backup system. The top slab is separated (1-inch-minimum-gap) from the top of the riser to allow for deflections from vehicle loadings without damaging the riser tank.

Entry

- Ladders and handholds need be provided only at the outlet pipe and inlet pipe, and as needed to meet WISHA confined-space requirements.
- Stormwater structures must comply with the WISHA confined-space requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined-space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser, just under the access lid.
- If ladders are greater than 20 feet long, fall protection that meets WISHA requirements must be provided.
- Ventilation pipes (minimum 12-inch-diameter or equivalent) should be provided in all four corners of vaults and tanks to allow for artificial ventilation for maintenance personnel.
- Vaults with manhole access at 12-foot intervals or with removable panels over the entire vault need not provide corner ventilation pipes as specified above.
- Internal structural walls of large vaults should be provided with openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells. The openings should be sized and situated to allow access to the V in the vault floor (if applicable).
- The minimum internal height should be 7 feet from the highest point of the vault floor (not sump), and the minimum width should be 4 feet. The minimum internal height requirement may not be applicable for any areas covered by removable panels.

Other Access Issues

- All vaults and tanks need a bypass or valve to take the BMP off-line.
- The gravity drain criteria for ponds (below) should apply to the wet vaults and combined wet/detention vaults.
- For maintenance access, the maximum depth from finished grade to the bottom of the vault or tank should be 20 feet or less. Most Vactor trucks become inefficient below this depth. Contact the local area maintenance office to discuss operating depths of the equipment for the area.

Ponds

Access Roads

- One or more access roads must be provided to the outlet control structure and other drainage structures associated with the pond (e.g., inlet or bypass structures) to allow for inspection and maintenance.
- An access roadway is needed for removal of sediment with a trackhoe and truck. A ramp must extend to the pond bottom if the pond bottom area is greater than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp), and it may end at an elevation 4 feet above the pond bottom if the pond bottom is less than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp). At large, deep ponds, truck access to the pond bottom via an access ramp is necessary so that excavated sediment and other material can be loaded into a truck in the pond bottom. At small, deep ponds, the truck can remain on the ramp for loading. At small, shallow ponds, a ramp to the bottom may not be required if the trackhoe can load a truck parked at the pond edge or on the internal berm of a detention pond (trackhoes can negotiate interior pond side slopes). These requirements may change based on discussion with the local area maintenance office regarding the type of vehicle typically used for that area.
- Access ramps must be a minimum of 3H:1V.

Other Access Issues

- Wet ponds, constructed wetlands, and other stormwater structures with high base flows must have a bypass or valve to take the BMP off-line.
- For wet ponds, combined wet/detention ponds, wet vaults, combined wet/detention vaults, constructed stormwater treatment wetlands, and combined stormwater treatment wetlands/detention ponds, a gravity drain for maintenance should be installed (if grade allows). This drain can be installed to drain any of the cells.

Intent: It is anticipated that in most cases, sediment removal will be needed only for the first cell. The gravity drain is intended to allow water from the first cell to be drained to the second cell when the first cell is pumped dry for cleaning.

- If placed within a dividing berm or baffle, the drain invert must be at least 6 inches below the top elevation of the dividing berm or baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged, where feasible, but they must be no deeper than 18 inches above the pond bottom.

  Intent: Highly sediment-laden water will be less likely to be released from the pond when it is drained for maintenance.

- The drain must be at least 8 inches in diameter and controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.

  Intent: Shear gates often leak if water pressure pushes on the side of the gate opposite the seal. The gate should be situated so that water pressure pushes toward the seal.

- Operational access to the valve must be provided at the finished ground surface.
- The valve location must be accessible and well marked, with 1 foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.
- A valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If the valve box is over 5 feet deep, an access manhole or vault is required.
- Specify that all metal parts must be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials should not be used unless unavoidable.

  Intent: Galvanized metal contributes zinc to stormwater, sometimes in very high concentrations.

5-4 BMP Design Criteria

Note: Follow the BMP selection process in Section 5-3 before selecting a BMP.

The stormwater management methods in this section have been categorized in order of preferred use and grouped according to similar composition and function. Each BMP has an associated number to distinguish it from other BMPs with similar names. The numbering convention represents the following classifications:

- RT.XX – Runoff Treatment BMPs
- FC.XX – Flow Control BMPs
- IN.XX – Infiltration BMPs
- CO.XX – Combination BMPs

5-4.1 Runoff Treatment Methods

The primary function of the BMPs listed in this section is to meet Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3-3.5.

5-4.1.1 Infiltration BMPs

Some infiltration BMPs (IN.01, Bioinfiltration Pond, IN.02, Infiltration Pond, IN.03, Infiltration Trench, and IN.04, Infiltration Vault) can provide both runoff treatment and flow control functions. These BMPs are discussed in detail in Section 5-4.2.1. (See the *Site Suitability Criteria* in Section 4-5.2 for additional requirements.)

5-4.1.2 Dispersion BMPs

Dispersion BMPs (FC.01, Natural Dispersion, and FC.02, Engineered Dispersion) provide both runoff treatment and flow control functions. These BMPs are discussed in detail in Section 5-4.2.2.

5-4.1.3 Biofiltration BMPs

RT.02, Vegetated Filter Strip

Vegetated Filter Strip in Median Along I-5 in Snohomish County.

Introduction

General Description

Vegetated filter strips are land areas of planted vegetation and amended soils situated between the pavement surface and a surface water collection system, pond, wetland, stream, or river. (See Figure RT.02.1 for an illustration of a typical vegetated filter strip.) The term *buffer strip* is sometimes used interchangeably with vegetated filter strip, but in this manual, buffer strip refers to an area of natural indigenous vegetation that can be enhanced or preserved as part of a riparian buffer or stormwater dispersion system.

Vegetated filter strips accept overland sheet flow runoff from adjacent impervious areas. They rely on their flat cross slope and dense vegetation to maintain sheet flows. Their primary purpose is to remove sediments and other pollutants coming directly off the pavement. Vegetated filter strips function by slowing runoff velocities, trapping sediment and other pollutants, and providing some infiltration and biologic uptake. Frequently planted with turf grasses, the strips may also incorporate native vegetation such as small herbaceous shrubs to make the system more effective in treating runoff and providing root penetration into subsoils, thereby enhancing infiltration.

The design approach for vegetated filter strips involves site design techniques to maintain prescribed maximum sheet flow distances, as well as to ensure adequate temporary storage, so that the design storm runoff is treated. There is limited ponding or storage associated with vegetated filter strips unless soil amendments and subsurface storage are incorporated into the design to reduce runoff volumes and peak discharges.

Vegetated filter strips can also be used as a pretreatment BMP in conjunction with bioretention, biofiltration, media filtration, or infiltration BMPs. The sediment and particulate pollutant load that could reach the primary BMP is reduced by the pretreatment, which in turn reduces maintenance costs and enhances the pollutant-removal capabilities of the primary BMP.

There are three methods described in this section for designing vegetated filter strips: *basic* vegetated filter strips, *compost-amended* vegetated filter strips (CAVFS), and *narrow area* vegetated filter strips. The narrow area vegetated filter strip is the simplest method to design; however, its use is limited to impervious flow paths less than 30 feet. If space is available to use the basic vegetated filter strip design or the CAVFS, either of the two designs should be used in preference to the narrow area vegetated filter strip. For flow paths greater than 30 feet, designers should follow the design method for the basic vegetated filter strip or the CAVFS.

The basic vegetated filter strip is a compacted roadside embankment that is subsequently hydroseeded. The CAVFS is a variation of the basic vegetated filter strip that adds soil amendments to the roadside embankment. The soil amendments improve infiltration characteristics, increase surface roughness, and improve plant sustainability.

The CAVFS design incorporates compost into the native soils per the guidance in Section 5-4.3.2. The CAVFS bed should have a final organic content of 10%. Once permanent vegetation is established, the advantages of the CAVFS are higher surface roughness; greater retention and infiltration capacity; improved removal of soluble cationic contaminants through sorption; improved overall vegetative health; and a reduction of invasive weeds. Compost-amended systems have somewhat higher construction costs due to more expensive materials, but require less land area for runoff treatment, which can reduce overall costs.

Applications and Limitations

Vegetated filter strips (*narrow area* and *basic*) can be used to meet basic runoff treatment objectives (see Table 3-1) or as part of a treatment train to provide additional removal of phosphorus or dissolved metals (see Tables 5.3.1 and 5.3.2 at the following web link on Category 1 BMPs:
🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/NR/rdonlyres/A298F932-2F96-469D-AC3D-6CBEF1D782B/0/Category1BMP.pdf).

CAVFS can be used to meet basic runoff treatment and enhanced runoff treatment (dissolved metals only) objectives.

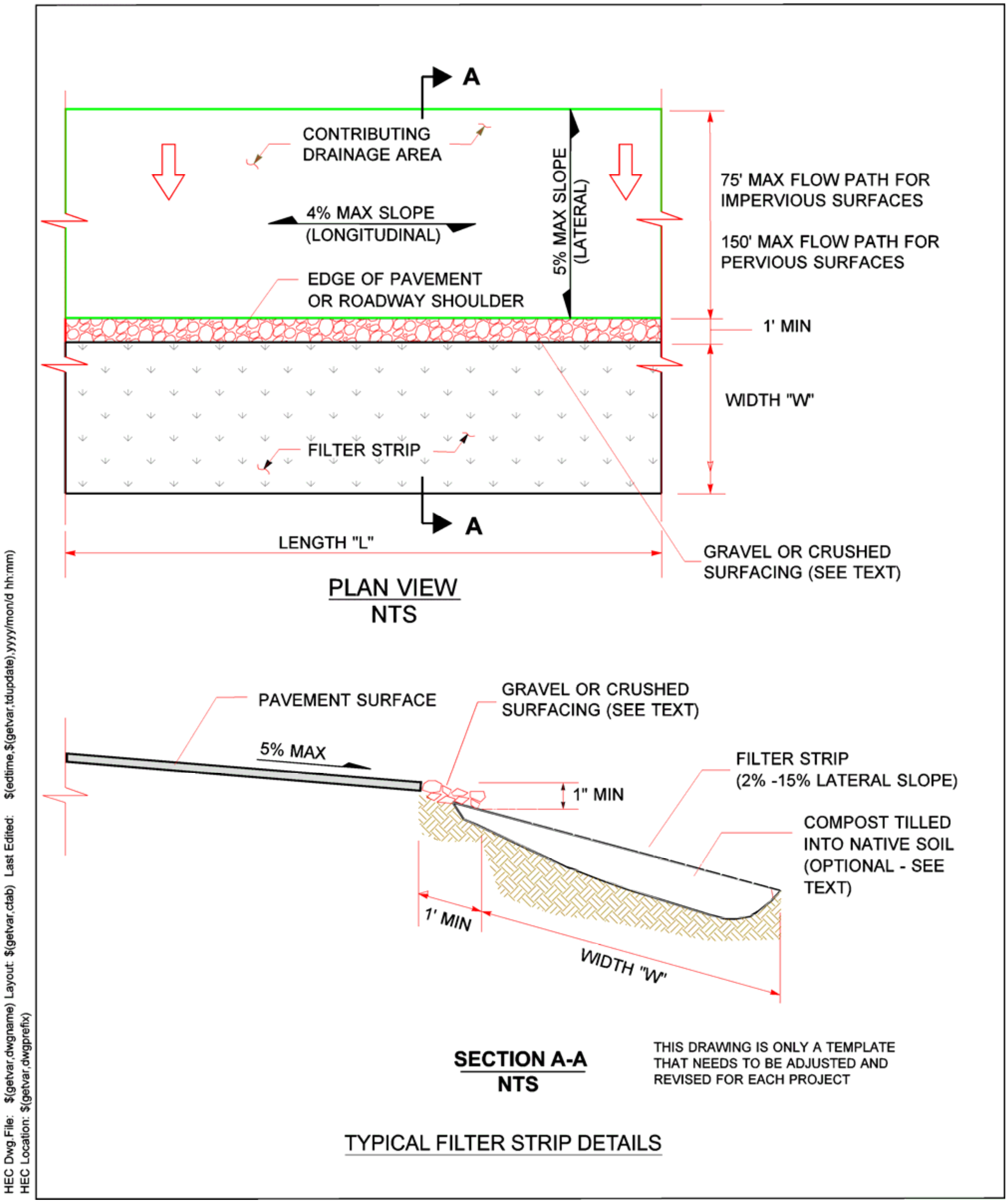


Figure RT.02.1. Typical vegetated filter strip.

Applications

- Vegetated filter strips can be effective in reducing sediments and pollutants associated with sediments, such as phosphorus, pesticides, or insoluble metallic salts.
- Because they do not pond water on the surface for long periods, vegetated filter strips help maintain the temperature norms of the water and deter creating habitat for disease vectors such as mosquitoes.
- In less urbanized areas, vegetated filter strips can generally be located on existing roadside embankments, reducing the need for additional right-of-way acquisitions.
- Designs can be modified to reduce runoff volumes and peak flows when needed or desired to reduce right-of-way acquisitions.

Limitations

- If sheet flow cannot be maintained, vegetated filter strips will not be effective.
- Vegetated filter strips generally are not suitable for steep slopes or large impervious areas that can generate high-velocity runoff.
- Use of vegetated filter strips can be impractical in watersheds where open land is scarce or expensive.
- For most project applications where less than 10 feet of roadside embankment is available for water quality treatment, the ecology embankment (see BMP RT.07) is a more suitable BMP option.
- Improper grading can render this BMP ineffective.
- The flow attenuation properties of vegetated filter strips and amended vegetated filter strips are largely unknown. Qualitative evidence indicates that on outwash soils (National Resources Conservation Service [NRCS] Groups A and B), the compost-amended vegetated filter strip (CAVFS) can attenuate large quantities of runoff. Monitoring studies are being conducted to evaluate these properties and ultimately give designers the ability to model water losses in vegetated filter strips.
- Design methodology for sizing CAVFS in western Washington is different from the design methodology for sizing basic vegetated filter strips in western Washington.
- Design methodology for sizing CAVFS in eastern Washington is identical to the design methodology for sizing basic vegetated filter strips in eastern Washington.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Vegetated filter strips must be designed to treat the runoff treatment flow rate discussed in Section 3-3.5 under Minimum Requirement 5 and the guidance provided in this section. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Design Criteria and Specifications

The key design elements of vegetated filter strip systems follow.

Drainage Area Limitations

- Vegetated filter strips are used to treat small drainage areas. Flow must enter the vegetated filter strip as sheet flow spread out over the length (long dimension perpendicular to flow) of the strip, generally no deeper than 1 inch. For basic vegetated filter strips and CAVFS, the greatest flow path from the contributing area delivering sheet flow to the vegetated filter strip should not exceed 75 feet for impervious surfaces and 150 feet for pervious surfaces. For greater flow paths, special provisions must be made to ensure that the design flows spread evenly across the vegetated filter strip. For the narrow area vegetated filter strip, the maximum contributing flow path should not exceed 30 feet.
- The longitudinal slope of the contributing drainage area parallel to the edge of pavement should be 4% or less.
- The lateral slope of the contributing drainage area perpendicular to the pavement edge should be 5% or less.
- Vegetated filter strips should be fully integrated within site designs.
- Vegetated filter strips should be constructed outside the natural stream buffer area whenever possible to maintain a more natural buffer along the streambank.

Vegetated Filter Strip Geometry

- Applicable for basic vegetated filter strips in eastern and western Washington and CAVFS in eastern Washington.
    - Vegetated filter strips must provide a minimum residence time of 9 minutes for full water quality treatment in eastern Washington. In western Washington, a flow rate adjustment (described below) is needed to use the 9-minute criterion.
    - Vegetated filter strips can be used for pretreatment to another water quality BMP. Wherever a basic vegetated filter strip or CAVFS system

cannot fit within the available space, a narrow area vegetated filter strip system can be used solely as a pretreatment device. A narrow area design should have a minimum width of 4 feet and should take advantage of all available space.

- ◻ Vegetated filter strips should be designed for lateral slopes (along the direction of flow) between 2% and 15%. Steeper slopes encourage the development of concentrated flow; flatter slopes encourage standing water. Vegetated filter strips should not be used on soils that cannot sustain a dense grass cover with high flow retardance.

  In areas where lateral grades are between 15% and 25%, designers should consider using an ecology embankment (see BMP RT.07) in lieu of a vegetated filter strip because at these intermediate slopes, an ecology embankment will usually require less treatment area to achieve the water quality treatment objectives.

- ◻ The minimum width of the vegetated filter strip generally is dictated by the design method.
- ◻ Both the top and toe of the slope should be as flat as possible to encourage sheet flow and prevent erosion.
- ◻ The Manning's *n* to be used in the vegetated filter strip design calculations depends on the type of soil amendment and vegetation conditions used in the construction of the vegetated filter strip (see Table RT.02.1).
- ◻ When the runoff treatment peak flow rate Q_{WQ} has been established, the design flow velocity can be estimated using Manning's Equation to calculate the width of the vegetated filter strip parallel to the direction of flow.

▪ Geometry guidance above is applicable for CAVFS in western Washington except for the following clarifications:

- ◻ CAVFS design in western Washington does not have a residence time component or Manning's "*n*" component. (See Section 4-5.2.3.1 for design sizing guidance.)
- ◻ The CAVFS lateral slope (along direction of flow) can be up to 25% (4:1)

Table RT.02.1. Surface roughness/Manning's *n* for vegetated filter strip design calculations.

Option	Soil and Vegetation Conditions	Manning's *n*
1	Fully compacted and hydroseeded	0.20
2	Compaction minimized and soils amended, hydroseeded	0.35
3	Compaction minimized; soils amended to a minimum 10% organic content (Section 5-4.3.2); hydroseeded; grass maintained at 95% density and 4-inch length via mowing; periodic reseeding; possible landscaping with herbaceous shrubs	0.40*
4	Compost-amended vegetated filter strip: compaction minimized, soils amended to a minimum 10% organic content (Section 5-4.3.2), vegetated filter strip top-dressed with ≥3 inches vegetated compost or compost/mulch (seeded and/or landscaped)	0.55*

* These values were estimated using the SCS TR-55 Peak Discharge and Runoff Calculator (http://www.lmnoeng.com/Hydrology/hydrology.htm). This tool lists the Manning's *n* values for woods–light underbrush at 0.4, and woods–dense underbrush at 0.8. The intent of Option 3 is to amend the soils so that they have surface roughness characteristics equivalent to forested conditions with light underbrush. Option 4 adds a 3-inch top dressing of compost or compost/mulch to simulate a thick forest duff layer, which warrants a higher Manning's *n*, estimated at 0.55.

Water Depth and Velocity

- The maximum depth of sheet flow through a vegetated filter strip for the runoff treatment design flow rate is 1.0 inch.
- The maximum flow velocity for the runoff treatment design flow velocity is 0.5 feet per second.

Maintain Sheet Flow Conditions

- Sheet flow conditions from the pavement into the vegetated filter strip should be maintained. A no-vegetation zone may help establish and maintain this condition.
- In areas where it may be difficult to maintain sheet flow conditions, consider using gravel as a flow spreader. It would be placed between the pavement surface and the vegetated filter strip. The gravel should meet the specifications for shoulder ballast listed in Section 9-03.9(2) of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.
- If there are concerns that water percolated within the gravel flow spreader may exfiltrate into the highway prism, impervious geotextiles can be used to line the bottom of the gravel layer.

Vegetated Filter Strip (eastern and western Washington basic vegetated filter strip, and eastern Washington CAVFS)

Design Method

1. **Determine the runoff treatment design flow (Q_{WQ}).** In western Washington, the design flow for runoff treatment is the flow rate derived from a continuous model (such as MGSFlood or WWHM) that calculates the flow rate from the drainage basin below which 91% of the average annual runoff volume occurs. In

eastern Washington, the design flow rate is determined based on the peak 5-minute interval for the short duration design storm, which is the 6-month, 3-hour event. (See Chapter 4 for criteria and hydrologic methods.)

Western Washington flow rate adjustment. In western Washington, design flow rates are calculated using a continuous simulation model. Most of the performance research on vegetated filter strips and biofiltration BMPs has been conducted on vegetated filter strips that used event-based designs. The 91st percentile flow event (as calculated by the continuous model) tends to be less than the estimated 6-month, 24-hour event flow rate in most cases.

The ratio between the 91st percentile flow event and the estimated 6-month, 24-hour flow rate varies with location and percent of impervious area in the modeled drainage basin. When designing vegetated filter strips in western Washington, multiply the on-line water quality design flow rate by the coefficient k[1] given below to apply the 9-minute residence time criterion.

Western Washington Design Flow Coefficient for Biofilters

$$k = 1.41\,(P_{72\%,\,2\text{-yr.}}) - 0.052 \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-1)}$$

where: $P_{72\%,\,2\text{-yr}}$ = 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation depth (in.)

Note: The 6-month, 24-hour precipitation event can be estimated at 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation event if 6-month, 24-hour precipitation data are not available.

In eastern Washington, no design flow rate adjustment is needed, since the 6 month, 24 hour flow rate is calculated directly using SBUH-based models such as StormSHED.

The vegetated filter strip design flow rate then becomes:

$$Q_{vfs} = kQ_{wq} \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-2)}$$

2. **Calculate the design flow depth at Q_{vfs}.** The design flow depth is calculated based on the length of the vegetated filter strip (same as the length of the pavement edge contributing runoff to the vegetated filter strip) and the lateral slope of the vegetated filter strip parallel to the direction of flow. Design flow depth is calculated using a form of Manning's Equation:

$$Q_{vfs} = \frac{1.49}{n} L y^{5/3} s^{1/2} \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-3)}$$

[1] Derived by calculating the linear regression of the ratios of the 91st percentile flow event at 15-minute intervals (determined by MGSFlood) vs. 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour event (determined by the rational method) at each of the major continuously-operating rain gages in western Washington.

where: Q_{vfs} = vegetated filter strip design flow rate (cfs)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient. Manning's n can be adjusted by specifying soil and vegetation conditions at the project site, as specified in Table RT.02.1

y = design flow depth (ft), also assumed to be the hydraulic radius = 1.0 inch maximum = 0.083 feet

L = length of the vegetated filter strip parallel to the pavement edge (ft)

s = slope of the vegetated filter strip parallel to the direction of flow (ft/ft). Vegetated filter strip slopes should be greater than 2% and less than 15%. Vegetated filter strip slopes should be made as shallow as is feasible by site constraints. Gently sloping vegetated filter strips can produce the required residence time for runoff treatment using less space than steeper vegetated filter strips.

Rearranging Equation RT.02-1 to solve for y yields:

$$y = \left[\frac{nQ_{vfs}}{1.49Ls^{1/2}}\right]^{3/5} \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-4)}$$

If the calculated depth y is greater than 1 inch, either adjust the vegetated filter strip geometry or use other runoff treatment BMPs.

3. **Calculate the design flow velocity passing through the vegetated filter strip at the vegetated filter strip design flow rate.** The design flow velocity (V_{WQ}) is based on the vegetated filter strip design flow rate, the length of the vegetated filter strip, and the calculated design flow depth from Step 2:

$$V_{WQ} = \frac{Q_{vfs}}{Ly} \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-5)}$$

where: V_{WQ} = design flow velocity (ft/sec)

y = design flow depth (ft, from Equation RT.02-2)

4. **Calculate the vegetated filter strip width.** The width of the vegetated filter strip is determined by the residence time of the flow through the vegetated filter strip. A 9-minute (540-second) residence time is used to calculate vegetated filter strip width:

$$W = TV_{WQ} = 540V_{WQ} \qquad \textbf{(RT.02-6)}$$

where: W = vegetated filter strip width (ft)

T = time (sec)

V_{WQ} = design flow velocity (ft/sec, from Equation RT.02-3)

A minimum width of 8 feet is recommended in order to ensure that the long-term effectiveness of the vegetated filter strip will occur.

Narrow Area Vegetated Filter Strip

As previously mentioned, narrow area vegetated filter strips are limited to impervious flow paths less than 30 feet. For flow paths greater than 30 feet, designers should follow the basic vegetated filter strip guidelines. The sizing of a narrow area vegetated filter strip is based on the width of the roadway surface parallel to the flow path of the vegetated filter strip and the lateral slope of the vegetated filter strip.

1. **Determine width of roadway surface parallel to flow path draining to vegetated filter strip:**

   Determine the width of the roadway surface parallel to the flow path from the upstream to the downstream edge of the impervious area draining to the vegetated filter strip. This is the same as the width of the paved area.

2. **Determine average lateral slope of the vegetated filter strip:**

   Calculate the lateral slope of the vegetated filter strip (parallel to the flow path), averaged over the total length of the vegetated filter strip. If the slope is less than 2%, use 2% for sizing purposes. The maximum lateral slope allowed is 15%.

3. **Determine required width of the vegetated filter strip:**

   Use Figure RT.02.2 to size the vegetated filter strip; locate the width of the impervious surface parallel with the flow path on one of the curves (interpolate between curves as necessary). Next, move along the curve to the point where the design lateral slope of the vegetated filter strip is directly below. Read the vegetated filter strip width to the left on the y-axis. The vegetated filter strip must be designed to provide this minimum width "W" along the entire stretch of pavement draining to it.

Materials

Soil Amendments

The percentage of organic content directly relates to the water-holding capacity of the soil. Soil scientists report that for every 1% of organic matter content, the soil can hold 16,500 gallons of plant-available water per acre of soil to 1 foot deep.

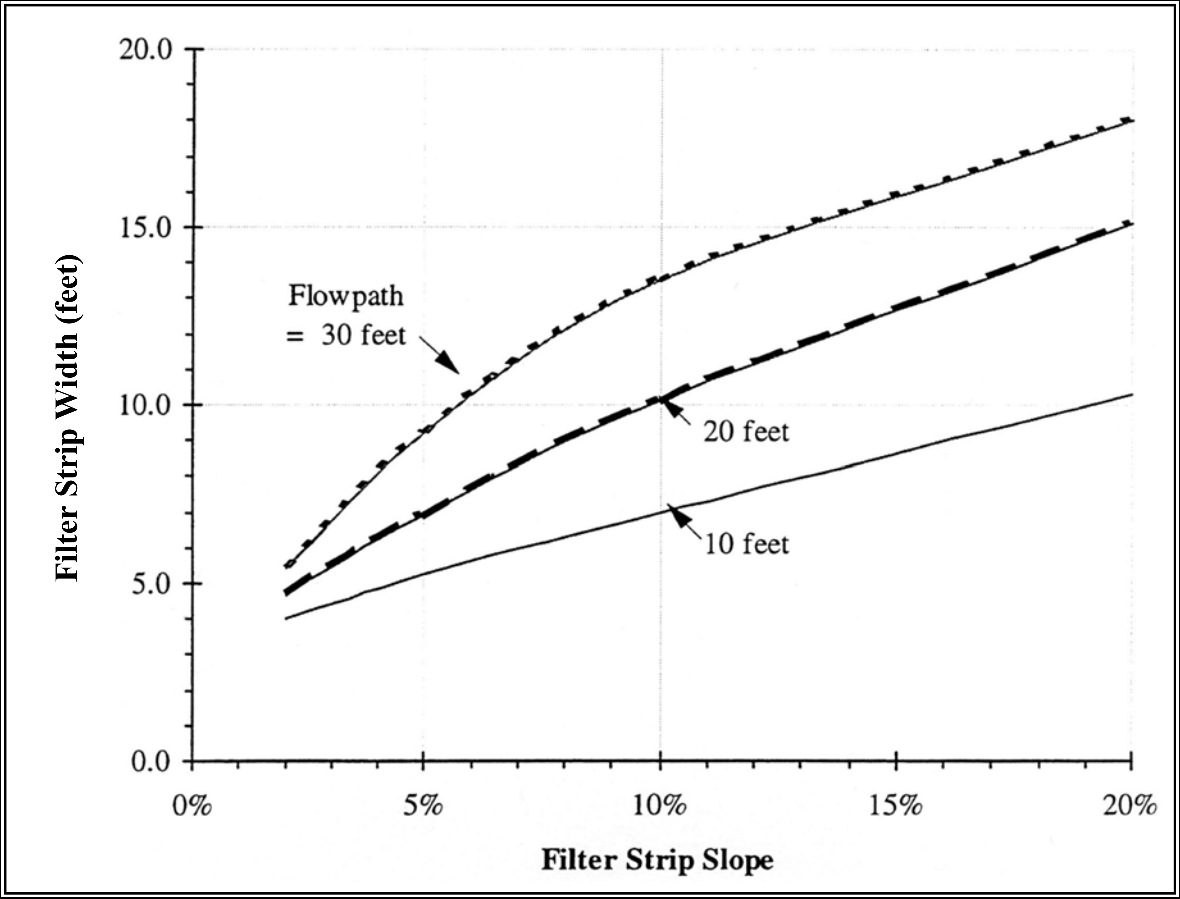


Figure RT.02.2. Narrow area vegetated filter strip design graph.

Compost used as an amendment, such as in the compost-amended vegetated filter strip, can also provide runoff storage through its water-holding capacity. The University of Washington College of Forest Resources reported in *Field Test of Compost Amendment to Reduce Nutrient Runoff* (UW, 1994) that soils amended with 2:1 compost exhibited 35% and 37% field capacities by weight and volume, respectively, over eight simulated rainstorms. The field tests showed that a 4-inch-minimum compost top layer has some semipermanent storage and also slowly releases stored runoff to subsoils, where it can infiltrate to provide interflow or groundwater recharge, depending on the local geology.

Compost source materials should not include any moderate risk wastes or any regulated hazardous or dangerous wastes as defined in *Washington Administrative Code* (WAC) 173-303. Soils contaminated with petroleum should not be included as a source material in the composting process and should not be blended with finished compost products.

Vegetation

Vegetated filter strips should be planted with grass that can withstand relatively high velocity flows as well as wet and dry periods. Consult with the region's Landscape Architect or the HQ Roadside & Site Development Unit for a selection of grasses and plants suitable for the project area.

Site Design Elements

Maintenance Access Roads (Access Requirements)

Access should be provided at the upper edge of all vegetated filter strips to enable maintenance of the gravel flow spreader and permit lawnmower entry to the vegetated filter strip.

RT.04, Biofiltration Swale

Biofiltration Swale With Spreader Bar on SR 503 in Clark County.

Introduction

General Description

Biofiltration swales are vegetation-lined channels designed to remove suspended solids from stormwater. The shallow, concentrated flow within these systems allows for the filtration of stormwater by plant stems and leaves. Biological uptake, biotransformation, sorption, and ion exchange are potential secondary pollutant-removal processes (see Figures RT.04.1 and RT.04.2). Two design procedures are described below; the first is for both eastern and western Washington and the second is only for eastern Washington.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Biofiltration swales must be designed to treat the biofiltration design flow rate. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4.4.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

The following procedure can be used in both eastern and western Washington:

Sizing Procedure

Preliminary Steps (P)

P-1 Determine the runoff treatment design flow rate (Q_{wq}) (see Sections 4-3.1 and 4-4.1).

P-2 Determine the biofiltration design flow rate (Q_{biofil}):

$$Q_{biofil} = kQ_{wq}$$

[1]For western Washington:

$$k = 1.41\ (P_{72\%,\ 2\text{-yr.}}) - 0.052$$

where: $P_{72\%,\ 2\text{-yr}}$ = 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation depth (in.)

Note: If the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation depth (in.) is known for the project area, that value can be used instead of $P_{72\%,\ 2\text{-yr}}$.

For eastern Washington:

$$k = 1.0$$

P-3 Establish the longitudinal slope of the proposed biofiltration swale (see Table RT.04.2 for criteria).

P-4 Select a soil and vegetation cover suitable for the biofiltration swale (see Table RT.04.1).

[1] The coefficient k is derived by calculating the linear regression of the ratios of the 91st percentile flow event at 15-minute intervals (determined by MGSFlood) vs. 72% of the 2-year, 24-hour event (determined by the rational method) at each of the major continuously-operating rain gages in western Washington and applied to the design flow rate in order to meet the 9-minute residence time criteria.

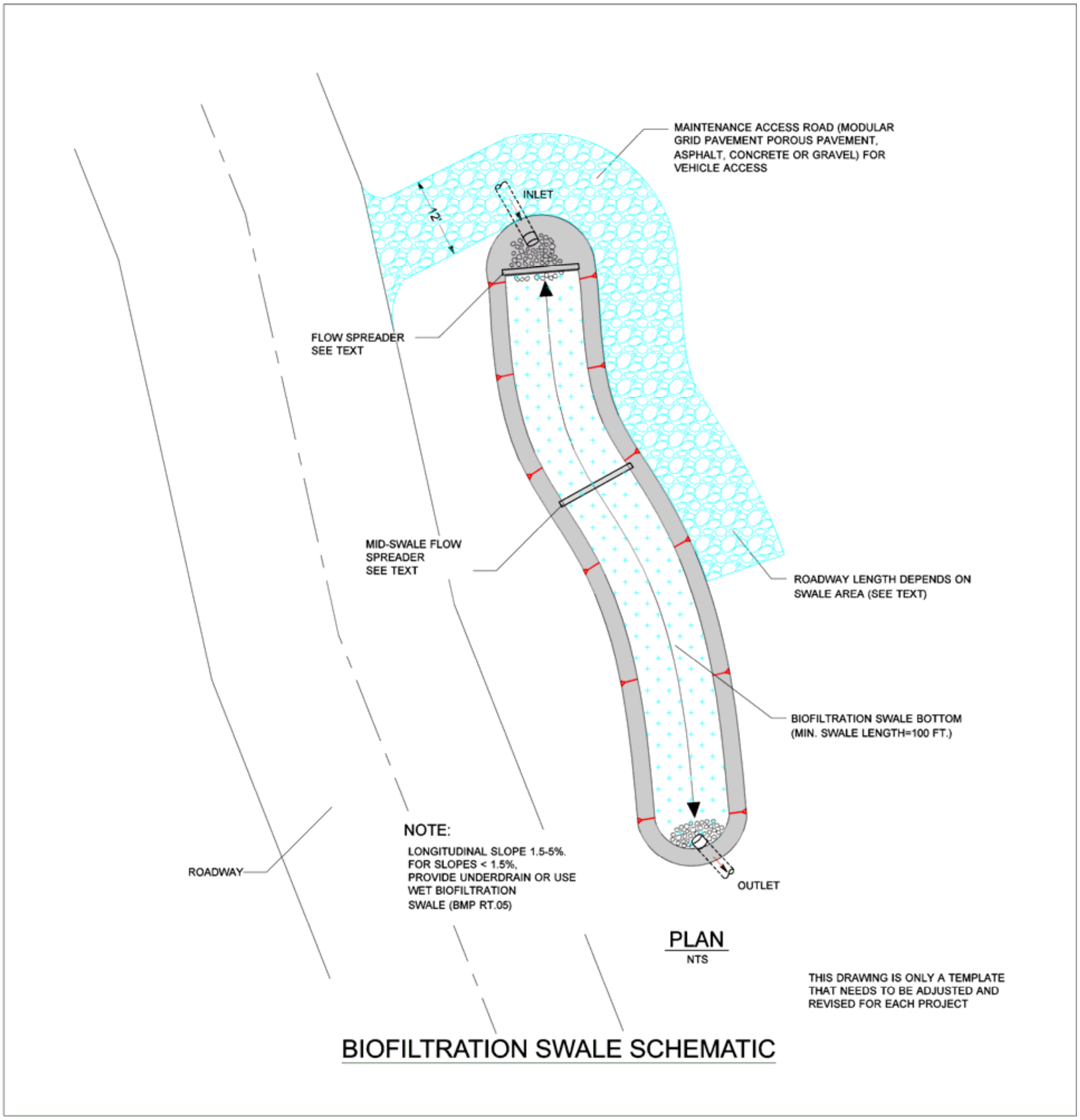


Figure RT.04.1. Biofiltration swale: plan view.

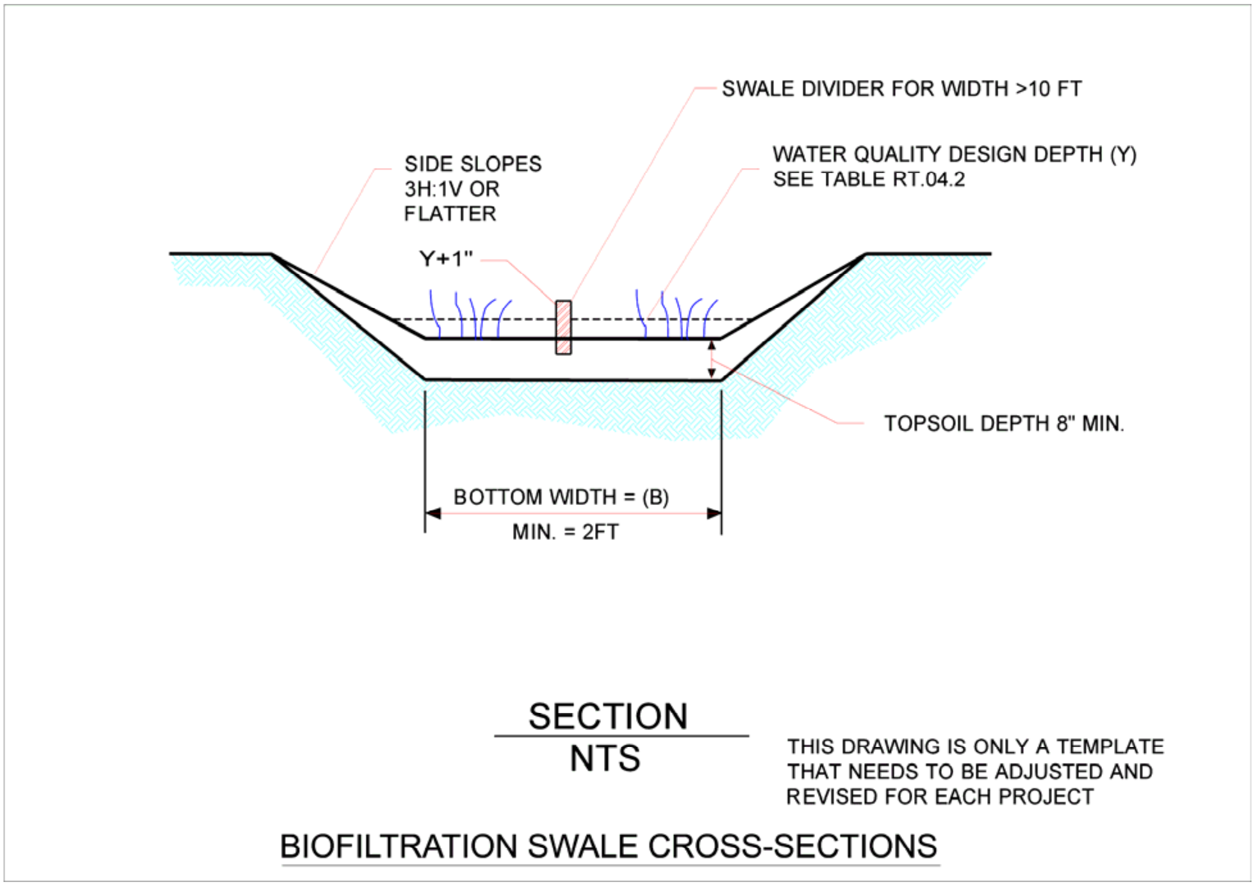


Figure RT.04.2. Biofiltration swale: cross section.

Table RT.04.1. Flow resistance coefficient in basic, wet, and continuous inflow biofiltration swales.

Soil and Cover	Manning's Coefficient
Grass-legume mix on compacted native soil	0.20
Grass-legume mix on lightly compacted, compost-amended[1] soil	0.22
Grass-legume mix on lightly compacted, compost-amended[1] soil with surface roughness features[2]	0.35

[1] For information on compost-amended soils, refer to Section 5-4.3.2. (Note that swales do not require a mulch layer and that compost amendments are incorporated into the soil.)

[2] Acceptable surface roughness features are wattle check dams (Std. Spec. 8-01.3(6)D), gravel filter berms (Std. Spec. 8-01.3(9)B), or compost berms (Std. Plan I-14). These features must be placed every 50 feet (or closer) and should not exceed 1.5 feet in height above finished swale bottom. These features must not be used in place of level spreaders or energy dissipaters.

Table RT.04.2. Biofiltration swale sizing criteria.

Design Parameter	Basic Biofiltration Swale	Wet Biofiltration Swale	Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale
Longitudinal slope	0.015–0.050[1] feet per foot	0.015 feet per foot or less	Same as basic swale
Maximum velocity	1 foot per second at Q_{biofil}	Same as basic swale	Same as basic swale
Maximum water depth at Q_{biofil}, y	2 inches if swale mowed frequently; 4 inches if mowed infrequently or inconsistently. For dryland grasses in eastern Washington, set depth to 3 inches.	4 inches	Same as basic swale
Manning coefficient at Q_{biofil}	See Table RT.04.1	Same as basic swale	Same as basic swale
Bed width	2–10 feet[2]	2–25 feet	Same as basic swale
Freeboard height	1 foot for the peak conveyance flow rate (Q_{convey})[3]	Same as basic swale	Same as basic swale
Minimum length	100 feet	Same as basic swale	Same as basic swale
Maximum side slope (for trapezoidal cross section)[4]	3H:1V	Same as basic swale	Same as basic swale

[1] For basic biofiltration swale on slopes less than 1.5%, install an underdrain system (see Figure RT.04.3). Underdrain backfill should be covered by at least 4 inches of amended soil or topsoil. Install the low-flow drain 6 inches deep in the soil (see Figure RT.04.4). For slopes greater than 5%, install energy dissipaters.

[2] Multiple parallel swales can be constructed when the calculated swale bottom width exceeds 10 feet.

[3] Q_{convey} should be based on the design flow rate of the conveyance system downstream of the biofiltration swale. In general, this is the peak $Q_{25\text{-}year}$.

[4] From swale bed to top of water surface at Q_{biofil}.

Design Steps (D)

D-1 Select the design depth of flow, y (see Table RT.04.2).

D-2 Select a swale cross-sectional shape (trapezoidal is preferred, but rectangular or parabolic cross sections can be used if site-specific constraints so dictate).

D-3 Use Manning's equation (RT.04-1) and first approximations relating hydraulic radius and dimensions for the selected swale shape to obtain a value for the width of the biofiltration swale:

$$Q_{biofil} = \frac{1.49 A R^{2/3} s^{1/2}}{n} \quad \textbf{(RT.04-1)}$$

where: Q_{biofi} = runoff treatment design flow rate (cfs)

A = w etted area (ft^2)

R = hydraulic radius (ft)

s = longitudinal slope of swale (ft/ft)

n = Manning's coefficient (see Table RT.04.1)

To solve for the cross-sectional shape of the swale, use one of the following methods:

Method 1:

Solve the implicit equation $AR^{0.67} = Q_{biofil}\, n / (1.49 s^{0.5})$ to determine bed width, b, or width of water surface, T (for parabolic or triangular cross sections), for the selected cross-sectional geometry. Use Figure RT.04.5 to substitute for A and R for the selected cross-sectional geometry. The variables Q_{biofil}, y, s, and n are all known values. The equation should then contain only a single unknown (b or T).

Method 2:

Use nomographs relating $(Q_{biofil}\, n) / (1.49 s^{0.5})$ for trapezoidal channels with known side slopes (z) to determine b for a given y (see Figure RT.04.6 for $z = 3$ and Figure RT.04.7 for $z = 4$).

Method 3:

For a trapezoidal swale that is flowing very shallow, the hydraulic radius, R, can be set equal to the depth of flow. Using this assumption, the equation in Method 1 can be changed to:

$$b = [(Q_{biofil}\, n) / (1.49 y^{1.67} s^{0.5})] - zy$$

Note: If any of these methods produce a value for *b* or *T* of less than 2 feet, then set bed width to 2 feet.

D-4 Compute *A* at Q_{biofil} by using the equations in Figure RT.04.5.

D-5 Compute the flow velocity at Q_{biofil}:

$$V_{biofil} = \frac{Q_{biofil}}{A} \qquad \textbf{(RT.04-2)}$$

where: V_{biofil} = flow velocity at Q_{biofil} (ft/sec)

If V_{biofil} > 1.0 ft/sec, increase width (*b* or *T*) or investigate ways to reduce Q_{WQ} and then repeat Steps D-3, D-4, and D-5 until $V_{biofil} \leq 1.0$ ft/sec. A velocity greater than 1.0 ft/sec was found to flatten grasses, thus reducing filtration.

D-6 Compute the swale length, *L* (ft):

$$L = V_{biofil}\, t \text{ (60 sec/min)}$$

where: t = hydraulic residence time (9 minutes for basic biofiltration swales)

D-7 If there is not sufficient space for the biofiltration swale, consider the following solutions:

1. Divide the site drainage to flow to multiple biofiltration swales.
2. Use infiltration or dispersion to provide lower Q_{biofil}.
3. Alter the design depth of flow, if possible (see Table RT.04.2).
4. Reduce the developed surface area to gain space for the biofiltration swale.
5. Reduce the longitudinal slope by meandering the biofiltration swale.
6. Nest the biofiltration swale within or around another stormwater BMP.

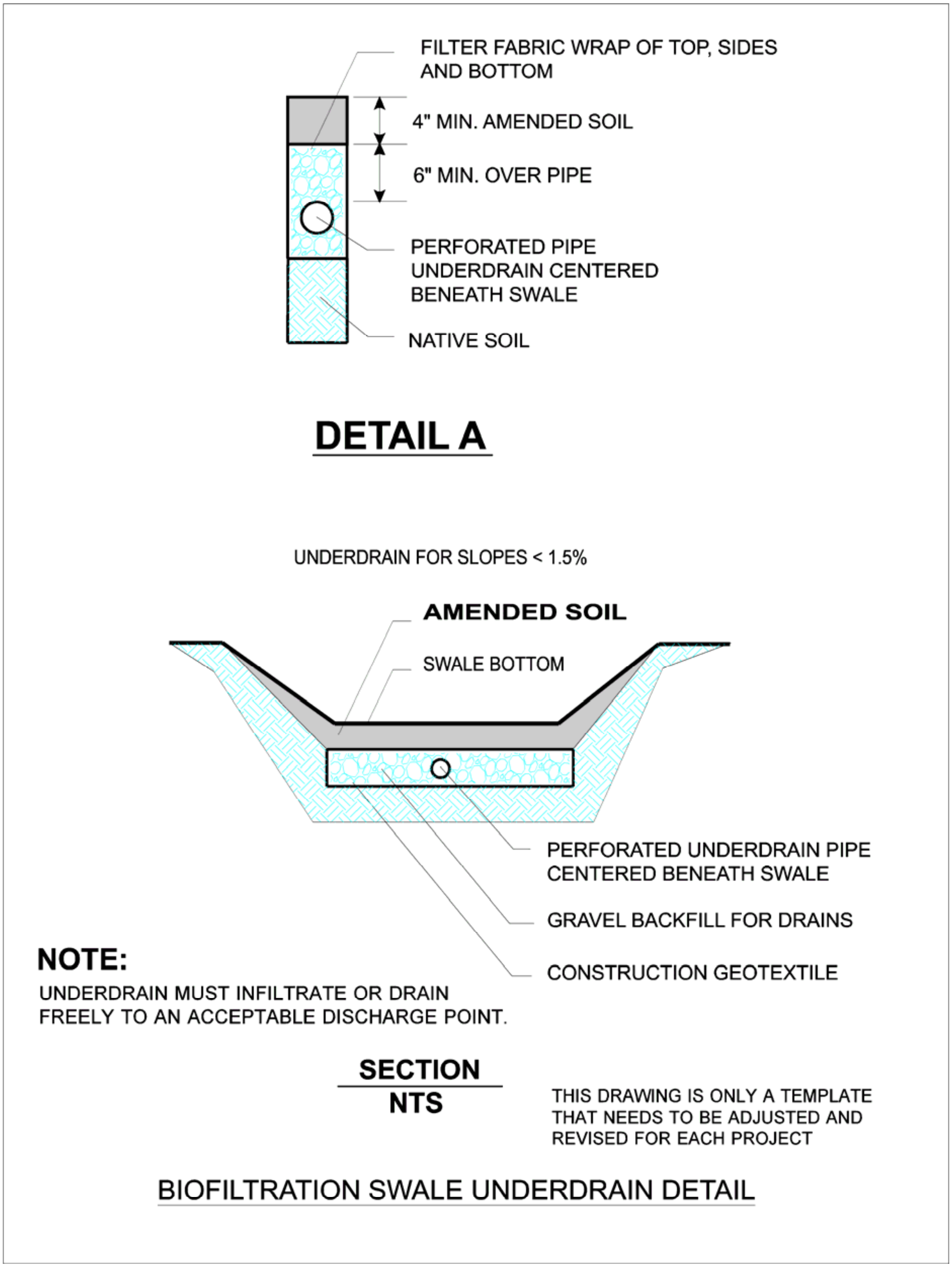


Figure RT.04.3. Biofiltration swale: underdrain detail.

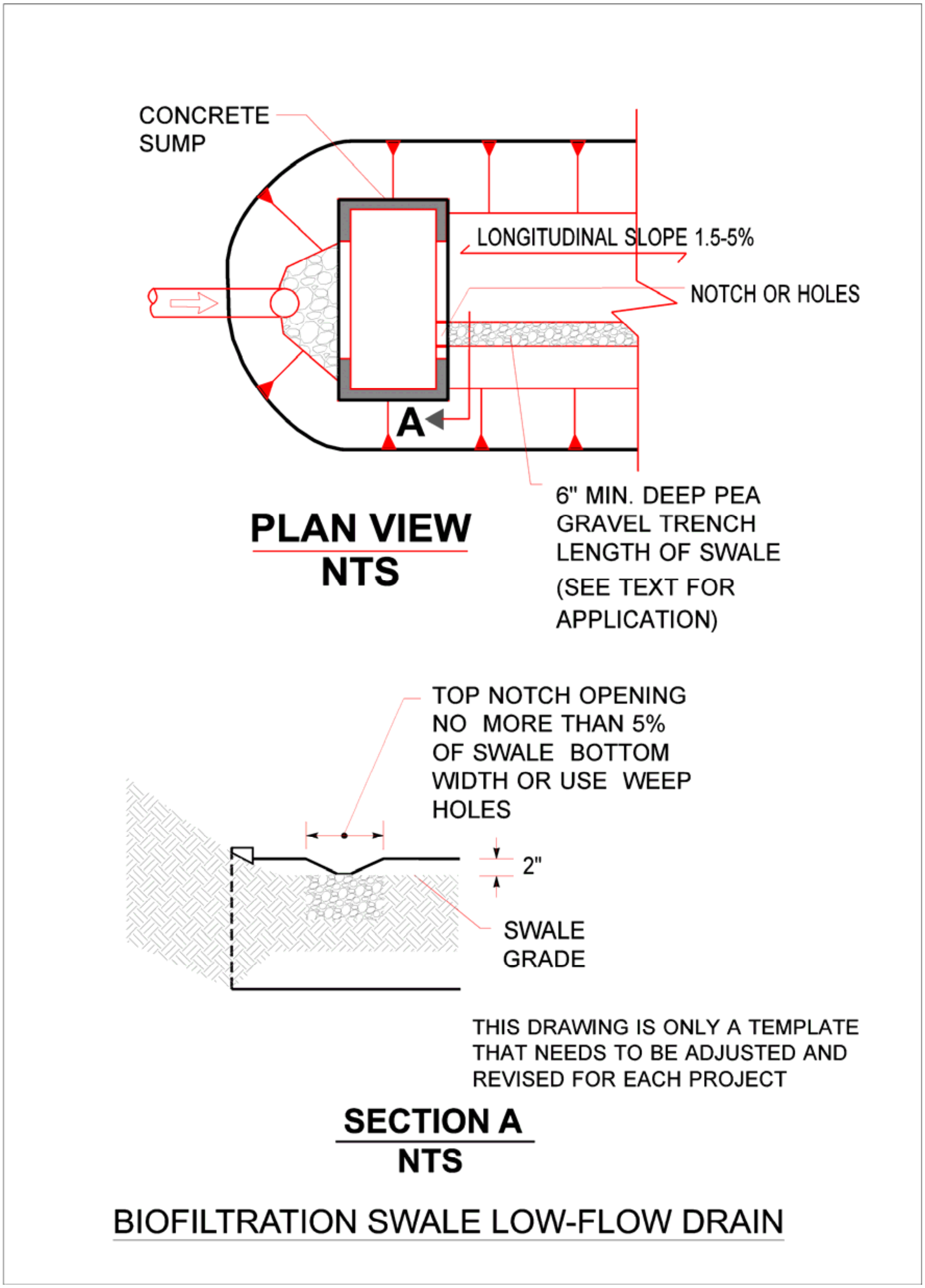
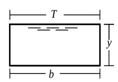
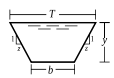
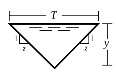
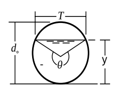
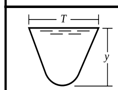
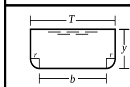
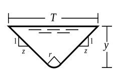


Figure RT.04.4. Biofiltration swale: low-flow drain detail.

Section	Area A	Wetted perimeter P	Hydraulic radius R	Top width W	Hydraulic depth D	Section factor Z
 Rectangle	by	$b + 2y$	$\frac{by}{b + 2y}$	b	y	$by^{1.5}$
 Trapezoid	$(b + zy)y$	$b + 2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}$	$\frac{(b + zy)y}{b + 2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}}$	$b + 2zy$	$\frac{(b + zy)y}{b + 2zy}$	$\frac{[(b + zy)y]^{1.5}}{\sqrt{b + 2zy}}$
 Triangle	zy^2	$2y\sqrt{1 + z^2}$	$\frac{zy}{2\sqrt{1 + z^2}}$	$2zy$	$^1/_2 y$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} zy^{2.5}$
 Circle	$^1/_8(\theta - \sin\theta)d_\circ^2$	$^1/_2 \theta d_\circ$	$^1/_4 (1 - \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta}) d_\circ$	$(\sin(^1/_2\theta)d_\circ)$ *or* $2\sqrt{y(d_\circ - y)}$	$^1/_8 \left(\frac{\theta - \sin\theta}{\sin {^1/_2}\theta}\right) d_\circ$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{32} \frac{(\theta - \sin\theta)^{1.5}}{(\sin {^1/_2}\theta)^{0.5}} d_\circ^{2.5}$
 Parabola	$^2/_3 Ty$	$T + \frac{8y^2}{3T}$ *	$\frac{2T^2 y}{3T^2 + 8y^2}$ *	$\frac{3A}{2y}$	$^2/_3 y$	$^2/_9 \sqrt{6} Ty^{1.5}$
 Round-cornered Rectangle ($y>r$)	$(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y$	$(\pi - 2)r + b + 2y$	$\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y}{(\pi - 2)r + b + 2y}$	$b + 2r$	$\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2}{(b + 2r)} + y$	$\frac{[(\frac{\pi}{2} - 2)r^2 + (b + 2r)y]^{1.5}}{\sqrt{b + 2y}}$
 Round-bottomed Triangle	$\frac{T^2}{4z} - \frac{r^2}{z}(1 - z\cot^{-1} z)$	$\frac{T}{z}\sqrt{1 + z^2} - \frac{2r}{z}(1 - z\cot^{-1} z)$	$\frac{A}{P}$	$2[z(y - r) + r\sqrt{1 + z^2}]$	$\frac{A}{T}$	$A\sqrt{\frac{A}{T}}$

*Satisfactory approximation for the interval 0<x≤1, where x=4y/T. When x>1, use the exact expression $P = (^T/_2)\left[\sqrt{1 + x^2} + {^1/_x} \ln\left(x + \sqrt{1 + x^2}\right)\right]$

Figure RT.04.5. Geometric elements of common cross sections.

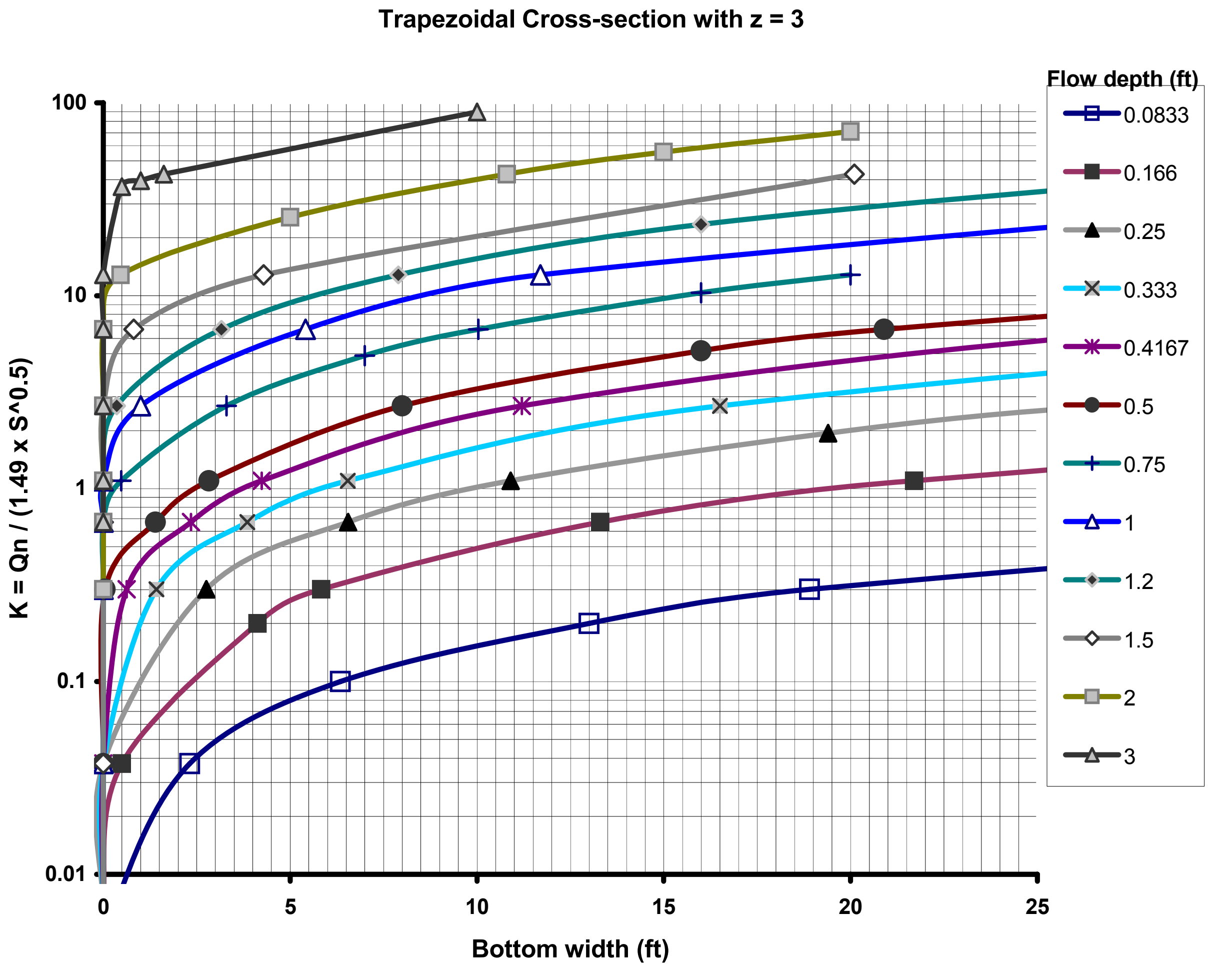


Figure RT.04.6. Open channel flow parameter, Qn/(1.49 $s^{0.5}$), versus bottom width (b) at different flow depths (z = 3).

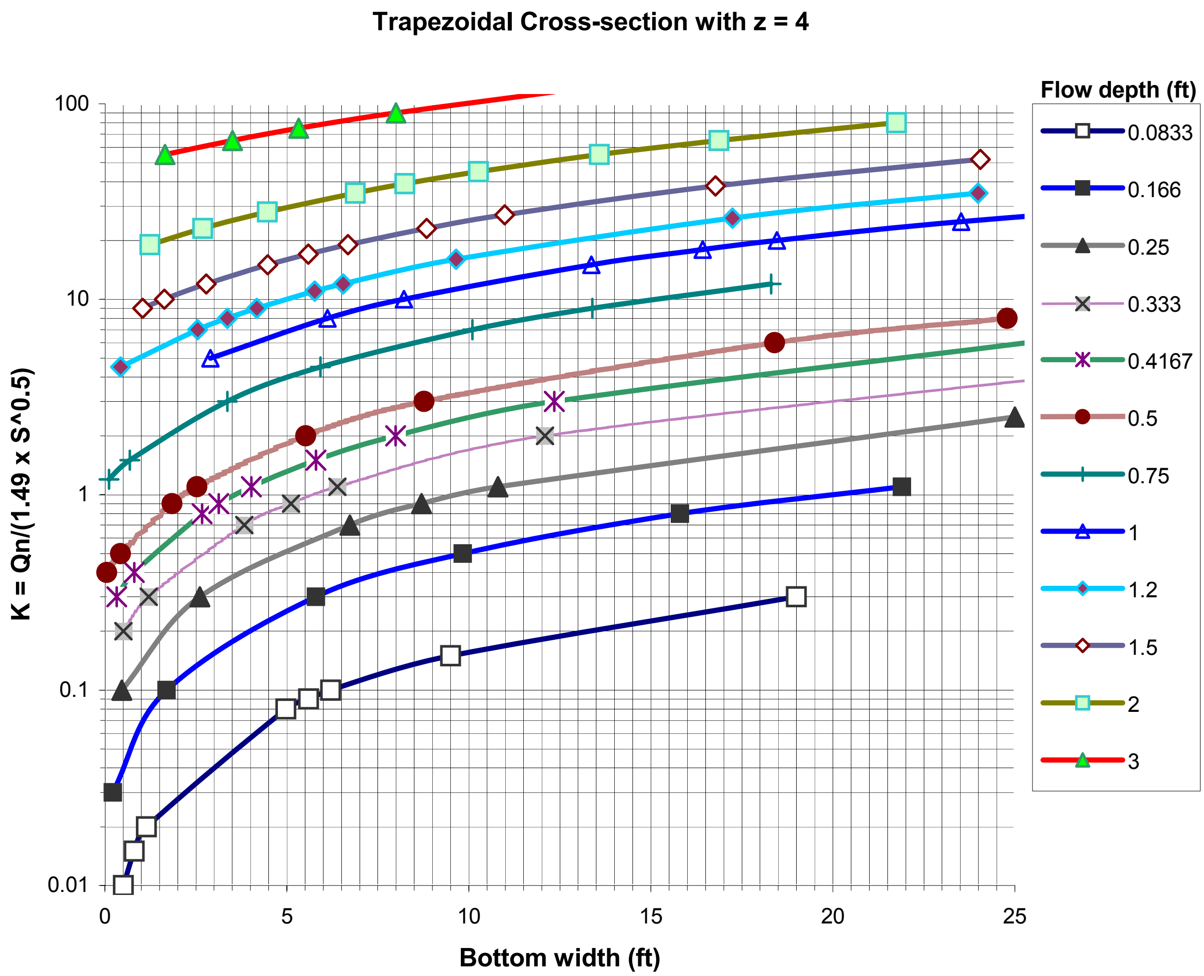


Figure RT.04.7. Open channel flow parameter, Qn/(1.49 $s^{0.5}$), versus bottom width (b) at different flow depths (z = 4).

Freeboard Check (FC)

A freeboard check must be performed for the combination of highest expected flow and least vegetation coverage and height. The highest expected flow rate (Q_{convey}) is the design flow rate of the conveyance system that discharges to the swale (see the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual*, Chapter 1). The freeboard check is not necessary for biofiltration swales that are located off-line from the primary conveyance and detention system; that is, when flows in excess of Q_{biofil} bypass the biofiltration swale. Off-line is the preferred configuration of biofiltration swales.

Note: Use the same units as in the biofiltration swale design steps.

FC-1 Unless runoff at rates higher than Q_{biofil} will bypass the biofiltration swale, perform a freeboard check for Q_{convey}.

FC-2 Select the lowest possible roughness coefficient for the biofiltration swale (assume n=0.03).

FC-3 Again, use the implicit equation $AR^{0.67} = Q_{convey}\, n / (1.49 s^{0.5})$ (Figure RT.04.5) and with a known b (or T), solve for depth, y. Select the lowest y that provides a solution. For trapezoidal swales, Figures RT.04.6 and RT.04.7 can be used directly. (Note that in the case of a parabola, the equation must be solved implicitly for two unknowns.)

FC-4 Ensure that swale depth exceeds flow depth at Q_{convey} by a minimum of 1 foot (1-foot-minimum freeboard).

The following procedure can only be used in eastern Washington:

Sizing Procedure

Preliminary Steps (P)

P-1 Determine the runoff treatment design flow rate (Q_{wq}); this is also the biofiltration design flow rate (Q_{biofil}) (see Section 4-4.1).

P-2 Determine the slope of the biofiltration swale (this will be somewhat dependent on where the swale is placed). The slope should be at least 1% and shall be no steeper than 5%. When slopes less than 2% are used, the need for underdrainage must be evaluated.

P-3 Select a swale shape. Trapezoidal is the most desirable shape; however, rectangular and triangular shapes can be used. The remainder of the design process assumes that a trapezoidal shape has been selected.

P-4 Use Manning's Equation to estimate the bottom width of the biofiltration swale. Manning's Equation for English units is as follows:

$$Q_{biofil} = (1.486\, AR^{0.667} s^{0.5}) / n$$

where: Q_{biofil} = runoff treatment design flow rate (cfs)

A = cross-sectional area of flow (ft^2)

R = hydraulic radius of flow cross section (ft)

s = longitudinal slope of biofiltration swale (ft/ft)

n = Manning's roughness coefficient (use $n = 0.20$ for typical biofiltration swale with turf/lawn vegetation, and $n = 0.30$ for biofiltration swale with less dense vegetation such as meadow or pasture)

For a trapezoid, this equation cannot be directly solved for bottom width. However, for trapezoidal channels that are flowing very shallow, the hydraulic radius can be set equal to the depth of flow. Using this assumption, the equation can be altered to:

$$B = (((n/1.486)\ Q_{biofil}) / (y^{1.667}\ s^{0.5})) - zy$$

where:

B = bottom width of the swale

y = depth of flow

z = the side slope of the biofiltration swale in the form of z:1

Typically, the depth of flow for turf grass is selected to be 4 inches. For dryland grasses, the depth of flow should be set to 3 inches. It can be set lower, but doing so will increase the bottom width. Sometimes when the flow rate is very low, the equation listed above will generate a negative value for B. Since it is not possible to have a negative bottom width, the bottom width should be set to 1 foot when this occurs.

Biofiltration swales are limited to a maximum bottom width of 10 feet. If the required bottom width is greater than 10 feet, parallel swales should be used in conjunction with a device that splits the flow and directs the proper amount to each swale.

P-5 Calculate the cross-sectional area of flow for the given channel using the calculated bottom width and the selected side slopes and depth.

P-6 Calculate the velocity of flow in the channel using:

$$V = Q_{biofil}/A$$

If V is less than or equal to 1 ft/sec, the biofiltration swale will function correctly with the selected bottom width. Proceed to P-7.

If V is greater than 1 ft/sec, the biofiltration swale will not function correctly. Increase the bottom width, recalculate the depth using Manning's Equation, and return to P-5.

P-7 Select a location where a biofiltration swale with the calculated width and a length of 200 feet will fit. If a length of 200 feet is not possible, the width of the biofiltration swale must be increased so that the area of the biofiltration swale is the same as if a 200-foot length had been used.

P-8 Select a vegetation cover suitable for the site. Consult Table RT.04.1 or the local NRCS office or the County Extension Service for guidance.

P-9 Using Manning's Equation, find the depth of flow (typically n=0.04 during Q_{biofil}). The depth of the channel shall be 1 foot deeper than the depth of flow. Check to determine that shear stresses do not cause erosion; the velocity needs to stay below 2 ft/sec.

Design Steps (D)

D-1 Though the actual dimensions for a specific site may vary, the swale should generally have a length of 200 feet. The maximum bottom width is typically 10 feet. The depth of flow should not exceed 4 inches during the design storm. The flow velocity should not exceed 1ft/sec.

D-2 The channel slope should be at least 1% and no greater than 5%.

D-3 The swale can be sized as a treatment facility for Q_{biofil}.

D-4 The ideal cross section of the swale should be a trapezoid. The side slopes should be no steeper than 3H:1V.

D-5 Roadside ditches should be regarded as significant potential biofiltration sites and should be utilized for this purpose whenever possible.

D-6 If flow is to be introduced through curb cuts, place pavement slightly above the biofiltration swale elevation. Curb cuts should be at least 12 inches wide to prevent clogging.

D-7 Biofiltration swales must be vegetated in order to provide adequate treatment of runoff.

D-8 It is important to maximize water contact with vegetation and the soil surface. For general purposes, select fine, close-growing grasses (or other vegetation) that can withstand prolonged periods of wetting, as well as prolonged dry periods (to minimize the need for irrigation). Consult the local NRCS office or the County Extension Service for specific vegetation selection recommendations.

D-9 Biofiltration swales should generally not receive construction-stage runoff. If they do, presettling of sediments should be provided. (See BMPs 6A-2.30, Sediment Trap, and 6A-2.31, Temporary Sediment Pond, in Appendix 6A – Best Management Practices.) Such biofilters should be evaluated for the need to remove sediments and restore vegetation following construction. The maintenance of presettling basins or sumps is critical to their effectiveness as pretreatment devices.

D-10 If possible, divert runoff (other than necessary irrigation) during the period of vegetation establishment. Where runoff diversion is not possible, protect graded and seeded areas with suitable erosion control measures.

Site Design Elements

- Install level spreaders at the head of the biofiltration swale in swales 6 feet or greater in bottom width. Include sediment cleanouts at the head of the swale as needed (see Section 5-4.3.5 for level spreader options). It is recommended that swales with a bottom width in excess of 6 feet or greater have a level spreader for every 50 feet of swale length.
- Use energy dissipaters for swales on longitudinal slopes exceeding 2.5%.
- Specify that topsoil extends to at least an 8-inch depth (unless an underdrain system is needed—see Table RT.04.2).
- To improve infiltration on longitudinal slopes less than 1.5%, ensure that the swale bed material contains a sand percentage greater than 70% (i.e., greater than 70% by weight retained on the No. 40 sieve) before organic amendments are added.
- If groundwater contamination is a concern, seal the bed or underdrain area with either a treatment liner or a low-permeability liner that is appropriate for site conditions (see Section 5-4.3.3 for additional information on these liner types).

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

- Consult with the region's Landscape Architect or the HQ Roadside & Site Development Unit to determine plants for use in the basic biofiltration swale.
- Select fine, turf-forming grasses where moisture is appropriate for growth.
- If possible, perform final seeding of the swale during the seeding windows specified in the WSDOT Standard Specifications. Supplemental irrigation may be required depending on seeding and planting times.
- Plant wet-tolerant species in the fall.

- Use only sod specified by the region's Landscape Architect.
- Stabilize soil areas upslope of the biofiltration swale to prevent erosion and excessive sediment deposition.
- Apply seed via hydroseeder or broadcaster.

Construction Criteria

- Do not put the biofiltration swale into operation until areas of exposed soil in the contributing drainage catchment have been sufficiently stabilized.
- Keep effective erosion and sediment control measures in place until the swale vegetation is established.
- Avoid over-compaction during construction.
- Grade biofiltration swales to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes.

RT.05, Wet Biofiltration Swale

Introduction

General Description

A *wet biofiltration swale* is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale for use where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Where saturation exceeds about two continuous weeks, typical grasses die. Thus, vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions is needed. This type of vegetation in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale to remove low concentrations of pollutants such as TSS, heavy metals, nutrients, and petroleum hydrocarbons.

Applications and Limitations

Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because of one or more of the following conditions:

- The swale is on till soils and is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control
- Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps, high groundwater, or base flows on the site
- Longitudinal slopes are slight (generally less than 1.5%) and ponding is likely

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Wet biofiltration swales must be designed to treat the runoff treatment flow rate discussed in Section 3-3.5 under Minimum Requirement 5. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

Overflow or Bypass

To accommodate flows exceeding the water quality flow rate, two design options are available:

1. A high-flow bypass can be installed for flows greater than the runoff treatment design flow to protect wetland vegetation from damage. Unlike grass, wetland vegetation does not quickly regain an upright attitude after being flattened by high flows. New growth, usually from the base of the plant and often taking several weeks, is required for the grass to regain its upright form. The bypass may be an open channel parallel to the wet biofiltration swale.
2. Alternatively, swale bottom width may be tripled to accommodate high flows. The following features must be included:
   - ◻ An energy dissipater and level spreader must be set at the head of the swale to ensure equal distribution of influent and reduce the potential for scour. Gravel filter berms (WSDOT Standard Specification 8-01.3[9]B) must be placed every 30 feet across the full width of the swale. The minimum required swale length should not include the length occupied by gravel filter berms.
   - ◻ If the calculated width to convey high flows exceeds 25 feet, then a high flow channel with a bed elevation 0.5 feet above the swale depth can be constructed. The high-flow channel can be either planted or rock-lined.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Use the same design approach as for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), except add the following:

Extended Wet Season Flow Adjustment: If the swale is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control, multiply the treatment area (bottom width times length) of the swale (as determined by the design steps listed in BMP RT.04) by 2, and readjust the swale length or width to provide an equivalent area. Maintain a 5:1 length-to-width ratio.

Intent: The treatment area of swales following detention ponds needs to be increased because of the differences in vegetation established in a constant flow environment. Flows following detention are much more prolonged. These prolonged flows result in more stream-like conditions than are typical for other wet biofilter situations. Because vegetation growing in *streams is often less dense, an increase in treatment area is needed to ensure that equivalent pollutant removal is achieved in extended flow situations.*

Swale Geometry: Use the same geometry specified for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), except for the following modifications:

- The bottom width may be increased to 25 feet maximum, but a length-to-width ratio of 5:1 must be maintained (see Figure RT.05.1). No longitudinal dividing berm is needed. (Note that the minimum swale length is 100 feet.)
- If longitudinal slopes are greater than 2%, the wet swale must be stepped so that the slope within the stepped sections averages 2% or less. Steps may be made of retaining walls, log check dams, short riprap sections, or similar structures. Steps must be designed to prevent scour on the downstream side of the step. No underdrain or low-flow drain is required.

Water Depth and Base Flow: Use the same criteria specified for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), except the design water depth must be 4 inches for all wetland vegetation selections, and no underdrains or low-flow drains are required.

Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading: Use the same criteria specified for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), except flow spreaders are not needed.

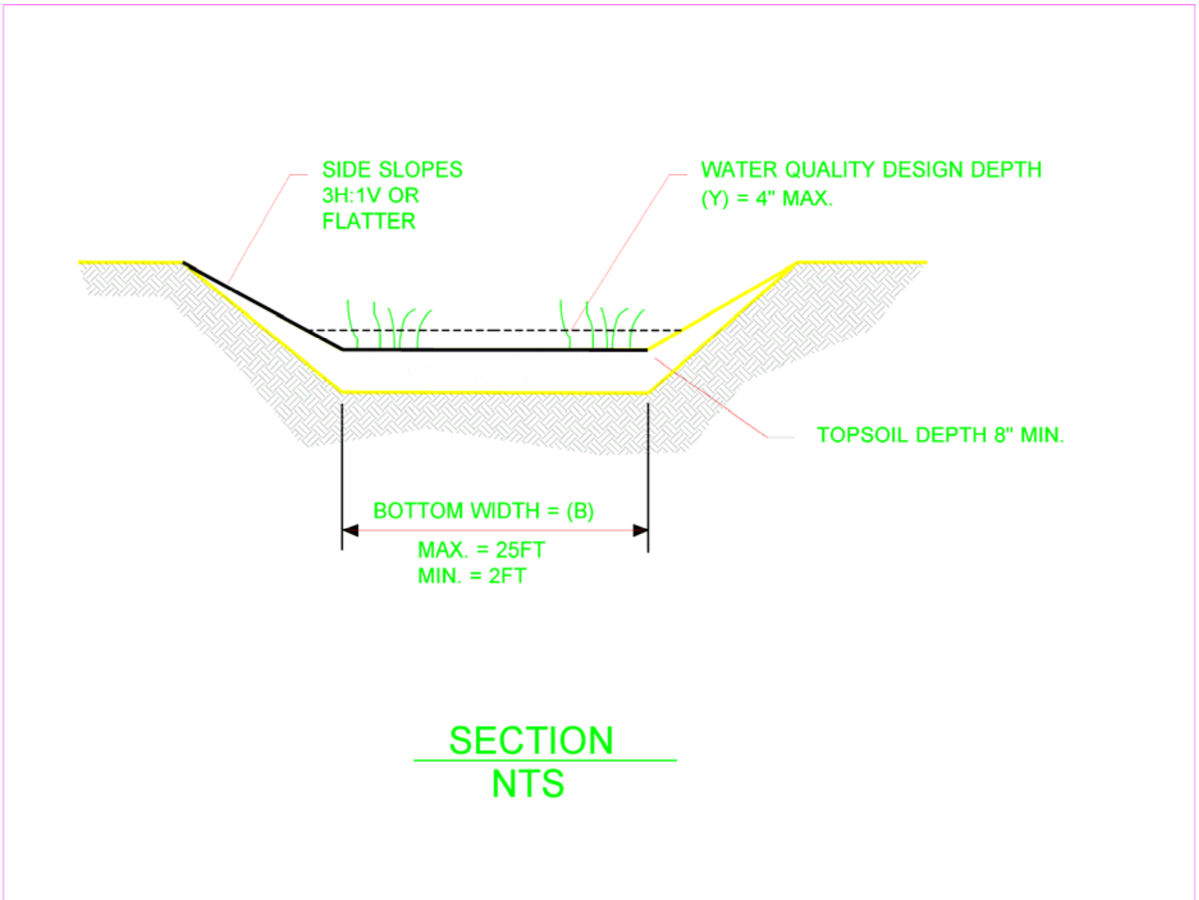


Figure RT.05.1. Wet biofiltration swale: cross section.

Site Design Elements

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

Use the same design considerations specified for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), except for the following modifications:

- Select acceptable plants for western Washington sites from the list shown in Table RT.05.1. In general, it is best to plant several species to increase the likelihood that at least some of the selected species will find growing conditions favorable.
- A wetland seed mix may be applied by hydroseeding, but if coverage is poor, planting rootstock or nursery stock is required. Poor coverage is considered to be more than 30% bare area through the upper two-thirds of the swale after 4 weeks.

Construction Considerations

Use the same construction considerations specified for basic biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04).

Table RT.05.1. Recommended plants for wet biofiltration swales in western Washington.

Common Name	Scientific Name
Shortawn foxtail	*Alopecurus aequalis*
Water foxtail	*Alopecurus geniculatus*
Spike rush	*Eleocharis spp.*
Slough sedge*	*Carex obnupta*
Sawbeak sedge	*Carex stipata*
Sedge	*Carex spp.*
Western mannagrass	*Glyceria occidentalis*
Velvetgrass	*Holcus mollis*
Slender rush	*Juncus tenuis*
Watercress*	*Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum*
Water parsley*	*Oenanthe sarmentosa*
Hardstem bulrush	*Scirpus acutus*
Small-fruited bulrush	*Scirpus microcarpus*

* Good choice for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a detention facility.

Note: Cattail (Typha latifolia) is not appropriate for most wet swales because of its very dense and clumping growth habit that prevents water from filtering through the clump.

RT.06, Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale

Introduction

General Description

In situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head, a different design approach—the *continuous inflow biofiltration swale*—is needed (see Figure RT.06.1). The basic swale design is modified by increasing swale length to achieve an equivalent average hydraulic residence time.

Applications and Limitations

A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is used when inflows are not concentrated, such as locations along the shoulder of a road without curbs. This design may also be used where frequent, small-point flows enter a swale, such as through curb inlet ports spaced at intervals along a road or from a parking lot with frequent curb cuts. In general, no inlet port should carry more than about 10% of the flow.

A continuous inflow swale is not appropriate where significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale width and length must be recalculated from the point of confluence to the discharge point in order to provide adequate treatment for the increased flows.

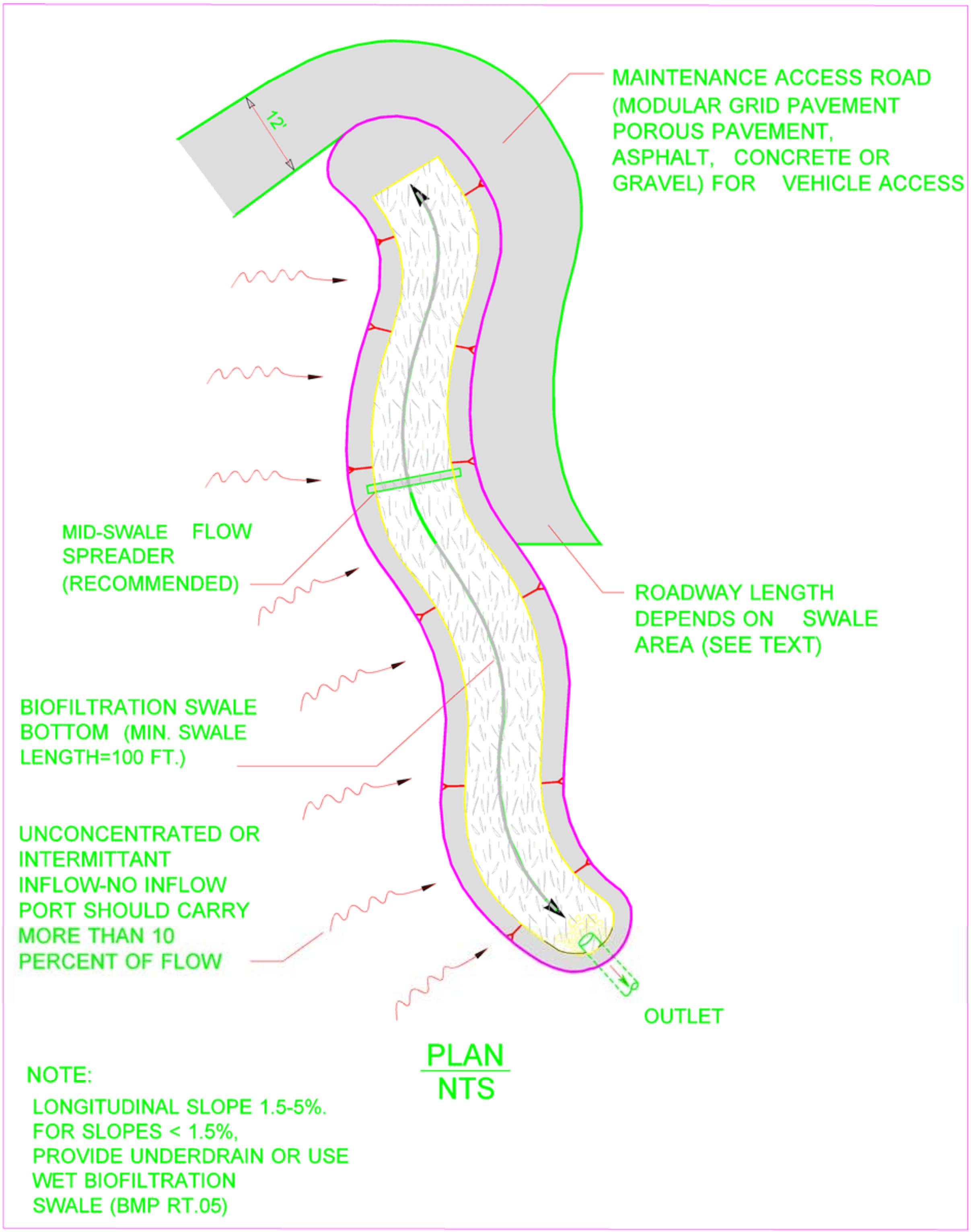


Figure RT.06.1. Continuous inflow biofiltration swale: plan view.

Structural Design Considerations

Use the same considerations specified for BMP RT.04 (biofiltration swale), except for the following:

- For the design flow, include runoff from the pervious side slopes draining to the swale along the entire swale length.
- If only a single design flow is used, use the flow rate at the outlet. The goal is to achieve an average residence time through the swale of 9 minutes. Assuming an even distribution of inflow into the side of the swale, double the hydraulic residence time to a minimum of 18 minutes.

Determine Q_{biofil} as shown in Step P-2 of the basic biofiltration swale (see BMP RT.04) guidance.

- For continuous inflow biofiltration swales, plant interior side slopes above the runoff treatment design elevation in grass. A typical lawn seed mix or the biofiltration seed mixes are acceptable. Landscape plants or groundcovers other than grass generally should not be used between the runoff inflow elevation and the bottom of the swale.

  Intent: The use of grass on interior side slopes reduces the chance of soil erosion and transfer of pollutants from landscape areas to the biofiltration treatment area.

After the cross-sectional size of the biofiltration swale is determined using Q_{biofil}, complete the following steps. This is to account for the hydraulic residence time of flow moving through the vegetated side slopes (3H:1V or shallower and slope length >5 feet) at various points along the length of the swale.

1. Break the drainage basin of the swale into areas so that no area contributes more than 20% of flow. Include only those areas that discharge sheet flow to the vegetated side slopes and biofiltration swale.
2. Determine the velocity of flows through each vegetated side slope, $V_{n,ss}$ (ft/sec), for each of the contributing areas by completing Steps 1 through 3 of the vegetated filter strip design methodology (see BMP RT.02).
3. Determine the hydraulic residence time within each vegetated side slope, t_{ss} (sec), for each area using:

$$L_{n,ss}/V_{n,ss} = t_{n,ss}$$

where: $L_{n,ss}$ = length of vegetated side slope of the n^{th} swale subbasin (ft)

4. Determine the weighted mean hydraulic residence time, $t_{mean,ss}$, for *all flows* passing through vegetated side slopes using:

$$[Q_1(t_{ss,1})+Q_2(t_{ss,2})+\ldots+Q_n(t_{ss,n})]/Q_{total,ss}= t_{mean,ss}$$

where: Q_n = flow rate for n^{th} contributing area (cfs)

$Q_{total,ss}$ = total flow that passes through all of the vegetated side slopes (cfs)

5. Multiply $t_{mean,ss}$ by R

where: $t_{mean,ss} \times R = t_{adj}$

$R = Q_{total,ss} / Q_{biofil}$

Q_{biofil} = total runoff treatment flow rate as determined in Step P-2 of the basic biofiltration swale (see BMP RT.04) guidance

6. If the head of the swale is located downstream of the last contributing vegetated side slope section, subtract t_{adj} from 1,080 seconds (= 18 minutes) to determine the t_{design}. If the swale is located along the entire toe of the contributing vegetated side slope, subtract t_{adj} from 540 seconds (= 9 minutes) to determine t_{design}. (Note that in the latter case, the swale must be at least as long as the contributing vegetated side slopes.)

7. Using the downstream flow rate (Q_{biofil}), determine the velocity through the swale and use t_{design} calculated in Step 6 to determine the total swale length required. Make any necessary adjustments to ensure that the criteria in Table RT.04.2 are met.

RT.07, Ecology Embankment

Ecology Embankment Along SR 167 in King County.

Introduction

General Description

The ecology embankment is a linear flow-through stormwater runoff treatment device that can be sited along highway side-slopes (conventional design) and medians (dual ecology embankment), borrow ditches, or other linear depressions. Cut-slope applications may also be considered. The ecology embankment can be used where available right-of-way is limited, sheet flow from the highway surface is feasible, lateral gradients are generally less than 25% (4H:1V), and longitudinal gradients are less than 5%. Ecology embankment conditional-use level designation for basic, phosphorus, and enhanced treatment is in effect until September 30, 2006. Updates/changes to the use-level designation and any design changes will be posted in the *post-publications updates* section of the HRM Resource web page.

Ecology embankments have four basic components: a gravel no-vegetation zone, a vegetated filter strip, the ecology mix bed, and a gravel-filled underdrain trench.

For typical ecology embankment configurations, see Figures RT.07.1 and RT.07.2.

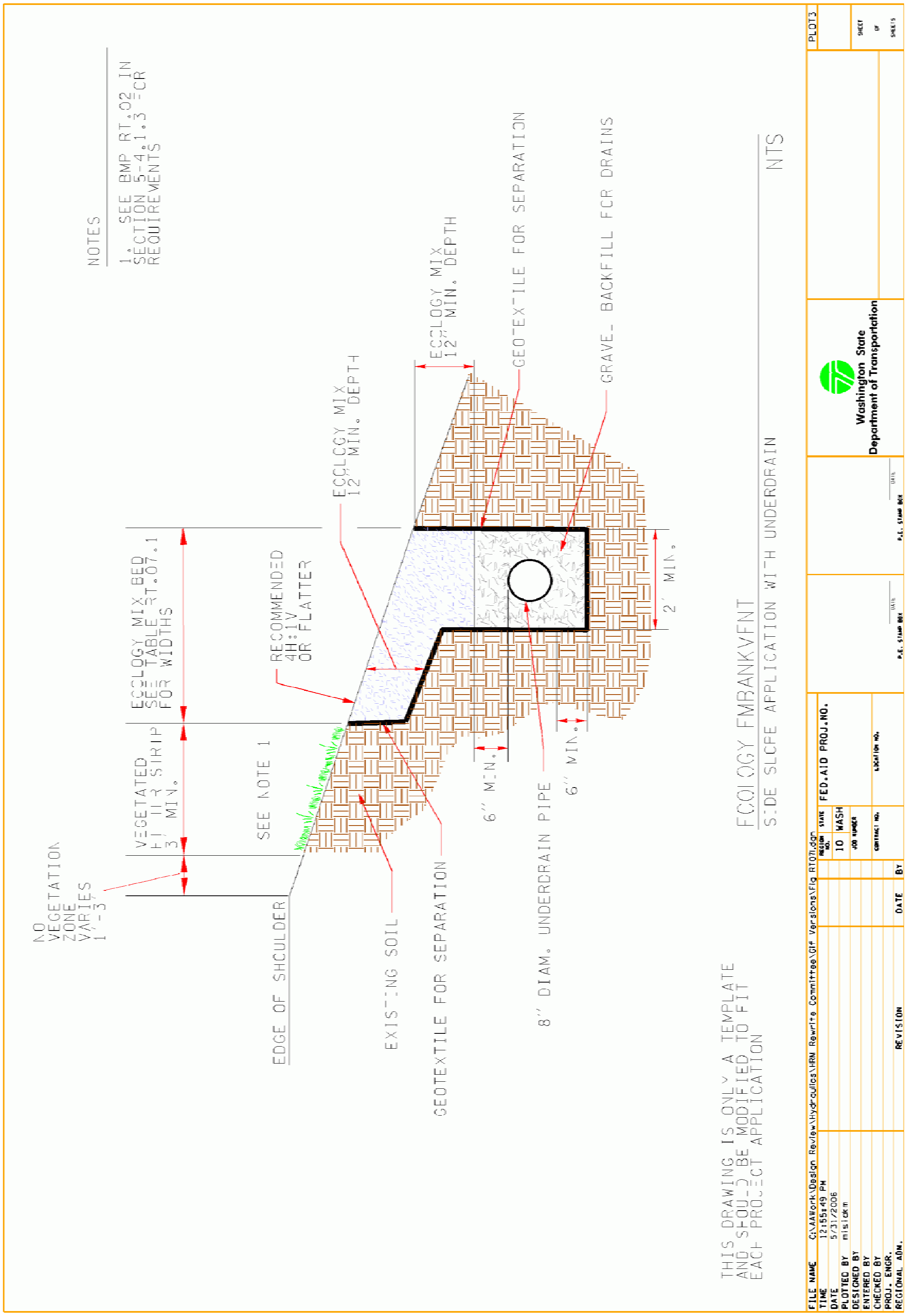


Figure RT.07.1. Ecology embankment: cross section.

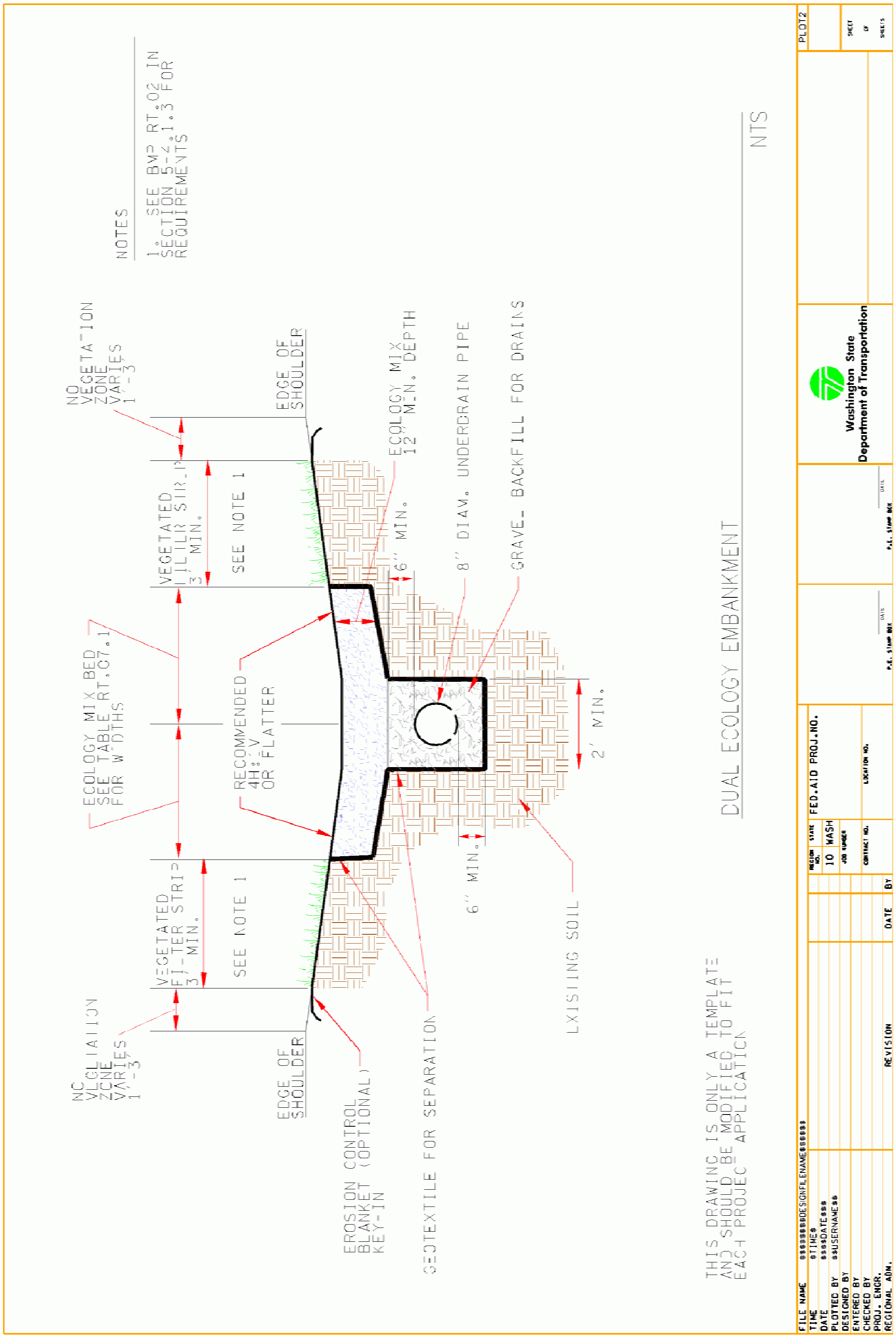


Figure RT.07.2. Dual ecology embankment: cross section.

Functional Description

The ecology embankment removes suspended solids, phosphorus, and metals from highway runoff through physical straining, ion exchange, carbonate precipitation, and biofiltration.

Stormwater runoff is conveyed to the ecology embankment via sheet flow over a vegetation-free gravel zone to ensure sheet dispersion, and provide some pollutant trapping. Next, a vegetated filter strip, which may be amended with compost, is incorporated into the top of the fill slope to provide pretreatment, further enhancing filtration and extending the life of the system. The runoff is then filtered through a bed of porous, alkalinity-generating granular medium—the ecology mix. Ecology mix is a fill material composed of crushed rock (sized by screening), dolomite, gypsum, and perlite. The dolomite and gypsum additives serve to buffer acidic pH conditions and exchange light metals for heavy metals. Perlite is incorporated to improve moisture retention, which is critical for the formation of biomass epilithic biofilm to assist in the removal of solids, metals, and nutrients. Treated water drains from the ecology mix bed into the gravel underdrain trench for hydraulic conveyance; an underdrain pipe may be required in the trench. Geotextile lines the underside of the ecology mix bed and the infiltration trench.

The underdrain trench is for hydraulic conveyance, and should be evaluated for infiltration loss. The trench's perforated underdrain pipe is a protective measure to ensure free flow through the ecology mix. It may be possible to omit the underdrain pipe if it can be demonstrated that the pipe is not necessary to maintain free flow through the ecology mix and is not required to route runoff to a flow control BMP or stormwater outfall (i.e., the runoff can be fully infiltrated). Contact the HQ Hydraulics Office for guidance and/or assistance in modeling infiltration losses.

It is critical to note that water should sheet flow across the ecology embankment. Channelized flows or ditch flows running down the middle of the dual ecology embankment (i.e., continuous off-site inflow) should be minimized.

Applications and Limitations

In many instances, conventional runoff treatment is not feasible due to right-of-way constraints (adjoining wetlands, geotechnical considerations, etc.). The ecology embankment and the dual ecology embankment are runoff treatment options that can be sited in most right-of-way confined situations. In many cases, an ecology embankment or a dual ecology embankment can be sited without the acquisition of additional right-of-way needed for conventional stormwater facilities or capital-intensive expenditures for underground wet vaults.

Applications

Ecology Embankments

The ecology embankment can achieve basic, phosphorus, and enhanced water quality treatment. Since maintaining sheet flow across the ecology embankment is required for its proper function, the ideal locations for ecology embankments in highway settings are highway side slopes or other long, linear grades with lateral slopes less than 4H:1V, and longitudinal slopes no steeper than 5%. As slopes approach 3H:1V, without design modifications, sloughing may become a problem due to friction limitations between the separation geotextile and underlying soils. The longest flow path from the contributing area delivering sheet flow to the ecology embankment should not exceed 75 feet for impervious surfaces and 150 feet for pervious surfaces.

Dual Ecology Embankment for Highway Medians

The dual ecology embankment is fundamentally the same as the side-slope version. It differs in siting and is more constrained with regard to drainage options. Prime locations for dual ecology embankments in a highway setting are medians, roadside drainage or borrow ditches, or other linear depressions. It is especially critical for water to sheet flow across the dual ecology embankment. Channelized flows or ditch flows running down the middle of the dual ecology embankment (i.e., continuous off-site inflow) should be minimized.

Limitations

Ecology Embankments

- Steep slopes – Avoid construction on longitudinal slopes steeper than 5%. Avoid construction on 3H:1V lateral slopes, and preferably use less than 4H:1V slopes. In areas where lateral slopes exceed 4H:1V, it may be possible to construct terraces to create 4H:1V slopes, or to otherwise stabilize up to 3H:1V slopes. (For details, see *Geometry, Components* and *Sizing Criteria, Cross Section* in the Structural Design Considerations section below).
- Wetlands – Do not construct in wetlands and wetland buffers. In many cases, an ecology embankment (due to its small lateral footprint) can fit within the highway fill slopes adjacent to a wetland buffer. In those situations where the highway fill prism is located adjacent to wetlands, an interception trench/underdrain will need to be incorporated as a design element in the ecology embankment.
- Shallow groundwater – Mean high water table levels in the project area need to be determined to ensure that the ecology mix bed and the underdrain (if needed) will not become saturated by shallow groundwater.
- Unstable slopes – In areas where slope stability may be problematic, consult a geotechnical engineer.

Dual Ecology Embankments for Highway Medians

In addition to the limitations on the ecology embankment (above):

- Wetlands – Do not construct in wetlands and wetland buffers.
- Areas of seasonal groundwater inundations or basement flooding – The hydraulic and runoff treatment performance of the dual ecology embankment may be compromised due to backwater effects and lack of sufficient hydraulic gradient.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

The basic design concept behind the ecology embankment and dual ecology embankment is to fully filter all runoff through the ecology mix. Therefore, the infiltration capacity of the medium and drainage below needs to match or exceed the hydraulic loading rate.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Components

No-Vegetation Zone

The no-vegetation zone (i.e., vegetation-free zone) is a shallow gravel trench located directly adjacent to the highway pavement. The no-vegetation zone is a crucial element in a properly functioning ecology embankment or other BMPs that use sheet flow to convey runoff from the highway surface to the BMP. The no-vegetation zone functions as: a level spreader to promote sheet flow, a deposition area for coarse sediments, and an infiltration area to reduce runoff volumes. The no-vegetation zone should be between 1 foot and 3 feet wide. Depth will be a function of how the roadway section is built from subgrade to finish grade; the resultant cross section will typically be triangular to trapezoidal. Within these bounds, width varies depending on WSDOT maintenance spraying practices. Contact the area maintenance office for this information.

Vegetated Filter Strip

The width of the vegetated filter strip (see BMP RT.02) is dependent on the availability of space within the highway side slope. The baseline design criterion for the vegetated filter strip within the ecology embankment is a 3-foot-minimum-width, but wider vegetated filter strips are recommended if the additional space is available. In addition, use of compost amendments within the strips (see BMP RT.02) is recommended to maximize treatment efficiency.

Ecology Mix Bed

The ecology mix is a mixture of crushed rock (screened to 3/8" to #10 sieve), dolomite, gypsum, and perlite. The crushed rock provides the support matrix of the medium; the dolomite and gypsum add alkalinity and ion exchange capacity to promote the precipitation and exchange of heavy metals; and the perlite improves moisture retention to promote the formation of biomass within the ecology mix. The combination of physical filtering, precipitation, ion exchange, and biofiltration enhances the water treatment capacity of the mix. The ecology mix has an estimated initial filtration rate of 50 inches per hour and a long-term filtration rate of 28 inches per hour due to siltation. With an additional safety factor, the rate used to size the length of the ecology embankment should be 14 inches per hour.

Gravel Underdrain Trench

The gravel underdrain trench provides hydraulic conveyance when required, and should be evaluated for infiltration loss.

In Group C and D soils, a perforated 8" PVC pipe should be installed in the underdrain trench to ensure free flow of the treated runoff through the ecology mix bed. In some Group A and B soils, an underdrain pipe may be unnecessary if most water percolates into subsoil from the underdrain trench. The need for underdrain pipe should be evaluated in all cases, by modeling the underdrain as an infiltration trench (see BMP IN.03, Infiltration Trench). The designer should contact the WSDOT Hydraulics Office for assistance and/or guidance with this modeling.

The MGSFlood model has been enhanced (Version 3.0) to model the hydraulic response of gravel-filled trenches. Gravel-filled infiltration trenches have some advantages over other flow control facilities: they generally fit within existing highway rights-of-way; they tend to cut through several soil types, which improves the likelihood that they will encounter areas of high infiltration capacity; and they can maintain clear zone safety requirements without the installation of guardrails or fences.

The underdrain trench should be a minimum of 2 feet wide for either the conventional or dual ecology embankment. Widening or deepening the underdrain trench may provide additional infiltration and storage capacity. Void space may be used in the calculations to help reduce the size of downstream detention facilities, depending on conditions. The extent to which down-stream facilities can be reduced in size is subject to proper modeling, for which the designer should contact the WSDOT Hydraulics Office for assistance and/or guidance with this modeling.

Where pipe is required, there it should be 8-inch-diameter PVC perforated pipe, per the standard listed in Section 9-05.2(6) (Underdrain Pipe) of WSDOT Standard Specifications (2002). The perforation holes should be situated 30 to 45 circumference-degrees from the top and bottom of the pipe. The underdrain pipe can be elevated above the bottom of the underdrain trench to provide additional water storage.

If orifices are incorporated into the discharge riser design, the water storage capacity within the underdrain trench below the underdrain pipe can be used as live storage and can be subtracted from the volume of the detention pond used for flow control following the ecology embankment. However, the design must ensure that this does not cause backflows out of the transmission trench that impede free flow through the ecology mix bed. The gravel backfill for the under-drains should conform to Section 9-03.12(4) (Gravel Backfill) of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.

Sizing Criteria

Width

The width of the ecology embankment mix-bed is determined by the amount of contributing pavement routed to the embankment. The surface area of the ecology mix bed needs to be sufficiently large to fully infiltrate the runoff treatment design flow rate using the long-term filtration rate of the ecology mix. For design purposes, a 50% safety factor is incorporated into the long-term ecology mix filtration rate to accommodate variations in slope, resulting in a design filtration rate of 14 inches per hour. The ecology mix bed should have a bottom width of at least 2 feet in contact with the underdrain trench; i.e., the contact area should be no less than the underdrain width.

Length

In general, the length of an ecology embankment or dual ecology embankment is the same as the contributing pavement. Any length is acceptable as long as the surface area ecology mix bed is sufficient to fully infiltrate the runoff treatment design flow rate.

Cross Section

In profile, the surface of the ecology embankment should preferably have a lateral slope less than 4H:1V (<25%). On steeper terrain, it may be possible to construct terraces to create a 4H:1V slope, or other engineering may be employed if approved by Ecology, to ensure slope stability up to 3H:1V. If sloughing is a concern on steeper slopes, consideration should be given to incorporating permeable soil reinforcements, such as geotextiles, open-graded/permeable pavements, or commercially available ring and grid reinforcement structures, as top layer components to the ecology mix bed. Consultation with a geotechnical engineer is required. Ecology has approved one 3H:1V design (SR-202) where the ecology embankment is protected at the top by a guardrail, and stabilized at its base by a pervious rock wall. To accommodate additional storage, the underdrain trench can be over-excavated and filled with drainage gravel, and the perforated pipe elevated above the bottom of the trench. The void space within the drainage gravel (35% of total volume) can be used to reduce the live storage requirements for downstream flow control facilities. (See the *Gravel Underdrain* section above for required modeling details.)

Inflow

Runoff is always conveyed to an ecology embankment using sheet flow from the pavement area (separated by the no-vegetation zone/gravel diaphragm). The side slopes can be designed using the criteria and design methodology in BMP RT.02 (Vegetated Filter Strip). If not enough lateral space is available for a full-sized vegetated filter strip, a partial strip can provide some pretreatment to enhance the runoff treatment function of the ecology embankment. This partial strip is acceptable since the ecology mix is designed to provide full runoff treatment for both suspended solids and dissolved metals; although reducing the width of the vegetated filter strip may shorten the life of the ecology mix by siltation.

Ecology Mix Bed Sizing Procedure

The ecology mix should be a minimum of 12 inches deep, including the section on top of the underdrain trench.

For runoff treatment, sizing the ecology mix bed is based on the requirement that the runoff treatment flow rate from the pavement area $Q_{Highway}$ cannot exceed the long-term infiltration capacity of the Ecology Embankment, $Q_{Infiltration}$:

$$Q_{Highway} \leq Q_{Infiltration}$$

For western Washington, $Q_{Highway}$ is the flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume for the developed TDA will be treated, based on a 15-minute time step (see Section 4-3.1.1), and can be determined using the water quality data feature in MGSFlood. For eastern Washington, $Q_{Highway}$ is the peak flow rate predicted for the 6-month, short duration storm under post-developed conditions for each TDA (see Appendix 4C), and can be determined by selecting the short duration storm option in StormSHED.

The long-term infiltration capacity of the Ecology Embankment is based on the following equation:

$$\frac{LTIR_{EM} * L_{EE} * W_{EE}}{C * SF} = Q_{Infiltration}$$

where:

- $LTIR_{EM}$ = Long-term infiltration rate of the Ecology mix (use 14 inches per hour for design) (in/hr)
- L_{EE} = Length of Ecology Embankment (parallel to roadway) (ft)
- W_{EE} = Width of the Ecology Embankment ecology mix bed (ft)
- C = Conversion factor of 43200 ((in/hr)/(ft/sec))
- SF = Safety Factor (equal to 1.0, unless unusually heavy sediment loading is expected)

Assuming that the length of the Ecology Embankment is the same as the length of the contributing pavement, solve for the width of the Ecology Embankment:

$$W_{EE} \geq \frac{Q_{Highway} * C * SF}{LTIR_{EM} * L_{EE}} \qquad \textbf{(RT.07-1)}$$

Project applications of this design procedure have shown that, in almost every case, the calculated width of the Ecology Embankment does not exceed 1.0 foot. Therefore, Table RT.07.1 was developed to simplify the design steps and should be used to establish an appropriate width.

Table RT.07.1. Design widths for Ecology Embankments.

Pavement width that contributes runoff to the Ecology Embankment	Minimum Ecology Embankment width*
≤ 20 feet	2 feet
≥ 20 and ≤ 35 feet	3 feet
> 35 feet	4 feet

* Width does not include the required 1–3 foot gravel vegetation-free zone or the 3-foot filter strip width. (See Figure RT.07.1.)

Materials

Gravel Backfill

Gravel backfill for pipe bedding should conform to Section 9-03.12(3) of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.

Ecology Mix

The ecology mix used in the construction of ecology embankments consists of the amendments listed in Table RT.07.2. Mixing and transportation must be done in a manner that ensures the materials are thoroughly mixed prior to pouring into the ground, and that separation does not occur during transportation or pouring.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

Ecology Embankment and Dual Ecology Embankment

Longitudinal slopes should be no steeper than 5%. Lateral slopes should be no steeper than 3H:1V, and preferably less than 4H:1V, to prevent sloughing. If the lateral slopes of the highway are steeper than 4H:1V, but not greater than 3H:1V, the ecology embankment could be sited on a constructed terrace that meets lateral slope requirements, or under certain conditions, engineered for stability. (For details, see *Geometry, Components,* and *Sizing Criteria, Cross Section* under Structural Design Considerations above.)

Table RT.07.2. Ecology mix.

Amendment	Quantity
Mineral aggregate Crushed screenings 3/8-inch to #10 sieve Crushed screenings shall be manufactured from ledge rock, talus, or gravel, in accordance with Section 3-01 of the *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (2002), which meets the following test requirements: Los Angeles Wear, 500 Revolutions 35% max. Degradation Factor 30 min. Crushed screenings shall conform to the following requirements for grading and quality: Sieve Size Percent Passing (by weight) 1/2" square 100 3/8" square 90-100 U.S. No. 4 30-56 U.S. No. 10 0-10 U.S. No. 200 0-1.5 % fracture, by weight, min. 75 Static stripping test Pass The fracture requirement shall be at least one fractured face and will apply to material retained on the U.S. No. 10 if that sieve retains more than 5% of the total sample. The finished product shall be clean, uniform in quality, and free from wood, bark, roots, and other deleterious materials. Crushed screenings shall be substantially free from adherent coatings. The presence of a thin, firmly adhering film of weathered rock shall not be considered as coating unless it exists on more than 50% of the surface area of any size between successive laboratory sieves.	3 cubic yards
Perlite (Horticultural grade, free of any toxic materials): >70% larger than 18 mesh <10% smaller than 120 mesh	1 cubic yard per 3 cubic yards of mineral aggregate
Dolomite: $CaMg(CO_3)_2$ (calcium magnesium carbonate) #0, gradation #16 sieve	10 pounds per cubic yard of perlite
Gypsum:Non-calcined, agricultural gypsum $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$ (hydrated calcium sulfate) #0, gradation #8 to #16 sieve	1.5 pounds per cubic yard of perlite

Site Design Elements

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

Landscaping is the same as for biofiltration swales (see BMP RT.04), unless otherwise specified in the special provisions for the project's construction documents.

Operations and Maintenance

Maintenance will consist of routine roadside management. While herbicides will not be applied directly over the ecology embankment, it may be necessary to periodically control noxious weeds with herbicides in areas around the ecology embankment as part of WSDOT's roadside management program. The use of pesticides is prohibited if the ecology embankment is in a critical aquifer recharge area for drinking water supplies. Areas of the ecology embankment that show signs of physical damage will be replaced by local maintenance staff in consultation with regional hydraulics/water quality staff.

Signing

Nonreflective guideposts will delineate the ecology embankment. This practice allows WSDOT personnel to identify where the system is installed and to make appropriate repairs should damage occur to the system. If the ecology embankment is in a critical aquifer recharge area for drinking water supplies, signage prohibiting the use of pesticides must be provided.

5-4.1.4 Wet Pool BMPs

RT.12, Wet Pond

Dual-Celled Wet Pond Along I-5 in Clark County.

Introduction

General Description

A *wet pond* is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water (wet pool), at least during the wet season. The volume of the wet pool is related to the effectiveness of the pond in settling particulate pollutants. As an option, a shallow marsh area can be created within the permanent pool volume to provide additional treatment for nutrient removal. Peak flow control can be provided in the live storage area above the permanent pool. Figures RT.12.1 and RT.12.2 illustrate a typical wet pond BMP.

Applications and Limitations

A wet pond BMP must be an on-line facility receiving runoff from only new impervious areas or equivalent areas. If a decision has been made to treat runoff from existing impervious surfaces per the retrofit instructions in Chapter 3, then the wet pond BMP would be an on-line facility receiving runoff from the new plus existing impervious areas or equivalent areas.

Wet ponds can be designed in two sizes: basic and large (see Table 3-1). Basic wet ponds are approved basic runoff treatment BMPs. Large wet ponds are designed for higher levels of pollutant removal and are an appropriate treatment BMP for phosphorus control.

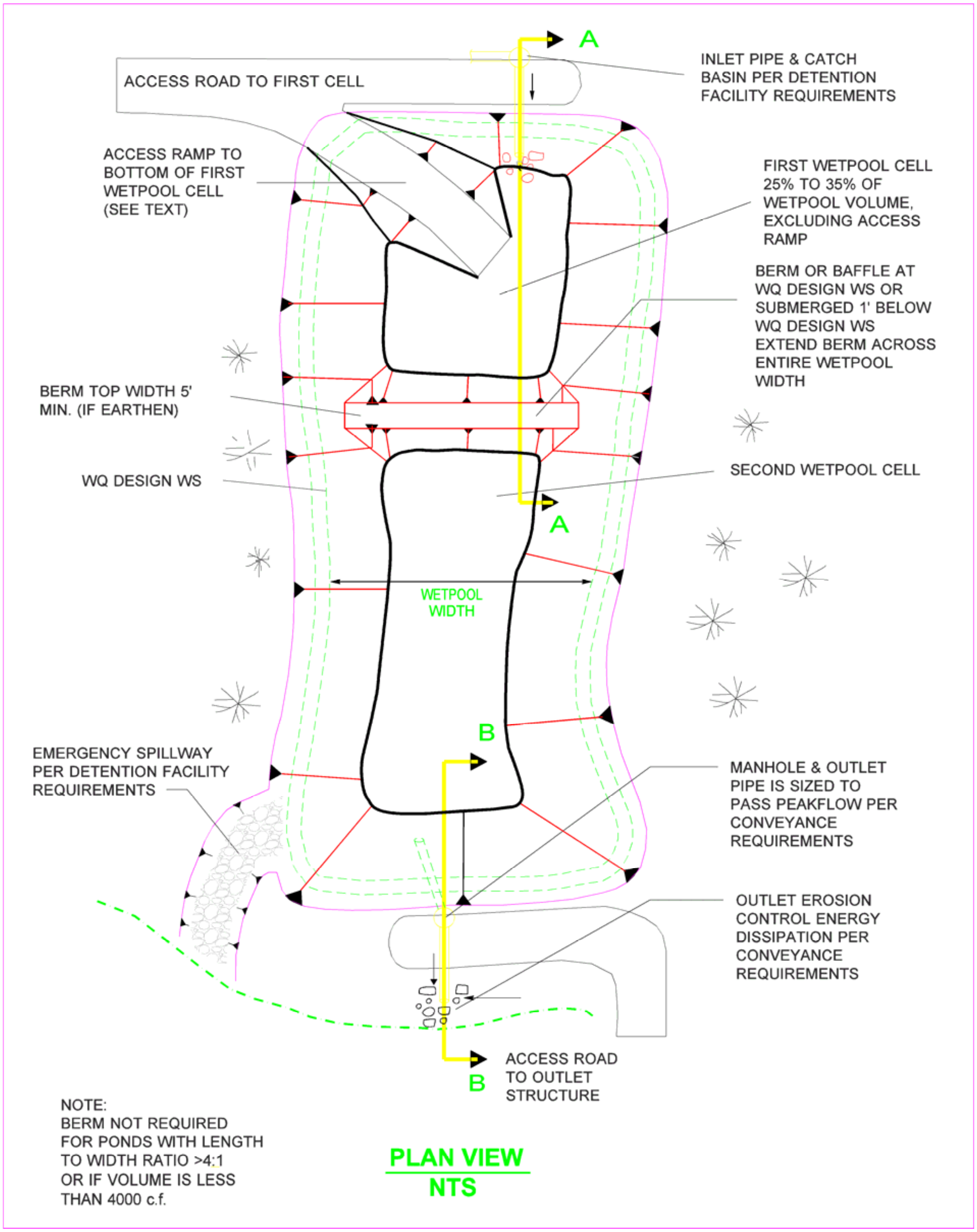
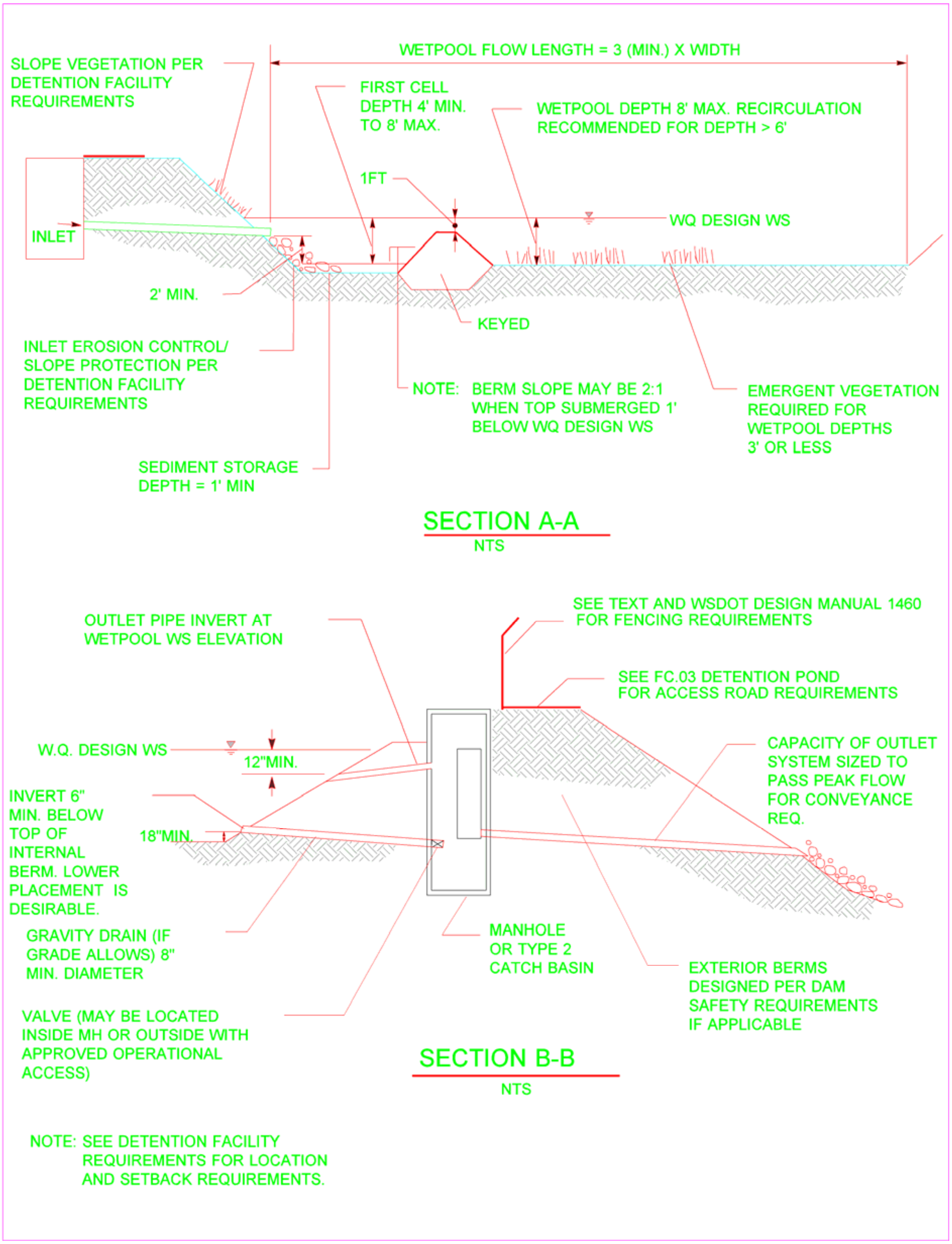


Figure RT.12.1. Wet pond: plan view.



HEC Dwg.File: $(getvar,dwgname) Layout: $(getvar,ctab) Last Edited: $(edtime,$(getvar,tdupdate),yyyy/mon/d hh:mm)HEC Location: $(getvar,dwgprefix)

Figure RT.12.2. Wet pond: cross section.

Refer to BMP CO.01 (Combined Wet/Detention Pond) if the pond is to be used for flow control in addition to runoff treatment.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Basic wet ponds are designed to treat the runoff treatment volume described in Section 3-3.5 under Minimum Requirement 5. Large wet ponds are designed to treat a volume 1.5 times greater than the runoff treatment volume. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

Overflow or Bypass

The overflow criteria for single-purpose (treatment only, not combined with flow control) wet ponds are as follows:

- An open top standpipe riser in the control structure satisfies the requirement for primary overflow design (see Figure RT.12.2).
- The top of the riser should be set at an elevation above the water quality design water surface elevation.
- The primary overflow should be sized to pass the 100-year flow.

Emergency Overflow Spillway

An emergency spillway or structure must be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03). The bottom of the emergency overflow spillway must be set at the overflow water surface elevation (see Figure RT.12.2).

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Design Criteria

- The wet pond is divided into a minimum of two cells separated by a baffle or berm. The first cell must contain between 25% and 35% of the total wet pond volume. The baffle or berm volume does not count as part of the total wet pond volume. The term baffle means a vertical divider placed across the entire width of the pond, stopping short of the bottom. A berm is a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom (in a wet vault, it connects all the way to the bottom).

  Intent: The full-length berm or baffle promotes plug flow and enhances quiescence and laminar flow through as much of the entire water volume as possible. Alternative methods to the full-length berm or baffle that provide equivalent flow characteristics may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the local jurisdiction.

- Sediment storage is provided in the first cell. The minimum depth of the sediment storage must be 1 foot. A fixed sediment depth monitor should be installed in the first cell to gage sediment accumulation or an alternative gaging method should be used.
- The minimum depth of the first cell must be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell.
- The maximum depth of each cell must not exceed 8 feet (exclusive of sediment storage in the first cell). Pool depths of 3 feet or shallower (second cell) must be planted with emergent wetland vegetation (see *Landscaping* requirements later in this section).
- Inlets and outlets must be placed to maximize the flow path through the facility. The ratio of flow path length to width from the inlet to the outlet must be at least 3:1. The *flow path length* is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The *width* at mid-depth is calculated as follows: width = (average top width + average bottom width)/2.
- Wet ponds with wet pool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be single-celled (i.e., no baffle or berm is required). However, it is especially important that the flow path length be maximized in single-celled wet ponds. The ratio of flow path length to width must be at least 4:1 in single-celled wet ponds, and preferably 5:1.
- All inlets must enter the first cell. If there are multiple inlets, the length-to-width ratio is based on the average flow path length for all inlets.
- The first cell may be lined in accordance with the liner requirements contained in Section 5-4.3.2.

Sizing Procedure

Design Steps (D)

D-1 Identify the required wet pool volume (Vol_{wq}). For options to determine this volume using continuous runoff models, see Chapter 4. For large wet ponds, the wet pool volume is 1.5 times the water quality volume.

D-2 Estimate wet pool dimensions satisfying the following design criterion:

$$Vol_{wq} = [h_1(A_{t1} + A_{b1}) / 2] + [h_2(A_{t2} + A_{b2}) / 2] + \ldots\ldots + [h_n(A_{tn} + A_{bn}) / 2]$$

where: A_{tn} = top area of wet pool surface in cell n (ft^2)

A_{bn} = bottom area of wet pool surface in cell n (ft^2)

h_n = depth of wet pool in cell n (above top of sediment storage) (ft)

D-3 Design pond outlet pipe and determine primary overflow water surface. (See the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* for design of pond outlet pipe and method to determine primary overflow water surface.)

Inlet and Outlet

For details on the following requirements, see Figures RT.12.1 and RT.12.2:

- The inlet to the wet pond must be submerged, with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 2 feet from the pond bottom (not including the 1-foot-minimum sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1 foot below the runoff treatment design water surface, if possible.

  Intent: The inlet is submerged to dissipate the energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is set to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

- An outlet structure must be provided. Either a Type 2 catch basin (WSDOT Standard Plan B-3) or a manhole with a cone grate (birdcage) may be used. No sump is required in the outlet structure for wet ponds not providing detention storage. The outlet structure receives flow from the pond outlet pipe. The birdcage opening provides an overflow route should the pond outlet pipe become clogged.

- The pond outlet pipe (from the pond into the outlet structure) must be back-sloped, or have a turn-down elbow, and extend 1 foot below the runoff treatment design water surface. A floating outlet, set to draw water from 1 foot below the water surface, is also acceptable if vandalism concerns are adequately addressed.

  Intent: The inverted outlet pipe traps oils and floatables in the wet pond.

- The pond outlet pipe must be sized, at a minimum, to pass the runoff treatment design flow. (Note that the highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the runoff treatment design water surface elevation.)

Materials

- All metal parts must be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials should not be used unless unavoidable.

  Intent: Galvanized metal contributes zinc to stormwater, sometimes in very high concentrations.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- A berm or baffle must extend across the full width of the wet pool and tie into the wet pond side slopes. If the berm embankments are greater than 4 feet high, the berm must be constructed by excavating a key trench equal to 50% of the embankment cross-sectional height and width. A geotechnical engineer may waive this requirement for specific site conditions. A geotechnical analysis must address situations in which one of the two cells is empty while the other remains full of water.

- The top of the berm may be at the runoff treatment design water surface or submerged 1 foot below this surface. If the top of the berm is at the runoff treatment design water surface, berm side slopes should be 3H:1V. Berm side slopes may be steeper (up to 2H:1V) if the berm is submerged 1 foot. Earthen berms should have a minimum top width of 5 feet.

  Intent: Submerging the berm is intended to enhance safety by discouraging pedestrian access when side slopes are steeper than 3H:1V. An alternative to the submerged berm design is the use of barrier planting to prevent easy access to the divider berm in an unfenced wet pond.

- If good vegetation cover is not established on the berm, erosion control measures should be used to prevent erosion of the berm backslope when the pond is initially filled.

- The interior berm or baffle may be a retaining wall, provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. If a baffle or retaining wall is used, it should be submerged 1 foot below the design water surface to discourage access by pedestrians.

- Criteria for wet pond side slopes are as follows:

  - Interior side slopes must be no steeper than 3H:1V. Steeper side slopes reduce the pond area where emergent vegetation can grow. Flatter side slopes promote dense emergent vegetation, which also can create problems: (1) it provides predator-free shoreline habitats for mosquito production, and (2) it reduces or eliminates access to the pond for routine inspections and maintenance.

  - Exterior side slopes must be no steeper than 2H:1V.

  - Slopes should be no steeper than 4H:1V if they are to be mowed.

  - Pond sides may be retaining walls, provided that a fence is situated along the top of the wall and at least 25% of the pond perimeter is a vegetated side slope no steeper than 3H:1V.

  - The toe of the exterior slope must be no closer than 5 feet from the right-of-way line.

Embankments

- Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington dam safety regulations (WAC 173-175). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet, or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by Ecology. (See discussion in BMP FC.03, Detention Pond.)
- The berm embankment must be constructed in accordance with Section 2-03.3(14)C Method C of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.
- The berm embankment must be constructed of material consisting of a minimum of 30% clay, a maximum of 60% sand, a maximum of 60% silt, and negligible gravel and cobble.
- To prevent undermining, installation of a perimeter cutoff trench underneath or near embankments should be considered.
- Antiseepage collars must be placed on outflow pipes in berm embankments impounding water deeper than 8 feet at the runoff treatment design water surface. Antiseepage collars may also be necessary in other situations.

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

- Wet ponds must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line or vegetative buffer. This distance may need to be increased based on permit requirements of the local jurisdiction.
- Wet ponds must be 100 feet from any septic tank or drain field (except wet vaults must be a minimum of 20 feet).
- The designer should request from the WSDOT Materials Laboratory a geotechnical report for the project that evaluates any potential structural site instability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps. The report should address the adequacy of the proposed wet pond locations and recommend the necessary setbacks from any steep slopes and building foundations.

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

Planting requirements for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03) also apply to wet ponds.

- The cells in large wet ponds intended for phosphorus control should not be planted because the plants release phosphorus in the winter when they die off.

- If the second cell of a basic wet pond is 3 feet or shallower, the bottom area must be planted with emergent wetland vegetation. This results in habitat for natural predators of mosquitoes such as dragonflies, birds, fish, and frogs. (See Table RT.12.1 for recommended emergent wetland plant species for wet ponds.)

  Intent: Planting of shallow pond areas helps to stabilize settled sediment and prevent resuspension.

- Cattails (*Typha latifolia*) are not recommended because they tend to crowd out other species in the wet pond and typically escape to other wetland areas where they do the same. They also create dense emergent vegetation that can provide a safe haven for mosquito larvae.
- Vegetation that forms floating mats should not be planted because the mats protect mosquito larvae.
- A variety of plant species should be planted to facilitate a diversity of mosquito predators. This variety can also make the overall predator population more robust to withstand environmental changes to the facility.
- If the wet pond discharges to a phosphorus-sensitive lake or wetland, shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the runoff treatment design water surface on at least three sides. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements. The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading. Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (*Acer circinatum*), wild cherry (*Prunus emarginata*), red osier dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*), California myrtle (*Myrica californica*), Indian plum (*Oemleria cerasiformis*), and Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia*).

Fencing

Pond walls may be retaining walls as long as a fence is provided along the top of the wall and at least 25% of the pond perimeter will have a slope of 3H:1V or flatter. (See Section 1460.03(4) of the *Design Manual* for additional fencing requirements.)

General Maintenance Requirements

- For general maintenance requirements for wet ponds, see Section 5-3.7.1.

Table RT.12.1. Emergent wetland plant species recommended for wet ponds.

Species	Common Name	Notes	Maximum Depth
Inundation to 1 Foot			
Agrostis exarata[(1)]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	to 2 feet
Carex stipata	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	to 2 feet
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	to 2 feet
Juncus tenuis	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
Oenanthe sarmentosa	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and pond margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
Scirpus atrocinctus (formerly *S. cyperinus*)	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sagittaria latifolia	Arrowhead		
Inundation 1 to 2 Feet			
Agrostis exarata[(1)]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
Alisma plantago-aquatica	Water plantain		
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	
Juncus effusus	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sparganium emersum	Bur-reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
Inundation 1 to 3 Feet			
Carex obnupta	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
Beckmania syzigachne[(1)]	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to pond margins	
Scirpus acutus[(2)]	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	to 3 feet
Scirpus validus[(2)]	Softstem bulrush		
Inundation Greater Than 3 Feet			
Nuphar polysepalum	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
Nymphaea odorata[(1)]	White waterlily	Shallow to deep ponds	to 6 feet

Primary sources: Metro 1990; Hortus Northwest 1991; Hitchcock and Cronquist 1973.

(1) Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

(2) *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

Note: The recommendations in Table RT.12.1 are for western Washington only. Consult with a landscape architect to adapt this information for eastern Washington.

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into the wet pond design where site conditions allow:

- For wet pool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of recirculation be provided in the summer. A fountain or aerator may be used to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions. Alternatively, a small amount of base flow could be directed to the pond to maintain circulation and reduce the potential for low oxygen conditions during late summer.
- Conifer or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs may be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety. In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the pond.

  Intent: Conifer trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.
- The number of inlets to the facility should be limited; ideally, there should be only one inlet. Regardless of the number of inlets, the flow path length between inlet and outlet should be maximized.
- The access and maintenance road could be extended along the full length of the wet pond to function as a vegetated filter strip (see BMP RT.02), if finely ground bark, wood chips, or permeable surfacing is placed over the road surface to reduce runoff.

The following design features should be incorporated where possible to enhance aesthetics:

- Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3H:1V or flatter). Gentler slopes typically allow a facility to better blend into its surroundings.
- Use sinuous or irregularly shaped ponds to create a more naturalistic landscape.
- Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. On most pond sites, it is important to amend the soil before planting because ponds are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
- Orient the pond length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.

Construction Criteria

- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond must be removed after construction in the drainage area of the pond is complete (unless used for a liner; see below).
- Sediment accumulations in the pond at the end of construction may be used as a liner in excessively drained wet pond soils if the sediment meets the criteria for low-permeability or treatment liners (see Section 5-4.3.2). Sediment used for a soil liner must be graded to provide uniform coverage and thickness. (Note that sediment accumulated from construction and left in the pond for a liner must not reduce the volume of the wet pond below its design capacity; therefore, the pond should be overexcavated initially.)

CO.01, Combined Wet/Detention Pond

Combination Wet/Detention Pond Along SR 500 in Clark County.

Introduction

General Description

A *combined detention and runoff treatment wet pond* facility has the appearance of a detention facility, but contains a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone runoff treatment facility when combined with detention storage.

There are two sizes of the combined wet pond: basic and large. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the pollutant-removal goals.

Applications and Limitations

Combined detention and runoff treatment facilities are very efficient for sites that also have flow control requirements but that are not conducive to dispersion or infiltration. The runoff treatment BMP may often be placed beneath detention storage without increasing the overall facility surface area. However, the fluctuating water surface of the live storage creates unique challenges for plant growth and for aesthetics.

The basis for pollutant removal in combined facilities is the same as that for stand-alone runoff treatment facilities. However, in the combined facility, the detention function creates fluctuating water levels and added turbulence. For simplicity, the positive effect of the extra live storage volume and the negative effect of increased turbulence are assumed to balance and are thus ignored when the wet pool volume is sized. For the combined detention/stormwater wetland (see BMP CO.02), criteria that limit the extent of water level fluctuation are specified to better ensure survival of the wetland plants.

Unlike the wet pool volume, the live storage component of the facility must be provided above the seasonal high water table.

Typical design details and concepts for a combined detention and wet pond are shown in Figures CO.01.1 and CO.01.2. The detention portion of the facility must meet the design criteria and sizing procedures set forth in BMP FC.03, Detention Pond.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Basic combined wet/detention ponds are designed to treat the runoff treatment volume and detain flows according to the criteria described in Sections 3-3.5 and 3-3.6 under Minimum Requirements 5 and 6, respectively. Large combined wet/detention ponds are designed to treat 1.5 times the runoff treatment volume. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

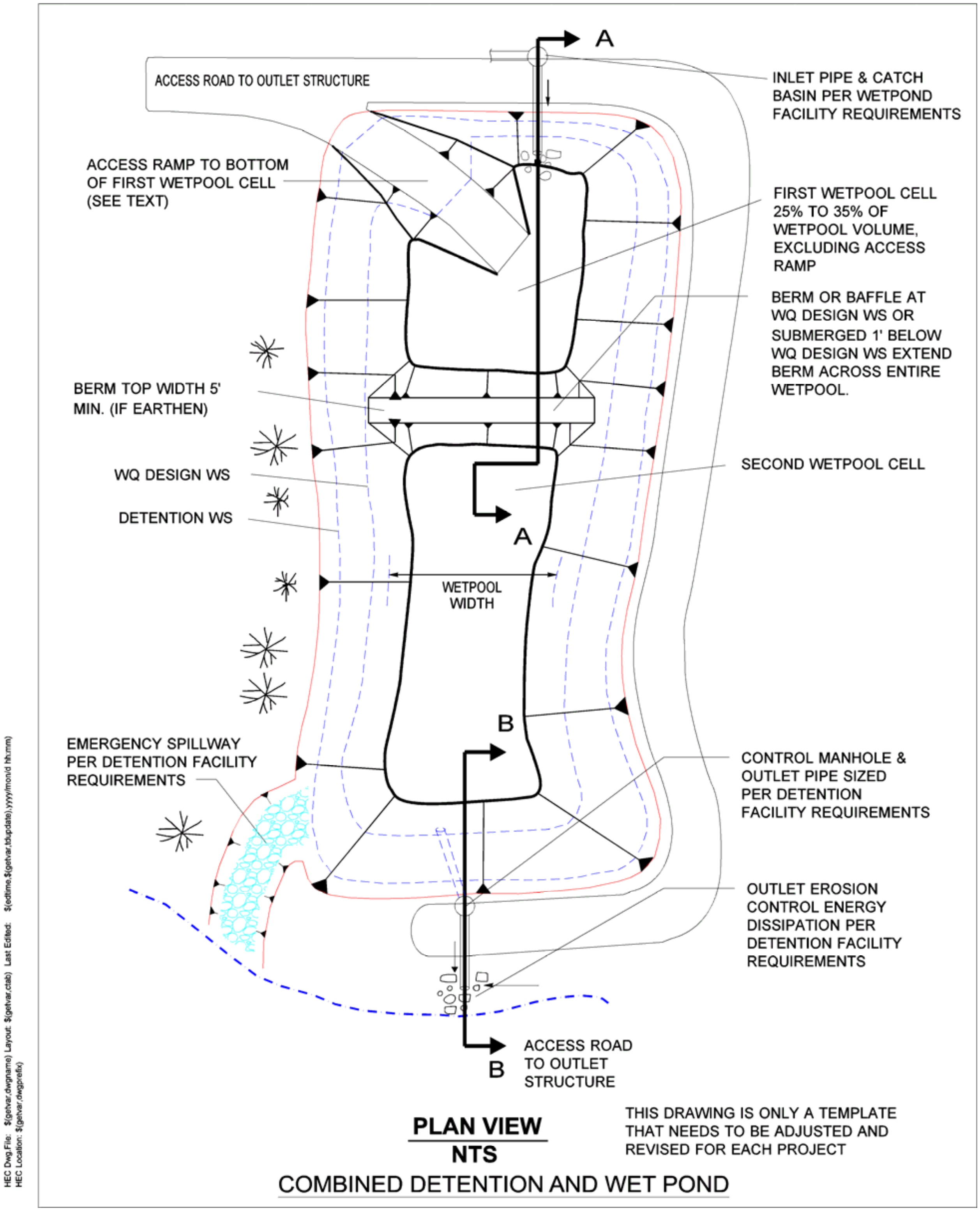


Figure CO.01.1. Combined detention and wet pond: plan view.

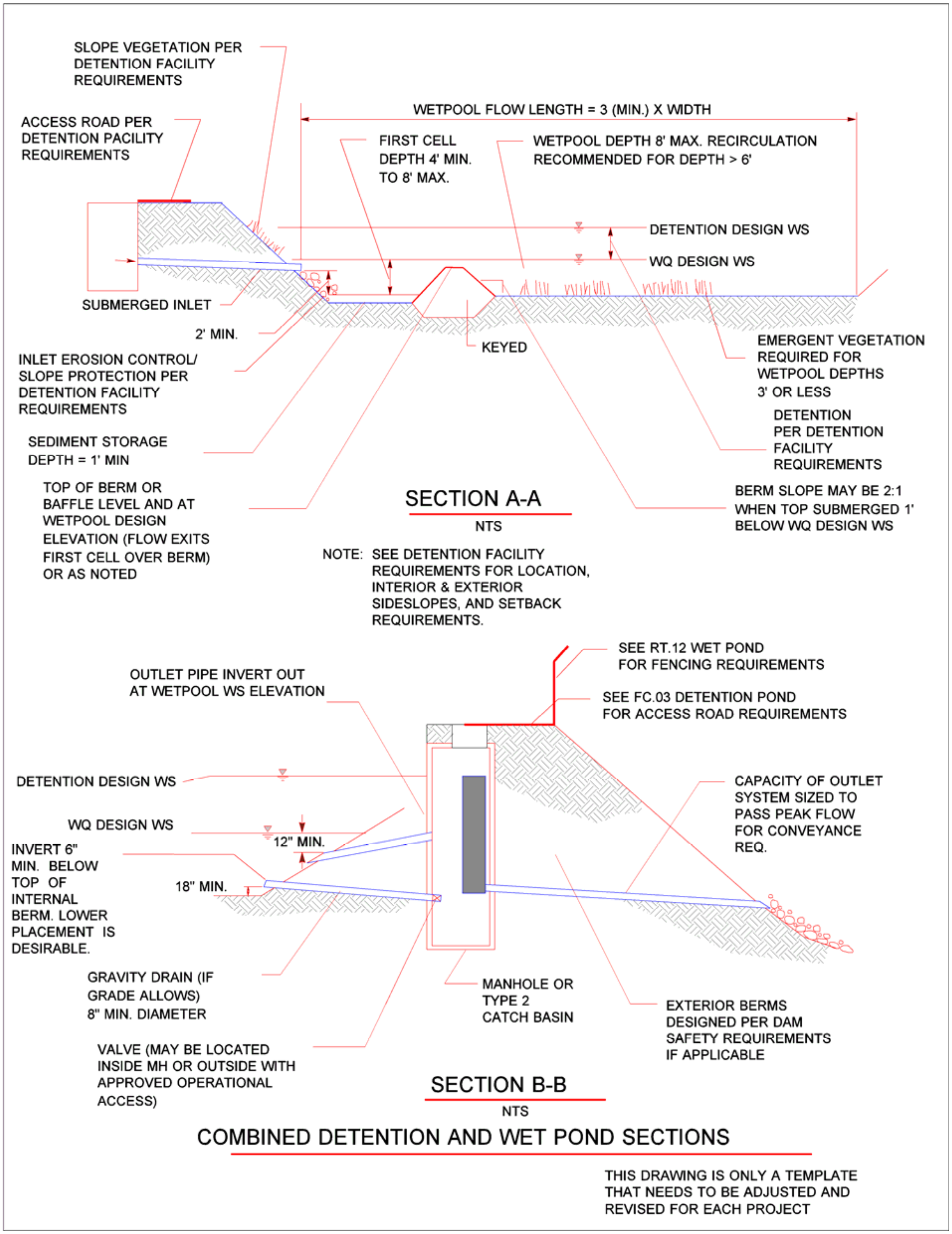


Figure CO.01.2. Combined detention and wet pond: cross sections.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

The geometry criteria for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12) apply, with the following modifications and clarifications:

- The permanent pool may be made shallower to take up most of the pond bottom, or it may be deeper and positioned to take up only a limited portion of the bottom. Wet pond criteria governing water depth, however, must still be met. (See Figure CO.01.3 for two possibilities for wet pool cell placement.)

  Intent: This flexibility in positioning cells allows for multiple-use options in live storage areas during the drier months.

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1 foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with the detention sediment storage requirement.
- The wet pool and sediment storage volumes are not included in the required detention volume.

Sizing Procedure

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wet ponds is identical to that outlined for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12) and detention ponds (see BMP FC.03).

Inlet and Outlet

The inlet and outlet criteria for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12) apply, with the following modifications:

- A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined ponds.
- The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe must be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03).

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

Criteria are the same as for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12).

Groundwater Issues

Live storage requirements are the same as for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03). This does not apply to the wet pond dead storage component.

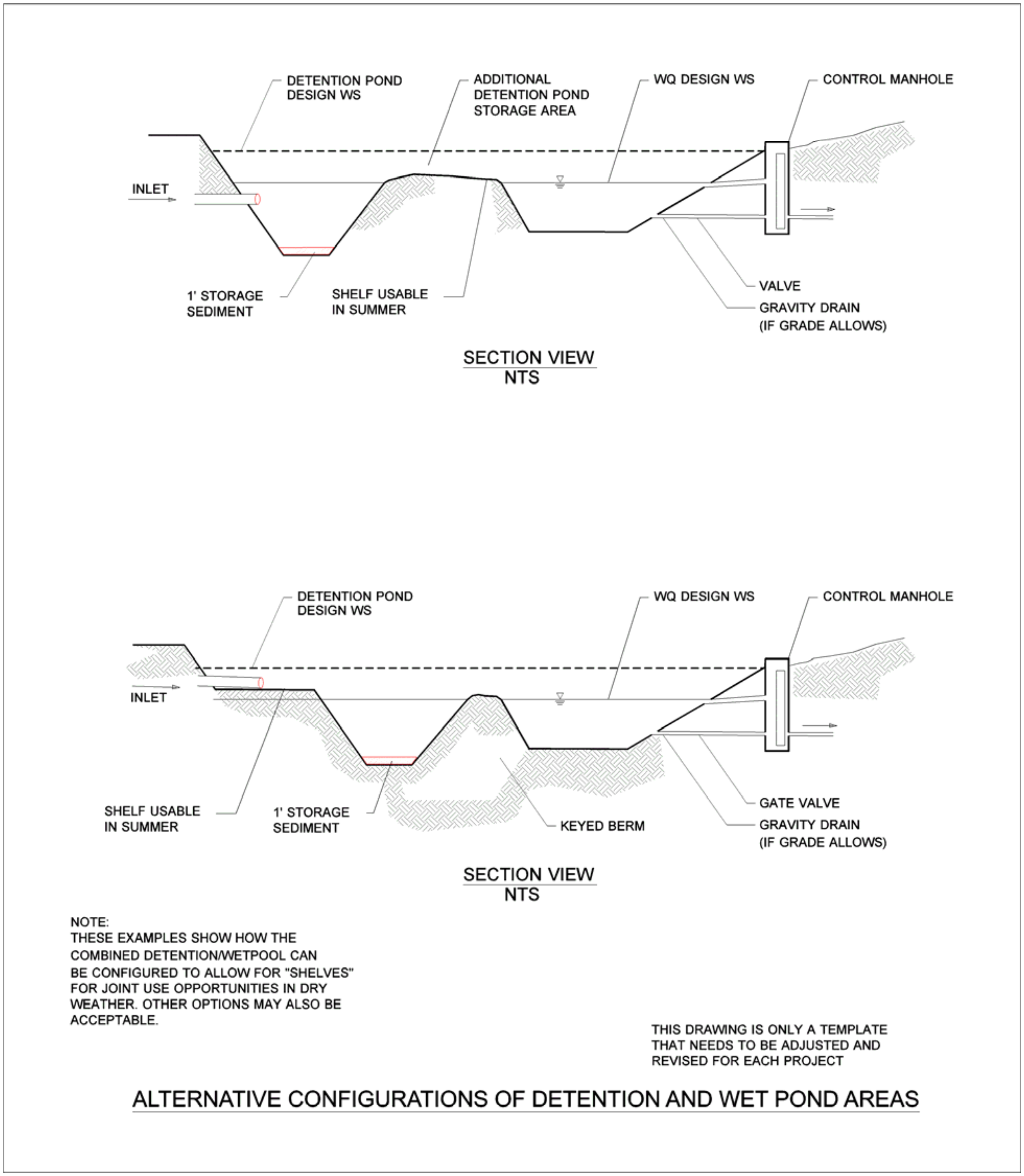


Figure CO.01.3. Alternative configurations of detention and wet pond areas.

Site Design Elements

General Maintenance Requirements and Setbacks

Criteria are the same as for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12).

Planting Requirements

Criteria are the same as for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12).

RT.13, Constructed Stormwater Treatment Wetland

Constructed Wetland Near the South Renton Park & Ride Facility.

Introduction

General Description

Stormwater treatment wetlands are shallow manmade wetlands that are designed to treat stormwater through settling, filtering, and the biological processes associated with emergent aquatic plants. Stormwater treatment wetlands, like wet ponds, are used to capture and transform pollutants and, over time, pollutants concentrate in the sediment.

Instead of being constructed to treat stormwater runoff, some wetlands are constructed to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands). Natural wetlands and mitigation wetlands cannot be used to treat stormwater.

Applications and Limitations

As an enhanced treatment BMP, stormwater wetlands can be considered for roadways where metal removal is a concern. Stormwater wetlands occupy roughly the same surface area as wet ponds, but have the potential to be better integrated aesthetically into a site because of the abundance of emergent aquatic vegetation. The most critical factor for a successful design is an adequate supply of water for most of the year. Careful planning is needed to ensure that sufficient water is retained to sustain good wetland plant growth. Because water depths in stormwater wetlands are shallower than in wet ponds, water loss by evaporation is an important concern. Stormwater wetlands are a good runoff treatment facility choice in areas where groundwater levels are high in the winter.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Constructed stormwater treatment wetlands are designed to treat the runoff treatment volume (Vol_{WQ}) described in Section 3-3.5 under Minimum Requirement 5. Hydrologic methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

Overflow or Bypass

The overflow criteria for single-purpose wetlands (treatment only, not combined with flow control) follow the same criteria for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12).

Emergency Overflow Spillway

- An emergency spillway must be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03). In addition, a bypass or shutoff valve to enable the wetland to be taken off-line for maintenance purposes should be provided, if possible.
- Bioengineered stabilization measures should be provided at the end of the outlet pipe and spillway to minimize the need for riprap and to increase aesthetics.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Design Criteria

1. Stormwater wetlands must consist of a minimum of two cells: a forebay (presettling cell) and a wetland cell (or cells). The shape of the two cells should be irregular, not rectangular.
2. The forebay must contain approximately 25% to 35% of the wet pool volume.
3. The depth of the forebay must be between 4 feet (minimum) and 8 feet (maximum), excluding sediment storage.

4. The forebay must provide 1 foot of sediment storage.

5. The wetland cell must have an average water depth of about 1.5 feet (plus or minus 3 inches).

Sizing Procedure

Step 1 Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland. The surface area of the wetland cell must be the same as the top area of a wet pond sized for the same site conditions. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland by using the runoff treatment volume and dividing by the wetpool water depth (use 3 feet).

Step 2 Determine the surface area of the presettling cell of the stormwater wetland. Use the volume determined from criterion 2 under *Design Criteria* above, and the actual depth of the presettling cell.

Step 3 Determine the surface area of the wetland cell. Subtract the surface area of the first cell (Step 2) from the total surface area (Step 1).

Step 4 Determine water depth distribution in the second cell. Decide whether the top of the dividing berm is at the surface or submerged (designer's choice). Adjust the distribution of water depths in the second cell according to the discussion below. (Note that this results in a facility that holds less volume than the runoff treatment volume, which is acceptable.)

Intent: The surface area of the stormwater wetland is set to be roughly equivalent to that of a wet pond (with an average depth of the wetland cell of 1.5 feet) designed for the same site so as not to discourage use of this option.

Two examples for grading the bottom of the wetland cell are shown in Figure RT.13.1. One example is a shallow, evenly graded slope from the upstream to the downstream edge of the wetland cell. The second example is a naturalistic alternative, with the specified range of depths intermixed throughout the second cell. A distribution of depths must be provided in the wetland cell depending on whether the dividing berm is at the water surface or submerged (see Table RT.13.1). The maximum depth is 2.5 feet in either configuration. Other configurations within the wetland geometry constraints listed above may be approved by the local jurisdiction.

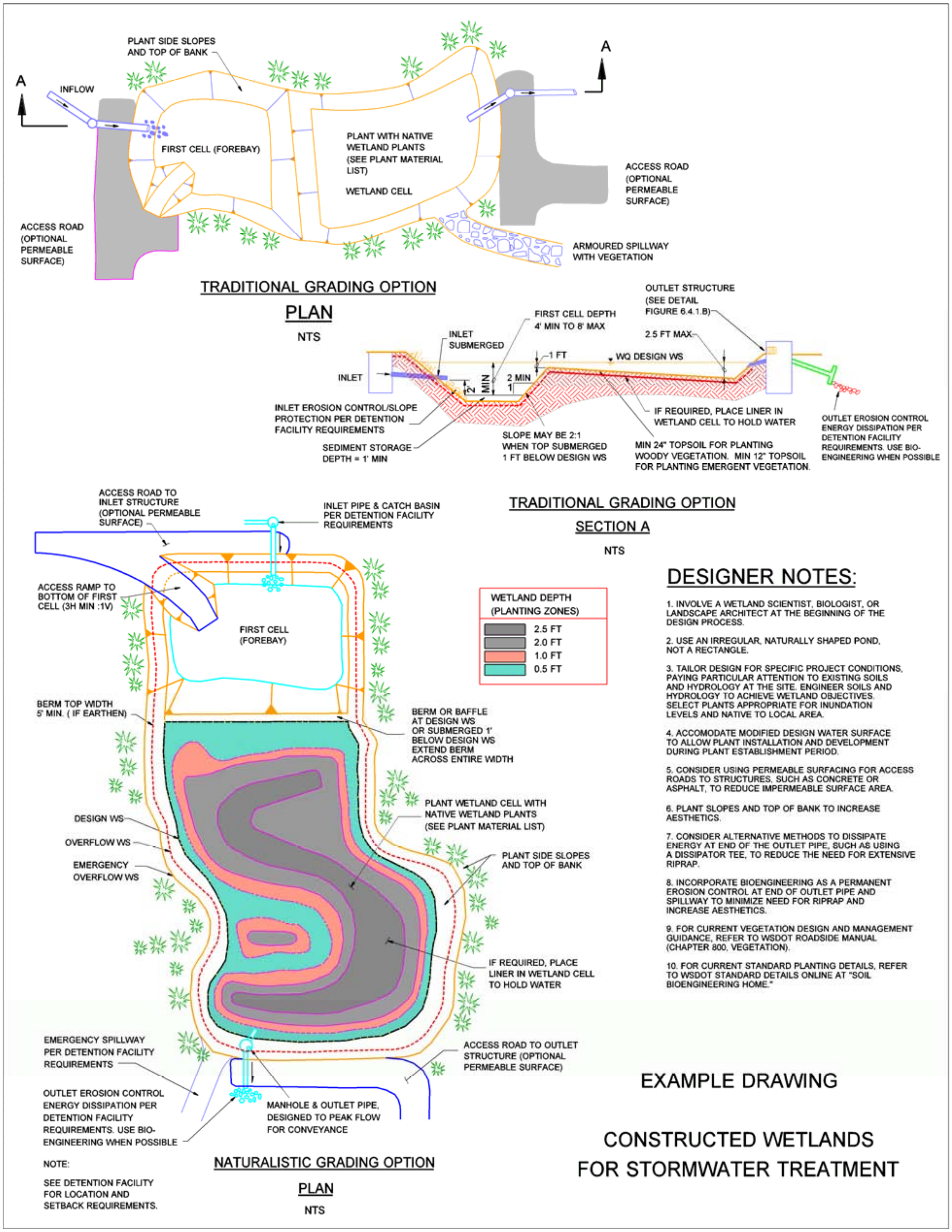


Figure RT.13.1. Constructed wetlands for stormwater treatment.

Table RT.13.1. Distribution of depths in wetland cell.

Dividing Berm at Runoff Treatment Design Water Surface		Dividing Berm Submerged 1 Foot	
Depth Range (feet)	**Percent**	**Depth Range (feet)**	**Percent**
0.1 to 1	25	1 to 1.5	40
1 to 2	55	1.5 to 2	40
2 to 2.5	20	2 to 2.5	20

Inlet

The inlet to the presettling cell of the wetland must be submerged, with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 2 feet from the wetland bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1 foot, if possible.

Intent: The inlet is submerged to dissipate the energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is set to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

Outlet

An outlet structure must be provided. Either a Type 2 catch basin (WSDOT Standard Plan B-3) or a manhole with a cone grate (birdcage) may be used (see Figure FC.03.3 for an illustration). No sump is required in the outlet structure for wetlands not providing detention storage. The outlet structure receives flow from the wetland outlet pipe. The birdcage opening provides an overflow route should the wetland outlet pipe become clogged. The following overflow criteria specify the sizing and position of the grate opening:

- The wetland outlet pipe (from the wetland into the control structure) must be backsloped, or have a turn-down elbow, and extend 1 foot below the runoff treatment design water surface. A floating outlet, set to draw water from 1 foot below the water surface, is acceptable if vandalism concerns are adequately addressed.

  Intent: The inverted outlet pipe traps oils and floatables in the wetland.

- The wetland outlet pipe must be sized, at a minimum, to pass the runoff treatment design flow.

  Note: The highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the runoff treatment design water surface elevation.

- Alternative methods to dissipate energy at the end of the outlet pipe, such as a dissipater tee, should be considered to reduce the need for extensive riprap.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- The berm separating the two cells must be shaped so that its downstream side gradually slopes to form the second shallow wetland cell (see the section view on Figure RT.13.1). Alternatively, the second cell may be graded naturalistically from the top of the dividing berm (see *Sizing Procedure*, Step 4, above).
- The top of the berm must be either at the runoff treatment design water surface or submerged 1 foot below this surface, as for wet ponds. Correspondingly, the side slopes of the berm must meet the following criteria:
  - If the top of the berm is at the runoff treatment design water surface, then for safety reasons the berm should not be greater than 3H**:**1V, just as the wetland banks should not be greater than 3H**:**1V if the wetland is not fenced**.**
  - If the top of the berm is submerged 1 foot, the upstream side slope may be up to 2H**:**1V. If submerged, the berm is not considered accessible, and the steeper slope is allowable.

Liners

If soil permeability allows sufficient water retention, lining is not necessary. In infiltrative soils, both cells of the stormwater wetland must be lined. Two types of liner are acceptable: low-permeability liners and treatment liners. To determine whether a low-permeability liner or a treatment liner is required, see Section 5-4.3.2.

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

- Stormwater treatment wetlands must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line or vegetative buffer. This distance may need to be increased based on permit requirements of the local jurisdiction.
- Stormwater treatment wetlands must be 100 feet from any septic tank or drain field (except wet vaults, which must be a minimum of 20 feet).
- The designer should request from the WSDOT Materials Laboratory a geotechnical report for the project that evaluates any potential structural site instability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties (especially on hills with known side-hill seeps). The report should address the adequacy of the proposed stormwater treatment wetland locations and recommend the necessary setbacks from any steep slopes and building foundations.

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

When used for stormwater treatment, stormwater wetlands incorporate some of the same design features as wet ponds. However, instead of gravity settling being the dominant treatment process, pollutant removal mediated by aquatic vegetation (and the microbiological community associated with that vegetation) becomes the dominant treatment process. Thus, water volume is not the dominant design criterion for stormwater wetlands—rather, factors that affect plant vigor and biomass are the primary concerns. It is critical to involve a wetland scientist, biologist, or landscape architect throughout the design process.

The wetland cells must be planted with emergent wetland plants following the recommendations given in Table RT.13.2, and those of a wetland specialist, biologist, or landscape architect. Plants listed in the table are for western Washington only. Local knowledge should be used to adapt this information for eastern Washington.

Note: Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not recommended. They tend to crowd out other species in manmade wetlands, as well as escape to natural wetlands where they do the same. In addition, the shoots die back each fall, resulting in oxygen depletion in the treatment wetland unless they are removed.

Soil Amendments and Protection

The method of construction for soil/landscape systems can affect natural selection of specific plant species. Consult a soil restoration or wetland soil scientist for site-specific soil amendment recommendations. The formulation should encourage desired species and discourage undesired species. Soils should be stabilized with permanent or temporary cover to prevent washout due to storm flows.

Soil Preparation

Incorrect control of soil moisture is the most frequent cause of failure to establish wetland plants. Inadequate water results in desiccation of roots. Too much water results in oxygen depletion in the root zone, submergence and drowning or flotation of plants, and/or slow growth or plant death.

To maintain adequate soil moisture during plant establishment, a reliable and adequate supply of water for site irrigation is needed. When practical, a water source for plant establishment is usually the stormwater treated in the wetland. However, if stormwater is not available, another irrigation source must be identified to maximize planting success. Adequate pumps, piping, and sprinklers or hoses must be provided to allow even flow distribution.

Table RT.13.2. Plant species recommended for stormwater treatment wetlands in western Washington.

Species	Common Name	Notes	Maximum Depth
Wetland Edge			
Salix sitchensis	Sitka willow		
Cornus sericea	Red osier dogwood		
Inundation to 1 Foot			
Agrostis exarata [a]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	to 2 feet
Carex stipata	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of wetlands, wet meadows	to 2 feet
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, wetland margins	to 2 feet
Juncus tenuis	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
Oenanthe sarmentosa	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and wetland margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
Scirpus atrocinctus (formerly *S. cyperinus*)	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sagittaria latifolia	Arrowhead		
Inundation 1 to 2 Feet			
Agrostis exarata [a]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
Alisma plantago-aquatica	Water plantain		
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of wetlands, wet meadows	
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, wetland margins	
Juncus effuses	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sparganium emersum	Bur-reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
Inundation 1 to 3 Feet			
Carex obnupta	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
Beckmania syzigachne [a]	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to wetland margins	
Scirpus acutus [b]	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	to 3 feet
Scirpus validus [b]	Softstem bulrush		
Inundation Greater Than 3 Feet			
Nuphar polysepalum	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
Nymphaea odorata [a]	White waterlily	Shallow to deep wetlands	to 6 feet

Primary sources: Metro 1990; Hortus Northwest 1991; Hitchcock and Cronquist 1973.

[a] Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

[b] *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

According to Kadlec and Knight (1996), the recommended sequence for maintaining soil moisture for wetland planting starts with initial saturation of soil by sprinkling or flood irrigation. For optimal plant growth, the soil should be fully or partially saturated with water immediately before planting and should not be allowed to completely dry out anytime after planting. High soil moisture must be maintained after planting for the first few weeks without creating flooded conditions for more than few hours. The best method to maintain soil saturation without excessive flooding is to start planting at the downgradient end of the wetland and continue planting upgradient, while gradually raising water levels using the wetland outlet water level controls or gravity drain, if possible. When planting is complete, water levels can be dropped or raised as needed to maintain saturated soil conditions. Sprinklers can also be used to irrigate evenly over planted areas.

After an entire cell is planted, the water should be maintained at a level that ensures all areas of the cell continue to have saturated soil conditions between waterings. This goal can be achieved by (1) flood-irrigating the entire cell with enough water to allow infiltration or evapotranspiration to eliminate the applied surface water within one or two days, or (2) distributing water through the inlet distribution structures or down the embankment side slopes and allowing this water to resaturate the wetland soils as it sheet-flows across the wetland to the outlet. Weirs or outlet water control gates should be removed or left open during plant establishment to prevent flooding if rainfall is high or if a sprinkler or irrigator is accidentally left running. At no time should flood irrigation result in complete submergence of aboveground portions of installed plants. Permits may be required to use water from nearby natural aquatic water bodies for temporary irrigation purposes.

As the wetland plants grow, they have an increased ability to transport oxygen to the root zone from their leaves; thus, the plants are able to withstand longer periods of flooding. However, the best technique for establishing rapid plant cover is to maintain saturated soil conditions without surface flooding. The higher soil oxygen condition resulting from the absence of floodwaters allows maximum root metabolism, effective nutrient use, and rapid development of the plants within the wetland. This soil condition should optimally be maintained until plants achieve complete cover (100%), or at least the minimum cover required for system startup (about 60% to 80%).

Design and construction should allow the design water surface to be temporarily modified to enable plant installation and establishment before the system is brought on-line. Several strategies may be available depending on the project situation, schedule, and site conditions:

- If the system must go on-line the same year it is constructed, plant the constructed wetland cell in the spring or early summer, and irrigate all summer to maintain saturated soils without plant submergence or flotation until plants are sufficiently developed to operate the system in the fall.
- If the system can remain off-line all winter, plant the constructed wetland cell in the fall, monitor water conditions, and maintain saturated soils without plant submergence or flotation, by irrigating or draining as necessary, until plants are

sufficiently developed to allow operation of the system the following year. (Wetland plants planted later in the summer or fall have their growth interrupted by cold weather and decreasing day length [Kadlec and Knight 1996]).

Several methods could be used to temporarily control water levels during plant establishment, depending on project situations:

- Build the treatment wetland before the project is started so that wetland plants are established before flows are introduced.
- Keep the treatment wetland off-line until wetland plants become established by bypassing the treatment wetland.
- Temporarily operate the drain of the treatment wetland as the outlet to maintain water surface elevations below the design water surface level.
- Plant early in the fall or late in the spring when water surface elevations are naturally lower.
- Pump out water to lower the wetland cell for planting and establishment.

A wetland treatment system can typically begin operation when plant cover is at least 60% to 80%, which may require at least three to four months of active growth. If this coverage is achieved during the first growing season after planting, the wetland system can begin operating during the ensuing fall.

Planting

- Seed embankment areas above the runoff treatment design water surface and below the emergency overflow water level. Areas with permanent pools that are protected from erosion need not be seeded.
- Consider planting conifer or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of wetlands to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs may be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety. In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the wetland.

  Intent: Conifer trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.
- Include trees and shrubs on slopes and on top of banks to increase aesthetics. If the treatment wetland discharges to a phosphorus-sensitive lake or natural wetland, shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the runoff treatment design water surface on at least three sides. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements.

The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the wetland and to provide shading. Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (*Acer circinatum*), wild cherry (*Prunus emarginata*), willow (*Salix* sp.), red osier dogwood (*Cornus stolonifera*), California myrtle (*Myrica californica*), Indian plum (*Oemleria cerasiformis*), and Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia*).

General Maintenance Requirements

For general maintenance requirements, see Section 5-3.7.1. The following replaces or supplements the guidance found in Section 5-3.7.1:

- A drain in the wetland cell (or cells) may also be necessary to avoid surface flooding during wetland plant installation and establishment.

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated where possible to enhance aesthetics:

- Provide maintenance access to shallow pool areas enhanced with emergent wetland vegetation. This allows the wetland to be accessible for vegetation maintenance without incurring safety risks.
- Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3H:1V or flatter).
- Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. On most wetland sites, it is important to amend the soil before planting because wetlands are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
- Consider extending the access and maintenance road along the full length of the treatment wetland. Consider placing finely ground bark, wood chips, or other permeable surfacing over the road surface to reduce runoff.
- Where right-of-way allows, orient the wetland length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.

Construction

- Construction and maintenance considerations are the same as those for wet ponds (see BMP RT.12).
- The naturalistic grading alternative (Figure RT.13.1) can be constructed by first excavating the entire area to the 1.5-foot average depth; then soil subsequently excavated to form deeper areas can be deposited to raise other areas until the distribution of design depths is achieved.
- Ideally, a period of approximately 1 year is desirable to establish plants before the system goes on-line.

Nuisance Control

Beavers

Information on beaver control can be found at the following web sites:
http://www1.co.snohomish.wa.us/Departments/Public_Works/Divisions/SWM/Work_Areas/Urban_Drainage/Beavers/
http://dnr.metrokc.gov/wlr/Dss/beavers/beaverintro.htm

Mosquitoes

A recent study in California provides evidence that interspersing stands of emergent vegetation with areas of open water is effective in reducing mosquito production. Areas of relatively deep open water can (1) decrease vegetation density, and (2) limit the accumulation of floating mats of root masses and dead vegetation. These characteristics were found to reduce mosquito refuge areas and increase mosquito predator habitat (Thullen et al. 2002).

The creation of hummocks on which wetland plants are established is a design option to create areas of open water. A constant water depth of 3 to 6 feet between hummocks is usually sufficient to effectively limit emergent vegetation propagation. These deep pool areas are in addition to the surface area requirements listed in Table RT.13.1.

CO.02, Combined Stormwater Treatment Wetland/Detention Pond

Introduction

General Description

The *combined stormwater treatment wetland/detention pond* is best described as a wetland system that provides for the extended detention of runoff during and following storm events. This BMP is useful in areas with limited right-of-way where separate runoff treatment and flow control facilities are not feasible.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

The sizing procedure for the combined stormwater treatment wetland and detention pond is identical to that outlined for stormwater wetlands (see BMP RT.13) and for combined wet/detention ponds (see BMP CO.01). Follow the procedures outlined in those sections to determine the stormwater wetland size.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

The design criteria for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03) and constructed stormwater treatment wetlands (see BMP RT.13) must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1 foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, nor does the 6 inches of sediment storage in the second cell of detention ponds need to be added.

  Intent: Because emergent plants are limited to shallower water depths, the deeper water created before sediments accumulate is considered detrimental to robust emergent growth. Therefore, sediment storage is confined to the first cell, which functions as a presettling cell.

- The inlet and outlet criteria for constructed stormwater treatment wetlands (see BMP RT.13) apply, with the following modifications:
  - A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined facilities.
  - The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe must be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03).

Groundwater Issues

Live storage requirements are the same as for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03). This does not apply to the constructed stormwater treatment wetlands dead storage component.

Site Design Elements

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

The landscaping requirements for constructed stormwater treatment wetlands (see BMP RT.13) are modified to use the plants in Table CO.02.1, which are better adapted to water level fluctuations in combined stormwater treatment wetlands/detention ponds.

Table CO.02.1. Wetland plants adapted to water level fluctuations.

Species	Common Name	Depth (feet)
Scirpus acutus	Hardstem bulrush	2–6
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	1–2.5
Sparganium emersum	Bur-reed 1–	2
Sparganium eurycarpum	Bur-reed 1–	2
Veronica sp.	Marsh speedwell	0–1

In addition, the shrub *Spirea douglasii* (Douglas spirea) may be used in combined facilities.

Soil Preparation

The water level fluctuation restrictions for constructed stormwater treatment wetlands (see BMP RT.13, Soil Preparation) are modified as follows:

- The difference between the runoff treatment design water surface and the maximum water surface associated with the 2-year storm event must not be greater than 3 feet. If this restriction cannot be met, the area of the stormwater wetland must be increased. The additional area may be placed in the first cell, second cell, or both. If placed in the second cell, the additional area need not be planted with wetland vegetation or counted in the calculations for average depth.

  Intent: This criterion is intended to dampen the most extreme water level fluctuations expected in combined facilities to better ensure that fluctuation-tolerant wetland plants survive in the facility. It is not intended to protect native wetland plant communities and is not to be applied to natural wetlands.

General Maintenance Requirements

For general maintenance criteria for detention ponds and constructed stormwater wetlands, see Section 5-3.7.1.

5-4.1.5 Oil Control BMPs

RT.22, Oil Containment Boom

Oil Containment Boom Along I-5 in Thurston County.

Introduction

General Description

The *oil containment boom* is a weather-resistant, hydrophobic, absorbent-filled boom for removing hydrocarbon sheens from water.

Applications and Limitations

Oil containment booms can be used to remove oil from stormwater facilities to meet performance goals at locations where oil control is required, as described in Table 3-1.

Oil containment boom technology offers the following advantages over other treatment options:

- Fully functional at flow rates exceeding treatment flow criteria
- Easy and complete removal and disposal of absorbed oil
- Higher reliability because sediment clogging is avoided
- Effectiveness easily assessed due to aboveground installation
- Reduced exposure of maintenance workers to traffic and confined-space hazards
- Lower material and labor costs (6 to 17 times lower than oil/water separators, sand filters, and catch basin inserts)
- No capital improvement costs
- No additional right-of-way requirements or conflicts with buried structures

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

The boom must be cylindrical, with a minimum diameter of 2 inches. It should be installed near the outlet end of the facility so that the oil has a maximum amount of time to rise to the water surface. Maximizing boom distance from inlet currents also maximizes contact time between the boom and the oil. The boom must span the entire width of ponds when they are filled to capacity. The boom must be placed so that it is in direct contact with the water across the entire water surface. In treatment ponds, the boom must be installed diagonally across the water surface to maximize contact area and contact time between hydrocarbons and the boom. When used in a vault, the boom must completely encircle the outlet structure (see Figure RT.22.1).

Materials

The absorbent material must consist of high-molecular-weight polymers capable of absorbing (1) C5-C18 hydrocarbons associated with fuels, and (2) longer chain hydrocarbons with frequently attached cyclic hydrocarbon structures associated with lubricating oils.

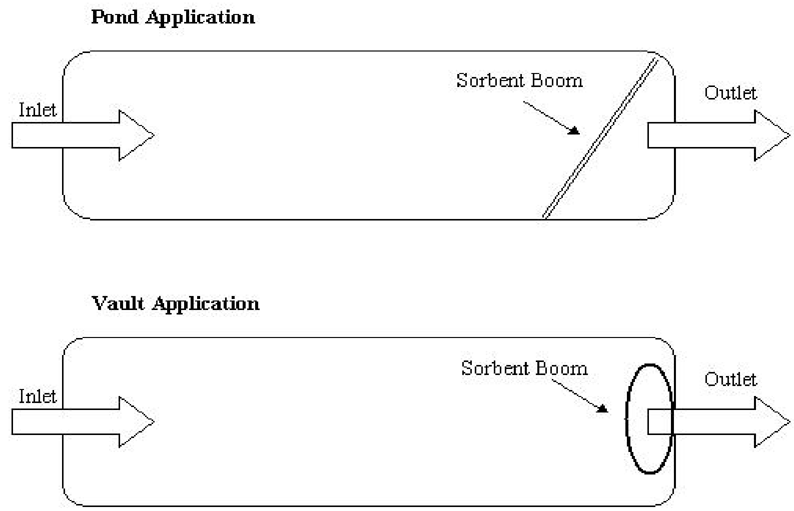


Figure RT.22.1. Oil containment boom.

The absorbent material must exhibit the following characteristics:

- Absorb and solidify a minimum of three times its weight in liquid hydrocarbons.
- Have sufficient buoyancy at the exhausted condition to continue to trap oil.
- Irreversibly absorb and permanently hold the hydrocarbons so that oil leachate is not released from the sorbent. U.S. EPA guidelines for solidified hazardous waste without chemical bonds being formed or broken must also be met.
- Contain a minimum of 99% active ingredient and no leachable toxicant to fish and other aquatic life. The supplier must provide appropriate information demonstrating that toxicity will not be a problem.

The absorbent boom cover fabric must meet the following criteria:

- Be fabricated of photo-resistant mesh that meets the ultraviolet (UV) stability requirement for permanent erosion control blankets in Section 9-14.5 of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.
- Be sized to allow for the expansion of the absorbent material to hold the specified absorption volume per foot.

Additional requirements for materials related to booms include the following:

- Booms must include a weather-resistant tag to enable labeling with installation and inspection dates for tracking long-term effectiveness and maintenance activities.

- Boom ends must be configured so that they can be secured to immobile structures or metal stakes with weather-resistant rope.

5-4.2 Flow Control Methods

The primary function of the BMPs listed in this section is to meet Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) of Section 3-3.6.

5-4.2.1 Infiltration BMPs

IN.01, Bioinfiltration Pond (eastern Washington only)

Introduction

General Description

Bioinfiltration ponds, also known as bioinfiltration swales or grass percolation areas, combine grassy vegetation and soils to remove stormwater pollutants by percolation into the ground. Their pollutant-removal mechanisms include infiltration, soil sorption, and uptake by vegetative root zones. Bioinfiltration ponds have been used in Spokane County for many years to treat urban stormwater and recharge the groundwater.

In general, bioinfiltration ponds are used for treating stormwater runoff from roofs, roads, and parking lots. Flows greater than the design treatment flow typically overflow through an appropriate conveyance system to a higher permeability (flow control) infiltration BMP such as a drywell or infiltration pond, or to a surface water discharge point with flow control as necessary (see Figure IN.01.1).

Applications and Limitations

Bioinfiltration ponds can be used to meet basic runoff treatment objectives (see Table 3-1). Although bioinfiltration ponds treat runoff by infiltration through soil, the infiltration capacity of these facilities is usually not sufficient to provide flow control to meet the criteria of Minimum Requirement 6 (see Section 3-3.6). Unless a very large area is available for the shallow water depth required of a bioinfiltration pond, flow control must be implemented using a different facility.

Bioinfiltration ponds require moderately permeable soil for proper function. For general site suitability criteria for infiltration facilities, see BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond. Additional criteria for runoff treatment are presented in Section 4-5.2.

Presettling and/or Pretreatment

Pretreatment should be considered to prevent the bioinfiltration pond treatment soil from clogging. (See Section 5-4.3.1 for pretreatment design guidance.)

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

Bioinfiltration ponds are designed as volume-based, infiltration treatment facilities. The runoff volume to be treated by a bioinfiltration pond is dependent on the method used to size the facility. Design storm volumes are discussed in Section 3-3.5 under Minimum Requirement 5, and hydrologic methods are presented in Section 4-5.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Bioinfiltration pond sizing methods are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02) designed for runoff treatment, except for the following:

- Drawdown time for the maximum ponded volume is 24 hours (maximum) following the design storm event.
- The maximum ponded level is 6 inches.
- The swale bottom should be flat with a longitudinal slope less than 1%.
- The treatment soil should be at least 6 inches thick with a cation exchange capacity (CEC) of at least 5 milliequivalents per 100 grams of dry soil, organic content of at least 1%, and sufficient target pollutant loading capacity (see *Criteria for Assessing the Trace Element Removal Capacity of Bio-filtration Systems*, Stan Miller, Spokane County, June 2000).
- Other combinations of treatment soil thickness, CEC, and organic content design factors can be considered if it is demonstrated that the soil and vegetation will provide a target pollutant loading capacity and performance level acceptable to the local jurisdiction.
- The treatment zone depth of 6 inches or more should contain sufficient organics and texture to ensure good vegetation growth.
- The average infiltration rate of the 6-inch-thick layer of treatment soil should not exceed 1 inch per hour for a system relying on the root zone to enhance pollutant removal. Furthermore, a maximum infiltration rate of 2.4 inches per hour is applicable, and the site suitability criteria in Section 4-5.2 must also be applied.
- Native grasses, adapted grasses, or other vegetation with significant root mass should be used. For eastern Washington, grasses should be drought tolerant or irrigation should be provided.
- Pretreatment may be used to prevent clogging of the treatment soil and vegetation by debris, TSS, and oil and grease.

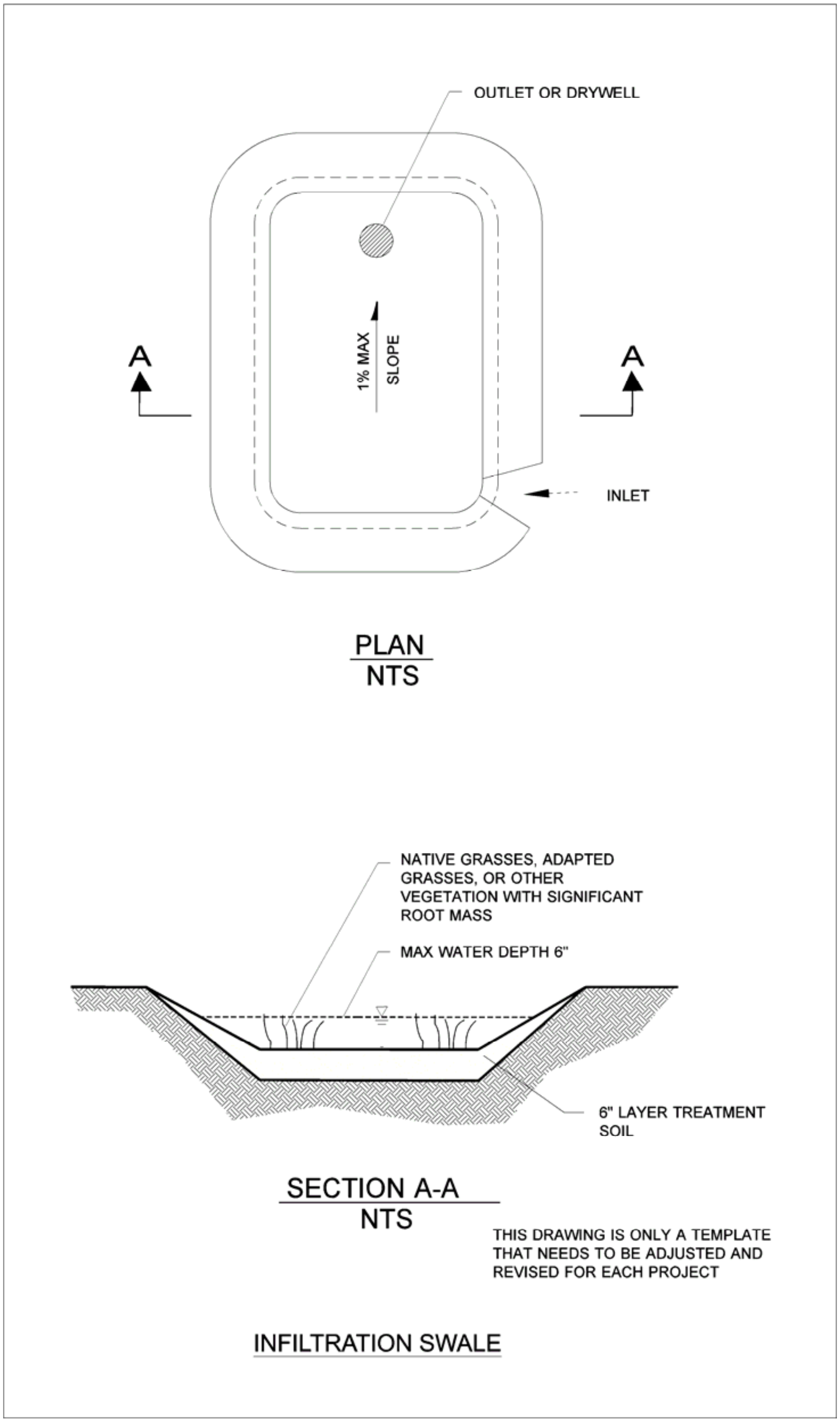


Figure IN.01.1. Bioinfiltration pond.

Identify pollutants, particularly in industrial and commercial area runoff, that could cause a violation of the Ecology groundwater quality standards (WAC 173-200). Include appropriate mitigation measures (pretreatment, source control, etc.) for the pollutants.

Materials

For runoff treatment, soils must meet the criteria described in BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond, and the *Site Suitability Criteria* in Section 4-5.2.

Groundwater Issues

Groundwater issues for bioinfiltration ponds are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Eastern Washington

Consider the potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells when siting the bioinfiltration pond. Mitigation measures must be implemented if infiltration of roadway deicers could cause a violation of groundwater quality standards.

Site Design Elements

Conduct initial excavation to within 1 foot of the final elevation of the floor of the bioinfiltration pond. Defer final excavation to the finished grade until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulated sediment. After construction is completed, prevent sediment from entering the bioinfiltration pond by first conveying the runoff water through an appropriate pretreatment system such as a presettling basin.

Bioinfiltration ponds, as with all types of infiltration facilities, should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If a bioinfiltration pond is to be used as a sediment trap, do not excavate to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Remove any accumulation of silt in the swale before putting the swale into service.

Relatively light-tracked equipment is recommended for excavation to avoid compacting the floor of the bioinfiltration pond. Consider the use of draglines and trackhoes. The bioinfiltration pond area should be flagged or marked to keep equipment away.

Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for bioinfiltration ponds are the same as those for infiltration ponds (BMP IN.02).

Right-of-Way

Right-of-way requirements for bioinfiltration ponds are the same as those for detention ponds (BMP FC.03).

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

Use native or adapted grass species for the entire area of the bioinfiltration pond.

Maintenance Access Roads (Access Requirements)

Access requirements for bioinfiltration ponds are the same as those for infiltration ponds (BMP IN.02).

IN.02, Infiltration Pond

Infiltration Pond Along SR 510 in Thurston County.

Introduction

General Description

Infiltration ponds for flow control are earthen impoundments used for the collection, temporary storage, and infiltration of incoming stormwater runoff to groundwater (see Figure IN.02.1). Infiltration ponds can also be designed to provide runoff treatment (see Section 4-5.2).

Applications and Limitations

Infiltration of runoff is the preferred method of flow control. Runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity must be detained and released in compliance with the flow control requirement described in Section 3-3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6.

Site Suitability Criteria

Infiltration ponds require permeable soil conditions for proper function. For a site to be considered suitable for an infiltration pond, the design infiltration rate must be at least 0.5 inches per hour. Infiltration can still be considered in the design if the infiltration rate is less than this, but infiltration would be considered a secondary function in this case. Additional site suitability criteria are specified in Section 4-5.2.

The base of all infiltration ponds typically must be at least 5 feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan), or other low-permeability layer. This vertical distance may be reduced to a minimum of 3 feet if the following apply:

- The groundwater mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and design of the overflow or bypass structures are judged by the designer to be adequate to prevent overtopping.
- The facility meets all other criteria listed in this BMP description.

Presettling and/or Pretreatment

Infiltration ponds should follow a runoff treatment or pretreatment facility to prevent sediment buildup and clogging of the infiltrative soils. A presettling cell can be included in the infiltration pond design, as shown in Figure IN.02.1. (See BMP RT.24, Presettling/Sedimentation Basin, for design guidance.) If an infiltration pond cannot meet the site suitability criteria for treatment, a minimum of basic treatment must be provided prior to infiltration (see Section 5-3.5 for additional guidance).

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Infiltrated

Site runoff should be infiltrated to the extent that occurred before the site was developed. Runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity must be detained and released in compliance with the flow control requirement described in Section 3-3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6. (See Section 4-5 for hydrologic analysis methods applicable to flow control for surface discharges.)

Outlet Control Structure

Runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity must be detained and released in compliance with the flow control requirement described in Section 3-3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6. Outlet control structure design guidance is provided in BMP FC.03, Detention Pond.

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for infiltration vaults are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

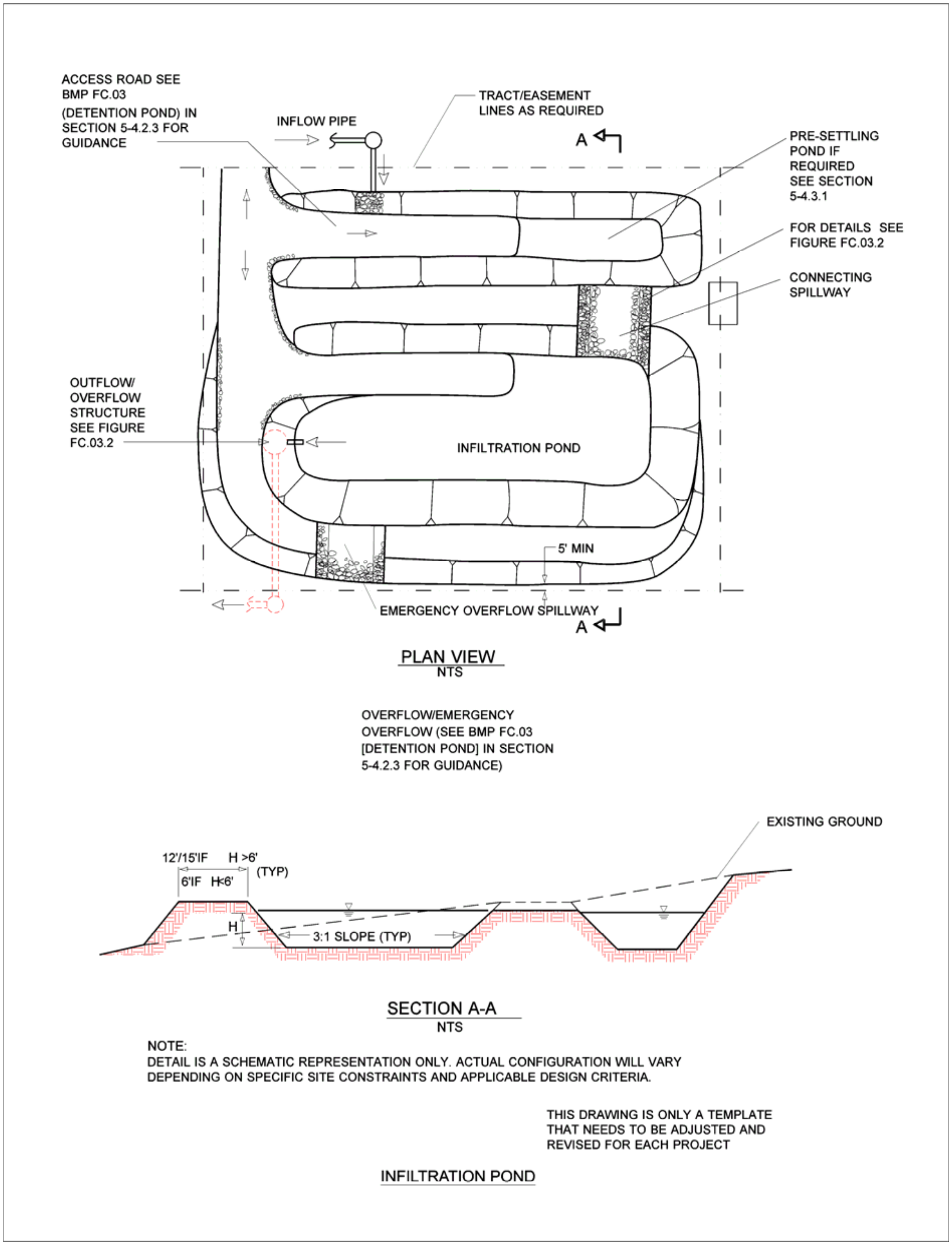


Figure IN.02.1. Infiltration pond.

Flow Splitters

For an infiltration pond designed only to serve as a runoff treatment facility, the pond may be located off-line by installing a flow splitter upstream of the treatment facility. The splitter must direct all flows up to the water quality design flow rate into the infiltration facility. The facility must be designed to infiltrate all water directed to it. All bypassed flow must be conveyed to a flow control facility unless it is directly discharged to an exempt water body. (See Section 5-4.3.3 for flow splitter design guidance.)

Infiltration ponds designed for flow control must be located on-line.

Emergency Overflow Spillway

A nonerodible outlet or spillway with a firmly established elevation must be constructed to discharge overflow to the downstream conveyance system, as described in BMP FC.03, Detention Pond. Ponding depth, drawdown time, and storage volume are calculated from the overflow elevation.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

For detailed guidance on sizing infiltration facilities, see Section 4-5. Infiltration ponds must meet the following criterion:

- The slope of the floor of an infiltration pond must not exceed 3% in any direction.

Eastern Washington

For cold climate infiltration pond design criteria, refer to Ecology's SMMEW.

Embankments

Requirements for infiltration pond embankments are the same as those for BMP FC.03, Detention Pond. In addition, the site geotechnical investigation must include the following:

- Stability analysis of side slopes for ponds and the potential to activate landslides in the vicinity of the facility during construction or during service.
- Seepage analysis of any berms or dams required by the facility to retain stormwater.

Liners

The floor of infiltration ponds can be covered with a 6- to 12-inch layer of filter material such as coarse sand, or a suitable filter fabric liner may be used to help prevent buildup of impervious deposits on the soil surface. A nonwoven geotextile that functions sufficiently without plugging should be selected (see underground drainage geotextile specifications in Section 9-33 of the

WSDOT Standard Specifications). With this underlying geotextile, the filter layer can be readily replaced or cleaned if it becomes clogged.

Groundwater Issues

A site is not suitable if the infiltration of stormwater may cause a violation of Ecology groundwater quality standards (see Chapter 2 for guidance). Local jurisdictions should be consulted for applicable pollutant-removal requirements upstream of the infiltration facility and to determine whether the site overlies a sensitive groundwater recharge area, sole-source aquifer, or a wellhead protection zone.

Site Design Elements

Initial excavation should be conducted to within 1 foot of the final elevation of the infiltration pond floor. Final excavation to the finished grade should be deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulated sediment.

Infiltration ponds, as with all types of infiltration facilities, should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration pond is to be used as a sediment trap, it must not be excavated to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Any accumulation of silt in the pond must be removed before the pond is put into service.

Low-ground-pressure equipment is recommended for excavation to avoid compacting the floor of the infiltration pond. The use of draglines and trackhoes should be considered. The infiltration area should be flagged or marked to keep equipment away.

Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for infiltration ponds are generally required by local regulations, Uniform Building Code requirements, or other state regulations. The following setback criteria are provided as guidance:

- For infiltration facilities, the designer should request from the WSDOT Materials Laboratory a geotechnical report for the project that evaluates any potential structural site instability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps. The report should address the adequacy of the proposed infiltration pond locations and recommend the necessary setbacks from any steep slopes and building foundations.

- Infiltration facilities should be set back at least 100 feet from drinking water wells, septic tanks or drain fields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies and within 1-, 5-, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with health department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, WAC 246-290-135).
- Additional setbacks must be considered if roadway deicers or herbicides are likely to be in the influent to the infiltration system.
- Infiltration facilities must be located at least 20 feet downslope and 100 feet upslope from building foundations.
- Infiltration facilities must be located at least 20 feet from a native growth protection easement (NGPE).
- Infiltration facilities must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line and/or vegetative buffer. This distance may need to be increased based on permit conditions required by regulations of the local jurisdiction.

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

The interior of the infiltration pond, as well as surrounding berms, spoil areas, borrow areas, and other disturbed areas, should be stabilized and planted, preferably with grass. Without healthy vegetation, the surface soil pores quickly plug. The use of slow-growing, stoloniferous grasses permits long intervals between mowing. Refer to BMP FC.03, Detention Pond, for seed mixture recommendations.

Fencing

Fencing requirements for an infiltration pond are identical to those of BMP FC.03, Detention Pond.

Signage

Signage requirements for an infiltration pond are identical to those of BMP FC.03, Detention Pond.

Maintenance Access Roads (Access Requirements)

Vehicle access must be provided to maintain the forebay (presettling basin) area and not disturb vegetation or resuspend sediment.

Operation and Maintenance

Infiltration ponds, as with all BMPs, must have routine inspection and maintenance designed into the life performance of the facility. (See Section 5-5 for more details.)

IN.03, Infiltration Trench

Introduction

General Description

Infiltration trenches are long, narrow, stone-filled trenches used for the collection, temporary storage, and infiltration of stormwater runoff to groundwater. They can be a useful alternative for sites with constraints that make siting an infiltration pond difficult. Infiltration trenches may be placed beneath parking areas, along the site periphery, or in other suitable linear areas. They may also be designed for runoff treatment (see Section 4-5.2). For infiltration trench concept details, see Figures IN.03.1 through IN.03.5.

Applications and Limitations

Infiltration of runoff is the preferred method of flow control following appropriate runoff treatment. Runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity must be detained and released in compliance with the flow control requirement described in Section 3.3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6.

This BMP is considered a subsurface infiltration facility and its use may be subject to the rules governing Class V underground injection wells, but only if it includes the use of a perforated pipe. This type of stormwater facility must be registered through Ecology's UIC (Underground Injection Control) Program. For more information on UIC requirements, see Section 4-5.3.

Site Suitability Criteria

Site suitability criteria are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Presettling and/or Pretreatment

Infiltration trenches should follow a runoff treatment or pretreatment facility to prevent sediment buildup and clogging of the trench. (See BMP RT.24, Presettling/Sedimentation Basin, for pretreatment design guidance.)

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Infiltrated

The flows to be treated by an infiltration trench are identical to those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond. (See Section 4-5.3.1, Design Procedure for Infiltration Trenches, for flow control guidance.)

Overflow or Bypass

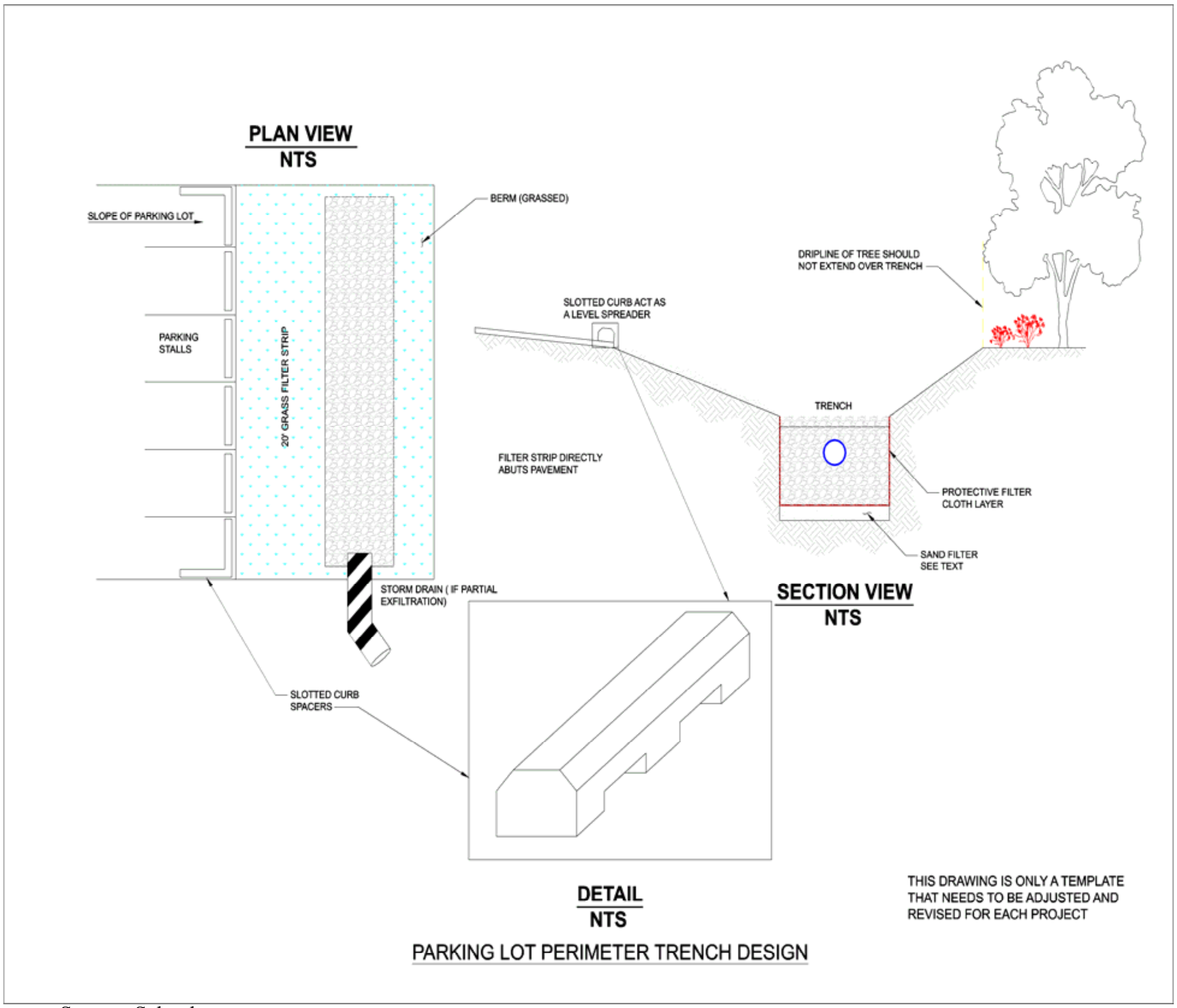
Because infiltration trenches are generally used for small drainage areas, an emergency spillway is not necessary. However, a nonerosive overflow channel leading to a stabilized watercourse should be provided.

Outlet Control Structure

Outlet control structure requirements for an infiltration trench are identical to those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond.

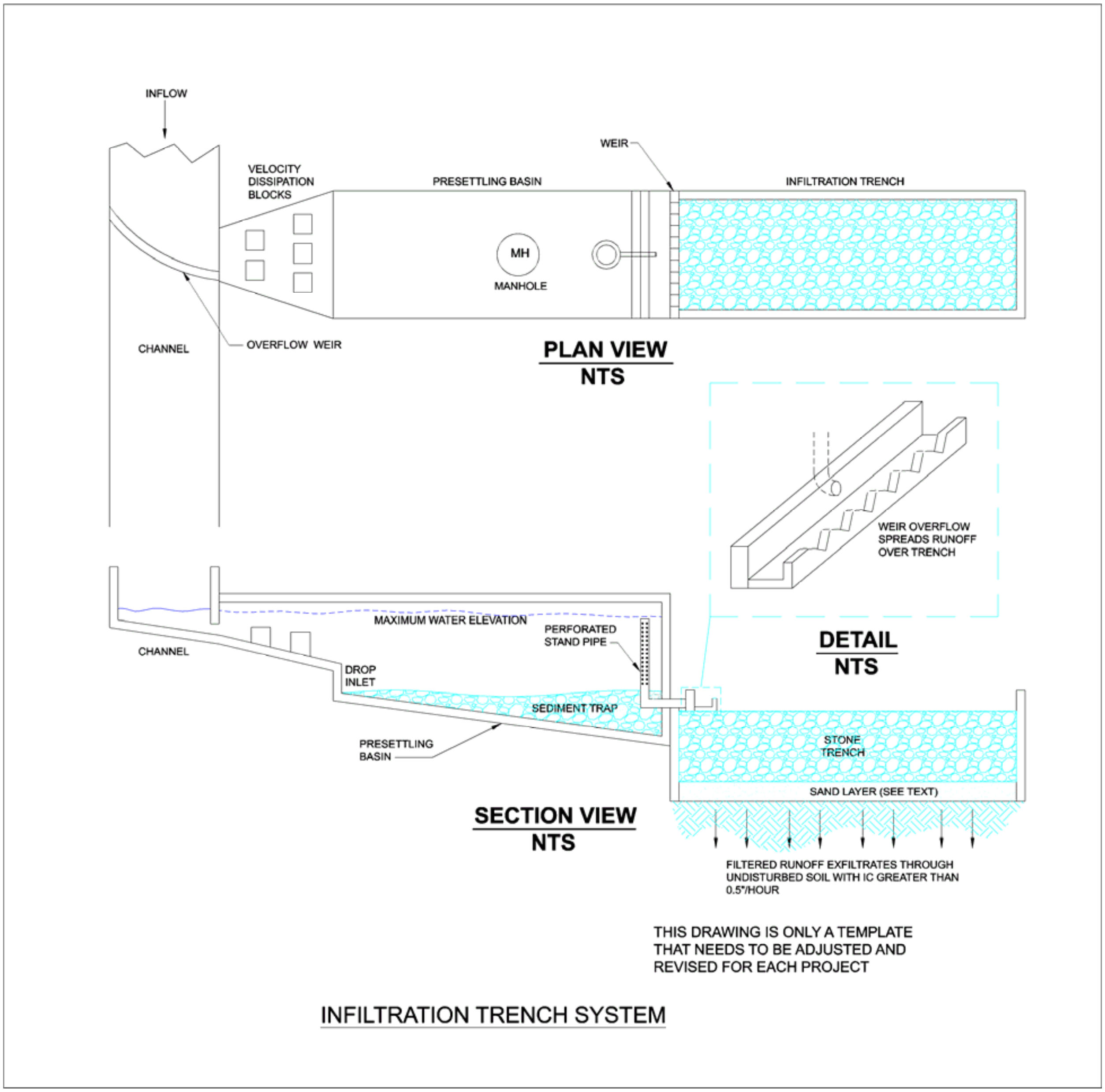
Flow Splitters

Flow splitter requirements for an infiltration trench are identical to those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond.



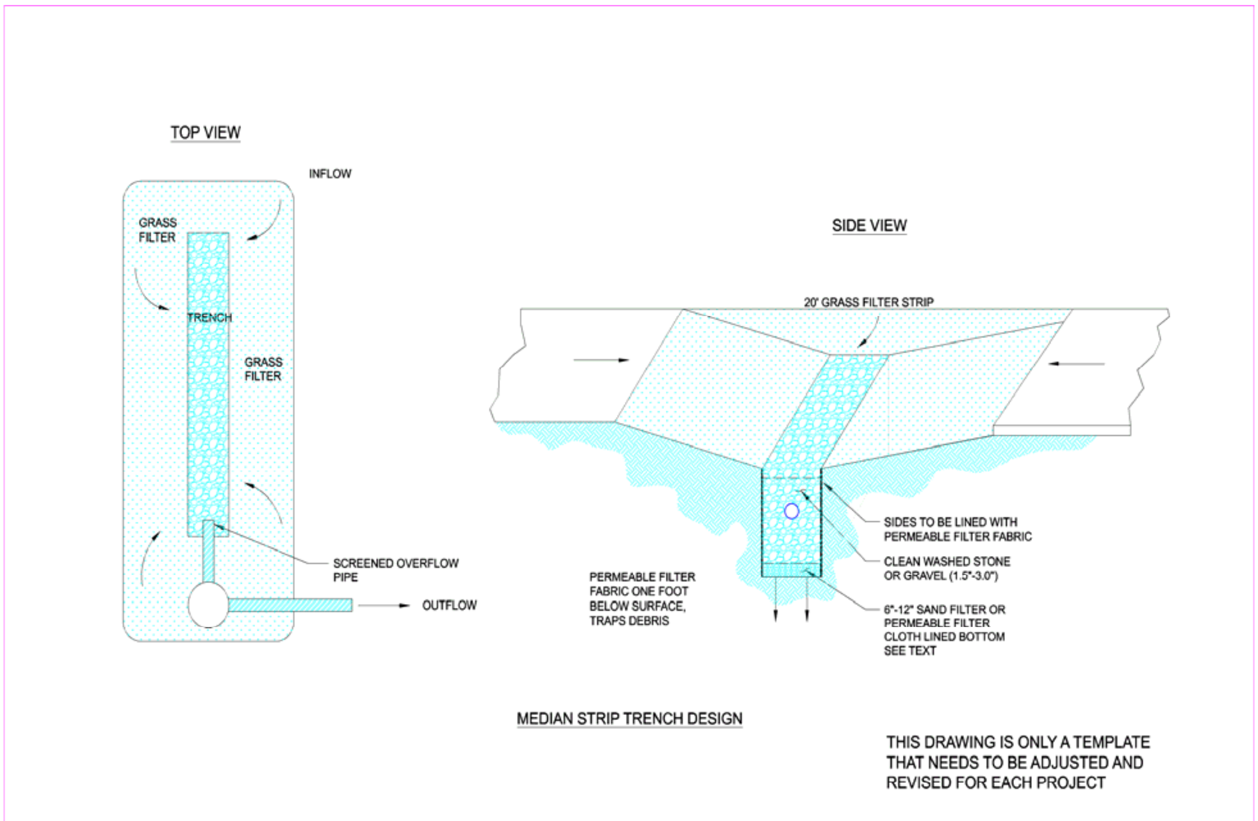
Source: Schueler.

Figure IN.03.1. Parking lot perimeter trench design.



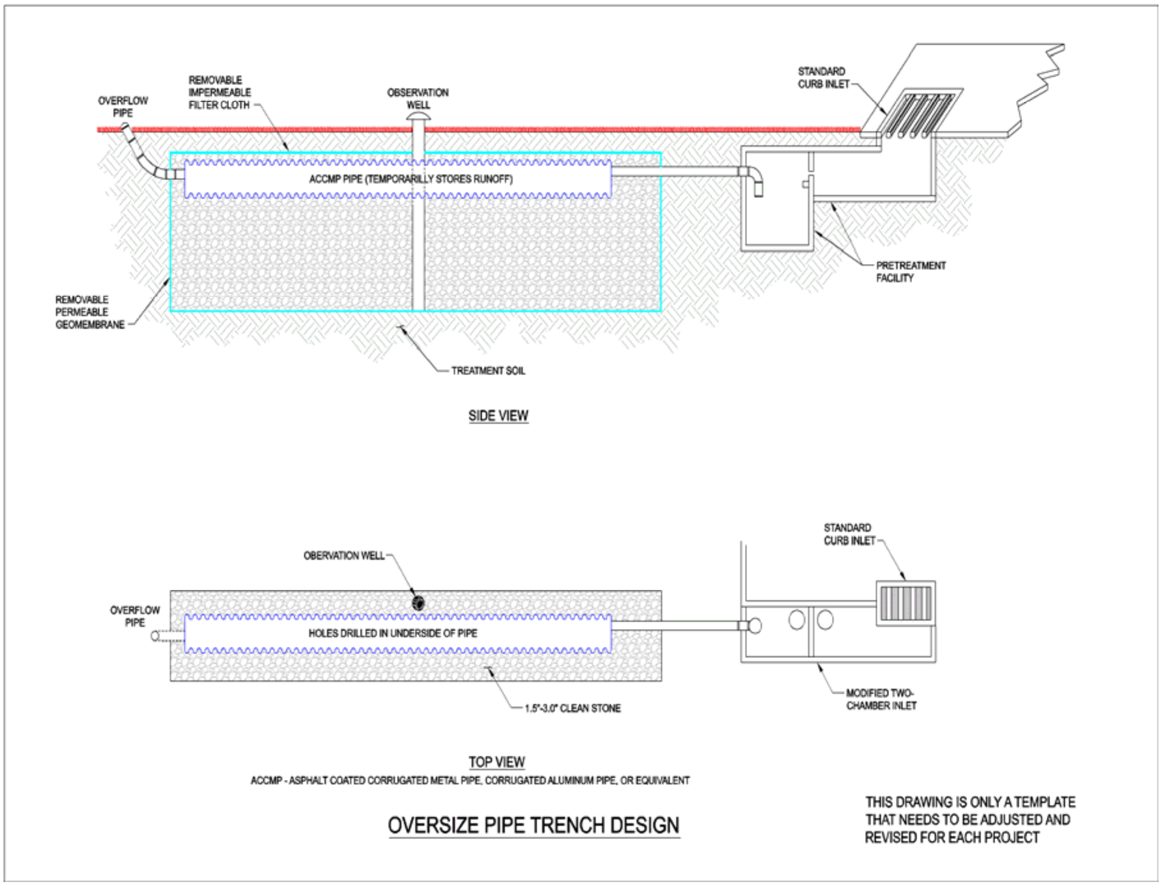
Source: Schueler.

Figure IN.03.2. Infiltration trench system.



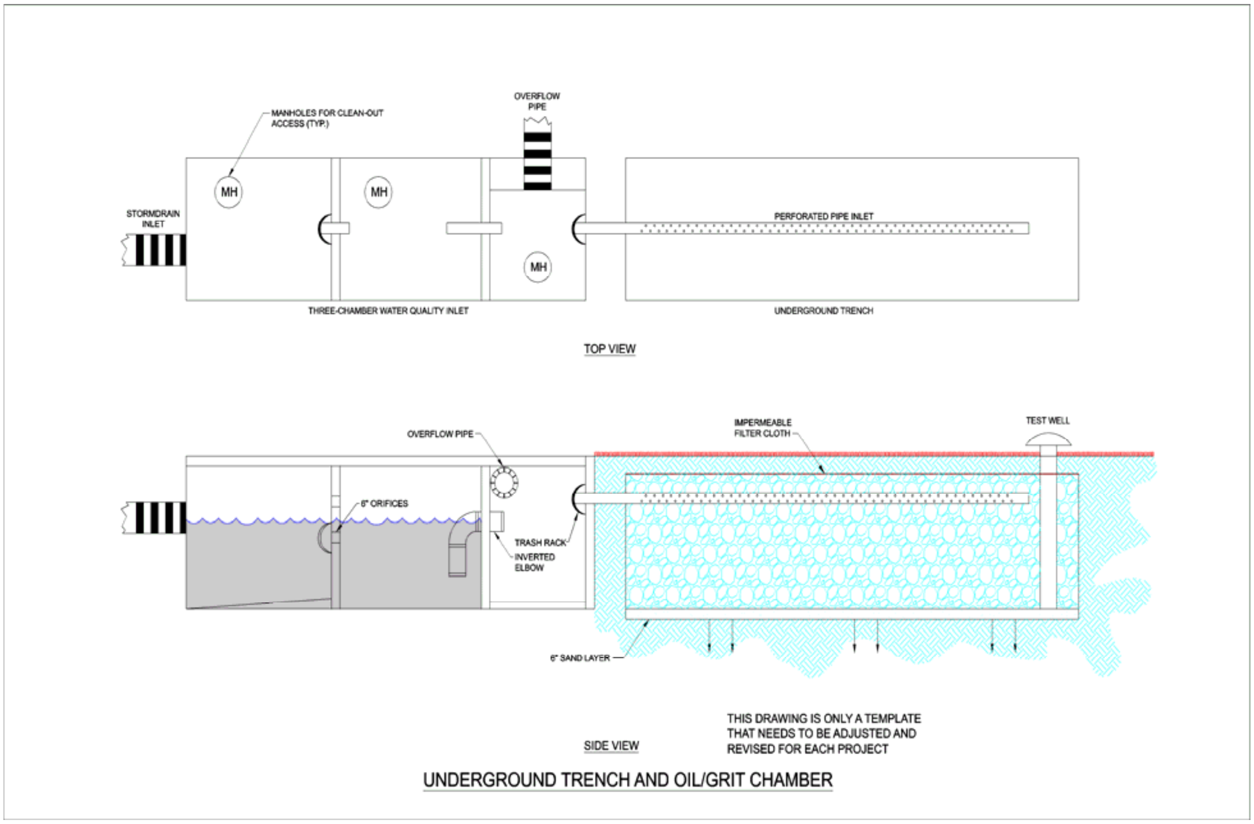
Source: Schueler.

Figure IN.03.3. Median strip trench design.



Source: Schueler.

Figure IN.03.4. Oversize pipe trench design.



Source: Schueler.

Figure IN.03.5. Underground trench and oil/grit chamber.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Infiltration trench sizing methods are the same as those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond.

Materials

Backfill Material

The backfill material for the infiltration trench should consist of clean aggregate with a maximum diameter of 3 inches and a minimum diameter of 1.5 inches. Void space for the aggregate should be in the range of 30% to 40%.

Geotextile Fabric Liner

An engineering geotextile material must encase all of the aggregate fill material, except for the top 1 foot of the trench where an aggregate surface is the final ground condition. Geotextile fabric with acceptable properties must be carefully selected to avoid plugging (see geotextile for underground drainage in Section 9-33 of the WSDOT Standard Specifications). The bottom sand or geotextile fabric shown in Figures IN.03.1 through IN.03.3 is optional.

Refer to Section 5-6, References, for publications by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) (1995) for design guidance on geotextiles in drainage applications, and the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) (1994) for long-term performance data and background on the potential for geotextiles to clog or blind, for piping to be incorporated, and how to design for these issues.

Observation Well

An observation well should be installed at the lower end of the infiltration trench to check water levels, drawdown time, and sediment accumulation, and to allow for water quality monitoring. The well should consist of a perforated PVC pipe 4 to 6 inches in diameter, constructed flush with the ground elevation. For larger trenches, a 12- to 36-inch-diameter well can be installed to facilitate maintenance operations such as pumping out trapped sediment. The top of the well should be capped to discourage vandalism and tampering. (See Figure IN.03.6 for more details.)

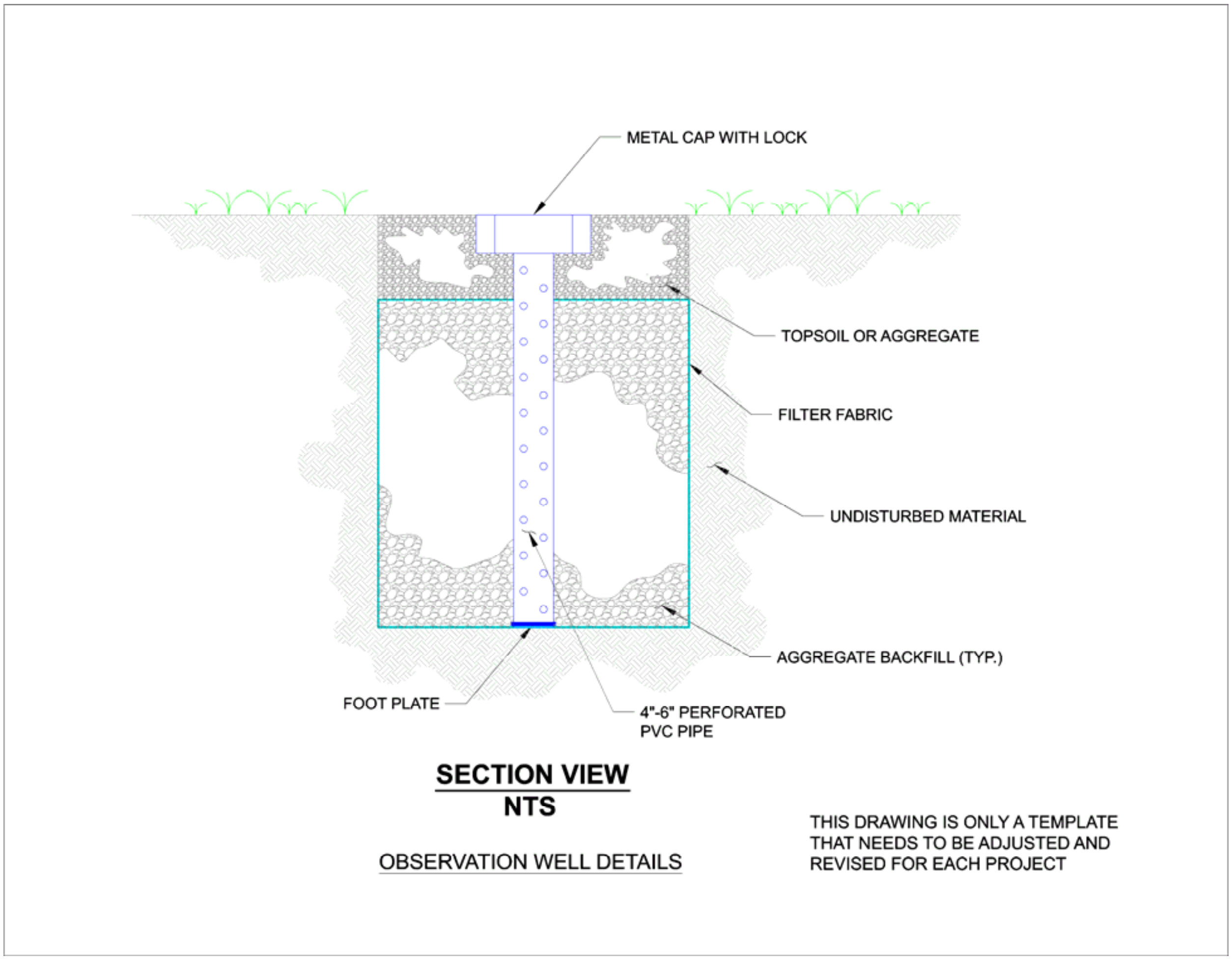
Groundwater Issues

Groundwater issues for an infiltration trench are identical to those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond.

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for an infiltration trench are identical to those for BMP IN.02, Infiltration Pond.



Source: King County.

Figure IN.03.6. Observation well detail.

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

The trench bottom and sides should be stabilized with a mixture of native grasses that will also enhance water quality. The landscape architect will specify plant material.

Maintenance Access Roads (Access Requirements)

Because of accessibility and maintenance limitations, infiltration trenches must be carefully designed and constructed. The local jurisdiction should be contacted for additional specifications.

An access port, or an open or grated top should be considered to permit access for inspections and maintenance.

Construction Criteria

Trench Preparation

Excavated materials must be placed away from the trench sides to enhance trench wall stability. Care should be taken to keep this material away from slopes, neighboring property, sidewalks, and streets. It is recommended that this material be covered with plastic.

Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction

The stone aggregate should be placed in lifts and compacted using plate compactors. As a rule of thumb, a maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is recommended. The compaction process ensures geotextile conformity to the excavation sides, thereby reducing potential piping and geotextile clogging, as well as settlement problems.

Separation of Aggregate From Surrounding Soil

Natural or fill soils must not intermix with the stone aggregate. If the stone aggregate becomes mixed with the soil, the stone aggregate must be removed and replaced with uncontaminated stone aggregate.

Overlapping and Covering

Following the stone aggregate placement and compaction, the geotextile must be folded over the stone aggregate to form a 12-inch-minimum longitudinal overlap. When overlaps are required between rolls, the upstream roll should overlap a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll to provide a shingled effect.

Voids Behind Geotextile

Voids between the geotextile and excavation sides must be avoided. The space left by boulders or other obstacles removed from the trench walls is one source of such voids. Natural soils should be placed in these voids at the most convenient time during construction to ensure geotextile conformity to the excavation sides. Soil piping, geotextile clogging, and possible surface subsidence can be avoided by this remedial process.

Unstable Excavation Sites

Vertically excavated walls may be difficult to maintain in areas where the soil moisture is high or where soft or cohesionless soils predominate. Trapezoidal, rather than rectangular, cross sections may be needed.

Initial excavation should be conducted to within 1 foot of the final elevation of the infiltration pond floor. Final excavation to the finished grade should be deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulated sediment.

Infiltration trenches, as with all types of infiltration facilities, should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration trench is to be used as a sediment trap, it must not be excavated to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Any accumulation of silt in the trench must be removed before the trench is put into service.

Operation and Maintenance

Infiltration trenches, as with all BMPs, must have routine inspection and maintenance designed into the life performance of the facility. (See Section 5-5 for more details.)

IN.04, Infiltration Vault

Introduction

General Description

Infiltration vaults are typically bottomless underground structures used for temporary storage and infiltration of stormwater runoff to groundwater. Infiltration tanks are large-diameter cylindrical structures with perforations in the base. These types of underground infiltration facilities can be a useful alternative for sites with constraints that make siting an infiltration pond difficult. They may also be modified for runoff treatment (see Section 4-5.2).

Applications and Limitations

Infiltration of runoff is the preferred method of flow control following appropriate runoff treatment. Runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity must be detained and released in compliance with the flow control requirement described in Section 3.3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6.

Site Suitability Criteria

Site suitability criteria are the same as for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Infiltration vaults are not allowed on slopes greater than 25% (4H:1V). On slopes over 15%, a geotechnical report may be required for evaluation by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise or a qualified geologist with jurisdiction approval. A geotechnical report may also be required if the proposed vault is located within 200 feet of the top of a steep slope or landslide hazard area.

Presettling and/or Pretreatment

Infiltration vaults should follow a runoff treatment or pretreatment facility to prevent sediment accumulation and clogging of the basin. (See Section 5-4.3.1 for pretreatment design guidance.)

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Infiltrated

The flows to be disposed to groundwater by infiltration vaults are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Overflow or Bypass

A primary overflow must be provided to bypass flows over the 100-year postdeveloped peak flow to the infiltration vault. (See BMP FC.03, Detention Pond, for overflow structure types.)

Outlet Control Structure

Outlet control structure requirements for infiltration vaults are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Flow Splitters

Flow splitter requirements for infiltration vaults are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Infiltration vault geometric design criteria are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Note: If a vault is over 20 feet in width, then it must be designed by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, and added to the bridge inspection inventory by the Preservation Section.

Materials

All vaults must meet structural requirements for overburden support and H-20 vehicle loading. Vaults located under roadways must meet the live load requirements of the WSDOT Standard Specifications. Cast-in-place wall sections must be designed as retaining walls. Structural designs for cast-in-place vaults must be stamped by a licensed structural civil engineer. Bottomless vaults must be provided with footings placed on stable, well-consolidated native material and sized considering overburden support, traffic loading (assume maintenance traffic, if vault is placed outside right-of-way), and lateral soil pressures when the vault is dry. Infiltration vaults are not allowed in fill slopes unless a geotechnical analysis approves fill stability. The infiltration medium at the bottom of the vault must be native soil.

Infiltration vaults may be constructed using material other than reinforced concrete, such as large, perforated, corrugated metal pipe (see Figure IN.04.1), provided that the following additional criteria are met:

- Bedding and backfill material for the structure must be washed drain rock extending at least 1 foot below the bottom of the structure, at least 2 feet beyond the sides, and up to the top of the structure.
- Drain rock (3 to 1½ inches nominal diameter) must be completely covered with construction geotextile for separation (per the WSDOT Standard Specifications) prior to backfilling. If the drain rock becomes mixed with soil, the affected rock material must be removed and replaced with washed drain rock to provide maximum infiltration effectiveness.
- The perforations (holes) in the bottom half of the pipe must be 1 inch in diameter and start at an elevation of 6 inches above the invert. The nonperforated portion of the pipe in the lower 6 inches is intended for sediment storage to protect clogging of the native soil beneath the structure. The number and spacing of the perforations should be sufficient to allow complete infiltration of the soils with a safety factor of 2.0 without jeopardizing the structural integrity of the pipe.
- The criteria for general design, materials, structural stability, buoyancy, maintenance access, access roads, and right-of-way are the same as those for detention tanks (BMP FC.03), except for features needed to facilitate infiltration.

Groundwater Issues

Groundwater issues for infiltration vaults are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Maintenance Access Roads (Access Requirements)

For General Maintenance Requirements, see Section 5-3.7.1.

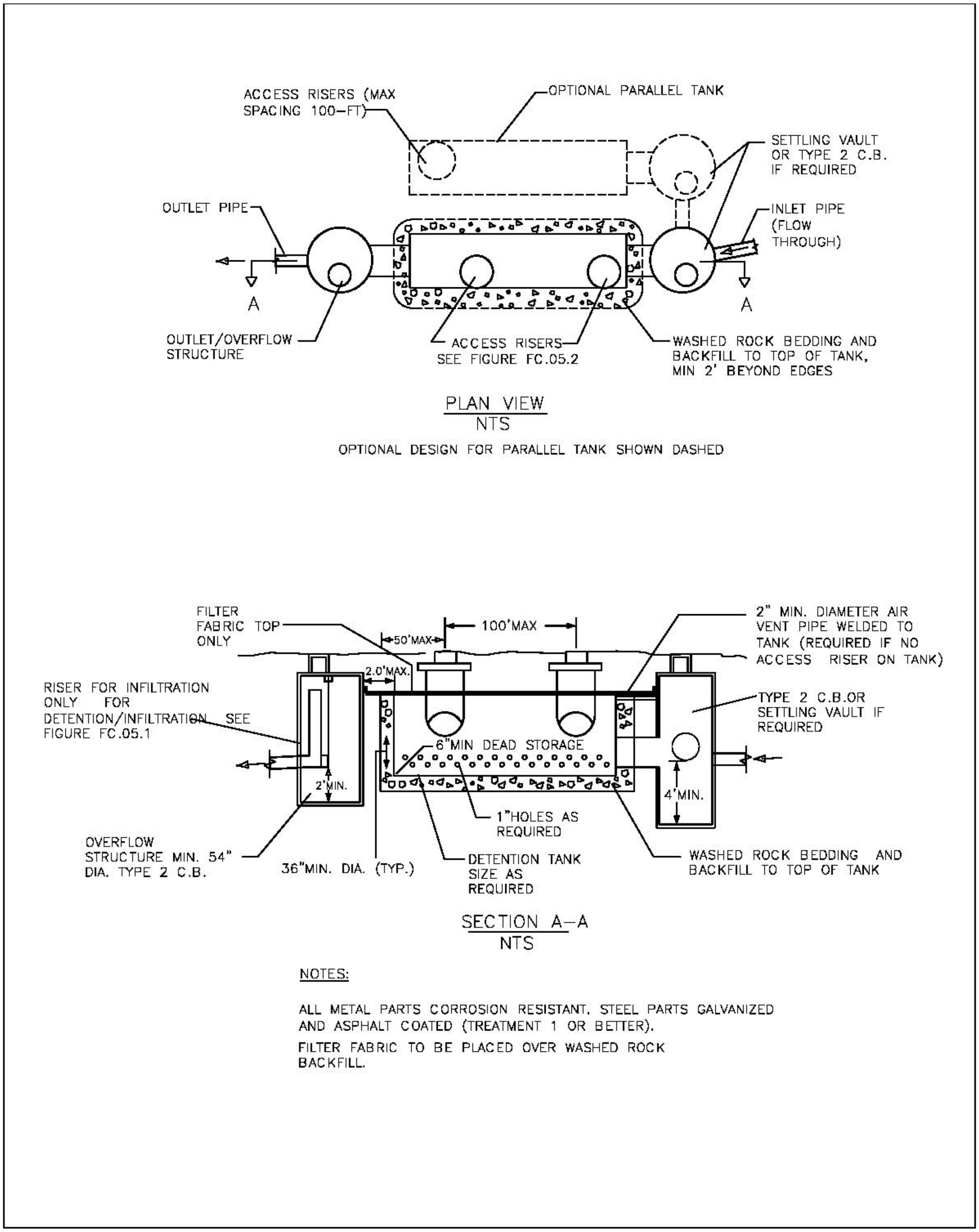


Figure IN.04.1. Infiltration vault constructed with corrugated pipe.

Construction Criteria

Initial excavation should be conducted to within 1 foot of the final elevation of the infiltration vault base. Final excavation to the finished grade should be deferred until all disturbed areas in the upgradient drainage area have been stabilized or protected. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulated sediment.

Infiltration vaults, as with all types of infiltration facilities, should generally not be used as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration vault is to be used as a sediment trap, it must not be excavated to final grade until after the upgradient drainage area has been stabilized. Any accumulation of silt in the vault must be removed before the vault is put into service.

Relatively light-tracked equipment is recommended for excavation to avoid compacting the soil beneath the base of the infiltration vault. The use of draglines and trackhoes should be considered. The infiltration area should be flagged or marked to keep equipment away.

Operation and Maintenance

Infiltration vaults, as with all BMPs, must have routine inspection and maintenance designed into the life performance of the facility. (See Section 5-5 for more details.)

IN.05, Drywell

Introduction

General Description

Drywells are subsurface concrete structures, typically precast, that convey stormwater runoff into the soil matrix. They can be used as stand-alone structures or as part of a larger drainage system (e.g., the overflow for a bioinfiltration pond).

Applications and Limitations

Drywells may be used for flow control where runoff treatment is not required, for flows greater than the runoff treatment design storm, or where runoff is treated before it is discharged (see Tables 4-13 and 4-14 in Section 4-5.3 for determining when treatment is required prior to infiltration).

This BMP is considered a subsurface infiltration facility and its use would be subject to the rules governing Class V underground injection wells. This type of stormwater facility must be registered through Ecology's UIC (Underground Injection Control) Program. For more information on UIC requirements, see Section 4-5.3.

Uncontaminated or properly treated stormwater must be discharged to drywells in accordance with Ecology's UIC Program (see WAC 173-218).

Presettling and/or Pretreatment

Treatment for removal of TSS, oil, and soluble pollutants may be necessary before the stormwater is conveyed to a drywell. Companion practices, such as street sweeping and catch basin inserts, can provide additional benefits and reduce the cleaning and maintenance needs for the infiltration facility.

Design Flow Elements

Inflow to infiltration facilities is calculated according to the methods described in Chapter 4. The storage volume in the drywell is used to detain runoff prior to infiltration. The infiltration rate is used in conjunction with the size of the storage area to design the facility. To prevent the onset of anaerobic conditions, the infiltration facility must be designed to drain completely 72 hours after the flow to it has stopped.

In general, an infiltration facility should have two discharge modes. The primary mode of discharge is infiltration into the ground. However, when the infiltration capacity of the facility is reached, a secondary discharge mode is needed to prevent overflow. Overflows from an infiltration facility must comply with the requirements of the local jurisdiction.

Flows to Be Infiltrated

The flows to be disposed to groundwater by drywells are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Overflow or Bypass

A primary overflow must be provided to bypass the 100-year postdeveloped peak flow over or around the flow restrictor system.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Standard Plans B-25a, B-27, B-27a, and B-27b show typical details for drywell systems. These systems are designed as specified below.

- Drywell bottoms should be a minimum of 5 feet above seasonal high ground-water level or impermeable soil layers. Refer to the *Setback Requirements* below.
- Typically, drywells are 48 inches in diameter (minimum) and are approximately 5 to 10 feet deep or more.
- Filter fabric (geotextile) may need to be placed on top of the drain rock and on trench or drywell sides before the drywell is backfilled to prevent migration of fines into the drain rock, depending on local soil conditions and local jurisdiction requirements.

- Drywells should be spaced no closer than 30 feet center-to-center or twice the structure depth in free-flowing soils, whichever is greater.
- Drywells should not be built on slopes greater than 25% (4H:1V).
- Drywells may not be placed on or above a landslide hazard area or slopes greater than 15% without evaluation by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise or a qualified geologist, and approval by the local jurisdiction.

Groundwater Issues

A site is not suitable if the infiltration of stormwater may cause a violation of Ecology groundwater quality standards. Local jurisdictions should be consulted for applicable pollutant removal requirements upstream of the infiltration facility, and to determine whether the site is located in an aquifer-sensitive area, sole-source aquifer, or a wellhead protection zone.

A drywell may be considered for runoff collection from high vehicle traffic areas. High vehicle traffic areas are road intersections with an average daily traffic volume of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway, or 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway. For such applications, sufficient pollutant removal (including oil removal) must be provided upstream of the infiltration facility to prevent violations of groundwater quality standards and adverse effects on the infiltration facility.

Vadose Zone Requirements

As mentioned under *Geometry*, the base of all infiltration systems should be at least 5 feet above the seasonal high-water level, bedrock (or hardpan), or other low-permeability layer. The base of the facility may be within 3 feet if the groundwater mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and design of the overflow or bypass structures are judged by the designer to be adequate to prevent overtopping and meet the site suitability criteria.

The designer should investigate whether the soil under the proposed infiltration facility contains contaminants that could be transported by infiltration from the facility. If so, measures should be taken for remediation of the site before the facility is constructed, or an alternative location should be chosen. The designer should also determine whether the soil beneath the proposed infiltration facility is unstable due to improper placement of fill, subsurface geologic features, or other reasons. If so, further investigation and planning should be undertaken before siting the facility.

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

Setback requirements for drywells are the same as those for infiltration ponds (see BMP IN.02).

Signage

Requirements for signs are the same as those for detention ponds (see BMP FC.03).

IN.06, Permeable Pavement Surfaces

Introduction

General Description

Currently, this BMP cannot be considered a stand-alone runoff treatment or flow control BMP. However, when used as part of a project surface, it can reduce the total runoff, thereby providing an overall reduction to the size and placement of other acceptable runoff treatment and flow control BMPs.

Permeable (porous or pervious) *surfaces* can be applied to nonpollution-generating surfaces such as pedestrian/bike paths, raised traffic islands, and sidewalks. Permeable surfaces with a media filtration sublayer (such as sand or an amended soil) could be applied to pollution-generating surfaces (such as parking lots) for calculating runoff treatment. Permeable surfaces allow stormwater to pass through and infiltrate the soil below, thereby reducing the rate and volume of runoff associated with conventional surfacing, and fostering groundwater recharge.

The permeable concrete or asphalt pavement surface is an open-graded mix placed in a manner that results in a high degree of interstitial spaces or voids within the cemented aggregate. This technique demonstrates a high degree of absorption or storage within the voids and infiltration to subsoils. The pavement may be permeable concrete, permeable asphalt, or manufactured systems such as interlocking brick or a combination of sand and brick lattice. Geo-Cell with geotextile and aggregate material may also be considered for limited applications.

Applications and Limitations

Applications

WSDOT is taking a responsible approach toward applying permeable surface systems within projects. Possible areas for use of these permeable surface materials include:

- Sidewalks, bicycle trails, community trail/pedestrian path systems, or any pedestrian-accessible paved areas (such as traffic islands).
- Vehicle access areas, including emergency stopping lanes, maintenance/enforcement areas on divided highways, and facility maintenance access roads.
- Public and municipal parking lots, including perimeter and overflow parking areas.

Permeable surface systems function as stormwater infiltration areas and temporary stormwater retention areas that can accommodate pedestrians and light- to medium-load parking areas. They are applicable to both residential and commercial applications, with the exception of heavy truck traffic. This combination of functions offers the following benefits:

- Captures and retains precipitation on-site
- Mimics natural soils filtration throughout the pavement depth, underlying sub-base reservoir, and native soils for improved groundwater quality
- Eliminates surface runoff, depending on existing soil conditions
- Greatly reduces or eliminates the need for an on-site stormwater management system
- Reduces drainage water runoff temperatures
- Increases recharge of groundwater
- Provides runoff treatment with a media filtration layer
- Thaws quicker when covered by ice and/or snow

Handling and placement practices for permeable surfaces are different from conventional pavement placement. Unlike conventional pavement construction, it is important that the underlying native or subgrade soils be nominally consolidated to prevent settling and minimize the effect of intentional or inadvertent heavy compaction due to heavy equipment operation during construction. Consolidation can be accomplished using static dual-wheel small mechanical rollers or plate vibration machines. If heavy compaction does occur, then tilling may be necessary to a depth of 2 feet below the material placement. This would occur prior to subsequent application of the separation and base layers.

Contractors shall have prior experience with constructing permeable surfaces. If a contractor does not have this experience, the contractor shall be required to construct test panels before placement of the main surfacing to demonstrate application competency.

Permeable surfaces are vulnerable to clogging from sediment in runoff and the following techniques will reduce this potential:

- Surface runoff – Permeable surfaces should not be located where turbid runoff from adjacent areas can introduce sediments onto the permeable surface. Designs should slope impervious runoff away from permeable pavement installations to the maximum extent possible.
- Diversion – French drains, or other diversion structures, may be designed into the system to avoid unintended off-site runoff. Permeable systems can be separated using edge drain systems, turnpikes, and 0.15-foot-high tapered bumps.
- Cold climates – Snow removal activities (plowing) and the use of salt and abrasives can increase the risk of clogging.
- Slopes – Off-site drainage slopes immediately adjacent to the permeable surface should be less than 5% to reduce the chance of soil loss that would cause clogging.

Limitations

Suitable grades, subsoil drainage characteristics, and groundwater table conditions require good multidisciplinary analysis and design. Proper construction techniques and diligent field inspection during the placement of permeable surfaces are also essential to a successful installation.

- Installation works best with level, adjacent slopes (1% to 2%) and on upland soils. Permeable surface installations are not appropriate when adjacent draining slopes are 5% or greater.
- An extended period of saturation of the base material underlying the surface is undesirable. Therefore, the subsurface reservoir layer should fully drain in a period of less than 36 hours.
- The minimum depth from the bottom of the base course to bedrock and seasonally high water table should be 3 feet, unless it is possible to engineer a groundwater bypass into the system.
- Sanding or repeated snow removal can lead to a reduction in surface permeability. Permeable surfaces should not be used in traffic areas where sanding or extensive snow removal is carried out in the winter.

Examples of situations where the use of permeable surfaces is not currently recommended include the following:

- Roadway lanes. Because of a number of considerations (e.g., dynamic loading, safety, clogging, heavy loads), more study and experience are needed before using permeable surfaces in these situations. Use of any type of shoulder application whereby the retained moisture drains away from the main line requires coordinated approval from materials, roadway design, hydraulics, and maintenance support staff.
- Areas where the permeable surface will be routinely exposed to heavy sediment loading.
- Areas where the risk of groundwater contamination from organic compounds is high (e.g., fueling stations, commercial truck parking areas, and maintenance and storage yards).
- Within 100 feet of a drinking water well and within areas designated as sole-source aquifers.
- Areas with a high water table or impermeable soil layer as defined in Section 4-5, Infiltration Design Guidance.
- Within 100 feet upgradient or 10 feet downgradient from building foundations. Closer upgradient distances may be considered where the minimum seasonal depth to groundwater lies below the foundation, or where it can be demonstrated that infiltrating water from the permeable surface will not affect the foundation.

General Design Criteria

All projects considering the use of permeable surfaces should be further explored in coordination with the HQ Design Office, Materials Laboratory, Hydraulics Office, and Maintenance Office.

- As long as runoff is not directed to the permeable asphalt from adjacent surfaces, the estimated long-term infiltration rate may be as low as 0.1 inch/hour. Soils with lower infiltration rates should have underdrains to prevent prolonged saturated soil conditions at or near the ground surface within the pavement section (PSAT, 2005).
- For initial planning purposes, permeable surface systems will work well on Hydrologic Soil Groups A and B, and can be considered for Group C soils. Standard three-layer placement sections for Group D soils may not be applicable.
- For projects constructed upon Group C and D soils, a minimum of three soil gradation analyses or three infiltration tests should be conducted to establish on-site soil permeability (see Design Procedure). Otherwise, a minimum of one such test should be conducted for Group A and B soils to verify adequate permeability.
- Ideally, the base layer should be designed with sufficient depth to meet flow control requirements (taking into account infiltration). If the infiltration rate and base layer's recharge bed storage does not meet flow control requirements, an

underdrain system may be required. The underdrain could be discharged to a bioretention area, dispersion system, or a stormwater detention facility.

- Turbid runoff to the permeable surface from off-site areas is not allowed. Designs may incorporate infiltration trenches or other options to ensure long-term infiltration through the permeable surface.
- Any necessary boreholes must be installed to a depth of 10 feet below the base of the reservoir layer, and the water table must be monitored at least monthly for a year.
- Infiltration systems perform best on upland soils.

On-site soils should be tested for porosity, permeability, organic content, and potential for cation exchange. These properties should be reviewed when designing the recharge bed of pervious surfaces.

Once a permeable surface site is identified, contact the WSDOT Materials Laboratory to request that a geotechnical investigation be performed. The WSDOT Materials Laboratory, with assistance from the HQ Geotechnical Division (as needed), will determine the quantity and depth of borings/test pits required and any groundwater monitoring needed to characterize the soil infiltration characteristics of the site. Table IN.06.1 provides general guidance on the overall composition of permeable surfaces based on various soil conditions.

In site locations where subgrade materials are marginal, the use of a heavy-duty geogrid placed directly on subgrade may be necessary. A sand layer is placed above the heavy geogrid, followed by geotextile for drainage. Coordination with the HQ Geotechnical Division should be made for these applications.

For determining a final design-level infiltration rate, refer to the design guidance provided in Section 4-5. (Note that this guidance applies primarily to infiltration basins and may therefore exclude slower-percolating soils such as loams, which are potentially suitable for permeable surfaces.)

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Infiltrated

The design guidance below assumes that it is feasible to meet the flow control requirements by sizing a storage volume within the subsurface layers. This needs to be explored further for viability. It is possible that the design criteria for an infiltration trench may be more comprehensive and applicable than the general guidelines provided below. There has been discussion in the past that using permeable pavement surfaces is a part of low-impact development (LID) practices and would result only in some form of credit being applied to flow control mitigation.

For western Washington, use an acceptable continuous runoff simulation model to size an infiltration basin, as described in Section 4-5, Infiltration Design Guidelines. Modeling guidance can be derived from Section 4-3.6.1, Continuous Simulation Method. For eastern Washington, use an appropriate single event-based model consistent with the Section 4-5 guidelines. For sizing purposes, use the following guidelines:

- The bottom area of an "infiltration basin" will typically be equivalent to the area below the surrounding grade underlying the permeable surface. Adjust the depth of this "infiltration basin" so that it is sufficient to store the required design volume.
- Multiply this depth by a factor of 5. This will determine the depth of the gravel base underlying the permeable surface. This assumes a void ratio of 0.20, a conservative assumption. When a base material that has a different porosity will be used, that value may be substituted to determine the depth of the base. The minimum base depth is 6 inches, which allows for adequate structural support of the permeable surface.
- For a large, contiguous area of permeable surface, such as a parking lot, the area may be designed with a level surface grade and a sloped subgrade to prevent water buildup on the surface, except under extreme conditions. Rare instances of shallow ponding in a parking lot are normally acceptable.
- For projects where ponding is unacceptable under any condition, the surface of the parking lot may be graded at a 1% slope leading to a shallow swale, which would function to ensure emergency drainage (similar to an emergency overflow from a conventional infiltration pond). However, the design depth of the base material must be maintained at all locations.

Table IN.06.1. Permeable surface application matrix.

Soil Characterization Chart for Design of Permeable Surface Layers					
Soil Type [A]	**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**Notes**
Surface Layer	1 – 4 [B]	1 – 4 [B]	1 – 4 [B]	1 – 4 [B]	4-inch depth (min.).
Base Layer	5	5	5	5	6-inch depth (min.). Aggregate base depths of 18 to 36 inches are common depending on storage needs (PSAT, 2005).
Separation Layer	7	7	7	7	The separation layer provides a permeable barrier to prevent fine soil particles from migrating up into the base aggregate.
Water Quality Treatment Layer	Not Required [C]	Not Required [C]	6 or 8	6 or 8	The treatment media can consist of a sand layer or an engineered amended soil (PSAT, 2005).
Subgrade Soil	9	9	9	9	If subgrade is overly compacted prior to constructing pavement, till soil 2 feet below the material placement to maintain the soil's permeability.
Underdrain System	No	No	To be determined	To be determined	6-inch-diameter (min.); discharged to bioretention area, natural dispersion, or a detention facility.
Edge Treatment	To be considered	To be considered	To be considered	To be considered	6-inch-diameter (min.); discharged to bioretention area, natural dispersion, or a detention facility.
Subgrade Slope	To be considered	To be considered	To be considered	To be considered	Consider slopes from 1.0% to 2.0%.
Placement Application	10 – 15	10 – 15	10 – 15	11 – 15	

Numbers Referenced in Table IN.06.1:

Surface Type
1) Portland Cement-Based Pervious Pavement Materials
2) Asphalt-Based Pervious Pavement Materials
3) Paving or Lattice Stone
4) Geo-Cell

Base Type
5) BARB (Base Aggregate for Recharge Bed) [D]

Separation
6) Sand
7) Geotextile [E]
8) Engineered Amended Soil

Miscellaneous
9) Minimum Consolidation Required

Placements
10) Residential or Access Driveways
11) Sidewalks
12) Bike Paths
13) Traffic Islands
14) Median Turn-Around
15) Parking Lots

Notes Referenced in Table IN.06.1:

[A] See Table 4B.1 in Appendix 4B for Soil Types.

[B] The separation of permeable surface installations from impermeable surface runoff may be necessary by installing an edge drain or a similar system.

[C] A treatment layer is not required where the subgrade soil has a long-term infiltration rate < 2.4 inches/hour and a cation exchange capacity greater than or equal to 5-milliequivalents/100 grams of dry soil.

[D] Variances other than that specified in the special provision, Base Aggregate for Recharge Bed, should be reviewed and included as applicable and coordinated with the WSDOT Materials Laboratory, HQ Design Office, and HQ Hydraulics Office.

[E] Permeable geotextile must be used to keep the surface layer stable and fines from migrating up through base and surface layers. To obtain geotextile classification, use Geotextile for Underground Drainage, WSDOT Standard Specification Section 9-33, as specified in the special provision Base Aggregate for Recharge Bed and WSDOT *Design Manual,* Section 530.

Facility Design Considerations

Geometry

> *The Special Provisions referenced below are still under development. Until these provisions have been completed, designers should coordinate directly with the HQ Materials Laboratory for further guidance on project application requirements.*

The following Special Provisions for permeable surfaces can be used to assist with final Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) development:

- GSP XXX, Subgrade Preparation for Pervious Surfacing
- GSP XXX, Recharge Bed for Pervious Surfacing
- GSP XXX, Pervious Asphalt
- GSP XXX, Pervious Cement Concrete

Maintenance Considerations

Permeable surfaces require more maintenance than conventional pavement installations. The primary concern in maintaining the continued effectiveness of a permeable surface system is to prevent the surface from clogging with fine sediments and debris. (See Section 5-5 for operation and maintenance guidelines.)

Materials

Permeable surfaces consist of a number of components: the surface pavement, an underlying base layer, a separation layer, and the native soil or subgrade soil (see Figure IN.06.1). An overflow or underdrain system may need to be considered as part of the pavement's overall design.

Surface Layer

The surface layer is the first component of a permeable system's design that creates the ability for water to infiltrate through the surface. Permeable paving systems allow infiltration of storm flows; however, the wearing course should not be allowed to become saturated from excessive water volume stored in the aggregate base layer (PSAT, 2005).

Portland Cement-Based Pervious Pavement Materials

The surface layer consists of specially formulated mixtures of Portland cement, uniform open-graded coarse aggregate, and potable water. The depth of the surface layer may increase from a minimum of 4 inches, depending on the required bearing strength and pavement design requirements. The gradation required to obtain a pervious concrete pavement is of the open graded or coarse type (AASHTO Grading No. 67: ¾ inch and lower). For additional information, refer to the pervious pavement specifications.

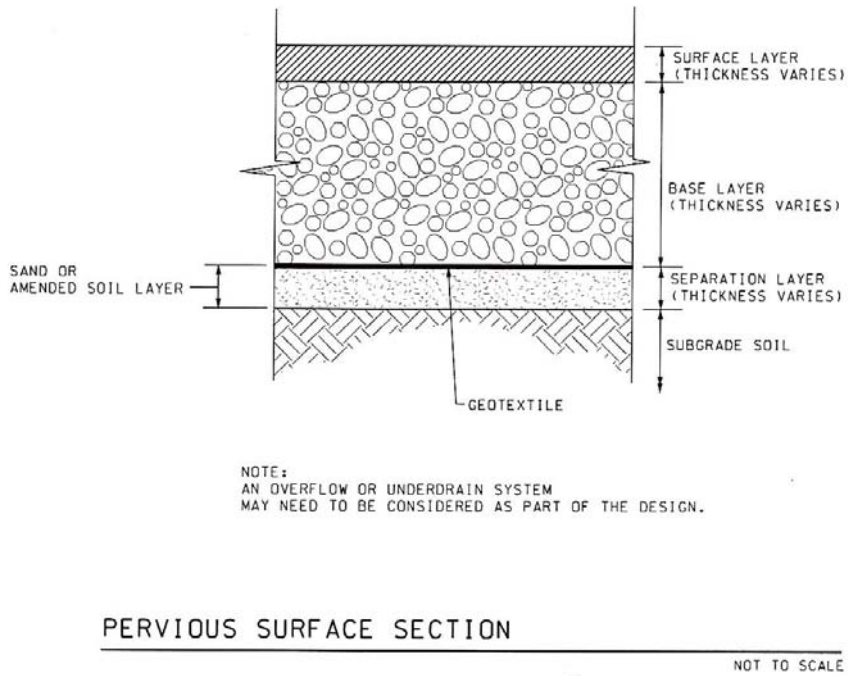


Figure IN.06.1. Permeable pavement surface detail.

Due to the relatively low water content of the concrete mix, an agent may be added to retard concrete setup time. When properly handled and installed, pervious pavement has a higher percentage of void space than conventional pavement (approximately 12% to 21%), which allows rapid percolation of stormwater through the pavement. The initial permeability can commonly exceed 200 inches per hour (Chollack et al. 2001; Mallick et al. 2000).

Asphalt-Based Pervious Pavement Materials

The surface asphalt layer consists of an open-graded asphalt mixture. The depth of the surface layer may increase from a minimum of 4 inches, depending on the required bearing strength and pavement design requirements.

Pervious asphalt pavement consists of an open-graded coarse aggregate. The pervious asphalt creates a surface layer with interconnected voids that provide a high rate of permeability.

Paving and Lattice Stone

Paving and lattice stones consist of a high-compressive-strength stone that may increase from a minimum depth of 4 inches, depending on the required bearing strength and pavement design requirements. When placed together, these paving stones create a reinforced surface layer. An open-graded fine aggregate fills the voids, which creates a system that provides infiltration into a permeable base layer. This system can be used in parking lots, bike paths, or areas that receive common local traffic.

The Ashway Park and Ride in Marysville utilized paving stones with a peat treatment layer (see photos below).

Geo-Cell (PVC Containment Cell)

A Geo-Cell surface stabilization system consists of a high-strength, UV-resistant, PVC-celled panel that is 4 inches thick. The celled panels can be filled with soil and covered with turf by installing sod. Base gravel may also be used to fill the celled panels. Both applications create a surface layer.

The Geo-Cell creates an interlock layer with interconnected voids that provide a high rate of permeability of water to an infiltrative base layer. The common application for this system is on slopes, pedestrian/bike paths, parking areas, and low-traffic areas.

Base Layer

The underlying base material is the second component of a permeable surface's design. The base material is a crushed aggregate and provides:

- A stable base for the pavement.
- A high degree of permeability to disperse water downward through the underlying layer to the separation layer.
- A temporary reservoir that slows the migration of water prior to infiltration into the underlying soil.
- Base material is often composed of larger aggregate (1.5 to 2.5 inches) with smaller stone (leveling or choker course) between the larger stone and the wearing course. Typical void space in base layers ranges from 20% to 40% (WSDOT, 2003; Cahill, Adams, and Marm, 2003).
- Depending on the target flow control standard and physical setting, retention or detention requirements can be partially or entirely met in the aggregate base (PSAT, 2005).
- Aggregate base depths of 18 to 36 inches are common depending on storage needs, and they provide the additional benefit of increasing the strength of the wearing course by isolating underlying soil movement and imperfections that may be transmitted to the wearing course (Cahill et al. 2003).

Separation Layer

The third component of permeable systems is the separation layer. This layer consists of a non-woven geotextile fabric and possibly a treatment media base material. A geotextile fabric layer is placed between the base material and the native soil to prevent migration of fine soil particles into the base material, followed by a runoff treatment media layer if required.

- For geotextile, see WSDOT Standard Specification 9-33.

- For separation base material, see the FHWA manual, *Construction of Pavement Subsurface Drainage Systems* (2002), for aggregate gradation separation base guidance.
- A treatment media layer is not required where subgrade soil is determined to have a long-term infiltration rate less than 2.4 inches per hour and a CEC of the subgrade soil that is at least 5 milliequivalents/100 grams of dry soil or greater (Ecology, 2001).
- If a treatment media layer is used, it must be distributed below the geotextile layer and above the subgrade soil. The media can consist of a sand filter layer or amended soil. Engineered amended soil layers should be a minimum of 18 inches and incorporate compost, sphagnum peat moss, or other organic material to provide a cation exchange capacity of greater than or equal to 5 milliequivalents/100 grams dry soil (Ecology, 2001). Gradations of the treatment media should follow base sizing.

Subgrade Soil

The underlying subgrade soil is the fourth component of pervious pavement. Runoff infiltrates into the soil and moves to the local interflow or groundwater layer. Compaction of the subgrade must be kept to an absolute minimum to ensure that the soil maintains a high rate of permeability, while maintaining the structural integrity of the pavement.

Liners

The primary purpose of a permeable pavement system is to promote infiltration. An impervious liner will discontinue infiltration; therefore, a flow control credit is not allowed and the surface is modeled as impervious.

Cost

Materials and mixing costs for permeable asphalt are similar to conventional asphalt. In general, local contractors are currently not familiar with permeable asphalt installation, and additional costs for handling and installation should be anticipated. Estimates for porous pavement material and installation are approximately $.60 to $.70/square foot and will likely be comparable to standard pavement as contractors become more familiar with the product. Due to the lack of experience regionally, this is a rough estimate. The cost for base aggregate will vary significantly depending on base depth for stormwater storage and is not included in the cost estimate (PSAT, 2005).

5-4.2.2 Dispersion BMPs

FC.01, Natural Dispersion

Natural Dispersion Area Along SR 516 in King County.

Introduction

General Description

Natural dispersion is the simplest method of flow control and runoff treatment. This BMP can be used for impervious or pervious surfaces that are graded to avoid concentrating flows. Natural dispersion uses the existing vegetation, soils, and topography to effectively provide flow control and runoff treatment. It requires little or no construction activity. Site selection is very important to the success of this BMP. The pollutant-removal processes include infiltration into the existing soils and through vegetation root zones; evaporation; and uptake and transpiration by the vegetation.

The key to natural dispersion is that flows from the impervious area enter the natural dispersion area as sheet flow. Because stormwater enters the dispersion area as sheet flow, it only needs to traverse a narrow band of contiguous vegetation for effective attenuation and treatment. The goal is to have the flows dispersed into the surrounding landscape, such that there is a low probability that any surface runoff will reach a flowing body of water.

Using natural dispersion on projects will result in benefits when determining applicable minimum requirements and thresholds. New impervious surfaces that drain to dispersion areas should be accounted for when determining the project’s total new impervious surface area, but the area should be counted as a noneffective impervious surface. When modeling the hydrology of the project site and threshold discharge area, the designer should treat natural dispersion areas and their tributary drainage areas as disconnected from the project site because they do not contribute flow to other flow control or runoff treatment BMPs.

Applications and Limitations

Applications

- Natural dispersion is ideal for highways and linear roadway projects.
- There are two types of natural dispersion: sheet flow dispersion and channelized dispersion.
- Natural dispersion helps maintain the temperature norms of stormwater because it promotes infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration and should not have a surface discharge to a lake or stream.
- Natural dispersion areas meet basic and enhanced runoff treatment criteria set forth in Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3.3.5.
- Natural dispersion areas meet flow control criteria set forth in Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) in Section 3.3.6.

Limitations

- The effectiveness of natural dispersion relies on maintaining sheet flow to the dispersion area, which maximizes soil and vegetation contact and prevents short-circuiting due to channelized flow. If sheet flow cannot be maintained, natural dispersion will not be effective.
- Natural dispersion areas must be protected from future development. (See the *Site Design Elements* section of this BMP.) WSDOT may ultimately have to purchase right-of-way or easements to satisfy the criteria for natural dispersion areas, but this should be the last option a designer should choose.
- Natural dispersion areas initially may cost as much as other constructed BMPs (ponds or vaults) because right-of-way or easements often need to be purchased, but long-term maintenance costs are lower. These natural areas will also contribute to the preservation of native habitat and provide visual buffering of the roadway.
- Refer to the Glossary for "noneffective impervious surfaces" to see how dispersion meets thresholds for existing impervious surfaces and thresholds.

The following are additional limitations for sites where runoff is channelized upstream of the dispersion area:

- The channelized flow must be redispersed before entering the natural dispersion area. Dispersal BMPs create sheet flow conditions.
- Energy dissipaters in conjunction with dispersal BMPs may be needed to prevent high velocities through the natural dispersion areas.
- Channelized flows are limited to on-site flows. Parallel conveyance systems may be needed to separate off-site flows. There may be situations where it might be more beneficial to disperse off-site flows. In these situations, please contact the region's or HQ Hydraulics Office.

Site Design Elements

Siting Criteria

The following areas are appropriate natural dispersion areas because they are likely to remain in their existing condition over the long term:

- WSDOT rights-of-way
- Protected beautification areas
- Agricultural areas
- State parks
- Commercial or government-owned forest lands
- Rural areas with zoned densities of less than one dwelling unit per 5 acres

Note: Though natural dispersion areas should be adjacent to the project area, they do not have to be immediately adjacent to the length of the roadway.

Natural dispersion areas should have the following attributes:

- Be well vegetated
- Have an average longitudinal slope of 15% or flatter
- Have an average lateral slope of 15% or flatter
- Have infiltrative soil properties that are verified by the WSDOT Materials Laboratory or a geotechnical engineer using the testing methods in Chapter 4

Natural dispersion areas that have impervious areas (e.g., abandoned roads with compacted subgrades) within them should have those areas tilled and restored using the soil amendments described in Section 5-4.3.2.

Natural dispersion areas that are within a landslide hazard area must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist.

Natural dispersion areas should have a separation of at least 3 feet between the existing ground elevation and the average annual maximum groundwater elevation. There should be no discernible continuous flow paths through the dispersion area.

When selecting natural dispersion areas, the designer should determine if there are groundwater management plans for the area and contact the local water purveyors to determine if the project lies within a wellhead or groundwater protection zone, septic drain fields, or aquifer recharge area. These areas typically restrict stormwater infiltration; however, the local jurisdiction may waive this requirement. The WSDOT GIS Workbench (an ArcView geographic information system tool maintained by the Environmental Information Program to provide staff with access to comprehensive, current, and detailed environmental and natural resource management data) may be a source of initial information about wells within the project limits.

Intent: Natural dispersion areas are not likely to have a uniform slope across their entire area. As a result, there are ponding areas and uneven terrain. Minor channelization of flow within the dispersion area is expected. However, a continuous flow path through the entire dispersion area disqualifies its use as a BMP because channelized flow promotes erosion of the channel that carries the flow and greatly reduces the potential for effective pollutant removal and peak flow attenuation.

Sizing Criteria

Figure FC.01.1 illustrates the configuration of a typical natural dispersion area relative to the roadway.

Sheet Flow

Sheet flow dispersion criteria for Type A, B, C, and D soils are as follows:

- The sheet flow path leading to the natural dispersion area should not be longer than 75 feet for impervious surfaces and 150 feet for pervious surfaces. The sheet flow path is measured in the direction of flow and generally represents the width of the pavement area.
- The longitudinal length of the dispersion area should be equivalent to the longitudinal length of the roadway that is contributing sheet flow.
- Roadway side slopes leading to natural dispersion areas should be 25% (4H:1V) or flatter. Roadway side slopes that are 25% to 15% (7H:1V) should not be considered part of the dispersion area. Slopes steeper than 25% are allowed if the existing side slopes are well vegetated and show no signs of erosion problems.

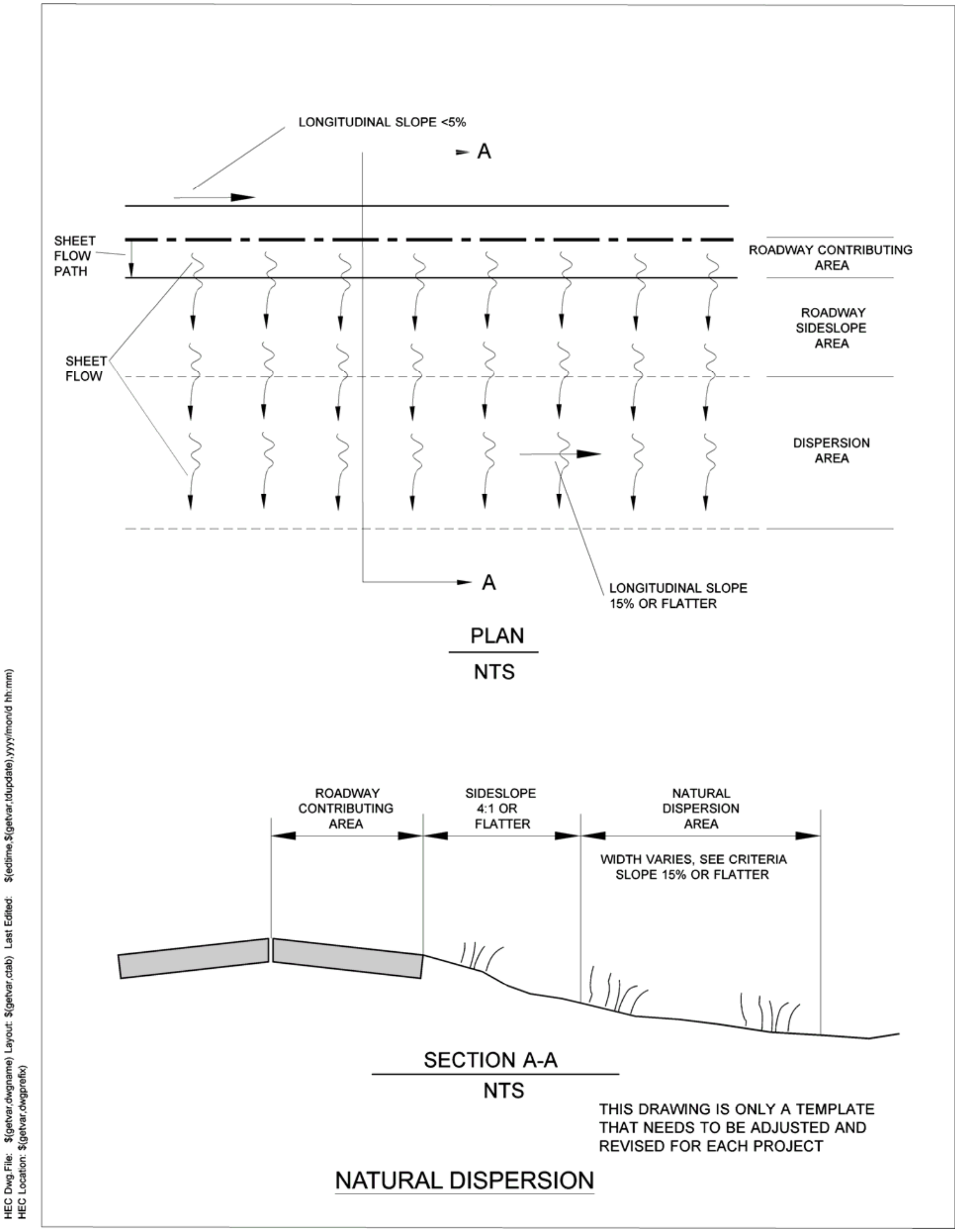


Figure FC.01.1. Natural dispersion area.

- For any existing slope that will lead to a natural dispersion area, if evidence of channelized flow (rills or gullies) is present, a flow-spreading device should be used before those flows are allowed to enter the dispersion area.
- Roadway side slopes that are 15% or flatter are considered part of the dispersion area if engineered dispersion practices are applied to the slope (6.5 feet of compost-amended side slope width mitigates for 1 foot of impervious surface width). The use of natural and engineered dispersion concepts within one threshold discharge area is acceptable.
- The longitudinal slope of the contributing area (perpendicular to the direction of sheet flow) should be less than 5%. Contributing drainage areas with slopes steeper than 5% should follow the guidance below under *Channelized Flow*, or engineered dispersion should be used.
- Pervious shoulders and side slopes are not counted in determining the sheet flow path.

The following criteria are specific to sheet flow dispersion on all Type A and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For saturated hydraulic conductivity rates (as determined in Chapter 4) of 4 inches per hour or greater and for the first 20 feet (along the sheet flow path) of impervious surface that drains to the dispersion area, there must be 10 lateral feet of dispersion area width. For each additional foot of impervious surface (along the sheet flow path) that drains to the dispersion area, 0.25 lateral feet of dispersion area should be provided.
- For dispersion areas that receive sheet flow from only disturbed pervious areas (i.e., bare soil and non-native landscaping), for every 6 feet (along the sheet flow path) of disturbed pervious area, 1 lateral foot of dispersion area width is required.

The following criteria are specific to sheet flow dispersion on all Type C and D soils and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For every 1 foot of contributing pavement width, 6.5 feet of dispersion area width is needed.
- The dispersion area should have a minimum width of native vegetation of 100 feet (measured in the direction of the flow path).

Channelized Flow

Channelized flow dispersion criteria for Type A, B, C, and D soils are as follows:

- Concentrated runoff from the roadway and adjacent upstream areas (e.g., in a ditch or cut slope) must be incrementally discharged from the conveyance system (ditch, gutter, or storm sewer) via cross culverts or at the ends of cut sections. These incremental discharges of newly concentrated flows must not exceed 0.5 cubic feet per second (cfs) at any single discharge point from the conveyance system for the 100-year runoff event (determined by an approved continuous flow model as described in Chapter 4). Where flows at a particular discharge point are already concentrated under existing site conditions (e.g., in a natural channel that crosses the roadway alignment), the 0.5-cfs limit would be in addition to the existing concentrated peak flows.

- Discharge points with up to 0.2 cfs discharge for the peak 100-year flow may use rock pads or dispersion trenches to disperse flows. Discharge points with between 0.2 and 0.5 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow must use only dispersion trenches to disperse flows.
- Dispersion trenches must be designed to accept surface flows (free discharge) from a pipe, culvert, or ditch end; aligned perpendicular to the flow path; a minimum of 2 feet by 2 feet in section, 50 feet in length; filled with ¾- to 1½-inch washed rock; and provided with a level notched grade board (see Sections 5-4.3.4 and 5-4.3.5). Manifolds may be used to split flows up to 2 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow between four trenches (maximum). Dispersion trenches must have a minimum spacing of 50 feet.
- After being dispersed with rock pads or trenches, flows from discharge points must traverse the required flow path length of the dispersion area before entering an existing on-site channel carrying existing concentrated flows away from the roadway alignment.

  Note: To provide the required flow path length to an existing channel, some roadway runoff may unavoidably enter the channel undispersed.
- Flow paths from adjacent discharge points must not intersect within the required flow path lengths, and dispersed flow from a discharge point must not be intercepted by another discharge point.
- Ditch discharge points must be located a minimum of 100 feet upgradient of steep slopes (i.e., slopes steeper than 40% within a vertical elevation change of at least 10 feet), wetlands, and streams.
- Where the local jurisdiction determines that there is a potential for significant adverse impacts downstream (e.g., erosive steep slopes, existing downstream drainage problems), dispersion of roadway runoff may not be allowed, or other measures may be required.

The following criterion is specific to channelized flow dispersion on all Type A and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For saturated hydraulic conductivity rates (as determined in Chapter 4) of 4 inches per hour or greater, the dispersion area should be at least 50% of the tributary drainage area.

The following criteria are specific to channelized flow dispersion on all Type C and D soils and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For every 1 foot of contributing pavement width, 6.5 feet of dispersion area width is needed.
- The dispersion area should have a minimum width of native vegetation of 100 feet (measured in the direction of the flow path).

Pipe or Ditch Conveyance System

Flows collected in a pipe or ditch conveyance system require energy dissipation and dispersal at the end of the conveyance system before entering the dispersion area. For flow dispersal BMPs (gravel-filled trenches, level spreaders, etc.) and techniques, see Sections 5-4.3.4 and 5-4.3.5. (See the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* for energy dissipater designs and considerations.)

Setback Requirements

- Natural dispersion areas can extend beyond WSDOT right-of-way provided that documentation on right-of-way plans ensures (via easements) that the dispersion area is not developed in the future.
- Natural dispersion areas should be set back at least 100 feet from drinking water wells; septic tanks or drain fields; and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Natural dispersion areas upgradient of drinking water supplies and within the 1-, 5-, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with health department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, 12/93).
- The designer should check with the local jurisdiction for additional setback requirements.
- If the project significantly increases flows to off-site properties, a drainage easement may be required or additional right-of-way may be purchased.

Signage

- The limits of the natural dispersion area should be marked as a stormwater management facility on WSDOT right-of-way sheets and also should be physically marked in the field (during and after construction). Signage ensures that the natural dispersion area is protected from construction activity disturbance and is adequately protected by measures shown in the temporary erosion and sedimentation control (TESC) plan.

- Signage helps ensure that the natural dispersion area is not cleared or disturbed after the construction project.

Construction Considerations

- For installation of dispersal BMPs and conveyance systems near dispersion areas, the area that needs to be cleared or grubbed should be minimized. Maintaining plant root systems is important for dispersion areas.
- The area around dispersion areas should not be compacted.
- To the maximum extent practicable, low-ground-pressure vehicles and equipment should be used during construction.

Maintenance Considerations

- Maintenance pullout areas should be considered to promote successful maintenance practices at dispersion areas. Pullout areas should be large enough to accommodate a typical maintenance vehicle. Please contact the local maintenance office to determine the typical size of maintenance vehicle used in the project area.
- General maintenance criteria should follow Table 5.5.7 (energy dissipaters).

FC.02, Engineered Dispersion

Engineered Dispersion Area Along I-5.

Introduction

General Description

Engineered dispersion is similar to natural dispersion. This BMP can be used for impervious or pervious surfaces that are graded to drain via sheet flow or are graded to collect and convey stormwater to engineered dispersion areas after going through a flow spreading or energy dissipater device. Engineered dispersion uses the existing vegetation or landscaped areas, existing soils or engineered compost-amended soils, and topography to effectively provide flow control and runoff treatment. This type of dispersion may require major or minor construction activity depending on the existing site conditions. Site selection is very important to the success of this BMP. The pollutant-removal processes include infiltration to the existing or engineered soils and through vegetation root zones; evaporation; and uptake and transpiration by the existing vegetation or landscaped areas.

The key to effective engineered dispersion is that flows from the impervious area enter the dispersion area as sheet flow. Because stormwater enters as sheet flows to the dispersion area, it need only traverse a band of contiguous vegetation and compost-amended soils for effective attenuation and treatment. This differs from natural dispersion in that flows may not have previously (preproject) been directed to the selected engineered dispersion area. Absorption capacity can be gained by using compost-amended soils to disperse and absorb contributing flows to the dispersion area. The goal is to have the flows dispersed into the surrounding landscape such that there is a low probability that any surface runoff will reach a flowing body of water.

Applications and Limitations

Applications

- Engineered dispersion is ideal for highways and linear roadway projects that collect and convey stormwater to discrete discharge points along the project.
- Engineered dispersion maintains temperature norms of stormwater because it promotes infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration and should not have a surface discharge to a lake or stream.
- Engineered dispersion areas meet basic and enhanced runoff treatment criteria set forth in Minimum Requirement 5 (Runoff Treatment) in Section 3.3.5.
- Engineered dispersion areas meet flow control criteria set forth in Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) in Section 3.3.6.

Limitations

- The effectiveness of engineered dispersion relies on maintaining sheet flow to the dispersion area, which maximizes soil and vegetated contact and prevents short-circuiting due to channelized flow. If sheet flow cannot be maintained, engineered dispersion will not be effective.

- The project must ensure that the engineered dispersion area is not developed in the future. An easement or agreement with the property owner may be needed or additional right-of-way acquisition may be necessary.
- Engineered dispersion areas may cost as much as other BMPs (ponds or vaults) because right-of-way and easements may need to be purchased and compost-amended soils may need to be added.
- To determine if the TDA threshold for flow control is exceeded, see the Glossary for "noneffective impervious surfaces."

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Dispersed

The required size of the engineered dispersion area depends on the area contributing flow and the predicted rates of water loss through the dispersion system. The designer should ensure that the dispersion area is able to dispose of (through infiltration, evaporation, transpiration, and soil absorption) stormwater flows predicted by an approved continuous runoff model.

Because a water balance model has not yet been developed for designing engineered dispersion areas, a set of conservative guidelines similar to those given for natural dispersion have been agreed upon by WSDOT and Ecology. Designers should check with region or HQ Hydraulics Office staff for updates to the engineered dispersion criteria.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

- The average longitudinal slope of the dispersion area should not exceed 15%.
- The average lateral slope of the dispersion area should not exceed 15%.
- There should be no discernible flow paths through the dispersion area.
- There should be no surface water discharge from the dispersion area to a conveyance system or Category I and II wetlands (as defined by Ecology's Wetland Rating Systems for western and eastern Washington).

Materials

- Compost-amended soils should be generously applied to the dispersion areas. The final organic content of the soil in the dispersion areas should be 10%. Design information for determining the amount and type of compost needed and the necessary planted vegetation to meet those requirements is given in Section 5-4.3.2.

Site Design Elements

Siting Criteria

The following areas are appropriate engineered dispersion areas because they are likely to remain in their existing condition over the long term:

- WSDOT rights-of-way
- Protected beautification areas
- Agricultural areas
- State parks
- Commercial or government-owned forestlands
- Rural areas with zoned densities of less than one dwelling unit per 5 acres

Engineered dispersion areas should have infiltrative soil properties that are verified by the WSDOT Materials Laboratory or a geotechnical engineer using the testing methods in Chapter 4.

Engineered dispersion areas that have impervious areas (e.g., abandoned roads with compacted subgrades) within them should have those areas tilled and reverted using the soil amendments described in Section 5-4.3.2.

Engineered dispersion areas that are within a landslide hazard area must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist. Engineered dispersion areas should not be sited above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and approval by the local jurisdiction.

Engineered dispersion areas should have a separation of at least 3 feet between the existing ground elevation and the average annual maximum groundwater elevation.

When selecting engineered dispersion areas, the designer should determine if there are groundwater management plans for the area, and contact the local water purveyors to determine if the project lies within a wellhead or groundwater protection zone, septic drain fields, or aquifer recharge area. These areas typically restrict stormwater infiltration; however, the local jurisdiction may waive this requirement. The WSDOT GIS Workbench may be a source of initial information about wells within the project limits.

Sizing Criteria

Figure FC.02.1 illustrates a typical engineered dispersion area relative to the adjacent roadway.

Sheet Flow

Sheet flow dispersion criteria for Type A, B, C, and D soils are as follows:

- The sheet flow path leading to the engineered dispersion area should not be longer than 75 feet for impervious surfaces and 150 feet for pervious surfaces. The sheet flow path is measured in the direction of flow and generally represents the width of the pavement area.
- The longitudinal length of the dispersion area should be equivalent to the longitudinal length of the roadway that is contributing sheet flow.
- Roadway side slopes leading to engineered dispersion areas should be 25% (4H:1V) or flatter. Roadway side slopes that are 25% to 15% (7H:1V) should not be considered part of the dispersion area. Slopes steeper than 25% are allowed if the existing side slopes are well vegetated and show no signs of erosion problems. For any existing slope that will lead to an engineered dispersion area, if evidence of channelized flow (rills or gullies) is present, a flow-spreading device should be used before those flows are allowed to enter the dispersion area.
- Roadway side slopes that are 15% or flatter are considered part of the dispersion area if engineered dispersion practices are applied to the slope (6.5 feet of compost-amended side slope width mitigates for 1 foot of impervious surface). The use of natural and engineered dispersion concepts within one threshold discharge area is acceptable.
- The longitudinal slope of the contributing area (perpendicular to the direction of sheet flow) should be less than 5%. Contributing drainage areas with slopes steeper than 5% should follow the guidance below under *Channelized Flow*.
- Pervious shoulders and side slopes are not counted in determining the sheet flow path.

The following criteria are specific to sheet flow dispersion on all Type A and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For saturated hydraulic conductivity rates of 4 inches per hour or greater, and for the first 20 feet (along the sheet flow path) of impervious surface that drains to the dispersion area, there must be 10 lateral feet of dispersion area width. For each additional foot of impervious surface (along the sheet flow path) that drains to the dispersion area, 0.25 lateral feet of dispersion area should be provided.
- For dispersion areas that receive sheet flow only from disturbed pervious areas (i.e., bare soil and non-native landscaping), for every 6 feet (along the sheet flow path) of disturbed pervious area, 1 lateral foot width of dispersion area is required.

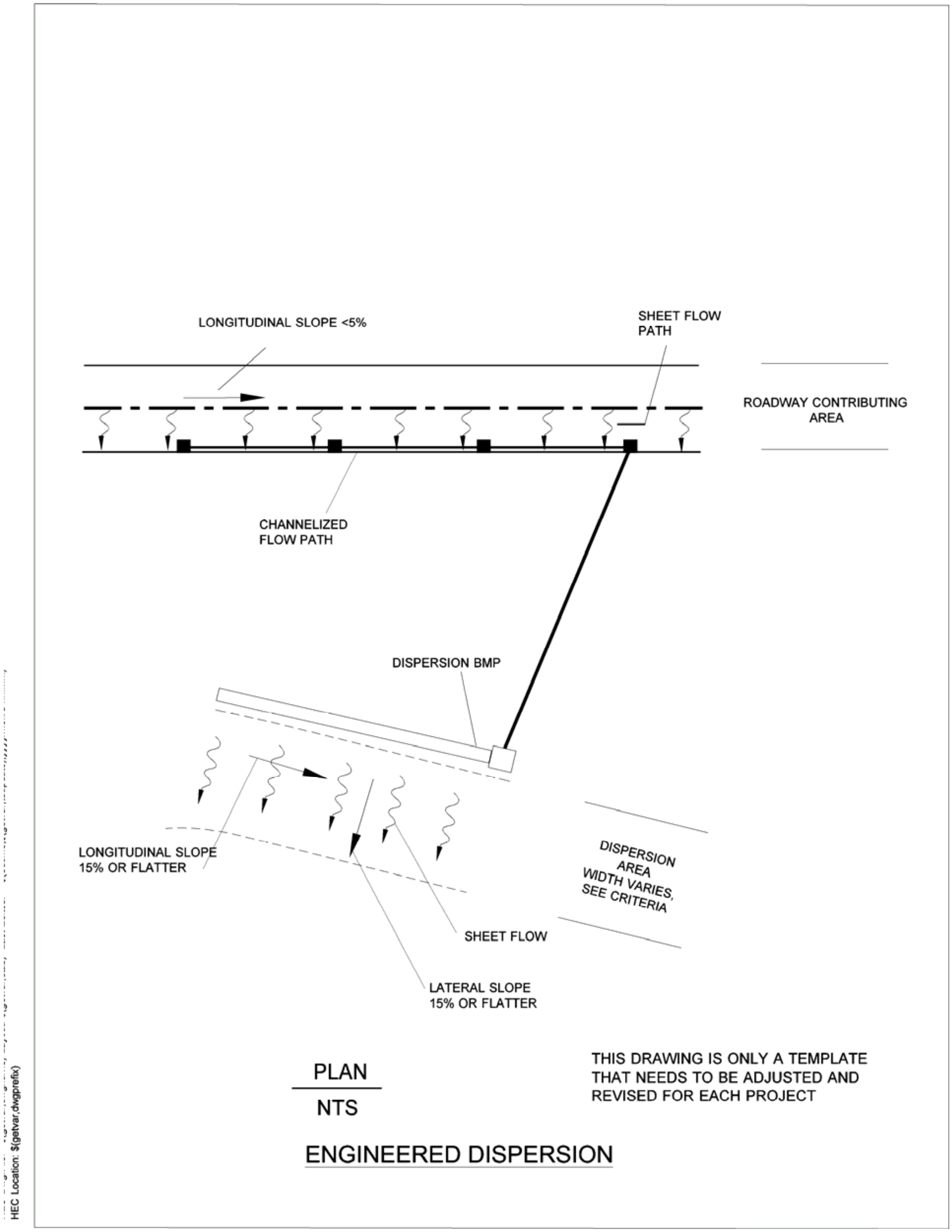


Figure FC.02.1. Engineered dispersion area.

The following criteria are specific to sheet flow dispersion on all Type C and D soils and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For every 1 foot of contributing pavement width, 6.5 feet of dispersion area width is needed.
- The dispersion area should have a minimum width of 100 feet (measured in the direction of the flow path).

Channelized Flow

Channelized flow dispersion criteria for Type A, B, C, and D soils are as follows:

- Concentrated runoff from the roadway and adjacent upstream areas (e.g., in a ditch or cut slope) must be incrementally discharged from the conveyance system (ditch, gutter, or storm sewer) via cross culverts or at the ends of cut sections. These incremental discharges of newly concentrated flows must not exceed 0.5 cfs at any single discharge point from the conveyance system for the 100-year runoff event (determined by an approved continuous flow model as described in Chapter 4). Where flows at a particular discharge point are already concentrated under existing site conditions (e.g., in a natural channel that crosses the roadway alignment), the 0.5-cfs limit would be in addition to the existing concentrated peak flows.
- Discharge points with up to 0.2 cfs discharge for the peak 100-year flow may use rock pads or dispersion trenches to disperse flows. Discharge points with between 0.2 and 0.5 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow must use only dispersion trenches to disperse flows.
- Dispersion trenches must be designed to accept surface flows (free discharge) from a pipe, culvert, or ditch end; aligned perpendicular to the flow path; a minimum of 2 feet by 2 feet in section; 50 feet in length; filled with ¾- to 1½-inch washed rock; and provided with a level notched grade board (see Sections 5-4.3.4 and 5-4.3.5). Manifolds may be used to split flows up to 2 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow between four trenches (maximum). Dispersion trenches must have a minimum spacing of 50 feet.
- After being dispersed with rock pads or trenches, flows from discharge points must traverse the required flow path length of the dispersion area before entering an existing on-site channel carrying existing concentrated flows away from the roadway alignment.

  Note: To provide the required flow path length to an existing channel, some roadway runoff may unavoidably enter the channel undispersed.
- Flow paths from adjacent discharge points must not intersect within the required flow path lengths, and dispersed flow from a discharge point must not be intercepted by another discharge point.

- Discharge points must be located a minimum of 100 feet upgradient of steep slopes (i.e., slopes steeper than 40% within a vertical elevation change of at least 10 feet), wetlands, and streams.
- Where the local jurisdiction determines that there is a potential for significant adverse impacts downstream (e.g., erosive steep slopes or existing downstream drainage problems), dispersion of roadway runoff may not be allowed, or other measures may be required.

The following criterion is specific to channelized flow dispersion on all Type A and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For saturated hydraulic conductivity rates of 4 inches per hour or greater, and for the first 20 feet (along the sheet flow path) of impervious surface that drains to the dispersion area, there must be 10 lateral feet of dispersion area width. For each additional foot of impervious surface (along the sheet flow path) that drains to the dispersion area, 0.25 lateral feet of dispersion area should be provided.

The following criteria are specific to channelized flow dispersion on Type C and D soils and some Type B soils (depending on saturated hydraulic conductivity rates):

- For every 1 foot of contributing pavement width, 6.5 feet of dispersion area width is needed.
- The dispersion area should have a minimum width of 100 feet (measured in the direction of the flow path).

Pipe or Ditch Conveyance System

- Flows collected in a pipe or ditch conveyance system require energy dissipation and dispersal at the end of the conveyance system before entering the dispersion area. For flow dispersal BMPs (e.g., gravel-filled trenches, level spreaders) and techniques, see Sections 5-4.3.4 and 5-4.3.5. (See the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* for energy dissipater designs and considerations.)

Setback Requirements

- Engineered dispersion areas can extend beyond WSDOT right-of-way, provided that documentation on right-of-way plans ensures (via easement or agreement) that the dispersion area is not developed in the future.
- Engineered dispersion areas should be set back at least 100 feet from drinking water wells, septic tanks or drain fields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Engineered dispersion areas upgradient of drinking water supplies and within the 1-, 5-, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with health department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, DOH, 12/93).

- The designer should check with the local jurisdiction for additional setback requirements.
- If the project significantly increases flows to off-site properties, a drainage easement may be required or right-of-way purchased.

Signage

- The limits of the engineered dispersion area should be marked as a stormwater management facility on WSDOT right-of-way sheets and should also physically be marked in the field (during and after construction). Signage ensures that the engineered dispersion area is protected from construction activity disturbance and is adequately protected by measures shown in the TESC plan.
- Signage helps ensure that the engineered dispersion area is not cleared or disturbed after the construction project.

Construction Considerations

- For installation of dispersal BMPs and conveyance systems near dispersion areas, the area that needs to be cleared or grubbed should be minimized. Maintaining plant root systems is important for dispersion areas.
- The area around dispersion areas should not be compacted.
- To the maximum extent practicable, low-ground-pressure vehicles and equipment should be used during construction.

Maintenance Considerations

- Maintenance pullout areas should be considered to promote successful maintenance practices of dispersion areas. Pullout areas should be large enough to accommodate a typical maintenance vehicle. Please contact the local maintenance office to determine the typical size of maintenance vehicle used in the project area.
- General maintenance criteria should follow Table 5.5.7 (energy dissipaters) and Table 5.5.9 (vegetated filter strips).

5-4.2.3 Detention BMPs

FC.03, Detention Pond

Detention Pond Along SR 18 in King County.

Introduction

General Description

Detention ponds are open basins that provide live storage volume to enable reduction of stormwater runoff flow rates and matching of predeveloped flow durations discharged from a project site (see Figures FC.03.1 and FC.03.2). Detention ponds are commonly used for flow control in locations where space is available for an aboveground stormwater facility but where infiltration of runoff is infeasible. Detention ponds are designed to drain completely after a storm event so that the live storage volume is available for the next event.

Applications and Limitations

Infiltration of runoff is the preferred method of flow control following appropriate runoff treatment. However, in areas where infiltration is not feasible, runoff detention must be implemented.

Detention ponds are designed to drain completely between storm events. They can be combined with wet pool runoff treatment BMPs to make more effective use of available land area (see BMP CO.01, Combined Wet/Detention Pond, and BMP CO.02, Combined Stormwater Treatment Wetland/Detention Pond).

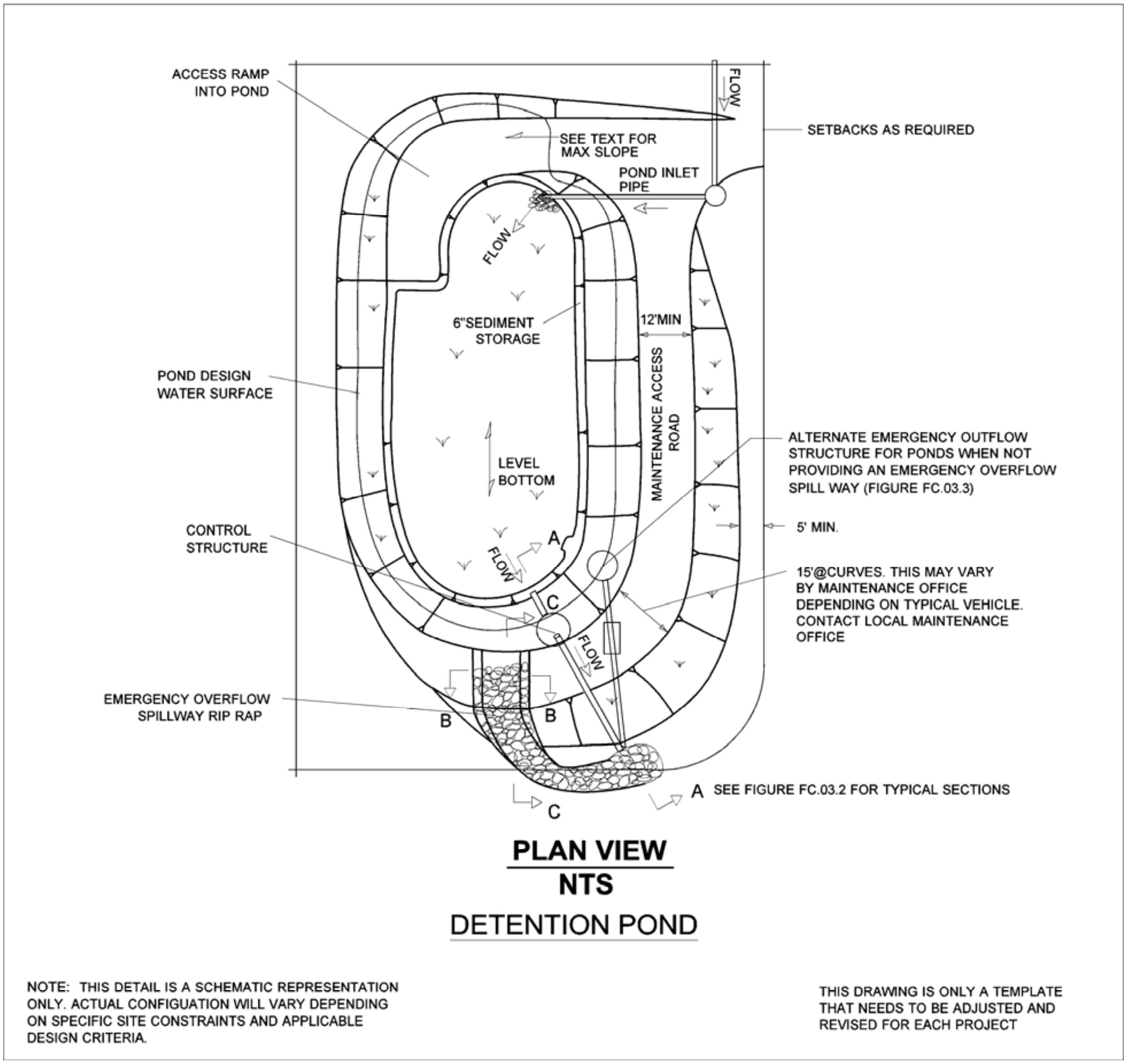


Figure FC.03.1. Detention pond.

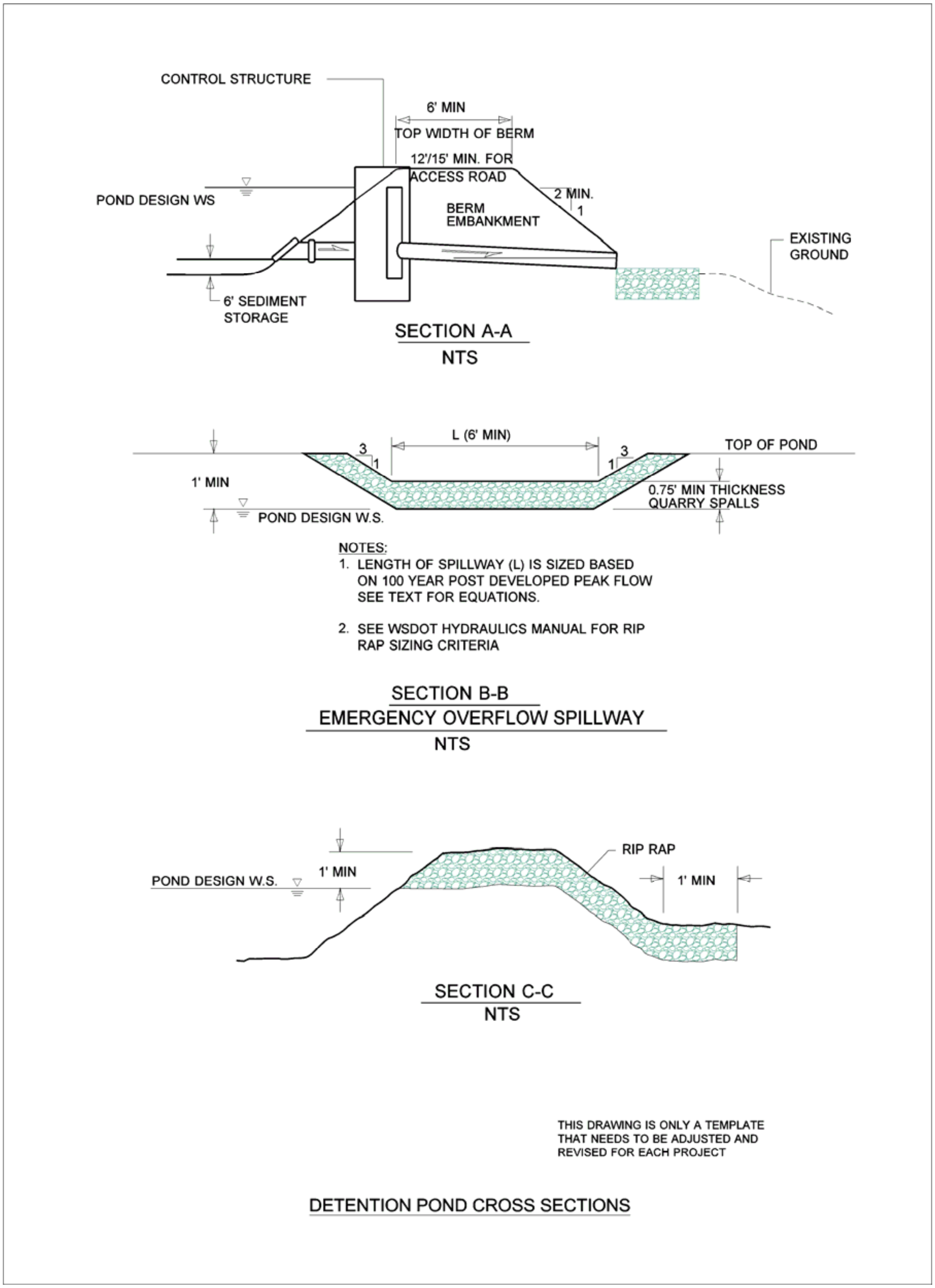


Figure FC.03.2. Detention pond: cross sections.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Detained

The volume and outflow design for detention ponds must be determined in accordance with the flow control criteria presented in Section 3-3.6 under Minimum Requirement 6. Hydrologic analysis and design methods are presented in Sections 4-3 and 4-4.

Note: The design water surface elevation is the highest water surface elevation that is projected in order to satisfy the outflow criteria.

Detention Ponds in Infiltrative Soils

Detention ponds may occasionally be sited on soils that are sufficiently permeable for a properly functioning infiltration system. These detention ponds have both a surface discharge and a subsurface discharge. If infiltration is accounted for in the detention pond sizing calculations, the pond design process and corresponding site conditions must meet all the requirements for infiltration ponds (BMP IN.02), including a soils report, soil infiltration testing, groundwater protection, presettling, and construction techniques.

Overflow or Bypass

A primary overflow (usually a riser pipe within the outlet control structure) must be provided for the detention pond system to bypass the 100-year postdeveloped peak flow over or around the flow restrictor system. Overflow can occur when the facility is full of water due to plugging of the outlet control structure or high inflows; the primary overflow is intended to protect against breaching of the pond embankment (or overflows of the upstream conveyance system). The design must provide controlled discharge of pond overflows directly into the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.

A secondary inlet to the pond discharge control structure can be provided as additional protection against overflows should the designer feel that the primary inlet pipe to the control structure would likely become plugged. In these situations, the designer should first consult with the area maintenance office to decide if a secondary inlet to the control structure would be appropriate. One option for the secondary inlet is a grated opening (called a jailhouse window) in the control structure that functions as a weir when used as a secondary inlet. Contact the region Hydraulics Office staff for the specific structural design modification requirements on this design option.

Another common option for a secondary inlet is to allow flow to spill into the top of the discharge control structure, or another structure linked to the discharge control structure, that is fitted with a debris cage (called a birdcage; see Figure FC.03.3). Other options can be used for secondary inlets, subject to assurance that they would not be plugged by the same mechanism that plugged the primary inlet pipe. The maximum circumferential length of a jailhouse window weir opening must not exceed one-half the control structure circumference.

Outlet Control Structure

Control structures are catch basins or manholes with a restrictor device for controlling outflow from a facility to meet the desired performance. Riser-type restrictor devices (tees or FROP-Ts) also provide some incidental oil/water separation to temporarily detain oil or other floatable pollutants in runoff due to accidental spill or illegal dumping.

The restrictor device usually consists of two or more orifices and/or a weir section sized to meet performance requirements.

Standard control structure details are shown in WSDOT Standard Plan B-3.

Multiple Orifice Restrictor

In most cases, control structures need only two orifices, one at the bottom and one near the top of the riser (although additional orifices may optimize the detention storage volume). Several orifices may be located at the same elevation if necessary to meet performance requirements.

- The minimum circular orifice diameter is 0.5 inches. For orifices that have a diameter of less than 1 inch, the designer should consider using a flow screen that fits over the orifice to help prevent plugging. Consult the region's or HQ Hydraulics Office for more details on orifice screens. (Note that in some instances, a 0.5-inch bottom orifice is too large to meet target release rates, even with minimal head. In these cases, the live storage depth need not be reduced to less than 3 feet in an attempt to meet the performance standards.)
- The minimum vertical rectangular orifice length is 0.25 inches.
- Orifices may be constructed on a tee section as shown in WSDOT Standard Plan B-3.
- In some cases, performance requirements may require the top orifice or elbow to be located too high on the riser to be physically constructed (e.g., a 13-inch-diameter orifice cannot be positioned 6 inches from the top of the riser). In these cases, a notch weir in the riser pipe may be used to meet performance requirements.

Consideration must be given to the backwater effect of water surface elevations in the downstream conveyance system. High tailwater elevations may affect performance of the restrictor system and reduce live storage volumes. If these conditions are present, see Section 8.4 of the *MGSFlood Users Manual* for further design guidance.

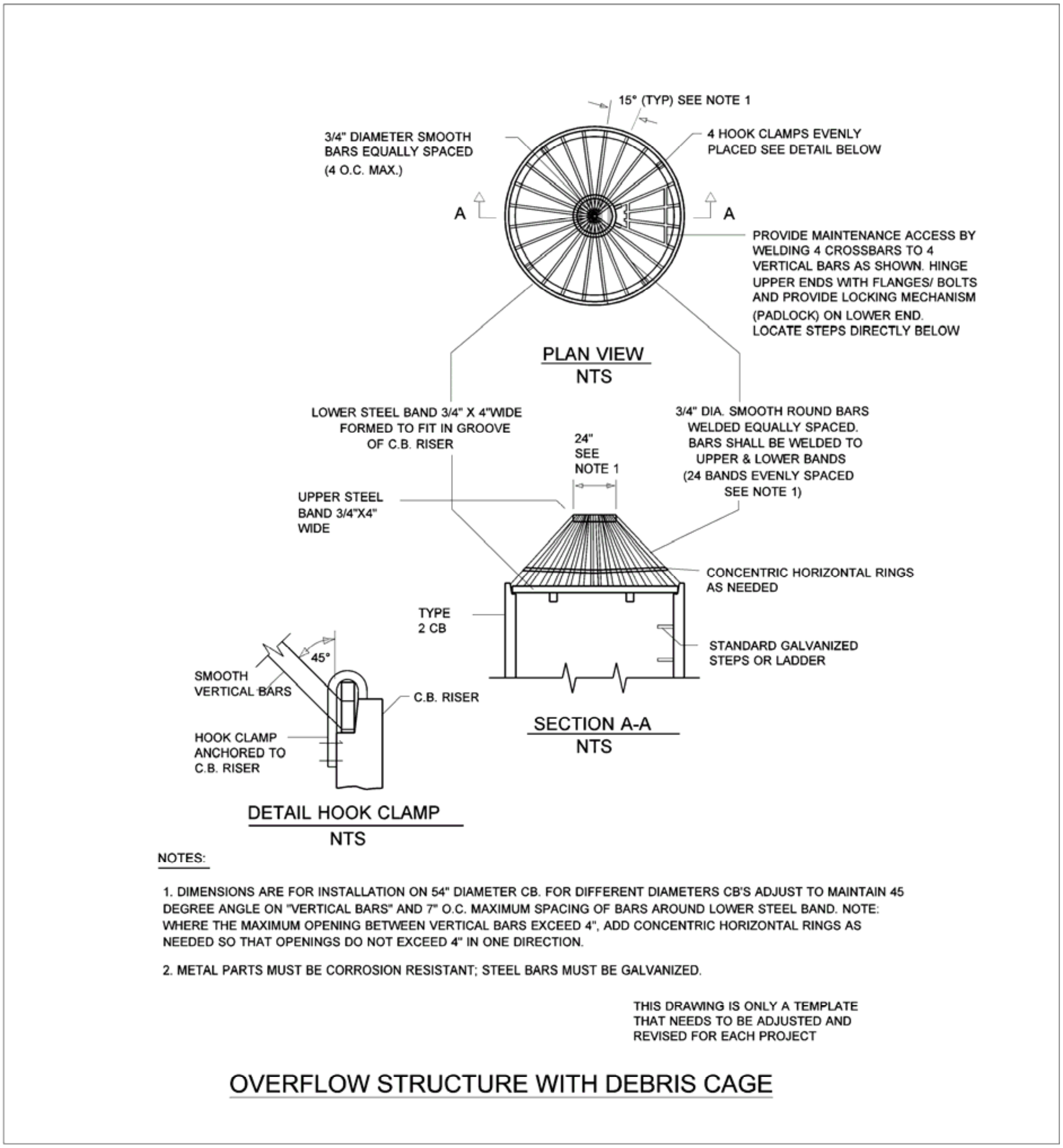


Figure FC.03.3. Overflow structure with debris cage.

Riser and Weir Restrictor

- Properly designed weirs may be used as flow restrictors. However, they must be designed to provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow discharging to the detention facility.
- The combined orifice and riser (or weir) overflow may be used to meet performance requirements; however, the design must still provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow, assuming all orifices are plugged.
- For different orifice, weir, and riser configurations and design equations and assumptions, see the MGSFlood or Western Washington Highways Hydrology Analysis Model (WHAM) training manual (☝ http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/training.htm).

Emergency Overflow Spillway

In addition to the overflow provisions described above, detention ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway. For impoundments of 10 acre-feet or greater, the emergency overflow spillway must meet the state's dam safety requirements (see discussion on dam safety later in this section). For impoundments with less than 10 acre-feet of storage, ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway that is sized to pass the 100-year postdeveloped peak flow in the event of total control structure failure (e.g., blockage of the control structure outlet pipe) or extreme inflows. Emergency overflow spillways are intended to control the location where flows overtop the pond perimeter and to direct overflows into the downstream conveyance system or other acceptable discharge point.

Emergency overflow spillways must be provided for ponds with constructed berms more than 2 feet high or for ponds located on grades more than 5%. As an option, emergency overflow may be provided by a Type II manhole fitted with a birdcage, as shown in Figure FC.03.3. The emergency overflow structure must be designed to pass the 100-year postdeveloped peak flow, with a minimum 6 inches of freeboard, directly to the downstream conveyance system or to another acceptable discharge point. Where an emergency overflow spillway would discharge to a steep slope, consideration should be given to providing an emergency overflow structure *in addition to* the spillway.

The emergency overflow spillway must be armored with riprap that is sized in conformance with guidance in the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual*. The spillway must be armored across its full width, beginning at a point midway in the cross section of the berm embankment and extending downstream to where emergency overflows reenter the conveyance system (see Figure FC.03.2).

Emergency overflow spillway designs must be analyzed as broad-crested trapezoidal weirs using the following equation (either one of the weir sections shown in Figure FC.03.2 may be used):

$$Q_{100} = C\,(2g)^{1/2}\left[\frac{2}{3}LH^{3/2} + \frac{8}{15}(\mathrm{Tan}\,\theta)\,H^{5/2}\right] \qquad \textbf{(FC.03-11)}$$

where: Q_{100} = peak flow for the 100-year runoff event (cfs)
C = discharge coefficient (0.6)
g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)
L = length of weir (ft)
H = height of water over weir (ft)
θ = angle of side slopes.

Assuming C = 0.6 and Tan θ = 3 (for 3H:1V slopes), the equation becomes:

$$Q_{100} = 3.21[LH^{3/2} + 2.4\,H^{5/2}] \qquad \textbf{(FC.03-12)}$$

To find the width *L* for the weir section, the equation is rearranged to use the computed Q_{100} and trial values of H (0.2 feet minimum):

$$L = [Q_{100}/(3.21H^{3/2})] - 2.4\,H \text{ or 6 feet minimum} \qquad \textbf{(FC.03-13)}$$

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Pond inflows must enter through a conveyance system separate from the outlet control structure and outflow conveyance system. Maximizing distance between the inlet and outlet is encouraged to promote sediment trapping.

Pond bottoms must be level and a minimum of 0.5 feet below the outlet invert elevation to provide sediment storage.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- Interior side slopes up to the emergency overflow water surface should not be steeper than 3H:1V unless a fence is provided (see *Fencing* below).
- Exterior side slopes must not be steeper than 2H:1V unless analyzed for stability by a geotechnical engineer.
- Pond walls may be vertical retaining walls subject to the following:
    - They are constructed of minimum 3,000-psi structural reinforced concrete.
    - All construction joints must be provided with water stops.
    - Cast-in-place wall sections must be designed as retaining walls. A licensed civil engineer with structural expertise must stamp structural designs for cast-in-place walls.

  - ☐ Walls must be placed on stable, well-consolidated native material with suitable bedding per the WSDOT Standard Specifications. Walls must not be placed in fill slopes unless the slopes have been analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructibility.
  - ☐ A fence is provided along the top of the wall.
  - ☐ Although the entire pond perimeter may be retaining walls, it is recommended that at least 25% of the pond perimeter be a vegetated soil slope not steeper than 7H:1V. Steeper slopes are permitted; consult with the local maintenance office.
  - ☐ The designer discusses the design of the pond with the local maintenance office to determine if there are maintenance access issues.
  - ☐ The design is stamped by a licensed civil engineer with structural expertise.
- Other retaining walls such as rockeries, concrete, masonry unit walls, and keystone-type walls may be used if designed under the direction of a geotechnical engineer or a civil engineer with structural expertise. If the entire pond perimeter is to be retaining walls, ladders should be provided on the full height of the walls for safe access by maintenance staff.

Embankments

- Pond berm embankments must be constructed in accordance with Section 2-03.3(14)C Method C of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.
- For berm embankments 6 feet high or less, the minimum top width should be 6 feet or as recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
- Pond berm embankments must be constructed on native consolidated soil (or adequately compacted and stable fill soils analyzed by a geotechnical engineer), free of loose surface soil materials, roots, and other organic debris.
- Pond berm embankments greater than 4 feet high must be constructed by excavating a key trench equal to 50% of the berm embankment cross-sectional height and width, unless specified otherwise by a geotechnical engineer.
- Antiseepage filter-drain diaphragms must be placed on outflow pipes in berm embankments impounding water with depths greater than 8 feet at the design water surface. Additional guidance on filter-drain diaphragms is given in Ecology's Dam Safety Guidelines, Part IV, Dam Construction and Design (Section 3.3B, pages 70–72):
  http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/Images/pdfs/guidelines_part_4.pdf

Dam Safety for Detention BMPs

Stormwater detention facilities that can impound 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet, or 3.26 million gallons) or more of runoff with the water level at the embankment crest are subject to state dam safety requirements, even if water storage is intermittent and infrequent (WAC 173-175-020[1]). The principal safety concern is for the downstream population at risk if the embankment or other impoundment structure should breach and allow an uncontrolled release of the pond contents. Peak flows from impoundment failures are typically much larger than the 100-year flows, which these ponds are typically designed to accommodate.

Ecology's Dam Safety Office uses consequence-dependent design levels for critical project elements. There are eight design levels with storm recurrence intervals ranging from 1 in 500 years for design step 1, and to 1 in 1,000,000 years for design step 8. The specific design step for a particular project depends on the downstream population and other resources that would be at risk from a failure of the impoundment. Precipitation events more extreme than the 100-year event may be rare at any one location, but have historically occurred somewhere within Washington State every few years (on average).

With regard to the engineering design of stormwater detention facilities, the primary effect of the state's dam safety requirements is in sizing the emergency spillway to accommodate the runoff from the dam safety design storm without overtopping the impoundment structure (typically a berm or other embankment). The hydrologic computation procedures are the same as those for the original pond design, except that the computations must use more extreme precipitation values and the appropriate dam safety design storm hyetographs. This information is described in detail within guidance documents developed by and available from the Dam Safety Office (contact information is provided below). In addition to the other design requirements for stormwater detention BMPs described elsewhere in this manual, dam safety requirements should be an integral part of planning and design for stormwater detention ponds. It is most cost effective to consider these requirements at the beginning of the project.

In addition to the hydrologic and hydraulic issues related to precipitation and runoff, other dam safety requirements relate to geotechnical issues; construction inspection and documentation; dam breach analysis; inundation mapping; emergency action planning; and periodic inspections by project owners and by engineers from the Dam Safety Office. All of these requirements, plus procedural requirements for plan review, approval, and payment of construction permit fees are described in detail in guidance documents developed by and available from the Dam Safety Office.

In addition to the written guidance documents, engineers from the Dam Safety Office are available to provide technical assistance to project owners and design engineers in understanding and addressing the dam safety requirements for their specific project. In the interest of providing a smooth integration of dam safety requirements into the stormwater detention project and streamlining the Dam Safety Office engineering review and issuance of the construction permit, it is recommended and requested that the Dam Safety Office be contacted early in the project planning process. The Dam Safety Office is located in the Ecology Headquarters building in

Lacey. Electronic versions of the guidance documents in PDF format are available on the Ecology web site (http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/dss.html).

Groundwater Issues

Identification and Avoidance

Flow control BMPs must be constructed above the seasonal high groundwater table. Storage capacity and proper flow attenuation are compromised if groundwater levels are allowed to fluctuate above the limits of live storage. The project should locate flow control pond, vault, and tank locations within the TDA such that there is a separation between the local groundwater table elevation and the bottom of the proposed BMP. In some cases, this may require that a much shallower pond be constructed in order to function properly.

The groundwater table elevation in and around the flow control facility needs to be determined early on in the project. This can be done by installing piezometers at the BMP location and taking water table readings over at least one wet season. The wet season is generally defined as October 1 through April 30. Where it has been determined that site conditions within the project limits are not conducive to constructing flow control facilities due to high groundwater levels, it may be necessary to evaluate potential project impacts and solutions using the EEF Checklist in Appendix 2A or by following the *demonstrative approach* discussed in Section 1-1.3. Designers should look for opportunities to provide flow control to an equivalent area in the project that discharges to the same sensitive area or receiving water body.

Seeps and Springs

Intermittent seeps along cut slopes are typically fed by a shallow groundwater source (interflow) flowing along a relatively impermeable soil stratum. These flows are storm-driven and should discontinue after a few weeks of dry weather. However, if the site exhibits other more continuous seeps and springs, extending through longer dry periods, they are likely from a deeper groundwater source. When continuous flows are intercepted and directed through flow control facilities, adjustments to the facility design may have to be made to account for the additional base flow (unless already considered in the design).

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

Detention ponds must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line or vegetative buffer. This distance may need to be increased based on the permit requirements of the local jurisdiction.

Detention ponds must be 100 feet from any septic tank or drain field (except wet vaults, which must be a minimum of 20 feet).

The designer should request from the WSDOT Materials Laboratory a geotechnical report for the project that evaluates any potential structural site instability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties (especially on hills with known side-hill seeps). The report should address the adequacy of the proposed detention pond locations and recommend the necessary setbacks from any steep slopes and building foundations.

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

The project should revegetate the side slopes of the flow control pond to the maximum extent practicable. The minimum vegetation effort would be to hydroseed the pond's interior (above the 100-year water surface elevation) and the exterior side slopes before completion of the project.

Fencing

Pond walls may be retaining walls as long as a fence is provided along the top of the wall and at least 25% of the pond perimeter will have a slope of 3H:1V or flatter. (See Section 1460.03(4) of the *Design Manual* for additional fencing requirements.)

Signage

The local jurisdiction may require that the detention pond have a sign. The sign should be placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. (See the region's or HQ Hydraulics Office for signage specifications.)

General Maintenance Requirements

For general maintenance requirements, see Section 5-3.7.1.

5-4.3 Stormwater Facility Components

5-4.3.1 Pretreatment

RT.24, Presettling/Sedimentation Basin

Introduction

General Description

A *presettling basin* provides pretreatment of runoff to remove suspended solids that can impact other primary runoff treatment BMPs (see Figures RT.24.1 and RT.24.2).

Applications and Limitations

The most attractive aspect of a presettling basin is its isolation from the rest of the facility. Presettling basins allow sediment to fall out of suspension. However, they do not detain water long enough for removal of most pollutants, such as some metals. Presettling basins are used frequently as pretreatment for downstream infiltration facilities and to protect more sensitive facilities (such as constructed stormwater treatment wetlands) from excessive sediment loads.

Runoff treated by a presettling basin may not be discharged directly to a receiving water body; it must be further treated by a basic or enhanced runoff treatment BMP.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

A presettling basin should be designed with a wet pool. The runoff treatment volume must be at least 30% of the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

Overflow or Bypass

Presettling basin design must take into consideration the possibility of overflows. A designed overflow section should be constructed along the presettling basin embankment to allow flows to exit at a nonerosive velocity during the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. The overflow may be set at the permanent pool level. The use of an aquatic bench with emergent vegetation around the perimeter helps with water quality.

Inlet Structure

The runoff treatment volume should be discharged uniformly and at low velocity into the presettling basin to maintain near-quiescent conditions, which are necessary for effective treatment. It is desirable for the heavier suspended material to drop out near the front of the basin. Energy-dissipation devices may be necessary to reduce inlet velocities that exceed 3 feet per second.

Outlet Control Structure

The outlet structure conveys the runoff treatment volume from the presettling basin to the primary treatment BMP (e.g., wetland, sand filtration basin). The passive outlet control structure can be created as an earthen berm, gabion, concrete, or riprap wall along the separation embankment preceding the primary treatment BMP.

Structure Design Considerations

Geometry

A long, narrow basin is preferred because it is less prone to short-circuiting and tends to maximize available treatment area. The length-to-width ratio should be at least 3:1, and preferably 5:1. The inlet and outlet should be at opposite ends of the basin, where feasible.

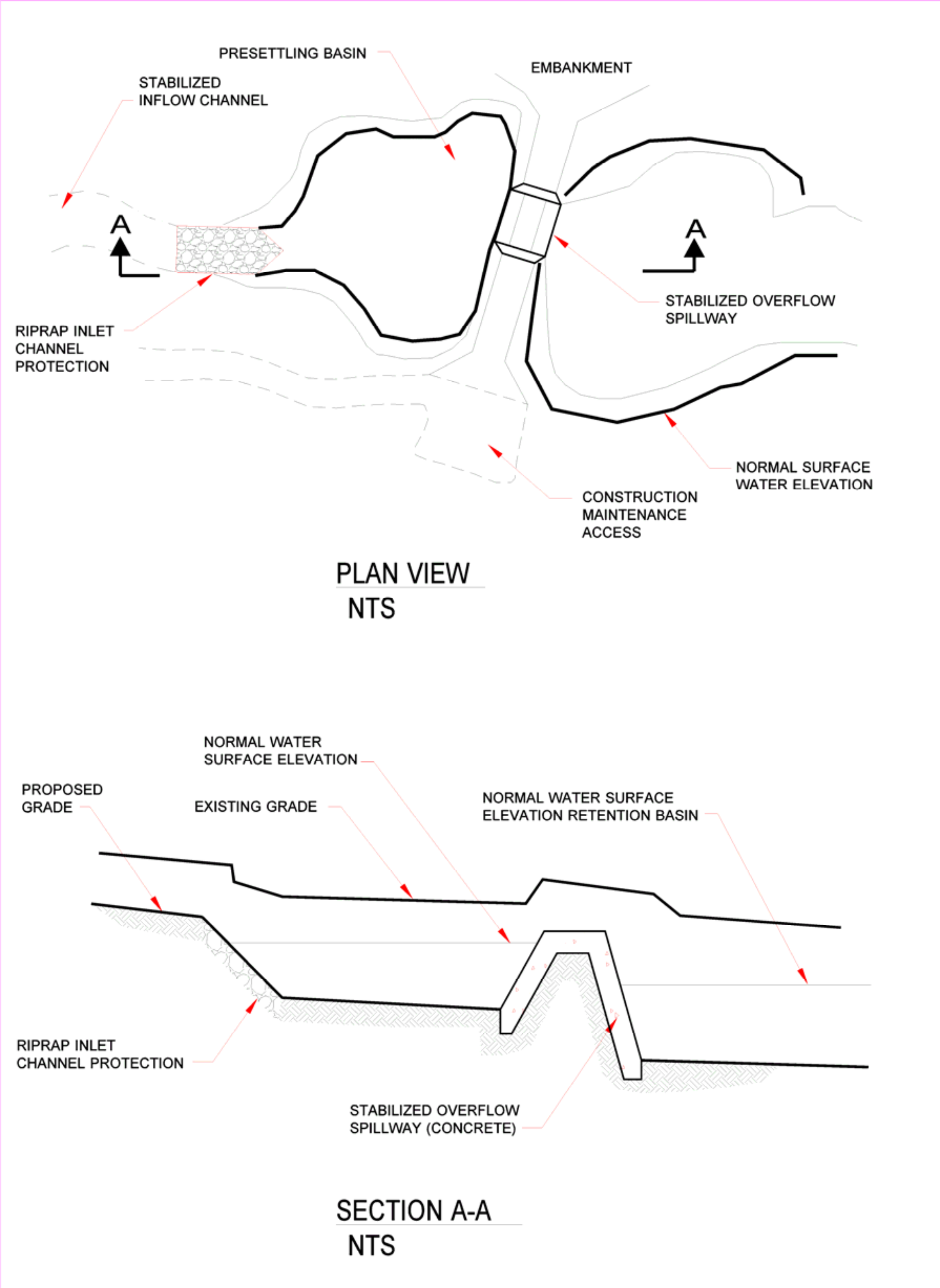


Figure RT.24.1. Typical presettling/sedimentation basin.

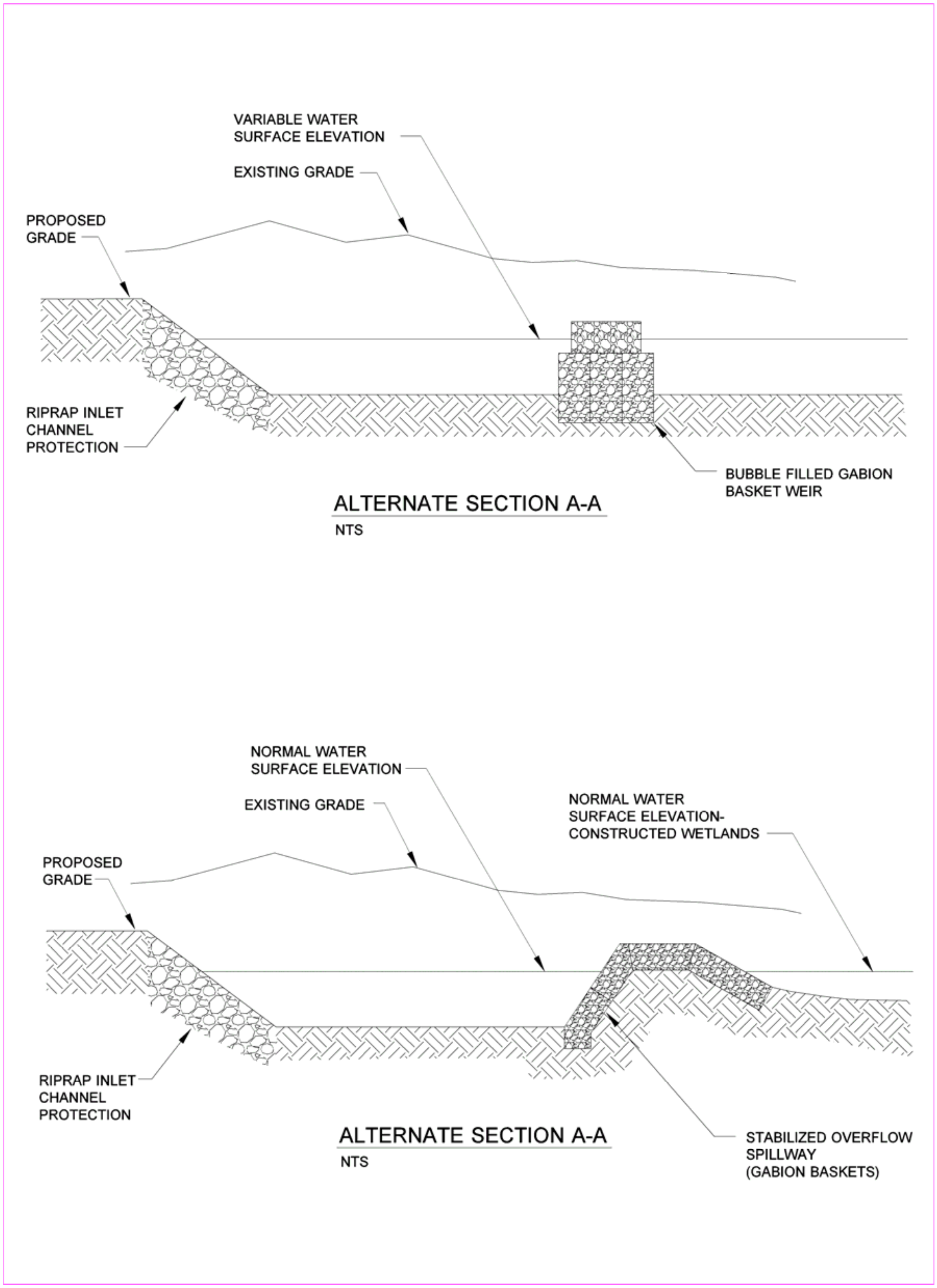


Figure RT.24.2. Presettling/sedimentation basin: alternate sections.

Materials

Widely acceptable construction materials and specifications, such as those developed by the USDA National Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) or the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers for embankment ponds and reservoirs, may aid in building the impoundment.

Berms, Embankments, Baffles, and Slopes

Berm embankments must be constructed on native consolidated soil (or adequately compacted and stable fill soils analyzed by a geotechnical report) free of loose surface soil materials, roots, and other organic debris.

The inlet and outlet should be at opposite ends of the basin where feasible. If this is not possible, then baffles can be installed to increase the flow path and water residence time.

Exposed earth on the side slopes and bottom should be sodded or seeded with the appropriate seed mixture as soon as is practicable. If necessary, geotextile or matting may be used to stabilize slopes until seeding or sodding become established.

If composed of a structural retaining wall, interior side slopes may be nearly vertical as long as maintenance access is provided. Otherwise, they should be no steeper than 3H:1V. Exterior embankment slopes should be 2H:1V or less. The bottom of the basin should have a 2% slope to allow complete drainage. The minimum depth must be 4 feet; the maximum depth must be 6 feet.

Embankments that impound water must comply with Washington dam safety regulations (WAC 173-175). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,000 cubic feet, or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then a dam safety design and review are required.

Liners

If the basin intercepts the seasonal high groundwater table, a liner is recommended. In these situations, a low-permeability liner or treatment liner must cover the bottom and side areas. (See liner guidance in Section 5-4.3.2 for further information.)

Site Design Elements

Setback Requirements

- Presettling basins must be a minimum of 5 feet from any property line or vegetative buffer. This distance may need to be increased based on the permit requirements of the local jurisdiction.
- Presettling basins must be 100 feet from any septic tank or drain field (except wet vaults, which must be a minimum of 20 feet).

- The designer should request from the WSDOT Materials Laboratory a geotechnical report for the project that evaluates any potential structural site instability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties (especially on hills with known side-hill seeps). The report should address the adequacy of the proposed presettling basin locations and recommend the necessary setbacks from any steep slopes and building foundations.

Safety, Signage, and Fencing

Basins that are readily accessible to populated areas should incorporate all possible safety precautions. Dangerous outlet facilities should be protected by enclosure. Warning signs should be used wherever appropriate. Signs should be placed so that at least one is clearly visible and legible from all adjacent streets, sidewalks, or paths.

Maintenance

Failure of large impoundment structures can cause significant property damage and even loss of life. Impoundment structures should be regularly inspected for signs of failure, such as seepage or cracks in the walls or berm.

Presettling basins are less likely than wet ponds to build up excessive levels of heavy metals from sediments washed off impervious areas. Routine maintenance should remove and properly dispose of any significant sediment deposits. Sediment should be removed every 3 to 5 years, or when 6 to 12 inches have accumulated, whichever comes first. More frequent removal of sediment from the presettling basin may be less costly over the same time period than a one-time cleaning of the entire basin. (See Section 5-5 for further guidance.)

5-4.3.2 Soil Amendments

Introduction

General Description

Soil amendments, including compost and other organic materials, help restore the health of the soil and increase environmental functions such as rainwater infiltration and natural detention, evapotranspiration, and plant health. Soil amendments can help prevent or minimize adverse stormwater impacts during construction, and are used along with vegetation as a permanent runoff treatment BMP. Compost is a versatile material that can be used as a component in many other permanent and temporary stormwater BMPs.

Compost-amended soils can be modeled as pasture on native soil. The final organic content of these soils should be 10% for all areas excluding turf areas that are expected to receive a high amount of foot traffic. Turf (lawn) areas with high foot traffic must have a 5% final organic content.

Applications and Limitations

Soil amendments can be used in most unpaved areas within the project. If soil amendments are applied as a blanket, they perform erosion control functions immediately by providing a cover to bare soils. When incorporated into the soil, they increase infiltration and adsorption of metals and aid in the uptake of nutrients. They also enhance vegetation growth and plant establishment.

Compost provides an excellent growing medium for roadside vegetation. Traditional highway construction methods typically result in the excavation and removal of the area's topsoil. Roadway embankments are then constructed from material that has few nutrients, is low in organic material, and is compacted to 95% maximum density. Adding compost to roadway slopes and ditches provides soil cover, improves soil fertility and texture, and greatly improves the vegetative growth and soil stability (thereby reducing erosion).

Organic soil amendments soak up water like a sponge and store it until it can be slowly infiltrated into the ground or taken up by plants. (For instance, 4 inches of compost tilled into 8 inches of Alderwood series soil increased the water storage capacity by 100% [Harrison et al. 1997].) In some BMP applications, the volume of compost can be sized to absorb and hold the runoff treatment storm.

Compost is an excellent filtration medium, which provides treatment for highway runoff. Compost has a high cation exchange capacity (CEC) that chemically traps dissolved heavy metals and binds them to the compost material. Oils, grease, and floatables are also removed from stormwater as it is filtered through the compost.

Compost is very absorbent when dry, but when saturated, it has a high infiltration rate. Therefore, greater storm events can pass through compost medium without hindering the infiltration rates of underlying soils or drain materials. Compost has also been shown to improve the infiltration rates of underlying soils, even till soils.

Placement of a compost blanket on bare soil helps stabilize the soil and prevent surface erosion by intercepting rainfall. This type of application changes the texture and workability of the soil, lengthens the acceptable seeding windows, and encourages plant growth.

Compost soil amendments can be used in the construction phase of projects as compost berms in lieu of conventional geotextile silt fences for sediment control (see BMP 30, Filter Berm, in Appendix 6A). While being an effective sediment trap during the construction phase, compost berms are advantageous in that they can be bladed out at the construction site, which avoids bid items for the haul and disposal of silt fences. If the permanent stormwater design involves use of compost-amended vegetated filter strips, a batch of compost can be used as sediment control in a berm, then the berm can be bladed out along a highway roadside, where it can be used as part of vegetated filter strip construction.

Maintenance

Compost, as with sand filters or other filter mediums, can become plugged with fines and sediment, which may require removal and replacement. Including vegetation with compost helps prevent the medium from becoming plugged with sediment by breaking up the sediment and creating root pathways for stormwater to penetrate into the compost.

Structural Design Considerations

Materials

Compost material must be aged and cured according to Section 9-14.4(8) of the WSDOT Standard Specifications.

There are two types of compost specified in the WSDOT Standard Specifications: Type 1 and Type 2. Compost Type 1 is a finer and usually more mature form of compost. It is for general soil amendment use and should not be used for compost filter berms. Compost Type 2 has been screened to remove most of the fines. This type is specified for compost berms to prevent clogging and thus potential failure of the filter berm. Both types of compost can be used as a soil amendment or blanket depending on the soil type and desired final outcome. Consult the region's or HQ Landscape Architect or the State Horticulturist for site-specific recommendations.

Soil amendments can be used two ways: placed on top of the soil or incorporated into it. The intent of incorporation is to increase the organic content of the soil, replicating a forested soil condition. Figure 5.4.3.1 shows a typical detail for soil amendments used in a woody planting area.

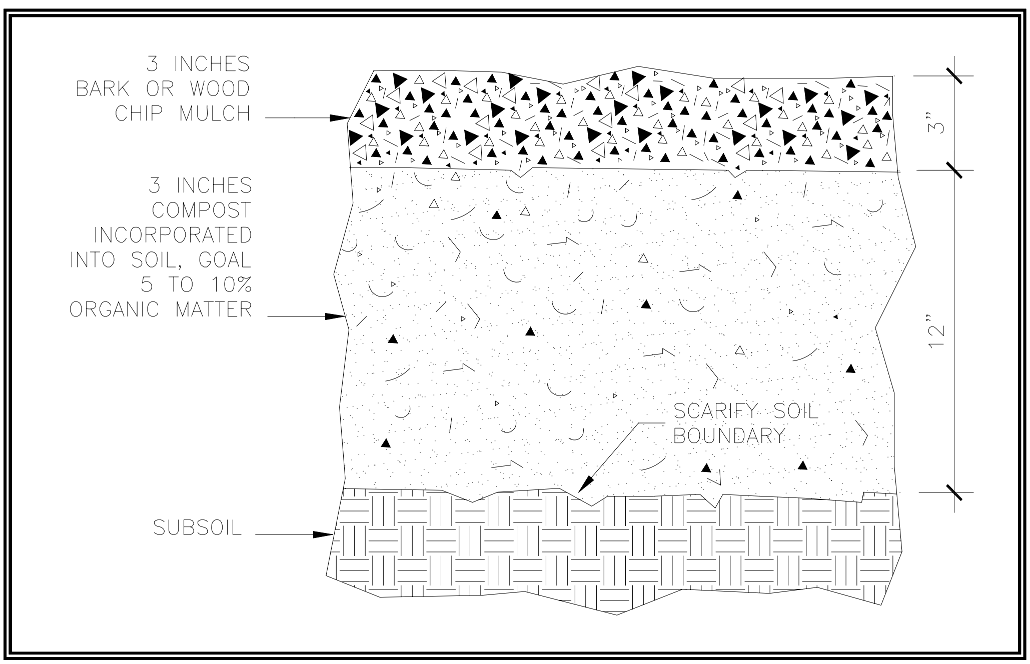


Figure 5.4.3.1. Amendments to encourage native woody plants.

To encourage native woody plant species, the following *presumptive* technique can be employed:

- Incorporate 3 inches of compost Type 2 into the top 8 inches of soil
- Place 3 inches of bark or wood chip mulch on the surface
- Plant through these layers

The organic content of the soil should be 10% for areas planted with woody species and 5% for lawn areas after adding the amendments. (Note that WSDOT does not construct many lawn areas. Some projects in urban and semiurban areas may include lawn areas. Lawns are areas that will be mowed regularly and may contain irrigation. Roadside areas that are hydroseeded for erosion control are not considered lawn areas.) The amount of compost or other soil amendments used varies by soil type and organic matter content. If there is a good possibility that site conditions may already contain a relatively high organic content, then it may be possible to modify the presumptive technique described above and still be able to achieve the 10% organic content target. The State Horticulturist, located in the HQ Design Office, is available to determine the amount of organic material in the project soils and the amount of soil amendments needed to bring the organic matter to the percentages listed above.

The design of the final soil composition is critical to the success of the facility. Use the following guidelines to design the soil mix:

- The texture for the soil component of the LID BMP soil mix should be loamy sand (USDA Soil Textural Classification).
- The final soil mix (including compost and soil) should have a minimum long-term hydraulic conductivity of 1.0 inch/hour per ASTM Designation D 2434 (Standard Test Method for Permeability of Granular Soils) at 80% compaction per ASTM Designation D 1557 (Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort) (Tackett, 2004). Infiltration rate and hydraulic conductivity are assumed to be approximately the same in a uniform mix soil.
- The final soil mixture should have a minimum organic content of 10% by dry weight per ASTM Designation D 2974 (Standard Test Method for Moisture, Ash and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils) (Tackett, 2004). Currently, gravelly sand LID BMP soil mixtures are being developed and installed to provide adequate infiltration rates at 85% to 95% compaction. While designers anticipate good performance from this specification, the mix may be slightly less than optimal for plant growth and has not been tested long-term for plant health performance.
- Achieving the above recommendations will depend on the specific soil and compost characteristics. In general, the recommendation can be achieved with 60% to 65% loamy sand mixed with 25% to 30% compost or 30% sandy loam, 30% coarse sand, and 30% compost.

- The final soil mixture should be tested by the WSDOT Materials Laboratory prior to installation for fertility, micronutrient analysis, and organic material content. Soil amendments per State Horticulture recommendations (if any) should be uniformly incorporated for optimum plant establishment and early growth (Tackett, 2004).
- Clay content for the final soil mix should be less than 5%.
- The pH for the soil mix should be between 5.5 and 7.0 (Stenn, 2003). If the pH falls outside of the acceptable range, it may be modified with lime to increase the pH or iron sulfate plus sulfur to lower the pH. The lime or iron sulfate must be mixed uniformly into the soil prior to use in LID areas (Low-Impact Development Center, 2004).
- Soil depth should follow the design guidance in Chapter 5 and provide acceptable minimum pollutant attenuation and good growing conditions for selected plants.
- The soil mix should be uniform and free of stones, stumps, roots, or other similar material larger than 2 inches.
- The above guidelines should provide a soil texture, an organic content, and an infiltration rate suitable to meet SSC-7, Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment (in Chapter 4), recommendations for designing infiltration systems. A soils report evaluating these parameters should be provided to verify the treatment capability of the soil mix.

Compost

Organic soil amendment, suitable for landscaping and stormwater management, should be a stable, **mature compost** derived from organic waste materials, including yard debris, manures, biosolids, wood wastes, or other organic materials that meet the intent of the organic soil amendment specification. **Compost stability** indicates the level of microbial activity in the compost and is measured by the amount of CO^2 produced over a given period of time by a sample in a closed container. Unstable compost can render nutrients temporarily unavailable and create objectionable odors.

Compost quality can be determined by examining the material and by qualitative tests. A simple way to judge compost quality is to smell and examine the finished product, which should have the following characteristics (WORC, 2003):

- Earthy smell that is not sour, sweet, nor ammonia-like
- Brown to black in color
- Mixed particle sizes
- Stable temperature and does not get hot when rewetted
- Crumbly texture

Qualitative tests and producer documentation should have the following specifications:

- Material must meet the definition for "composted materials" in WSDOT's Standard Specifications, Section 9-14, and WAC 173-350, Section 220, which is available online: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/facilities/350.html
- Organic matter content between 40% and 65%, as determined by Testing Methods for Evaluating Compost and Composting (TMECC) 05.07A, "Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method."
- pH between 5.5 and 7.0.
- Maximum electrical conductivity of 3 ohms/cm.
- Moisture content range between 35% and 50%.
- No viable weed seeds.
- Manufactured inert material (plastic, concrete, ceramics, etc.) should be less than 1% on a dry weight or volume basis.
- Metals should not be in excess of limits in the following table:

Metal Limit (mg/kg dry weight)	
Arsenic	≤ 20 ppm
Cadmium	≤ 10 ppm
Copper	≤ 750 ppm
Lead	≤ 150 ppm
Mercury	≤ 8 ppm
Molybdenum	≤ 9 ppm
Nickel	≤ 210 ppm
Selenium1	≤ 18 ppm

Organic Matter Content of Soil Mixes

The minimum organic matter content may be achieved by using the preapproved amendment methods as outlined below, or by calculating a custom amendment rate for the existing site soil conditions. The preapproved method simplifies planning and implementation; however, the organic matter content of the disturbed on-site soils may be relatively good and not require as extensive an application of amendment material. In many cases, calculating a site-specific rate may result in significant savings in amendment material and application costs.

Calculating a custom rate requires collecting soil samples from the area to be amended and samples from the compost material. The soil and compost are then tested for percent organic matter. Compost and topsoil producers can often supply the required information for the amendment material. A quick way to determine the approximate organic matter content of a soil mix would be to use the following rules of thumb:

- Compost is typically 40% to 50% organic matter (use 45% as an average).
- Compost weighs approximately 50% as much as loam.
- A mix that is 40% compost measured by volume is roughly 20% organic matter by volume.
- Compost is only 50% as dense as the soil, so the mix is approximately 10% organic matter by weight (the organic matter content in soil is determined by weighing the organic material before combustion and then weighing the ash post combustion).

Compost that is applied as a land cover must have a minimum blanket depth of 2 to 3 inches, depending on slope and soil types. Slopes steeper than 4H:1V should receive 3 inches of compost as a cover. Likewise, more erodible soils must be at the higher end of the compost application range.

Compost is not recommended for areas of concentrated flow. However, it can be used in swales or on the sides of ditches above the expected flow line.

For more information on soil amendments and applications, see the *Roadside Manual,* Chapter 700.

5-4.3.3 Facility Liners

Liners are intended to reduce the likelihood of stormwater pollutants reaching groundwater beneath runoff treatment facilities. In addition to groundwater protection considerations, liners are sometimes used to hold water, such as for a permanent pool in a wet pond.

Treatment liners amend the soil with materials that treat stormwater before it reaches more freely draining soils. They have slow rates of infiltration, generally less than 2.4 inches per hour, but not as slow as low-permeability liners. Treatment liners may use in-place native soils or imported soils.

Low-permeability liners reduce infiltration to a very slow rate, generally less than 0.02 inches per hour. These types of liners are generally used for sites with a potential for high pollutant loading in the stormwater runoff or when it is necessary to maintain a constant pool of water for extended periods of time. Low-permeability liners may be fashioned from compacted till, clay, geomembrane, or concrete. Till liners are preferred because of their general resilience and ease of maintenance.

General Design Criteria

Table 5.4.1 shows recommendations for the type of liner generally best suited for use with various runoff treatment facilities. The intent of this table is to ensure stormwater receives the required minimum amount of runoff treatment before being allowed to infiltrate in areas of relatively permeable soils.

Table 5.4.1. Lining types recommended for runoff treatment facilities.

Runoff Treatment Facility	Area to Be Lined	Type of Liner Recommended
RT.24, Presettling Basin	Bottom and sides	Low-permeability liner or treatment liner (if the basin intercepts the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended)
RT.12, Wet Pond, and CO.01, Combined Wet/Detention Pond	First cell: bottom and sides to runoff treatment design water surface	Low-permeability liner or treatment liner (if the facility intercepts the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended)
	Second cell: bottom and sides to runoff treatment design water surface	Treatment liner
RT.13, Constructed Stormwater Treatment Wetland, and CO.02, Combined Stormwater Treatment Wetland/Detention Pond	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low-permeability liner or treatment liner (if the facility intercepts the seasonal high groundwater table, a treatment liner is recommended)
Treatment BMPs in underground structures	Not applicable	No liner needed

Liners must be evenly placed over the bottom and/or sides of the treatment area of the facility, as indicated in Table 5.4.1. Areas above the treatment volume that are required to pass flows greater than the runoff treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining must be extended to the top of the interior side slope and anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.

For low-permeability liners, the following criteria apply:

- Where the seasonal high groundwater elevation is likely to contact a low-permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. A low-permeability liner must not be used in this situation unless evaluated and recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
- Where grass must be planted over a low-permeability liner per the facility design, a minimum of 6 inches of good topsoil or compost-amended native soil (2 inches of compost tilled into 6 inches of native till soil) must be placed over the liner in the area to be planted (12 inches of cover is preferred).

If a treatment liner is below the seasonal high water level, the pollutant-removal performance of the liner must be evaluated by a geotechnical or groundwater specialist and found to be as protective as if the liner were above the groundwater level.

Design Criteria for Treatment Liners

The design criteria for treatment liners are as follows:

- A 2-foot-thick layer of soil with a minimum organic content of 5% and a minimum cation exchange capacity (CEC) of 5 milliequivalents per 100 grams can be used as a treatment layer beneath a runoff treatment or detention facility.
- To demonstrate that in-place soils meet the above criteria, one sample per 1,000 square feet of facility area must be tested. Each sample must be a composite of subsamples taken throughout the depth of the treatment layer (usually 2 to 6 feet below the proposed facility invert).
- Typically, sidewall seepage is not a concern if the seepage flows through the same stratum as the bottom of the treatment BMP. However, if the treatment soil is an engineered soil or has very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the sidewalls may be significant. In those cases, the treatment BMP sidewalls may be lined with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, as described above, to prevent untreated seepage. The soil thickness in the sidewalls is less than in the bottom because unsaturated flow occurs with alternating wet-dry periods.
- Organic content is measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
- CEC is tested using U.S. EPA laboratory method 9081.
- A soils testing laboratory must certify that imported soil meets the organic content and CEC criteria above and must provide this certification to the local jurisdiction.
- Animal manure used in treatment soil layers must be sterilized because of the potential for bacterial contamination of the groundwater.

Design Criteria for Low-Permeability Liner Options

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low-permeability liner options: compacted till liners, clay liners, geomembrane liners, and concrete liners.

Compacted Till Liners

- Liner thickness must be 18 inches after compaction.
- Soil must be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute may be used instead of the above criteria.
- Soil should be placed in 6-inch lifts.

- Soils may be used that meet the gradation shown in Table 5.4.2.

Table 5.4.2. Compacted till liner gradation requirements.

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6-inch 10	0
4-inch 90	
#4	70 – 100
#200 20	

Clay Liners

- Liner thickness must be 12 inches.
- Clay must be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute may be used instead of the above criteria.
- The slope of clay liners must be restricted to 3H:1V for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer must be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the facility does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method must take maintenance access into consideration.
- Where clay liners form the sides of ponds, the interior side slope should not be steeper than 3H:1V, regardless of fencing requirements. This restriction is to ensure that anyone falling into the pond may safely climb out.

Geomembrane Liners

- Geomembrane liners must be ultraviolet (UV) light resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils is used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery must be operated over the membrane.
- Geomembranes must be bedded according to manufacturers' recommendations.
- Liners must be installed so that they can be covered with 12 inches of top dressing forming the bottom and sides of the runoff treatment facility, except for liner sand filters. Top dressing consists of 6 inches of crushed rock covered with 6 inches of native soil. The rock layer is to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic safety fencing or another highly visible, continuous marker is embedded 6 inches above the membrane.
- If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers can easily spot any area where a liner may have become exposed.

- Geomembrane liners must not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommendation by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing is stable for all conditions of operation, including maintenance operations.

Concrete Liners

- Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of facility size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications must be developed by a professional engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or loss of water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including facility maintenance operations. (Note that maintenance equipment can weigh up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.)
- Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.
- If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes must be no steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping.

5-4.3.4 Flo w Splitters

Although volume-based (wet pool) runoff treatment BMPs must be designed as on-line facilities, many flow rate-based runoff treatment BMPs can be designed as either on-line or off-line. On-line systems allow flows above the runoff treatment design flow to pass through the facility at a lower pollutant-removal efficiency. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to an off-line runoff treatment facility and bypass the remaining higher flows around the BMP. This can be accomplished by splitting flows in excess of the runoff treatment design flow upstream of the facility and diverting higher flows to a bypass pipe or channel. The bypass typically enters a detention pond or the downstream receiving drainage system, depending on flow control requirements. In most cases, it is the designer's choice whether runoff treatment facilities are designed as on-line or off-line; an exception is oil/water separators, which must be designed off-line.

A crucial factor in designing flow splitters is to ensure that low flows are delivered to the treatment facility up to the runoff treatment design flow rate. Above this rate, additional flows are diverted to the bypass system, with minimal increase in head at the flow splitter structure, to avoid surcharging the runoff treatment facility under high flow conditions.

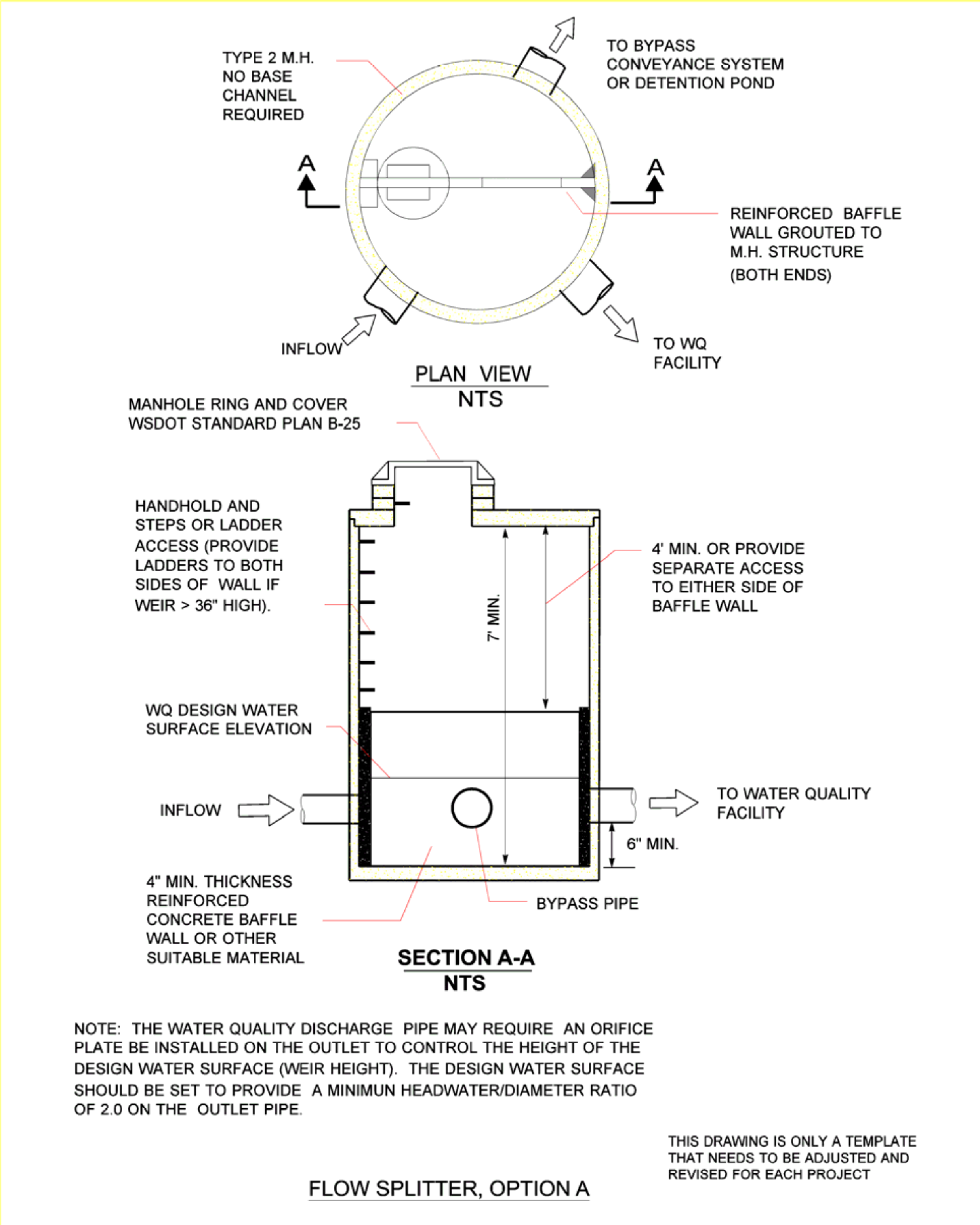
Flow splitters are typically manholes or vaults with concrete baffles. In place of baffles, the splitter mechanism may be a half tee section with a solid top and an orifice in the bottom of the tee section. A full tee option may also be used, as described below in *General Design Criteria*. Two possible design options for flow splitters are shown in Figures 5.4.3.2 and 5.4.3.3. Other equivalent designs that achieve the result of splitting low flows and diverting higher flows around the facility are also acceptable.

General Design Criteria

- A flow splitter must be designed to deliver the runoff treatment design flow rate to the runoff treatment facility. For the basic sand filter, which is sized based on volume, use the runoff treatment design flow rate to design the splitter.
- The top of the weir must be located at the water surface for the design flow. Remaining flows enter the bypass line. Flows modeled using a continuous simulation model should use 15-minute time steps, if available. Otherwise, use 1-hour time steps.
- The maximum head must be minimized for flow in excess of the runoff treatment design flow. Specifically, flow to the runoff treatment facility in the 100-year event must not increase the runoff treatment design flow by more than 10%.
- Either the Figure 5.4.3.2 or the Figure 5.4.3.3 design (or an equivalent design) may be used.
- As an alternative to using the solid top plate shown in Figure 5.4.3.3, a full tee section may be used with the top of the tee at the 100-year water surface. This alternative routes emergency overflows (if the overflow pipe is plugged) through the runoff treatment facility rather than backing up in the splitter manhole.
- Special applications may require the use of a modified flow splitter. The baffle wall may be fitted with a notch and adjustable weir plate to proportion runoff volumes other than high flows.
- For ponding facilities, backwater effects must be addressed in designing the height of the standpipe in the manhole.
- Ladder or step-and-handhold access must be provided. If the weir wall is higher than 36 inches, two ladders—one on either side of the wall—must be used.

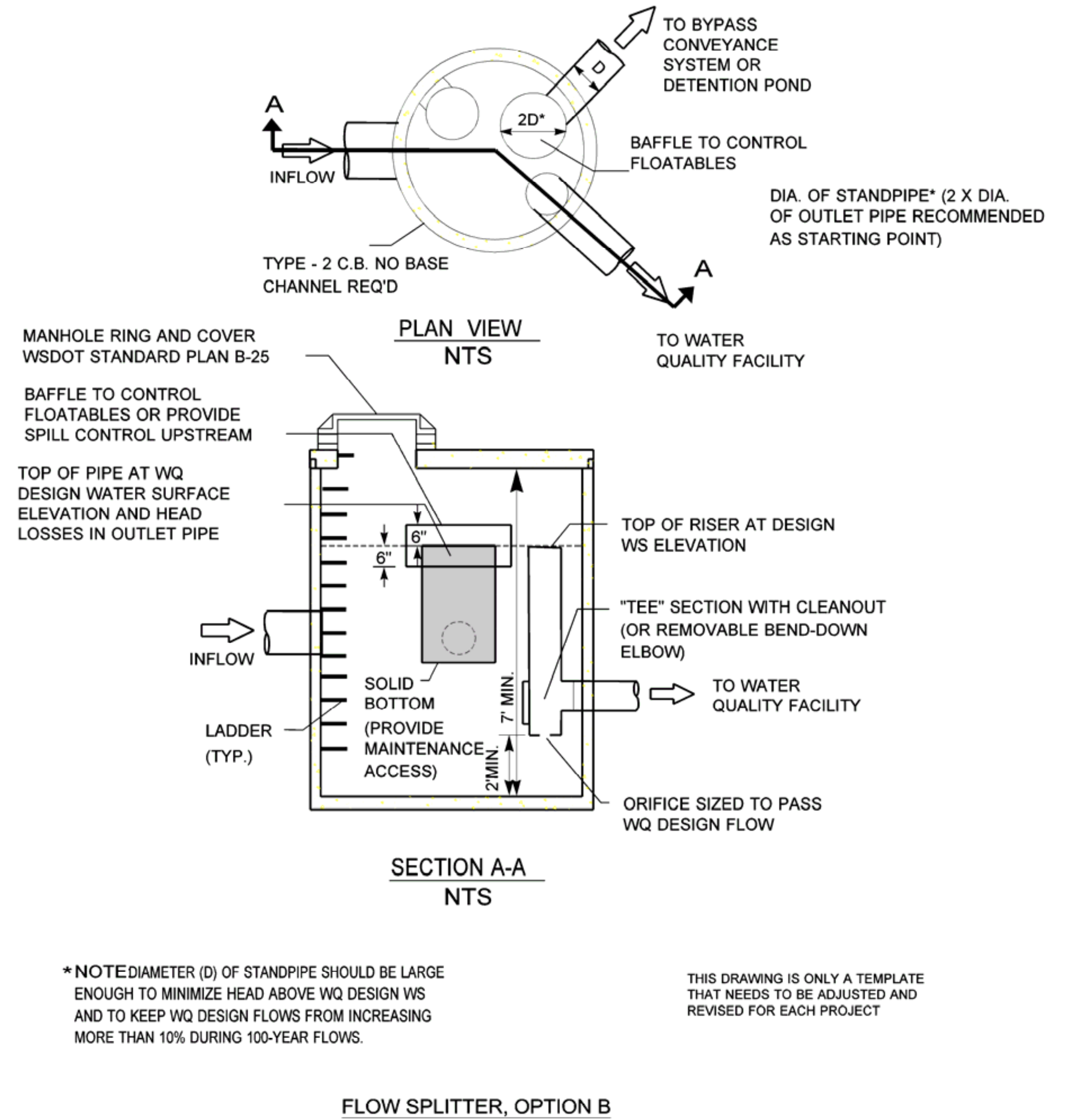
Materials

- The splitter baffle may be installed in a Type 2 manhole or vault.
- The baffle wall must be made of reinforced concrete, or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness. The minimum clearance between the top of the baffle wall and the bottom of the manhole cover must be 4 feet; otherwise, dual access points should be provided.
- All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Examples of preferred materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Avoid the use of zinc and galvanized materials—because of their aquatic toxicity potential—when substitutes are available. Painting metal parts for corrosion resistance is not allowed because paint does not provide long-term protection.



Source: King County.

Figure 5.4.3.2. Flow splitter, Option A.



Source: King County.

Figure 5.4.3.3. Flow splitter, Option B.

5-4.3.5 Flo w Spreading Options

Flow spreaders function to uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of runoff treatment facilities (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, vegetated filter strip). Five flow spreader options are presented in this section:

- Option A – Anchored plate
- Option B – Concrete sump box
- Option C – Notched curb spreader
- Option D – Through-curb ports
- Option E – Interrupted curb

Options A through C can be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options can be used when spreading is required by the facility design criteria. Options A through C can also be used for unconcentrated flows and in some cases they must be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a vegetated filter strip.

Options D and E are only for flows that are already unconcentrated and enter a vegetated filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options are permitted with approval from the HQ Hydraulics Office.

General Design Criteria

Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the pipe be submerged to the extent practical to dissipate energy as much as possible.

For higher inflows (greater than 5 cubic feet per second for the 100-year storm), a Type 1 catch basin should be positioned in the spreader, and the inflow pipe should enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate. The top of the grate should be lower than the level spreader plate or, if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the V-notches.

For guidance on outfall protection, see Section 5-4.3.6.

Option A – Anchored Plate

An anchored plate flow spreader (see Figure 5.4.3.4) must be preceded by a sump having a minimum depth of 8 inches and a minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area must be lined to reduce erosion and to dissipate energy.

The top surface of the flow spreader plate must be level, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the runoff treatment facility, or V-notched with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs may also be used.

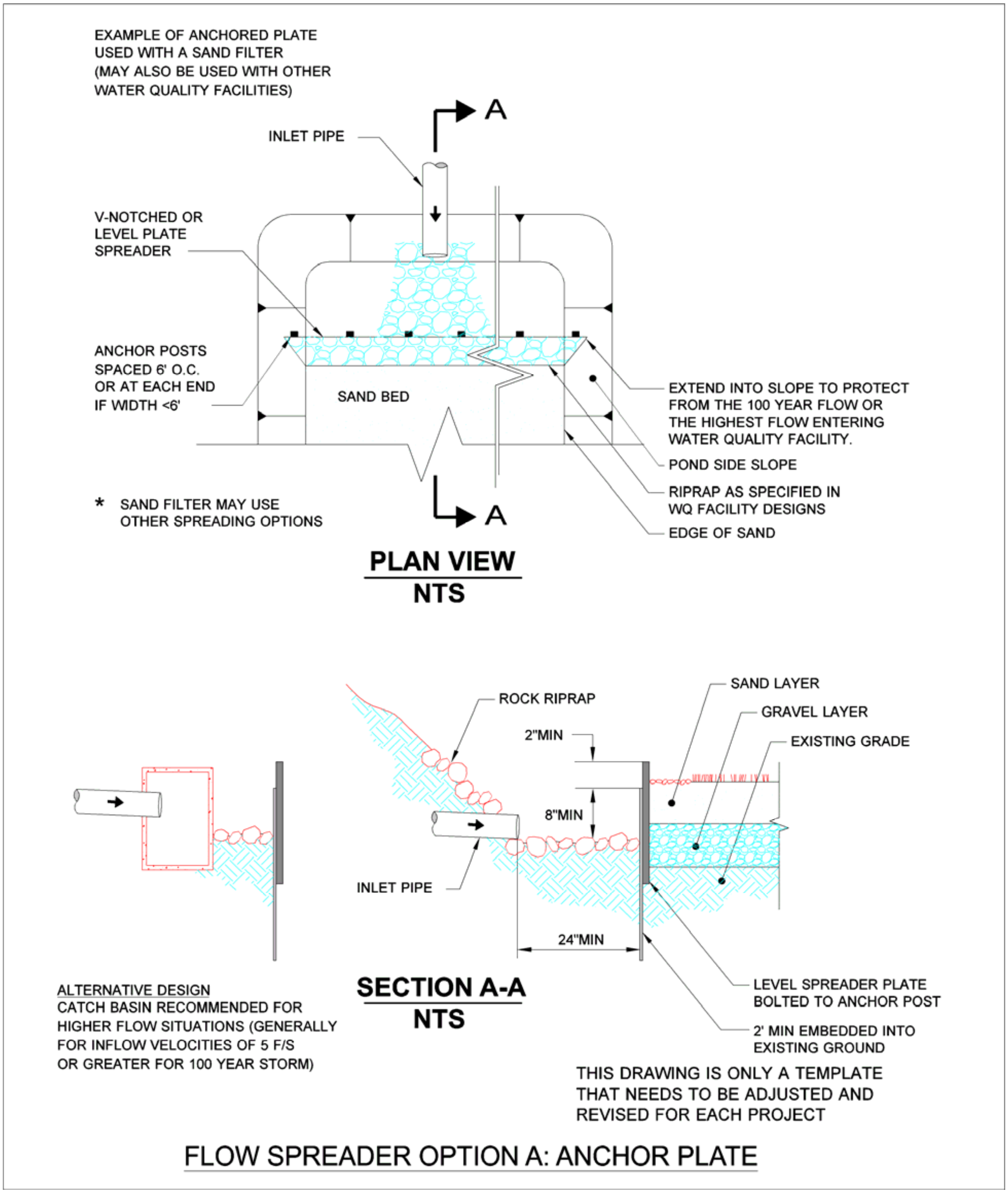


Figure 5.4.3.4. Flow spreader Option A: anchor plate.

A flow spreader plate must extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the facility to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The horizontal extent should protect the bank for all flows up to the 100-year flow or the maximum flow that enters the runoff treatment facility.

Flow spreader plates must be securely fixed in place.

Flow spreader plates may be made of either wood, metal, fiberglass-reinforced plastic, or other durable material. If wood, pressure-treated 4- by 10-inch lumber/landscape timbers are acceptable.

Anchor posts must be 4-inch-square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay.

Option B – Concrete Sump Box

The wall of the downstream side of a rectangular concrete sump box (see Figure 5.4.3.5) must extend a minimum of 2 inches above the treatment bed. This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the bed.

The downstream wall of a sump box must have wing walls at both ends. Sidewalls and returns must be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.

Concrete for a sump box can be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump must be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps.

Sump boxes must be placed over bases consisting of 4 inches of crushed rock, 5/8-inch minus, to help ensure that the sump remains level.

Option C – Notched Curb Spreader

Notched curb spreader sections (see Figure 5.4.3.6) must be made of extruded concrete laid side-by-side and level. Typically five teeth per 4-foot section provide good spacing. The space between adjacent teeth forms a V-notch.

Option D – Through-Curb Ports

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering vegetated filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales can use curb ports (see Figure 5.4.3.7) or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the strip or swale. Curb ports use fabricated openings that allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded, with an opening through the base to admit water to the runoff treatment facility.

Openings in the curb must be at regular intervals, at least every 6 feet (minimum). The width of each curb port opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. Approximately 15% or more of the curb section length should be in open ports, and no port should discharge more than about 10% of the flow.

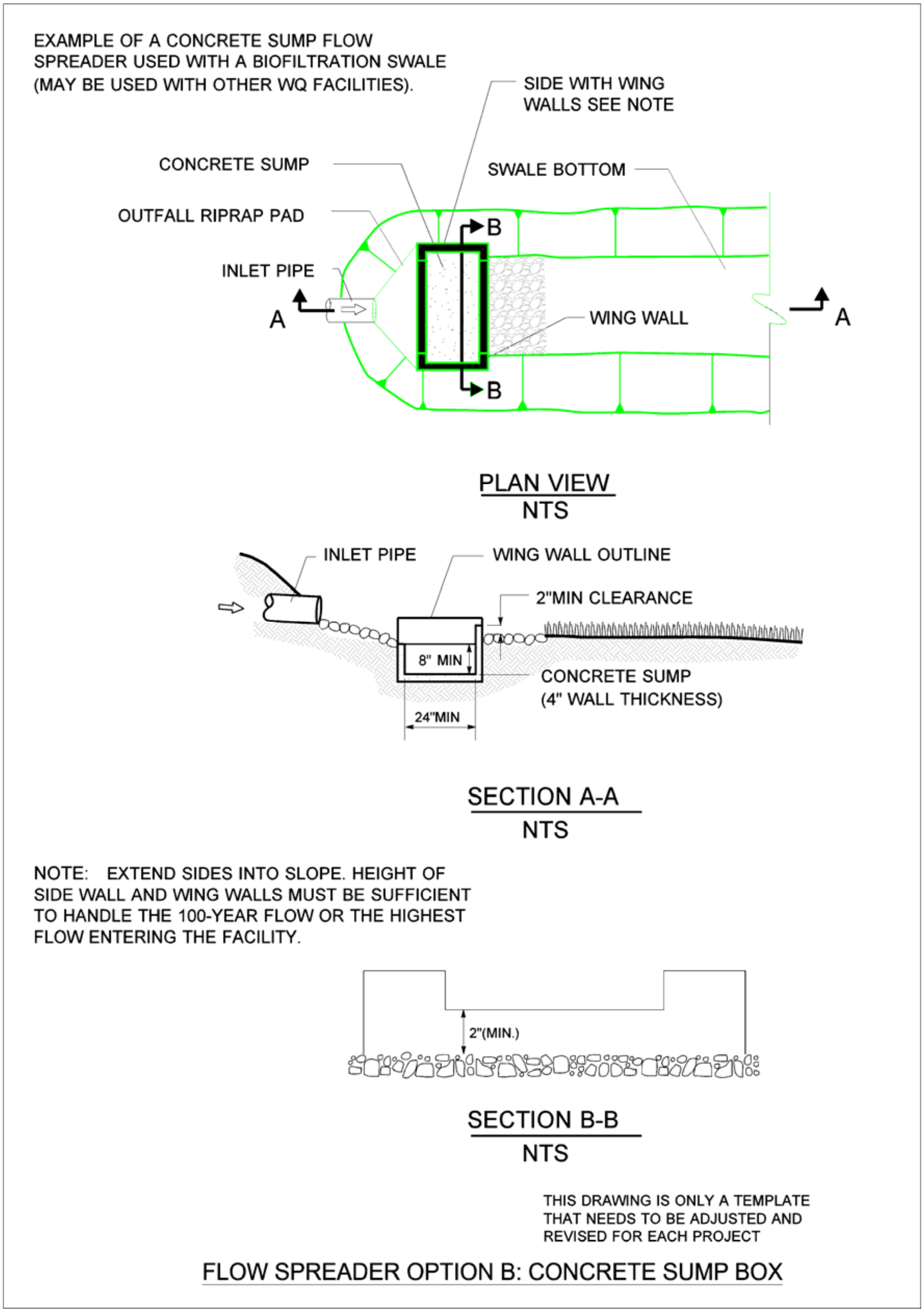


Figure 5.4.3.5. Flow spreader Option B: concrete sump box.

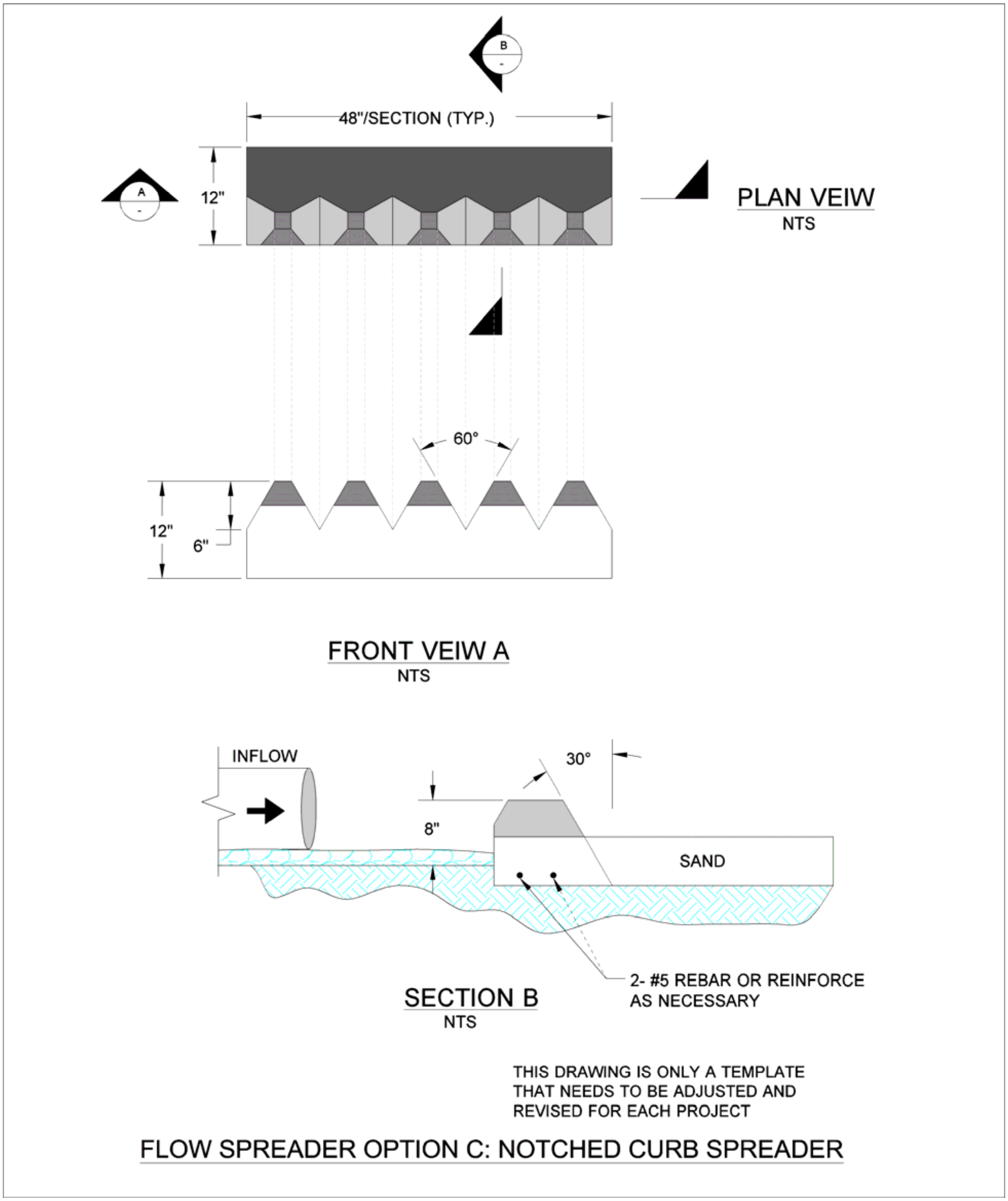


Figure 5.4.3.6. Flow spreader Option C: notched curb spreader.

Option E – Interrupted Curb

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on facility) of the treatment area. At a minimum, gaps must be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment facility before the flows become too concentrated. The opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. As a general rule, no opening should discharge more than 10% of the overall flow entering the facility.

5-4.3.6 Outfall Systems

Properly designed outfalls are critical to reducing the chance of adverse impacts as the result of concentrated discharges from pipe systems and culverts, both on-site and downstream. Outfall systems include rock splash pads; flow dispersal trenches; gabion or other energy dissipaters; and tight-line systems. A tight-line system is typically a continuous length of pipe used to convey flows down a steep or sensitive slope with appropriate energy dissipation at the discharge end.

General Design Criteria

General design criteria for both outfall features and tight-line systems are as follows:

Outfall Features

At a minimum, all outfalls must be provided with a rock splash pad, except as specified below and in Table 5.4.3 (see Figure 5.4.3.8).

The flow dispersal trenches shown in Figures 5.4.3.9 and 5.4.3.10 should be used only when both the following criteria are met:

- An outfall is necessary to disperse concentrated flows across uplands where no conveyance system exists and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated
- The 100-year peak discharge rate is less than or equal to 0.5 cubic feet per second.

For freshwater outfalls with a design velocity greater than 10 feet per second, a gabion dissipater or engineered energy dissipater may be required (see Figure 5.4.3.11). There are many possible designs.

Note: The gabion outfall detail shown in Figure 5.4.3.11 is illustrative only. A design engineered to specific site conditions must be developed.

Tight-line systems may be needed to prevent aggravation or creation of a downstream erosion problem.

Table 5.4.3. Rock protection at outfalls.

Discharge Velocity at Design Flow (ft/sec)	Required Protection: Minimum Dimensions				
	Type	**Thickness**	**Width**	**Length**	**Height**
0 – 5	Rock lining[(1)] 1	foot	Diameter + 6 feet	8 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
5^+ – 10	Riprap[(2)] 2	feet	Diameter + 6 feet *or* 3 x diameter, whichever is greater	12 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
10 – 20	Gabion outfall	As required	As required	As required	Crown + 1 foot
20^+	Engineered energy dissipater required				

[(1)] **Rock lining** must be quarry spalls with gradation as follows:

Passing 8-inch-square sieve: 100%
Passing 3-inch-square sieve: 40% to 60% maximum
Passing ¾-inch-square sieve: 0 to 10% maximum

[(2)] **Riprap** must be reasonably well graded with gradation as follows:

Maximum stone size: 24 inches (nominal diameter)
Median stone size: 16 inches
Minimum stone size: 4 inches

Note: Riprap sizing on outlet channel is assumed to be governed by side slopes of approximately 3H:1V.

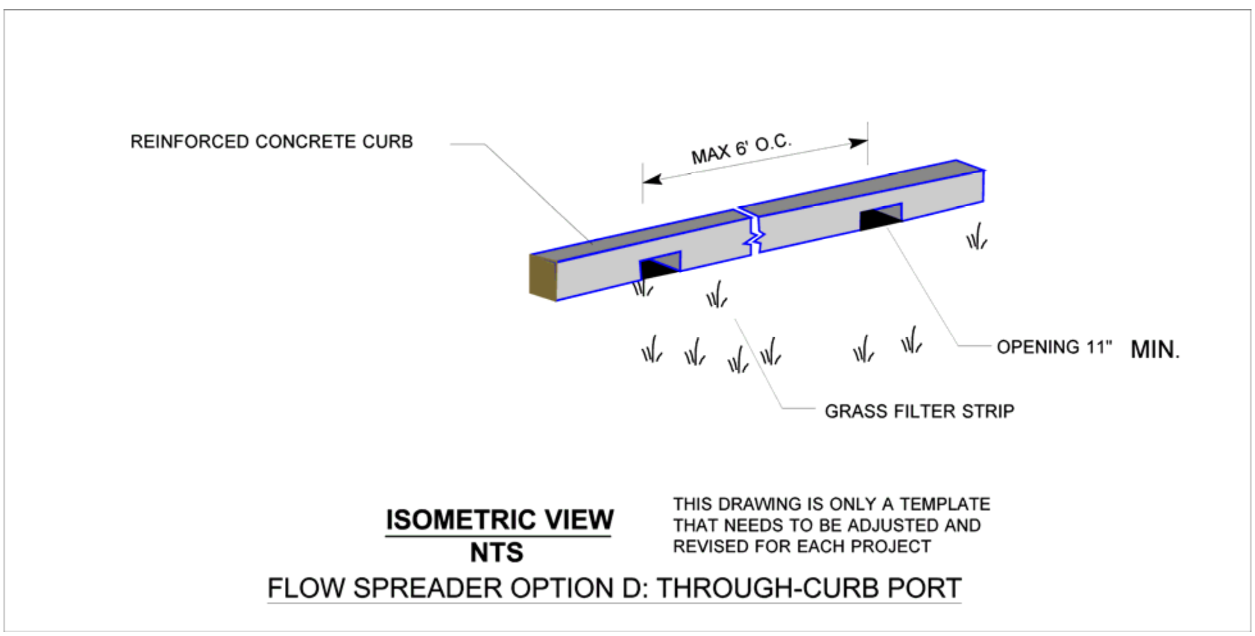


Figure 5.4.3.7. Flow spreader Option D: through-curb port.

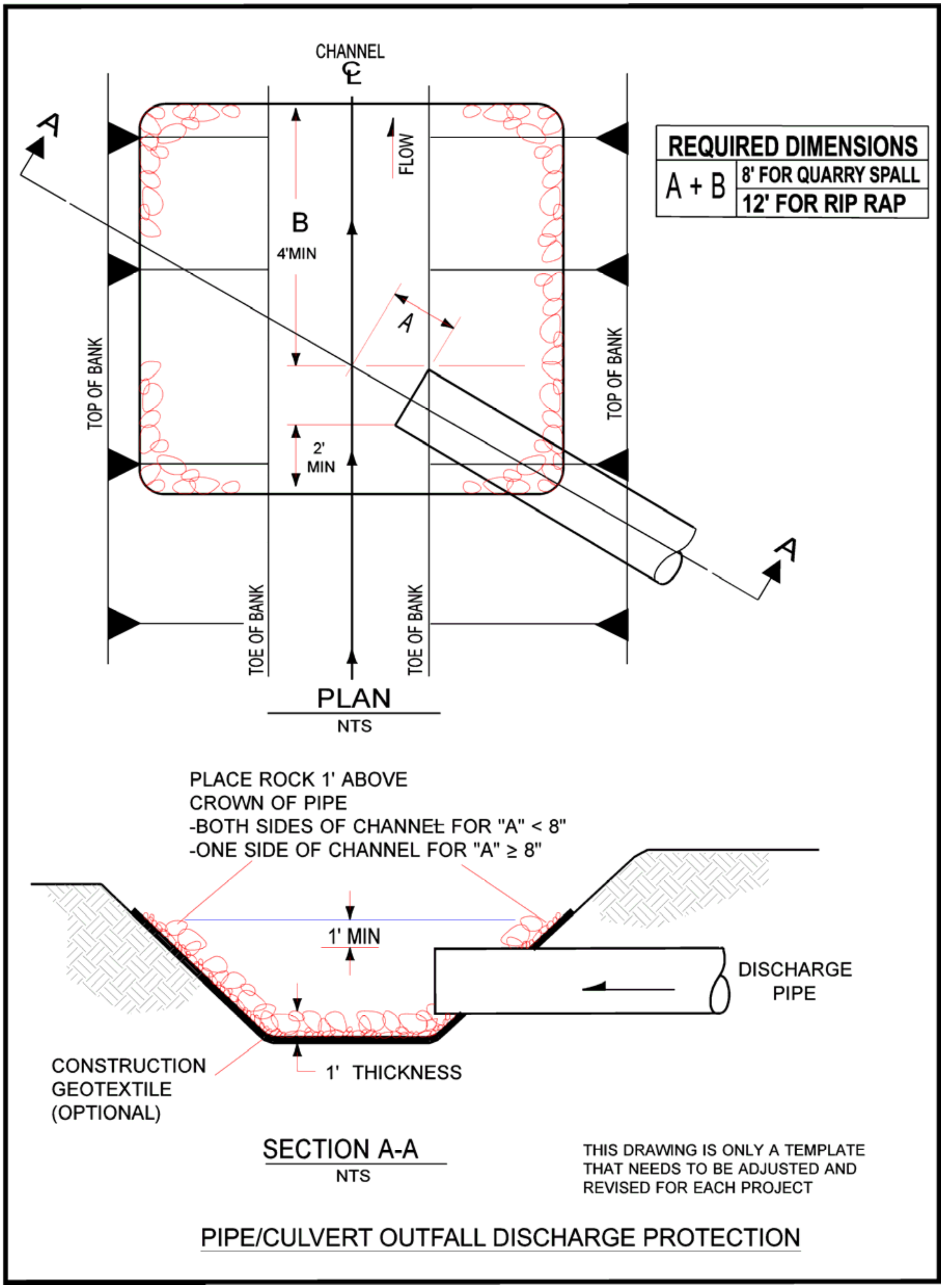


Figure 5.4.3.8. Pipe/culvert outfall discharge.

In marine waters, rock splash pads and gabion structures are not recommended. Rock splash pads can be destroyed by wave action, and gabion baskets will corrode in saltwater and potentially be dislocated by wave action. Diffuser tee structures, such as the one depicted in Figure 5.4.3.12, are also not generally recommended in or above the intertidal zone. They may be acceptable in low bank or rock shoreline locations. Stilling basins or bubble-up structures are acceptable. Generally, tight-lines should be trenched to extreme low water or else the energy of the discharge must be dissipated above the ordinary high water line. Outfalls below extreme low water may still need an energy-dissipation device (e.g., a tee structure) to prevent nearby erosion.

Engineered energy dissipaters, including stilling basins, drop pools, hydraulic jump basins, baffled aprons, and bucket aprons, are required for outfalls with design velocity greater than 20 feet per second. These energy dissipaters should be designed using published or commonly known techniques found in such references as *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipaters for Culverts and Channels*, published by the Federal Highway Administration (1983); *Open Channel Flow*, by V.T. Chow (1959); *Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipaters*, EM 25, Bureau of Reclamation (1978); and other publications, such as those prepared by the Soil Conservation Service (now Natural Resources Conservation Service).

Alternative mechanisms may be used, such as bubble-up structures that eventually drain, and structures fitted with reinforced concrete posts. If alternative mechanisms are considered, they should be designed using sound hydraulic principles and consideration of the ease of construction and maintenance.

Tight-Line Systems

Mechanisms that reduce runoff velocity prior to discharge from an outfall are encouraged. Two of these mechanisms are drop manholes and rapid expansion of pipe diameter. Other discharge end features may be used to dissipate the discharge energy. An example of an end feature is a diffuser tee with holes in the front half, as shown in Figure 5.4.3.12.

Note: Stormwater outfalls submerged in a marine environment can be subject to plugging due to biological growth and shifting debris and sediments. Therefore, unless intensive maintenance is regularly performed, they may not meet their designed function.

New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, overwidened to the upstream side, from the outfall to the stream (as shown in Figure 5.4.3.13). Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Potential habitat improvements should be discussed with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife before inclusion in design.

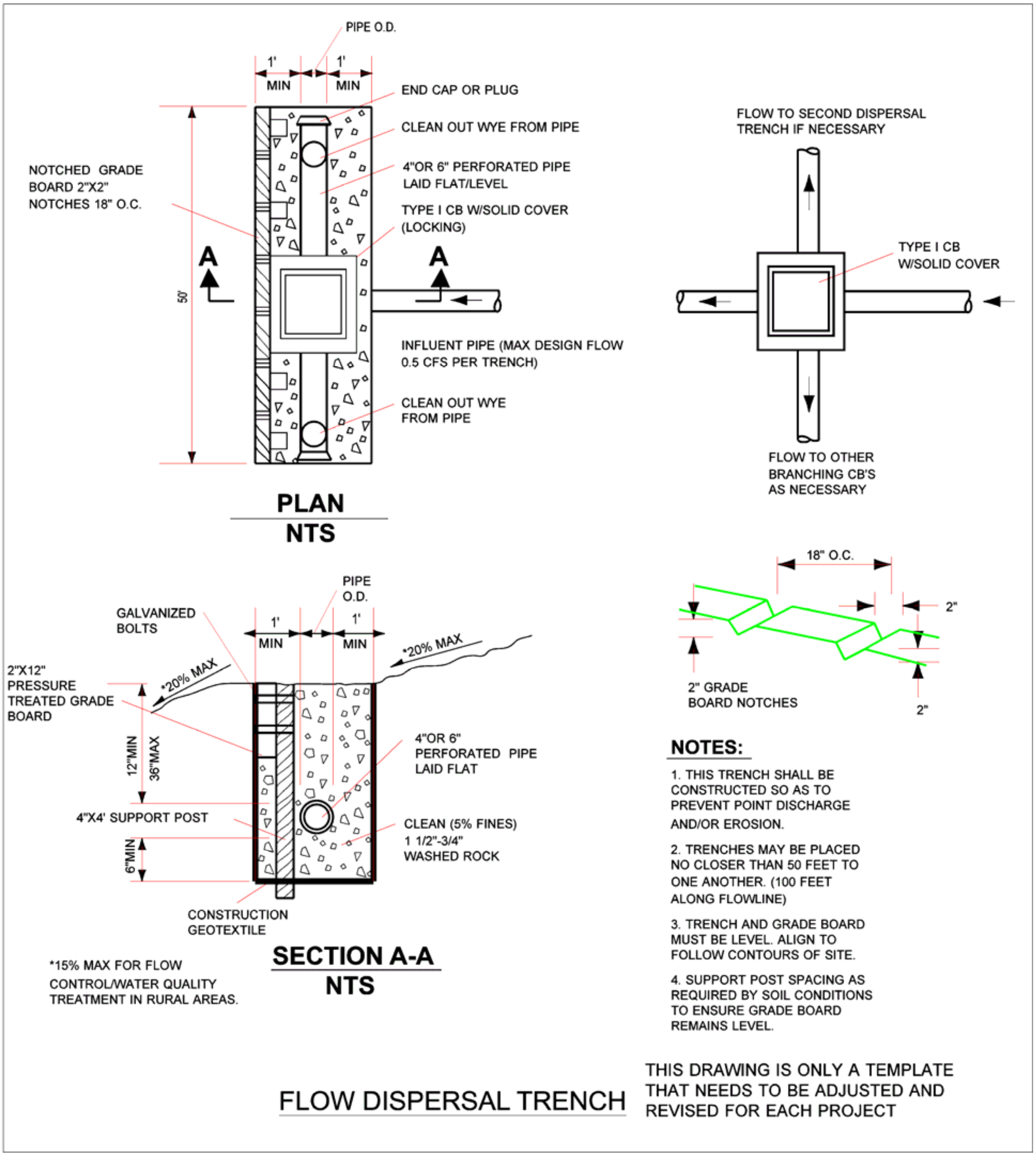


Figure 5.4.3.9. Flow dispersal trench.

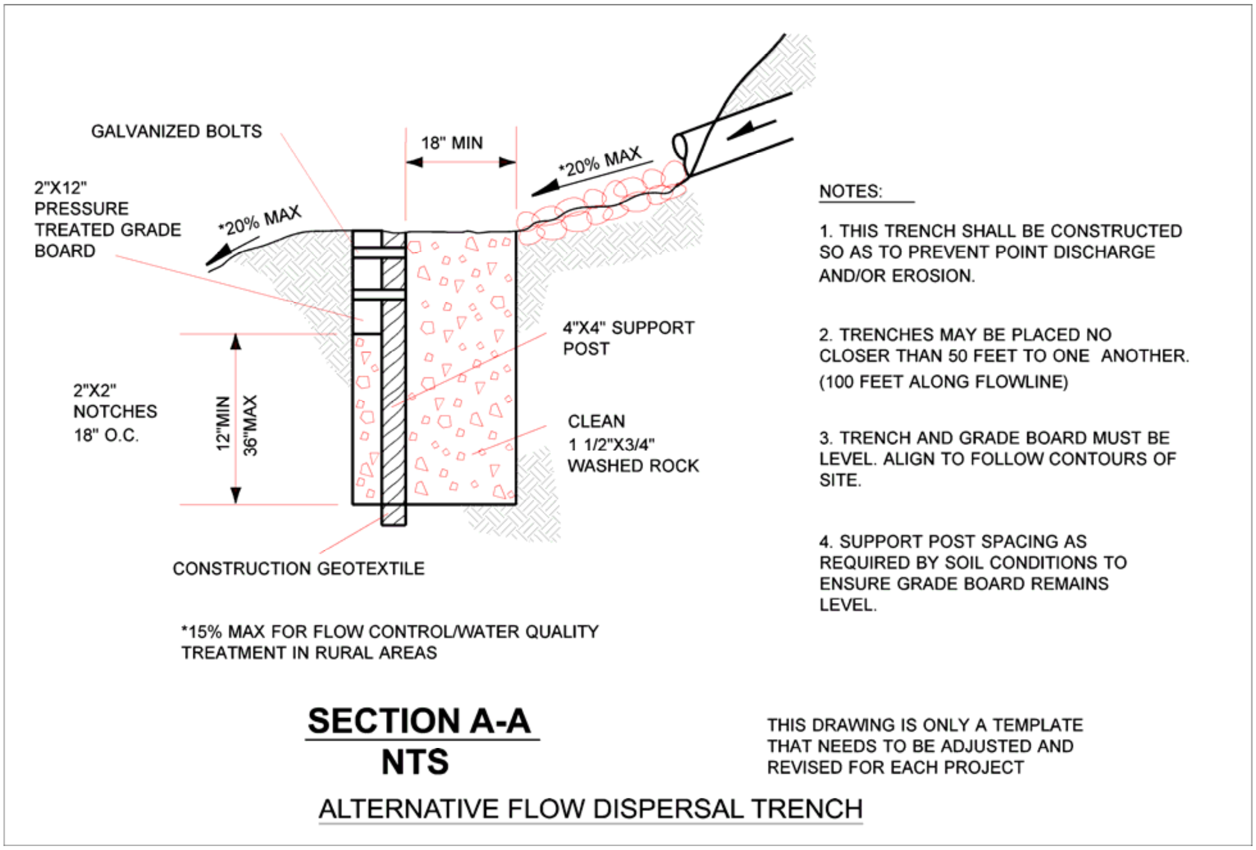


Figure 5.4.3.10. Alternative flow dispersal trench.

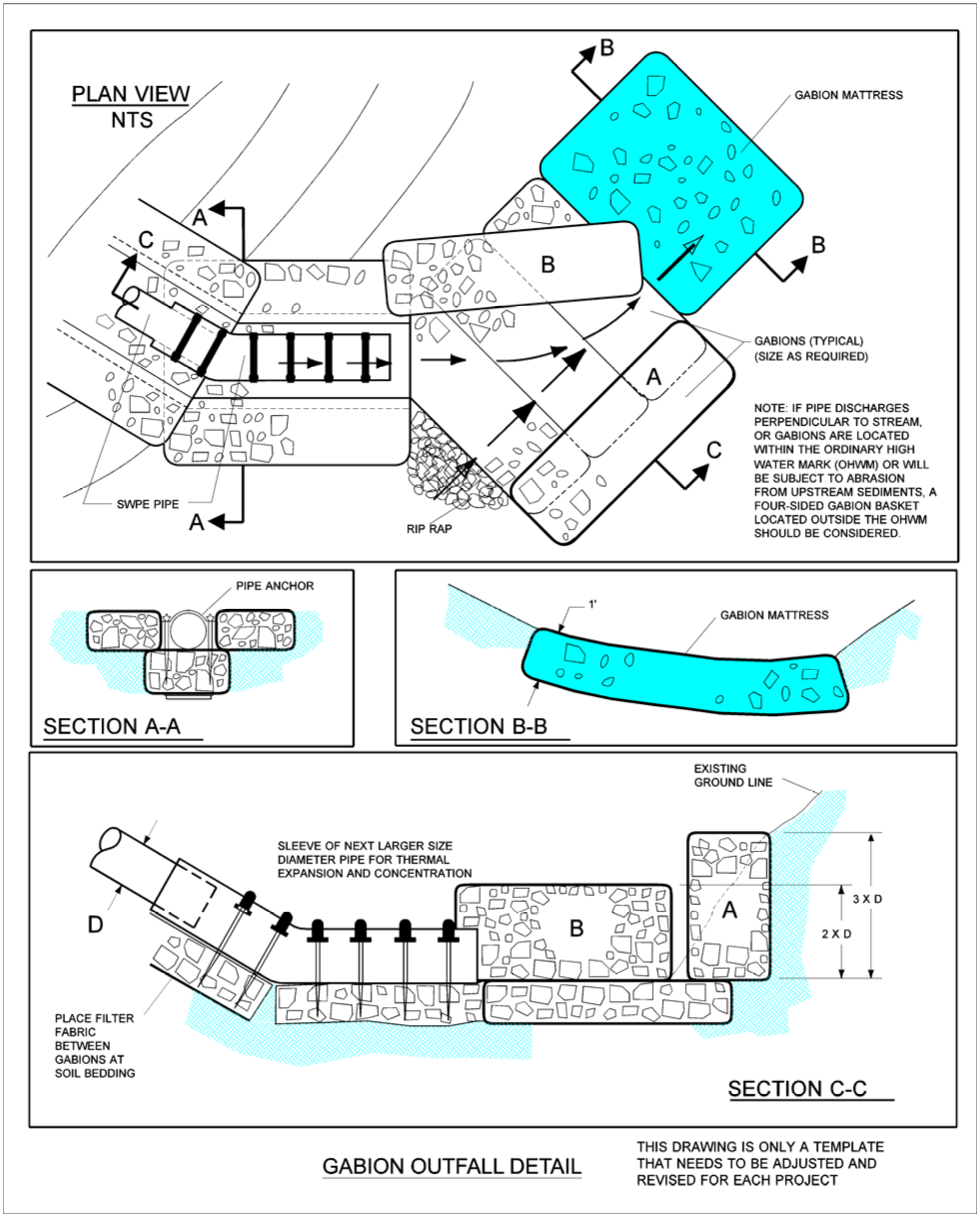


Figure 5.4.3.11. Gabion outfall detail.

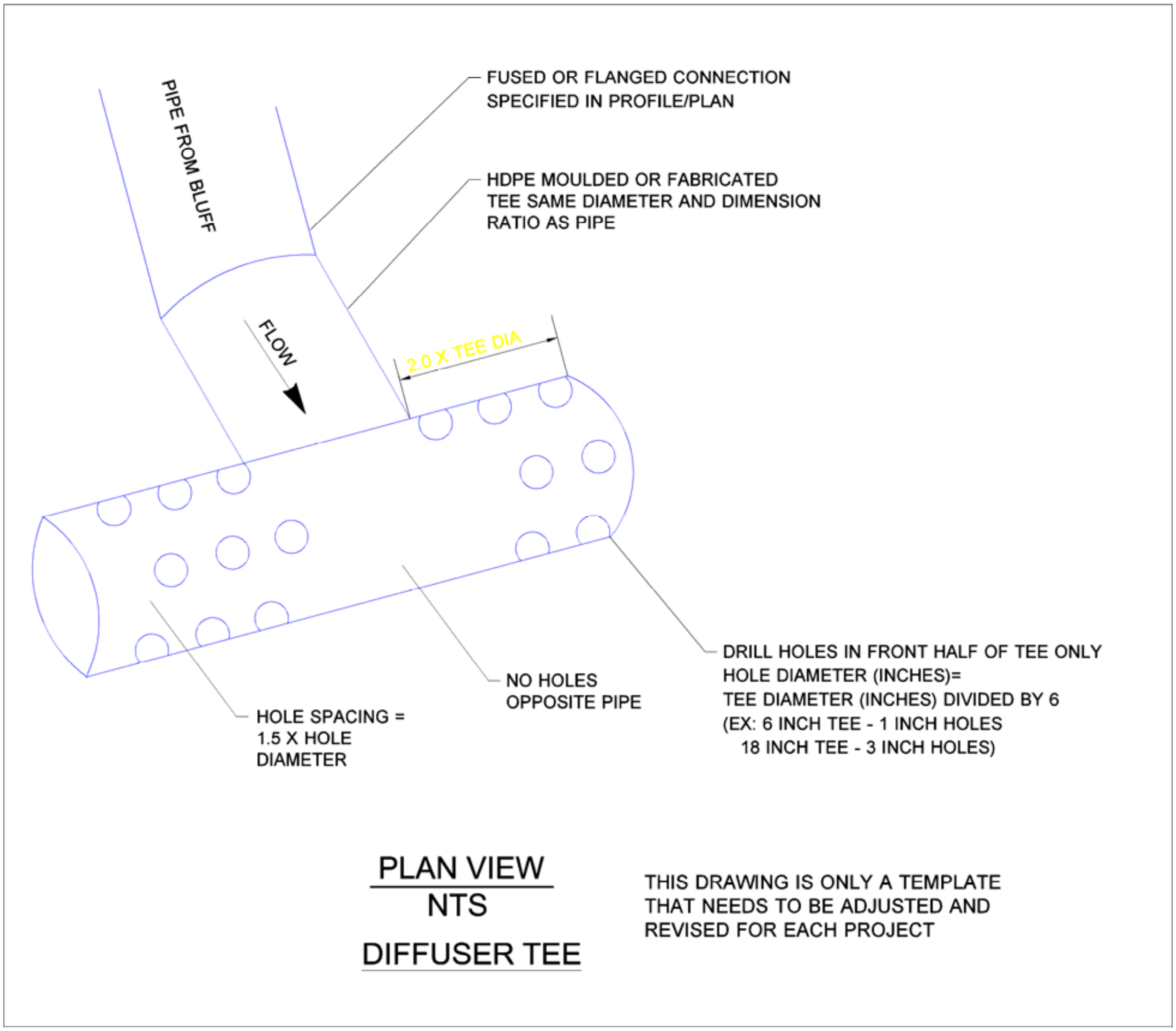


Figure 5.4.3.12. Diffuser tee (an example of energy-dissipating end feature).

Bank stabilization, bioengineering, and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas.

Outfall structures should be located where they minimize impacts to fish, shellfish, and their habitats.

One caution to note is that the in-stream gabion mattress energy dissipater may not be acceptable within the ordinary high water level of fish-bearing waters or where gabions are subject to abrasion from upstream channel sediments. A four-sided gabion basket located above the ordinary high water level should be considered for these applications.

Note: A Hydraulic Project Approval (Revised Code of Washington [RCW] 77.55) may be required for any work within the ordinary high water level. Other provisions of this RCW or the Hydraulics Code (WAC 220-110) may also apply.

Outfall tight-lines may be installed in trenches with standard bedding on slopes up to 20%. To minimize disturbance to slopes greater than 20%, it is recommended that tight-lines be placed at grade with proper pipe anchorage and support.

Except as indicated above, tight-lines or conveyances that traverse the marine intertidal zone and connect to outfalls must be buried deep enough to avoid exposure of the line during storm events or future changes in beach elevation. If non-native material is used to bed the tight-line, such material must be covered with at least 3 feet of native bed material or equivalent.

High-density polyethylene (HDPE) pipe tight-lines must be designed to address the material limitations, particularly thermal expansion and contraction and pressure design, as specified by the manufacturer. The coefficient of thermal expansion and contraction for solid wall polyethylene (SWPE) pipe is on the order of 0.001 inch per foot per degree Fahrenheit. Sliding sleeve connections must be used to address this thermal expansion and contraction. These sleeve connections consist of a section of the appropriate length of the next larger size diameter of pipe into which the outfall pipe is fitted. The sleeve connections must be located as close to the discharge end of the outfall system as is practical.

Due to the ability of HDPE pipe tight-lines to transmit flows of very high energy, special consideration for energy dissipation must be made. Details of a typical gabion mattress energy dissipater are included in Figure 5.4.3.11. Flows of very high energy require a specifically engineered energy dissipater structure.

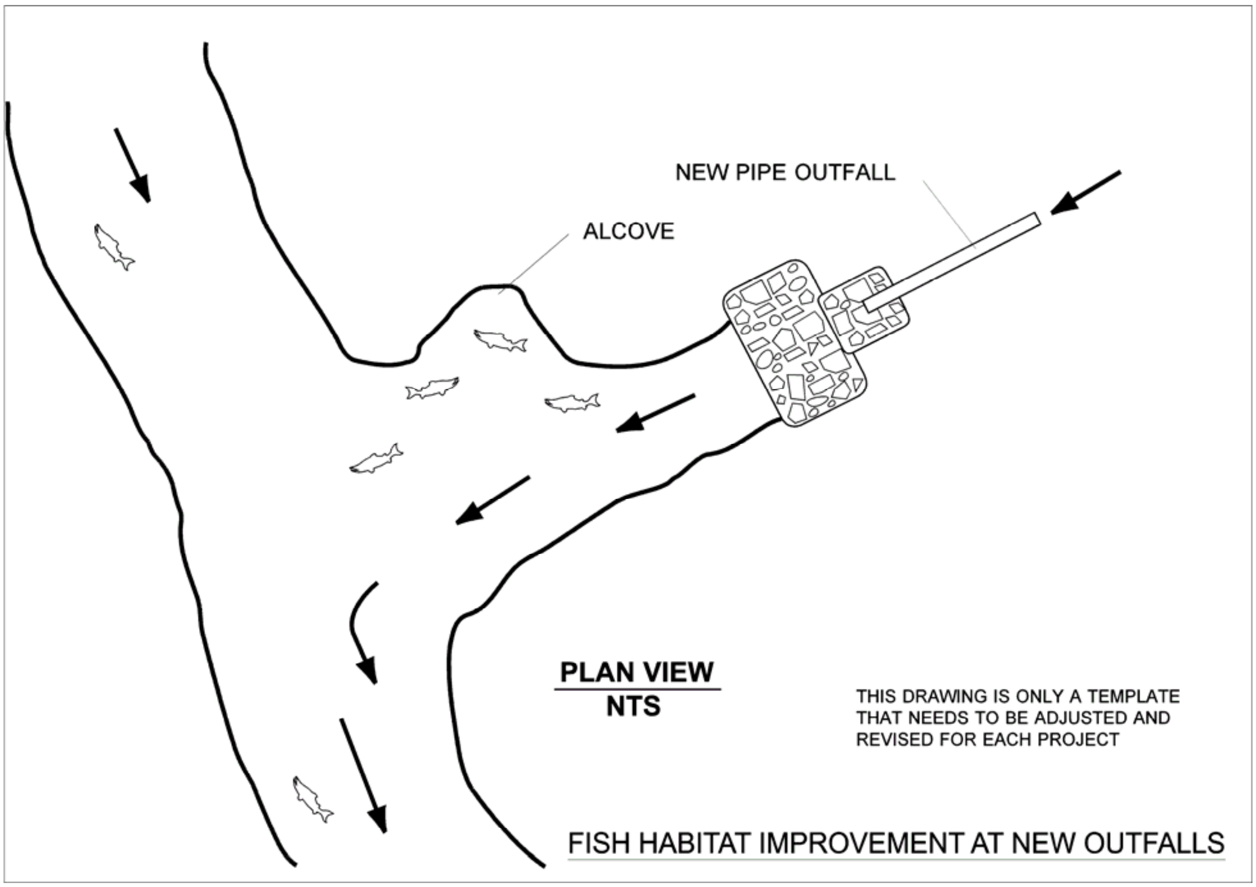


Figure 5.4.3.13. Fish habitat improvement at new outfalls.

5-5 Operation and Maintenance

Inadequate maintenance is a common cause of failure for stormwater control facilities. All stormwater facilities require routine inspection and maintenance and thus must be designed so that these functions can be easily conducted.

5-5.1 Typical BMP Maintenance Standards

The facility-specific maintenance standards contained in this section (Tables 5.5.1 through 5.5.13) are intended to be used for determining when maintenance actions are required for conditions identified through inspection. They are not intended to be measures of the facility's required condition at all times between inspections. In other words, exceeding these conditions at any time between inspections or maintenance does not automatically constitute a need for immediate maintenance. Based upon inspection observations, however, the inspection and maintenance schedules may need to be adjusted to minimize the length of time that a facility is in a condition that requires a maintenance action. Level of maintenance is dictated by funding provided by the Washington State Legislature; maintenance of these facilities will be based on the funding provided.

5-5.2 Natural and Landscaped Areas Designated as Stormwater Treatment Facilities

Maintenance of natural and landscaped areas designated as stormwater treatment facilities requires special attention. Generally, maintenance in these areas should be performed with light equipment. Heavy machinery and vehicles with large treads or tires can compact the ground surface, decreasing the effectiveness of the BMPs.

Table 5.5.1. Maintenance standards for wet ponds/detention ponds.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and debris	Accumulations exceed 1 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash needed to fill one standard-size garbage can). In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold, all trash and debris will be removed as part of the next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris are cleared from site.
Poisonous	vegetation and noxious weeds	Poisonous or nuisance vegetation may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Noxious weeds as defined by state or local regulations are evident. (Apply requirements of adopted integrated pest management [IPM] policies for the use of herbicides).	No danger is posed by poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with local health department.) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with state or local eradication policies is required.
Contam	inants and pollution	Oil, gasoline, contaminants, or other pollutants are evident. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with local water quality response agency.)	No contaminants or pollutants are present.
	Rodent holes	For facilities acting as a dam or berm: rodent holes are evident or there is evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes.	Rodents are destroyed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with local health department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)
	Beaver dams	Dam results in change or function of the facility.	Facility is returned to design function. (Coordinate trapping of beavers and removal of dams with appropriate permitting agencies.)
	Insects	Insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects are destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted IPM policies.
Tree	growth and hazard trees	Tree growth does not allow maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements). If trees are not interfering with access or maintenance, do not remove. Dead, diseased, or dying trees are observed. (Use a certified arborist to determine health of tree or removal requirements.)	Trees do not hinder maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood). Remove hazard trees.
	Water level	First cell is empty, does not hold water.	Line the first cell to maintain at least 4 feet of water. Although the second cell may drain, the first cell must remain full to control turbulence of the incoming flow and reduce sediment resuspension.
	Inlet/outlet pipe	Inlet/outlet pipe is clogged with sediment or debris material.	The inlet and outlet piping are not clogged or blocked.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General (continued)	Sediment accumulation in pond bottom	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom exceed the depth of sediment zone plus 6 inches, usually in the first cell.	Sediment is removed from pond bottom.
	Oil sheen on water	Oil sheen is prevalent and visible.	Oil is removed from water using oil-absorbent pads or Vactor truck. Source of oil is located and corrected. If chronic low levels of oil persist, plant wetland species such as *Juncus effusus* (soft rush), which can uptake small concentrations of oil.
	Erosion	Pond side slopes or bottom show evidence of erosion or scouring in excess of 6 inches and the potential for continued erosion is evident.	Slopes are stabilized using proper erosion control measures and repair methods.
Settlem	ent of pond dike/berm	Any part of the pond dike/berm has settled 4 inches or lower than the design elevation, or the inspector determines dike/berm is unsound.	Dike/berm is repaired to specifications.
	Internal berm	Berm dividing cells are not level.	Berm surface is leveled so that water flows evenly over entire length of berm.
Overflow/	spillway	Rock is missing and soil exposed at top of spillway or outside slope.	Rocks are replaced to specifications.
Side slopes of pond	Erosion	Eroded damage is over 2 inches deep and cause of damage is still present or there is potential for continued erosion. Erosion is observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes are stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures; e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms, a licensed civil engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Storage area	Sediment	Accumulated sediment exceeds 10% of the designed pond depth, unless otherwise specified, or affects inletting or outletting condition of the facility.	Sediment is cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth; pond is reseeded if necessary to control erosion.
L	iner (if applicable)	Liner is visible and has more than three 1/4-inch holes in it.	Liner is repaired or replaced. Liner is fully covered.
Pond berms (dikes)	Settlements	Any part of berm has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or outlet works. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike is built back to the design elevation.
	Piping	Water flow is discernible through pond berm. Ongoing erosion is observed, with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a geotechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.)	Piping is eliminated. Erosion potential is resolved.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Emergency overflow/ spillway and berms over 4 feet high	Tree growth	Tree growth on emergency spillways reduces spillway conveyance capacity and may cause erosion elsewhere on the pond perimeter due to uncontrolled overtopping. Tree growth on berms over 4 feet high may lead to piping through the berm, which could lead to failure of the berm and related erosion or flood damage.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches), the root system may be left in place; otherwise, the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
	Piping	Water flow is discernible through pond berm. Ongoing erosion is observed, with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a geotechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.)	Piping is eliminated. Erosion potential is resolved.
Emergency overflow/ spillway	Spillway lining insufficient	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger, or native soil is exposed at the top of outflow path of spillway. (Riprap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.

Table 5.5.2. Maintenance standards for bioinfiltration ponds/infiltration trenches/basins.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and debris	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
	Poisonous/noxious vegetation	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
	Contaminants and pollution	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
	Rodent holes	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
Storage area	Sediment	Water ponds in infiltration pond after rainfall ceases and appropriate time has been allowed for infiltration. (A percolation test pit or test of facility indicates facility is working at only 90% of its designed capabilities. If 2 inches or more sediment is present, remove sediment).	Sediment is removed or facility is cleaned so that infiltration system works according to design.
Rock filters	Sediment and debris	By visual inspection, little or no water flows through filter during heavy rainstorms.	Gravel in rock filter is replaced.
Side slopes of pond	Erosion	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
Emergency overflow/spillway and berms over 4 feet high	Tree growth	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
	Piping	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
Emergency overflow/spillway	Rock missing	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
	Erosion	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).	See Table 5.5.1 (wet ponds).
Presettling ponds and vaults	Facility or sump filled with sediment or debris	Sediment/debris exceeds 6 inches or designed sediment trap depth.	Sediment is removed.

Table 5.5.3. Maintenance standards for closed treatment systems (tanks/vaults).

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Storage area	Plugged air vents	One-half of the cross section of a vent is blocked at any point or the vent is damaged.	Vents are open and functioning.
Debris	and sediment	Accumulated sediment depth exceeds 10% of the diameter of the storage area for ½ length of storage vault, or any point depth exceeds 15% of diameter. (Example: 72-inch storage tank requires cleaning when sediment reaches depth of 7 inches for more than ½ length of tank.)	All sediment and debris are removed from storage area.
Joints	between tank/pipe section	Openings or voids allow material to be transported into facility. (Will require engineering analysis to determine structural stability.)	All joints between tank/pipe sections are sealed.
Tank/pip	e bent out of shape	Any part of tank/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10% of its design shape. (Review required by engineer to determine structural stability.)	Tank/pipe is repaired or replaced to design specifications.
Vault	structure: includes cracks in walls or bottom, damage to frame or top slab	Cracks are wider than ½ inch and there is evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault is replaced or repaired to design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks are wider than ½ inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe, or there is evidence of soil particles entering the vault through the walls.	No cracks are more than 1/4 inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Manhole	Cover not in place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open manhole requires maintenance.	Manhole is closed.
Locking	mechanism not working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than ½ inch of thread (may not apply to self-locking lids).	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Cover	difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. *Intent: To prevent cover from sealing off access to maintenance.*	Cover can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person.
	Ladder unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, not securely attached to structure wall, rust, or cracks.	Ladder meets design standards. Allows maintenance person safe access.
Catch basins	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).

Table 5.5.4. Maintenance standards for control structure/flow restrictor.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and debris (includes sediment)	Accumulation exceeds 25% of sump depth or is within 1 foot below orifice plate.	Control structure orifice is not blocked. All trash and debris are removed.
Structural	damage	Structure is not securely attached to manhole wall.	Structure is securely attached to wall and outlet pipe.
		Structure is not in upright position (allow up to 10% from plumb).	Structure is in correct position.
		Connections to outlet pipe are not watertight and show signs of rust.	Connections to outlet pipe are watertight; structure is repaired or replaced and works as designed.
		Holes other than designed holes are observed in the structure.	Structure has no holes other than designed holes.
Cleanout gate	Damaged or missing	Cleanout gate is not watertight or is missing.	Gate is watertight and works as designed.
		Gate cannot be moved up and down by one maintenance person.	Gate moves up and down easily and is watertight.
		Chain/rod leading to gate is missing or damaged.	Chain is in place and works as designed.
		Gate is rusted over 50% of its surface area.	Gate is repaired or replaced to meet design standards.
Orifice plate	Damaged or missing	Control device is not working properly due to missing, out-of-place, or bent orifice plate.	Plate is in place and works as designed.
	Obstructions	Trash, debris, sediment, or vegetation blocks the plate.	Plate is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Overflow pipe	Obstructions	Trash or debris blocks (or has the potential to block) the overflow pipe.	Pipe is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Manhole See	Table 5.5.3 (closed treatment systems).	See Table 5.5.3 (closed treatment systems).	See Table 5.5.3 (closed treatment systems).
Catch basin	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).	See Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).

Table 5.5.5. Maintenance standards for catch basins.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and debris	Trash or debris is immediately in front of the catch basin opening or is blocking inletting capacity of the basin by more than 10%.	No trash or debris is immediately in front of catch basin or on grate opening.
		Trash or debris (in the basin) exceeds 60% of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case is clearance less than 6 inches from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No trash or debris is in the catch basin.
		Trash or debris in any inlet or outlet pipe blocks more than 1/3 of its height.	Inlet and outlet pipes are free of trash or debris.
		Dead animals or vegetation could generate odors that might cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane).	No dead animals or vegetation are present within the catch basin.
	Sediment	Sediment (in the basin) exceeds 60% of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of the basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case is clearance less than 6 inches from the sediment surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No sediment is in the catch basin.
Structure	damage to frame and/or top slab	Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than ¼ inch. *Intent: To make sure no material is running into basin.*	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.
		Frame is not sitting flush on top slab; i.e., separation of more than ¾ inch of the frame from the top slab. Frame is not securely attached.	Frame is sitting flush on the riser rings or top slab and is firmly attached.
	Fractures or cracks in basin walls/bottom	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Basin is replaced or repaired to design standards.
		Grout fillet has separated or cracked wider than ½ inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe, or there is evidence that soil particles have entered catch basin through cracks.	Pipe is regrouted and secure at the basin wall.
Settlem	ent/ misalignment	Failure of basin has created a safety, function, or design problem.	Basin is replaced or repaired to design standards.
Vegetation		Vegetation is growing across and blocking more than 10% of the basin opening.	No vegetation blocks the opening to the basin.
		Vegetation growing in inlet/outlet pipe joints is more than 6 inches tall and less than 6 inches apart.	No vegetation or root growth is present.
Contamination	and pollution	Oil, gasoline, contaminants, or other pollutants are evident. (Coordinate removal/cleanup with local water quality response agency.)	No pollution is present.
Catch basin cover	Cover not in place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open catch basin requires maintenance.	Catch basin cover is closed.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Catch basin cover (continued)	Locking mechanism not working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than ½ inch of thread.	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
Cover	difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. *Intent: To prevent cover from sealing off access to maintenance*.	Cover can be removed by one maintenance person.
Ladder	Ladder unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, insecure attachment to basin wall, misalignment, rust, cracks, or sharp edges.	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access.
Metal grates (if applicable)	Grate opening unsafe	Grate opening is wider than 7/8 inch.	Grate opening meets design standards.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris block more than 20% of grate surface inletting capacity.	Grate is free of trash and debris.
Damaged	or missing	Grate is missing or components of the grate are broken.	Grate is in place and meets design standards.

Table 5.5.6. Maintenance standards for debris barriers (e.g., trash racks).

Maintenance Components	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and debris	Trash or debris plugs more than 20% of the openings in the barrier.	Barrier is cleared to design flow capacity.
Metal	Damaged/missing bars	Bars are bent out of shape more than 3 inches.	Bars are in place with no bends more than ¾ inch.
		Bars are missing or entire barrier is missing.	Bars are in place according to design.
		Bars are loose and rust is causing 50% deterioration to any part of barrier.	Barrier is replaced or repaired to design standards.
	Inlet/outlet pipe	Debris barrier is missing or not attached to pipe.	Barrier is firmly attached to pipe.

Table 5.5.7. Maintenance standards for energy dissipaters.

Maintenance Components	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
External:			
Rock pad	Missing or moved rock	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger, or native soil is exposed.	Rock pad is replaced to design standards.
	Erosion	Soil erosion is evident in or adjacent to rock pad.	Rock pad is replaced to design standards.
Dispersion trench	Pipe plugged with sediment	Accumulated sediment exceeds 20% of the design depth.	Pipe is cleaned/flushed so that it matches design.
Not	discharging water properly	There is visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench—normal condition is a "sheet flow" of water along trench. *Intent: To prevent erosion damage*.	Trench is redesigned or rebuilt to standards.
	Perforations plugged	Over ½ of perforations in pipe are plugged with debris and sediment.	Perforated pipe is cleaned or replaced.
	Water flows out top of "distributor" catch basin	Maintenance person observes or receives credible report of water flowing out during any storm less than the design storm, or water is causing (or appears likely to cause) damage.	Facility is rebuilt or redesigned to standards.
Rece	iving area over-saturated	Water in receiving area is causing (or has potential of causing) landslide problems.	There is no danger of landslides.
Internal:			
Manhole/chamber	Worn or damaged post, baffles, side of chamber	Structure dissipating flow deteriorates to ½ of original size or any concentrated worn spot exceeds 1 square foot, which would make structure unsound.	Structure is replaced to design standards.
	Other defects	See entire contents of Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).	See entire contents of Table 5.5.5 (catch basins).

Table 5.5.8. Maintenance standards for biofiltration swale.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General Sediment	accumulation on grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the swale. When finished, swale should be level from side to side and drain freely toward outlet. There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
	Standing water	Water stands in the swale between storms and does not drain freely.	Any of the following may apply: remove sediment or trash blockages; improve grade from head to foot of swale; remove clogged check dams; add underdrains; or convert to a wet biofiltration swale.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire swale width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire swale width.
	Constant baseflow	Small quantities of water continually flow through the swale, even when it has been dry for weeks, and an eroded, muddy channel has formed in the swale bottom.	Add a low-flow pea gravel drain the length of the swale, or bypass the baseflow around the swale.
Poor	vegetation coverage	Grass is sparse or bare, or eroded patches occur in more than 10% of the swale bottom.	Determine why grass growth is poor and correct that condition. Replant with plugs of grass from the upper slope: plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals; or reseed into loosened, fertile soil.
	Vegetation	Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation so that flow is not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 3 to 4 inches. Remove grass clippings. Mowing is not required for wet biofiltration swales. However, fall harvesting of very dense vegetation after plant die-back is recommended.
	Excessive shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach swale.	If possible, trim back overhanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
	Inlet/outlet	Inlet/outlet areas are clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove material so there is no clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet area.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated in the swale.	Remove trash and debris from bioswale.
	Erosion/scouring	Swale bottom has eroded or scoured due to flow channelization or high flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. If bare areas are large (generally greater than 12 inches wide), the swale should be regraded and reseeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident, or take plugs of grass from the upper slope and plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals.

Table 5.5.9. Maintenance standards for vegetated filter strip.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General Sedim	ent accumulation on grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits, relevel so slope is even and flows pass evenly through strip.
Vegetation		Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow grass and control nuisance vegetation so that flow is not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height between 3 and 4 inches.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on the vegetated filter strip.	Remove trash and debris from filter.
	Erosion/scouring	Areas have eroded or scoured due to flow channelization or high flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. The grass will creep in over the rock in time. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the vegetated filter strip should be regraded and reseeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed over entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width.

Table 5.5.10. Maintenance standards for ecology embankment.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General Sedim	ent accumulation on grass filter strip	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches or creates uneven grading that interferes with sheet flow.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the embankment. When finished, embankment should be level from side to side and drain freely toward the toe of the embankment slope. There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
No-vegeta	tion zone/flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed over entire embankment width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire embankment width.
Poor	vegetation coverage	Grass is sparse or bare, or eroded patches are observed in more than 10% of the vegetated filter strip surface area.	Consult with roadside vegetation specialists to determine why grass growth is poor and correct the offending condition. Replant with plugs of grass from the upper slope or reseed into loosened, fertile soil or compost.
	Vegetation	Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation so that flow is not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 3 to 4 inches. Remove grass clippings.
Ecolog	y mix replacement	Water is seen on the surface of the ecology mix from storms that are less than a 6-month, 24-hour precipitation event. Maintenance also needed on a 10-year cycle and during a preservation project.	Excavate and replace all of the ecology mix contained within the ecology embankment.
	Excessive shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach embankment.	If possible, trim back overhanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on embankment.	Remove trash and debris from embankment.

Table 5.5.11. Maintenance standards for permeable pavement.

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment accumulation	Collection of sediment is too coarse to pass through pavement.	Remove sediment deposits with high-pressure vacuum sweeper.
	Accumulation of leaves, needles, and other foliage	Accumulation on top of pavement is observed.	Remove with a leaf blower or high-pressure vacuum sweeper.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on the pavement.	Remove by hand or with a high-pressure vacuum sweeper.
	Oil accumulation	Oil collection is observed on top of pavement.	Immediately remove with a vacuum and follow up by a pressure wash or other appropriate rinse procedure.
Visual facility identification	Not aware of permeable pavement location	Facility markers are missing or not readable.	Replace facility identification where needed.
Annual minimum maintenance			Remove potential void-clogging debris with a biannual or annual high-pressure vacuum sweeping.

Table 5.5.12. Maintenance standards for dispersion areas (natural and engineered).

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment accumulation on dispersion area	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits while minimizing compaction of soils in dispersion area; relevel so slope is even and flows pass evenly over/through dispersion area. Handwork is recommended rather than use of heavy machinery.
	Vegetation	Vegetation is sparse or dying; significant areas are without ground cover.	Control nuisance vegetation. Add vegetation, preferably native ground cover, bushes, and trees (where consistent with safety standards) to bare areas or areas where the initial plantings have died.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on the dispersion area.	Remove trash and debris from filter. Handwork is recommended rather than use of heavy machinery.
	Erosion/scouring	Eroded or scoured areas due to flow channelization or high flows are observed.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel/compost mix (see Section 5-4.3.2 for the compost specifications). The grass will creep in over the rock mix in time. If bare areas are large (generally greater than 12 inches wide), the dispersion area should be reseeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident. Look for opportunities to locate flow spreaders, such as dispersion trenches and rock pads.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed over entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width.

5-5.2.1 Documenting and Preserving Intended Functions

Natural and landscaped areas designated as stormwater treatment facilities must be identified in the field and documented for future reference. The locations of these areas are documented in the WSDOT GIS Workbench, right-of-way plans, and as-built plans. During the post-construction meeting, these treatment facilities are identified to maintenance personnel. (Specially marked delineators are placed to notify maintenance personnel that a sensitive feature is in the area. The type and placement of this marker must be worked out between the maintenance and design offices).

5-5.2.2 Sensitive Area Mapping

State roadways have been surveyed to provide guidance to WSDOT maintenance crews so that BMPs may be applied to eliminate or reduce the impacts of maintenance activities on streams, wetlands, and water bodies. The primary objective of this survey was to identify all locations where these sensitive areas are within 300 feet of a roadway. A secondary objective was to note those areas that are particularly sensitive or insensitive in order to support appropriate maintenance actions and application of BMPs. This effort does not eliminate the need for detailed biological evaluation of resources during highway project planning. This survey information is located on the GIS Workbench. When wetlands on WSDOT-owned right-of-way are delineated, and new wetlands created, this information must be documented in the GIS Workbench. The GIS Workbench is used to update the Maintenance Roadside Sensitive Area Atlases.

5-5.2.3 Storm water Inventory

The stormwater database can be a valuable tool for design engineers. The stormwater database contains all of the data used to prioritize stand-alone stormwater retrofit projects. In addition to the data used to derive retrofit priorities for each outfall, several hundred complete records contain BMP retrofit recommendations, conceptual design information, BMP cost estimates, drainage basin characteristics, conveyance system information, photographs, field sketches, and preliminary facility sizing calculations. To obtain stormwater database information about specific outfalls, contact the region's Hydraulics and Water Quality offices or the HQ ESO Water Quality Program. More information is available in Section 3-3.7.

5-6 References

API. 1990. Design and operation of oil-water separators. American Petroleum Institute Publication 421, February 1990.

Bureau of Reclamation. 1978. Hydraulic design of stilling basins and energy dissipaters, Publication EM 25. U.S. Bureau of Reclamation.

Cahill, T.H., Adams, M., & Marm, C. (2003, September/October). Porous asphalt: The right choice for porous pavements. *Hot Mix Asphalt Technology, 26-40.*

Cahill Associates. Section 02725 – General porous paving and groundwater infiltration beds. In *General Specifications only: Porous Paving* 02725-1

Chang, G.C. 2000. Review of stormwater manual, sand filtration basins for Department of Ecology, State of Washington. November 5, 2000.

Chollack, Tracy, et al. 2001. Porous Pavement Phase 1 Evaluation Report. Seattle Public Utilities, Report, Seattle, Washington, February 7, 2001.

Chow, V.T. 1959. Open-channel flow. McGraw-Hill, Boston, MA.

City of Austin. 1988. Design guidelines for water quality control basins, environmental criteria manual. June 1988. Austin, Texas.

Claytor and Schueler. 1996. Design of Stormwater Filtering Systems. Center for Watershed Protection. Chesapeake Research Consortium. Silver Spring, MD.

Daugherty, R.L. and J.B. Franzini. 1977. Fluid Mechanics with Engineering Applications, McGraw-Hill, New York. Ecology. 2005. *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington*. Washington State Department of Ecology.

Ecology. 2004. *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washin*gton. Washington State Department of Ecology.

Ecology. 2005. Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication. 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/0406025.html

Ecology. 2004. Washington State Wetland Rating System for Eastern Washington. Revised Ecology Publication # 04-06-15. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication. 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/sea/wetlandratings/pdf/ 0406015-part1.pdf

Federal Highway Administration. 2002. Construction of Pavement Subsurface Drainage Systems. Publication FHWA IF-01-014. Washington, D.C.

FHWA. 1983. Hydraulic design of energy dissipaters for culverts and channels. Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 14 (HEC-14), FHWA-EPD-86-110. U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

FHWA. 1995. Geosynthetic design and construction guidelines. Publication No. FHWA HI-95-038. Federal Highway Administration. May 1995.

FHWA. 2002. Construction of pavement subsurface drainage systems. Publication No. FHWA-IF-01-014, HIPA-20/1-02(500). January 3, 2002. U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration.

Georgia Stormwater Management Manual, Section 3.3.5.

Harrison, R.B., M.A. Grey, C.L. Henry and D. Xue. 1997. Field test of compost amendment to reduce nutrient runoff, final report. <http://www.forestsoils.org/esc311-507/2000/Compost-amendment/>.

Hitchcock, G.L and A. Cronquist. 1973. Flora of the Pacific Northwest. University of Washington Press, Seattle.

Hortus Northwest. 1991. Wetland plants for western Oregon.

Jaisinghani, R.A., et al. 1979. A study of oil/water separation in corrugated plate separators. Journal of Engineering for Industry, November, 1979.

Kadlec, R.H. and R.L. Knight. 1996. Treatment Wetlands. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL. 893p.

King County. 1998. King County, *Washington Surface Water Design Manual*. King County Department of Natural Resources, Seattle, WA.

Lau, Marsalek, and Rochfort. 2000. Use of a biofilter for treatment of heavy metals in highway runoff. Water Quality Research Journal of Canada 35(3):563–580.

Mollick, R.B. et al. 2000. Design, Construction and Performance of New-Generation Open-Graded Friction Courses. National Center for Asphalt Technology. Auburn university, Alabama

Metro. 1990. Water pollution control aspects of aquatic plants. Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle.

Miller, S. 2000. Criteria for assessing the trace element removal capacity of bio-filtration systems. Spokane County.

NCHRP. 1994. Long-term performance of geosynthetics in drainage applications. NCHRP Report 367.

Puget Sound Action Team. 2005. *Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound.*

Prince George's County. 2001. *The Bioretention Manual*. Prince George's County Programs and Planning Division.

Schueler, Thomas, Peter Kumble, and Heraty, Anacostia Restoration Team, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments. 1992. "A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Non-Point Source Pollution in the Coastal Zone." Prepared for U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Thullen, J.S., J.J. Sartoris, and W.E. Walton. 2002. Effects of Vegetation Management in Constructed Wetlands Treatment Cells on Water Quality and Mosquito Production. *Ecological Engineering* 18 (2002) 441-457.

U.S. EPA. 1993. Guidance Specifying Management Measures For Sources of Nonpoint Pollution In Coastal Waters. EPA-840-B-92-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA), Office of Water, Washington, D.C.

U.S.A.F. circa 1991. Gravity oil and water separator design criteria. U.S. Air Force.

U.S. COE. 1994. Selection and design of oil and water separators. U.S. Army Corps. of Engineers, August 26, 1994.

U.S. EPA Technology Fact Sheets – <http://www.epa.gov/owm/mtb/mtbfact.htm>.

UW. 1994. Field test of compost amendment to reduce nutrient runoff. University of Washington, College of Forest Resources, Seattle, WA.

WEF and ASCE. 1998. Urban runoff quality management. Water Environment Federation and American Society of Civil Engineers.

WPCF. 1985. Clarifier design. Water Pollution Control Federation Manual of Practice FD-8.

Young, G.K., S. Stein, P. Cole, T. Kammer, F. Graziano, and F. Bank. 1996. Evaluation and Management of Highway Runoff Water Quality. FHWA-PD-96-032, Federal Highway Administration

CHAPTER 6

Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control Design Guidance and Process

Chapter 6. Table of Contents

List of Figures

Chapter 6. Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control Design Guidance and Process

6-1 Introduction

The primary focus of construction stormwater planning is to prevent sediment and other pollutants associated with construction activity from impacting soil, air, and water quality. Such impacts can increase project costs through regulatory and legal fines, and through repair of site damage that causes delays to project delivery.

Temporary erosion and sediment control (TESC) plans and spill prevention control and countermeasures (SPCC) plans are required to adequately and systematically identify and minimize project risk. Together, the TESC and SPCC plans satisfy the construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) requirements.

All projects that disturb soil must comply with the 12 TESC Elements (see Section 6-2.1.2), and must apply the appropriate best management practices (BMPs) presented in this chapter. A TESC plan must be prepared if a construction project adds or replaces (removes existing road surface down to base course) more than 2,000 square feet of impervious surface or disturbs more than 7,000 square feet of soil. Projects that disturb fewer than 7,000 square feet of soil must address erosion control and the 12 TESC Elements, but a stand-alone TESC plan is optional and plan sheets are not required. All WSDOT staff designing or implementing TESC plans should have the Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control Course (course code BPW) on their training matrix.

SPCC plans are prepared by the contractor as required in *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (Standard Specifications) 1-07.15(1). Instructions for plan preparation are available to contractors at the Headquarters (HQ) Hazardous Materials Program web site (🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/HazMat/SpillPrevention.htm).

6-2 Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control (TESC) Plan

The purpose of a TESC plan is to clearly establish when and where specific BMPs will be implemented to prevent erosion and the transport of sediment from a site during construction. A TESC plan must address the 12 TESC Elements, which are described later in this chapter.

A TESC plan consists of a narrative section and plan sheets. The narrative section includes an analysis of erosion risk for each TESC Element and a list of Standard Specifications, general special provisions (GSPs), and special provisions used to satisfy the risk. The plan sheets show the BMP locations and other features, such as topography and location of sensitive areas for multiple project stages. It is recommended that large projects that will be under construction for multiple seasons create phased TESC plans (one year of construction focusing on the wet seasons).

The HQ Erosion Control Program offers an 8-hour Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control Certification Course, which covers basic principles of erosion and provides in-depth analysis of BMPs. Recertification is required every three years.

WSDOT has a web-based planning tool that helps designers create thorough and contractually enforceable TESC plans. The designer reviews requirements, selects BMPs, and identifies contractual tools to ensure enforcement of TESC plans. The planning tool helps ensure consistency in plan format as it automatically organizes and writes the TESC plan narrative. It also greatly accelerates the process for TESC plan review. For further information or to schedule training, contact the Stormwater Erosion Control Coordinator at the Environmental Services Office.

A TESC plan template, which provides information on how to create an effective TESC plan, is available online for non-WSDOT TESC plan designers at the HQ Erosion Control Program web site: http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/WaterQuality/ErosionControl.htm

6-2.1 Step-by-Step Procedure for Preparing TESC Plans

6-2.1.1 Data Collection and Risk Analysis

Collect site-specific data on soil, precipitation, topography, drainage patterns/off-site water, groundwater, sensitive areas on or near the site, vegetated areas, and other relevant project characteristics. Evaluating the risks associated with each of these factors is necessary to select the appropriate BMPs and determine the level of effort needed to address the 12 TESC Elements. Most high-risk projects involve more than 5 acres of soil disturbance; discharge to state waters within 300 feet of the project; and meet at least three of the following four characteristics:

- More than 50% of the site consists of soils in Hydrologic Groups C and D. This information is obtained from Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS) county soil surveys.
- The project involves wet-season work or lasts more than one year.
- Cut/fill slopes exceed more than 50 feet in length.
- There are active seeps or there is shallow groundwater on the project site.

Information on collecting data for each factor is provided below.

1. **Soils**

   The proportion of sand, silt, and clay particles in the soil determines soil texture. Soil texture affects the erodibility of the soil, how quickly the particles settle out of runoff, and the amount of infiltration that will occur at a site. Information on soil texture can be obtained for any given project from several sources, including geotechnical reports/soil boring logs, jar testing, on-site evaluation, and NRCS soil survey reports for individual counties.

The *Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control Certification Course Manual* and Chapter 4 (Hydrologic Analysis) of this manual provide guidance for determining soil-related risks, including the methods listed above. Additional WSDOT resources include region environmental, maintenance, and landscape offices, region materials engineers, and the HQ Erosion Control Program.

2. **Precipitation**

The frequency, intensity, and duration of rainfall events affect the potential for erosion on a site. All three factors must be accurately evaluated to assess the potential for erosion.

The WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* (Chapter 2, Appendix 2-2) contains isopluvial maps for mean annual precipitation, design storm events, and mean annual runoff that can all be used to get a general idea about rainfall patterns in any given part of the state.

The Western Regional Climate Center web site (🖰 http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/summary/climsmwa.html) has statistical information on precipitation, temperature, and several other climatic measurements for over 200 sampling stations throughout the state. This web site includes tabular and graphical information, as well as interactive probability-graphing capabilities. This information is vital to the timing and phasing of projects to minimize erosion potential.

3. **Topography**

The size, gradient, and stability of slopes in the project work area should be evaluated to assess potential risks during construction. The potential for erosion increases exponentially with increasing slope length and gradient, because runoff travels faster, with more erosive energy. Higher velocity runoff forms rills and gullies that concentrate erosive flows and energy even further. Whenever slopes are created with Hydrologic Group C or D soils, there is an increased risk of large slope failures, especially when silt content exceeds 30%. All soil types, regardless of composition, are vulnerable to rapid rill and gully erosion when concentrated flows are not diverted away from slopes. In addition, groundwater seepage greatly increases the potential for slope failures with all soil types.

Site topography evaluation should identify areas that can be taken advantage of to reduce the risk of turbid water discharges. Closed depressions, flat areas, or gently sloped/heavily vegetated areas can disperse and infiltrate runoff, and thereby eliminate or greatly reduce the risk of turbid water discharges during construction.

4. **Drainage Patterns/Adjacent Areas**

Off-site water that runs onto a project can cause tremendous damage, because the contributing area may generate stormwater volumes that far exceed the capacity of the on-site stormwater conveyance and treatment BMPs. Some of WSDOT's largest erosion-related cost overruns and fines in recent years were related to off-site water entering construction sites.

Off-site water sources may include natural sheet flow from neighboring facilities; permitted or illicit stormwater outfalls from neighboring buildings and parking lots; groundwater seeps; neighboring construction projects; or unmapped seasonal drainages. The risk of site damage from off-site flows is especially high if off-site water crosses slopes, because slope cover BMPs cannot adequately protect a slope from concentrated runoff. Off-site water should be handled separately from stormwater generated on-site. Whenever possible, off-site stormwater should be diverted around the site. Diverted flows will be redirected to the natural drainage location at or before the property boundary.

Take the following actions to evaluate the potential for off-site stormwater problems:

- ☐ When prescribing temporary measures, refer to the Hydraulic Report to quantify the potential for off-site water
- ☐ Consult maintenance personnel to determine drainage patterns and general volumes
- ☐ Visit the site during a rainstorm and confirm runoff patterns

5. **Groundwater**

Seasonably high groundwater levels affect stormwater infiltration and timing of construction. The groundwater levels can usually be determined from the geotechnical survey of the site. County soil surveys also provide general information on groundwater levels, including the seasonality of high water tables. Groundwater levels can fluctuate greatly throughout the year; data from winter (wet season) is the most important to determine the level of risk associated with groundwater.

The probability of intercepting damaging groundwater seeps and springs can be evaluated using geotechnical reports, county soil maps, and on-site field evaluations. To further evaluate project risk, contact WSDOT project engineers for information about past projects in the area to determine if problems were encountered with the seasonality, quantity, treatment, and disposal of ground-water.

6. **Sensitive Areas**

   Stream and wetland boundaries must be delineated and shown with their buffer zones on the plan sheets. Perimeter control BMPs (high visibility fence and possibly a sediment control BMP such as silt fence or vegetated buffer strips, etc.) should always be placed between the site and downslope sensitive areas.

   When developing the TESC plan, always refer to environmental studies and permits for the project, if they have been prepared/completed. These documents often provide an assessment of how sensitive the receiving waters are, and specify measures that are required as conditions of the project. Region environmental staff should be consulted if the studies and permits are not yet completed.

7. **Vegetation Preservation/Utilization**

   Whenever vegetation is preserved, the potential for erosion is reduced and potential sediment treatment areas remain available for use throughout construction. Accordingly, clearing limits are set to minimize the removal of vegetation. Preserved vegetated areas can be highly effective for dispersing and infiltrating runoff.

8. **Existing Encumbrances**

   Check for existing encumbrances, such as utilities, wells, or drain fields, to ensure that the TESC plan identifies them, protects them from erosion impacts, and addresses any potential erosion risks.

9. **Timing and Duration**

   During the design phase, it is often impossible to know the timing and duration of a project. As timing is often dependent on funding, permitting, and other issues, and duration varies with contractors and weather conditions, most TESC plans should be prepared assuming worst-case conditions for timing and duration.

6-2.1.2 BMP Selection/TESC Elements

For comprehensive descriptions of individual BMPs, see Appendix 6-A.

Using the information obtained in Step 1 (below), determine the applicability and level of effort needed for each of the 12 TESC Elements, in order to select appropriate BMPs for each. All must be considered and included in the TESC plan, unless site conditions render an Element unnecessary and the exemption is clearly justified in the narrative of the TESC plan.

1. **BMP Selection**

   The three categories of BMPs that exist include *design*, *procedural*, and *physical*. A combination of all three is needed to create effective TESC plans. Each BMP type is described in detail below.

The priority in selecting BMPs should be to prevent erosion, rather than to treat turbid runoff that results from erosion. This is accomplished by maximizing the use of design and procedural BMPs prior to prescribing physical BMPs. The effectiveness of physical BMPs is limited if proper consideration is not first given to design and procedural BMPs.

- ***Design BMPs***

  A project design that minimizes erosion risk can greatly reduce complications, both during and after construction. All possible measures should be taken to minimize clearing and grading that expose soil to erosion. For example, projects should be designed to integrate existing land contours as much as possible and minimize the gradient and continuous lengths of slopes. Drainages should be designed to convey water generated both on and off the site to infiltrate and flow away from the disturbed areas as much as possible.

- ***Procedural BMPs***

  How and when a project is built can greatly affect the potential for erosion. Construction sequencing should minimize the duration and extent of soil disturbance. Whenever possible, major soil-disturbing activities should occur in phases to minimize exposed areas. Likewise, major grading operations should be limited to the dry season. Installation of sediment control BMPs prior to grading operations is one of the most important procedural BMPs.

- ***Physical BMPs***

  Physical BMPs include all erosion and sedimentation control measures that are installed after all possible design and procedural BMPs have been considered. The Standard Specifications, Section 8-01, provides guidance on the installation, inspection, and maintenance of physical BMPs. More detailed information on physical BMPs is provided in Appendix 6-A and in the *Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control Certification Course Manual.*

2. **TESC Elements**

The 12 TESC Elements are described below. All Elements must be considered and included in the TESC plan, unless site conditions render an Element unnecessary and the exemption is clearly justified in the narrative of the TESC plan. Common design and procedural BMPs are described for each Element, followed by a list of physical BMPs, if applicable.

- ***TESC Element 1: Mark Clearing Limits***

  Prior to land-clearing activities, mark all clearing limits on the plan and in the field with high visibility fences, to protect sensitive areas and their buffers (including vegetation to preserve), as well as adjacent properties. Retain duff layer, native topsoil, and existing vegetation in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent practicable.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Preserving natural vegetation
- Buffer zones
- High visibility fence

□ ***TESC Element 2: Establish Construction Access***

Install stabilized construction access points prior to major grading operations. Limit access points to the fewest number possible—only one, whenever feasible. Whenever possible, slope entrances downward into the site to reduce track-out of sediments onto the roadway. If sediment is tracked off-site, roads are to be cleaned thoroughly at the end of each day, or more frequently if necessary. Sediment should be removed from roads by shoveling or sweeping, and removed sediment should be transported to a controlled disposal area. When applicable, a tire wash should be used and the wash-water should be treated separately on-site, or discharged to a sanitary sewer (if allowed by permit). Street washing is only allowed after sediment is removed from the street. If streets are washed with water, wash-water must be treated prior to discharge.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Stabilized construction entrance
- Construction road stabilization
- Tire wash

□ ***TESC Element 3: Control Flow Rates***

Protect downstream properties and waterways from erosion by preventing increases in the volume, velocity, and peak flow rate of stormwater runoff from the site during construction. Install the permanent sediment control facilities to provide flow control as early in the construction process as feasible.

Install retention/detention facilities as one of the first steps in grading, for use as infiltration or sedimentation facilities prior to mass grading and the construction of site improvements. Design drainages to account for both on- and off-site water sources. Use vegetated areas that are not identified as wetlands or other sensitive features to infiltrate and dispose of water whenever possible.

Nonstormwater (i.e., dewatering, line flushing) discharges must also be controlled to protect downstream properties. When nonstormwater discharges are routed through separate storm sewer systems, the flow rate must be controlled to minimize scouring and flushing of sediment trapped in the system.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Temporary sediment pond
- Sediment trap
- Stormwater infiltration

☐ ***TESC Element 4: Install Sediment Controls***

Install sediment control BMPs prior to soil-disturbing activities, whenever feasible. Prior to leaving a construction site or discharging to an infiltration facility, concentrated stormwater runoff from disturbed areas must pass through sediment ponds or traps. Sheet flow runoff must pass through sediment control BMPs specifically designed to remove sediment from sheet flows, such as filter berms, vegetated filter strips, or silt fencing. As maintaining sheet flows greatly reduces the potential for erosion, runoff should be maintained and treated as sheet flow whenever possible.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Silt fence
- Fencing
- Straw bale barrier
- Surface roughening
- Inlet protection
- Preserving natural vegetation
- Vegetated filter strip
- Filter berm (gravel, wood chip, or compost)
- Check dam
- Wattles
- Temporary sediment pond
- Street cleaning
- Level spreader
- Outlet protection
- Stormwater chemical treatment*
- Construction stormwater filtration*
- Sediment trap

*All TESC plans, including stormwater chemical treatment, whether originally planned or added after construction begins, must notify both region and HQ water quality programs.

☐ ***TESC Element 5: Stabilize Soils***

Stabilize all exposed and unworked soils by applying effective BMPs that protect the soil from wind, raindrops, and flowing water. Selected soil stabilization measures must be appropriate for the time of year, site conditions, estimated duration of use, and the water quality impacts that stabilization agents may have on downstream waters or groundwater.

Construction activity, including equipment staging areas, material storage areas, and borrow areas that are included in WSDOT's NPDES permit for the project, must be stabilized and addressed in the TESC plan as well.

Soil stockpiles are especially vulnerable to slumping when saturated and must be stabilized and protected with sediment-trapping measures. Plastic may be necessary on silty stockpiles, as it is the only BMP that can prevent soil saturation. Stockpiles should be located away from storm drain inlets, waterways, and drainage channels where possible.

In western Washington, cover erodible soil that is not being worked (whether at final grade or not) within the following time limits, using approved soil cover practices, unless authorized otherwise by the Engineer:

October 1 through April 30	**2 days maximum**
May 1 through September 30	**7 days maximum**

In eastern Washington, erodible soil that is not being worked (whether at final grade or not) must be covered within the following time limits, using approved soil cover practices, unless authorized otherwise by the Engineer:

July 1 through September 30	**10 days**
October 1 through June 30	**5 days**

In the Central Basin region of eastern Washington (areas receiving 12 inches or less of annual rainfall), erodible soil that is not being worked (whether at final grade or not) must be covered within the following time limits, using approved soil cover practices, unless authorized otherwise by the Engineer. (For precipitation maps, see http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/hydraulics/pdf/EastWAIso.pdf.)

If any portion of the project lies in areas that receive more than 12 inches of annual precipitation, follow the soil coverage time limits for eastern Washington, not for the Central Basin. (Contact the region's hydraulics staff to confirm average annual rainfall.)

July 1 through September 30	**30 days**
October 1 through June 30	**15 days**

Expose no more soil than can be covered within the above time limits. Construction activities should never expose more erodible earth than the amounts shown below for the specified locations.

Area	Date	Location
17 Acres	April 1 – October 31 May 1 – September 30	East of the Summit of the Cascade Range West of the Summit of the Cascade Range
5 Acres	November 1 – March 31 October 1 – April 30	East of the Summit of the Cascade Range West of the Summit of the Cascade Range

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Preserving vegetation
- Temporary mulching
- Soil binding using polyacrylamide*
- Placing erosion control blanket
- Placing compost blanket
- Placing plastic covering
- Seeding and planting
- Topsoiling
- Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix
- Sodding
- Check dam**
- Wattles**
- Surface roughening***
- Stabilized construction entrance
- Construction road stabilization
- Dust control BMPs
- Bonded Fiber Matrix

*While polyacrylamide alone does help stabilize soils, using it in conjunction with mulch provides more protection for disturbed soil.

**Check dams and wattles alone do not stabilize soils. These BMPs should be used in conjunction with other soil stabilization BMPs.

***Surface roughening alone does not provide soil stabilization. Another BMP should be used in conjunction to protect the soil from raindrop impacts. Surface roughening must be performed prior to seeding per the Standard Specifications.

☐ ***TESC Element 6: Protect Slopes***

Design and construct cut-and-fill slopes in a manner that will minimize erosion by (1) reducing continuous length and steepness of slopes with terracing and diversions, (2) reducing slope steepness, and (3) roughening slope surfaces, considering soil type and its potential for erosion (e.g., track walking). In addition, all soil must be protected from concentrated flows through temporary conveyances, such as diversions and pipe slope drains. Best professional judgment should be used when sizing the conveyance, so consult the Region Materials Engineer (RME) for guidance when runoff or groundwater is intercepted. Conveyances exceeding a 10% slope should have a solid lining.

To capture sediment and runoff when cutting trenches, place excavated soil on the uphill side of the trench (when consistent with safety and space considerations).

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Surface roughening
- Temporary pipe slope drain
- Temporary curb
- Interceptor dike and swale
- Subsurface drains
- Wattles
- Live fascines
- Gradient terraces
- Physical BMPs listed under TESC Element 5 (with the exception of stabilized entrance, road stabilization, and check dam)

□ ***TESC Element 7: Protect Drain Inlets***

Protect all operable storm drain inlets from sediment with approved inlet BMPs.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Inlet protection (above/below grate and grate covers)
- Check dam

□ ***TESC Element 8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets***

Design, construct, and stabilize all temporary conveyance channels to withstand the 2-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. The outlets of all conveyance systems must be adequately armored to prevent erosion around the outfall structure, adjacent slopes, streambanks, and downstream reaches.

PHYSICAL BMPS

- Riprap channel lining
- Level spreader
- Check dam
- Temporary seeding and planting
- Erosion control blanket
- Sodding
- Outlet protection

□ ***TESC Element 9: Control Pollutants***

All pollutants, including construction materials, waste materials, and demolition debris, must be handled and disposed of in a manner that does not cause contamination of stormwater. Methods for controlling nonhazardous pollutants must be described in the TESC plan. Wood debris may be chopped and spread on-site.

Methods for controlling pollutants that can be considered hazardous materials, such as hydrocarbons and pH-modifying substances, must be described in the contractor's SPCC plan. The SPCC plan must be

prepared to meet Standard Specification 1.07.15(1) and the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) standards as described in WSDOT SPCC Plan Preparation Instructions and Spill Plan Reviewers Protocols located at:
http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/HazMat/SpillPrevention.htm

Stormwater or groundwater that has come into contact with curing concrete must be sampled to ensure water quality standards are not violated. (See water quality monitoring protocols in Section 6-6 for sampling information). Process water (concrete washout, hydrodemolition, etc.) must be contained and cannot be discharged to waters of the state under the NPDES General Construction Permit. Contact the region's environmental staff and the HQ Environmental Services Office for more information on disposing of high pH water. WSDOT Headquarters has created a specific GSP, Treatment of pH for Concrete Work, which can be found at:
http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/projectdev/GSPS/egsp8.htm

- ☐ ***TESC Element 10: Control Dewatering***

When groundwater is encountered in an excavation or other area, control, treat, and discharge it as described in Standard Specification 8-01.3(1)C.

- ☐ ***TESC Element 11: Maintain BMPs***

Inspect BMPs per Standard Specification 8-01.3(1)B to ensure they perform their intended function properly until the Project Engineer determines that final stabilization is achieved. Final stabilization means completion of all soil-disturbing activities, and establishment of a permanent vegetative cover, or permanent stabilization measures (such as riprap) to prevent erosion.

Maintain BMPs in accordance with Standard Specification 8-01.3(15). When the depth of accumulated sediment and debris reaches approximately one-third the height of the device, the contractor must remove the deposits. BMP implementation and maintenance should be documented in the Site Log Book. Clean sediments may be stabilized on-site if the Project Engineer approves.

- ☐ ***TESC Element 12: Manage the Project***

To the maximum extent possible, apply the following actions on all projects.

1) Preserve vegetation and minimize disturbance and compaction of native soil, except as needed for building purposes.

2) Where feasible, phase development projects to minimize the amount of soil exposed at any one time and prevent the transport of sediment from the site during construction.

3) Time sediment control BMP installation in accordance with TESC Element 4.

4) To minimize erosion, follow soil cover timing requirements and exposure limits in TESC Element 5 and Standard Specification 8-01.3(1). Projects that infiltrate all runoff are exempt from the above restrictions. Individual contract special provisions and project engineer directives may be more stringent, based on specific location characteristics or changing site and weather conditions.

5) The work of utility contractors and subcontractors is coordinated to meet requirements of both the TESC and SPCC plans.

6) All BMPs are inspected, monitored, and maintained in accordance with TESC Element 11. Sampling will be conducted to ensure compliance (see Section 6-4 for details).

7) The WSDOT-certified Erosion Control Lead is on-site or on-call at all times.

8) The TESC and SPCC plans are kept on-site or within reasonable access to the site. Due to the unpredictable nature of weather and construction conditions, the TESC plan is a flexible document that should be modified whenever field conditions change. Whenever inspections and/or monitoring reveal that the BMPs identified in the TESC plan are inadequate due to the actual discharge of or potential to discharge pollutants, the plan must be modified (as appropriate) within 10 days. Most of these updates can be drawn onto the plans sheets. The plan must also be updated whenever there are significant changes in the project design or in construction methods that could affect the potential for erosion or spills.

6-2.1.3 Schedul e

A construction schedule must be provided by the contractor per Standard Specification 8-01.3(1)A. The schedule should specify TESC plan implementation to effectively reduce erosion risks. Include the following in the schedule:

- Installation of perimeter control and detention BMPs prior to soil-disturbing activities.

- Phasing and timing of clearing, grubbing, and grading. Where feasible, work must be phased and timed to minimize the amount of exposed soil at any one time and prevent transport of sediment from the site during construction.
- Application of interim BMP strategies when construction activities interfere with the placement of final-grade BMPs.
- Discussion of how temporary BMPs are to be transitioned into permanent BMPs.
- Implementation of an erosion control inspection and maintenance schedule.

The following is a general schedule guideline for implementing TESC BMPs during construction of a project:

1. Prior to any work on-site, WSDOT verifies:
    - ☐ The point(s) at which concentrated site runoff leaves the project boundary and/or enters surface water resources.
    - ☐ Background conditions and downstream compliance points for water quality.
    - ☐ Locations where off-site stormwater can enter the project so that it can be diverted around the site (if applicable).
    - ☐ Clearing limits.
2. Prior to any soil-disturbing activities, the contractor installs:
    - ☐ Storm drain inlet protection BMPs.
    - ☐ Perimeter control BMPs (construction entrances, silt fences, clearing limit fences, straw bale barriers, etc.).
    - ☐ Diversion measures for off-site water (if applicable).
3. Prior to any other grading activities, temporary sediment/detention ponds are excavated, and pond embankments are stabilized or otherwise protected against erosion. Site clearing and grading are phased so that runoff from exposed areas flows through stabilized conveyances to functioning sediment control BMPs.
4. Major construction excavation begins only after TESC measures for each phase of construction are in place.
5. Additional erosion and sedimentation control facilities are installed, as needed, throughout construction. These additions must be drawn onto the TESC plan sheets to reflect actual field conditions.
6. BMPs are maintained, as necessary.
7. Temporary BMPs are replaced with permanent BMPs, as construction allows.

8. Once all permanent construction is completed and permanent BMPs are functioning properly, the remaining temporary BMPs are removed in accordance with Standard Specification 8-01.3(16).

6-2.1.4 Narrative and Plan Sheets

The physical BMPs specified in the narrative section of the TESC plan are shown on the plan sheets. The plan sheets should also show clearing and grubbing limits, cut-and-fill slope lines, topography, impervious surfaces, sensitive areas, receiving waters, and stormwater treatment areas. The narrative section must include provisions for interim project conditions, not just the final configuration as shown on the plan sheets. The HQ Design Office *Plans Preparation Manual* provides more information on plan sheet preparation.

1. **Scoping and Budgeting**

   The scope of a TESC plan includes all phases of construction. Each phase of a construction project needs to be included in the risk analysis and evaluation effort. Intermediate site configurations should be accounted for in the TESC scope because the process of staging requires multiple applications of BMPs. For example, a short duration project may be scheduled and completed during the dry season, whereas a multiyear project may need soil cover BMPs for each wet season encountered. Inspection and maintenance of BMPs should also be considered in scoping and budgeting, as should the repair or replacement of inadequate or malfunctioning BMPs.

   Even with the best planning and risk assessment, there is still an inherent risk associated with each project. For example, groundwater may be encountered where it is not expected, soil conditions are often worse than anticipated, and construction is sometimes delayed into the wet season in western Washington. In addition, low-probability storm events, such as high-intensity rainfall in mid-August, sometimes cannot be avoided. Even after completing a thorough risk assessment, scheduling a project to take advantage of optimum conditions, and incorporating a full range of BMPs, include extra materials and funds in the budget to provide for contingency work.

   Budgeting methods for erosion control are not as well developed as for more predictable construction activities. Additionally, erosion control overlaps with numerous other construction activities. The budgeting tools described below are intended to help when calculating the cost to install and maintain physical BMPs. Possibly the most accurate method for calculating a TESC budget is to consult with technical personnel and specialists. Consultation with WSDOT personnel having experience on similar projects in the same area is recommended to confirm cost estimates for anticipated/selected BMPs.

2. **Cost-Based Estimate**

   Costs can be calculated from the labor and materials costs for individual items. This method can be time consuming; however, it is the only method available for many of the newer TESC products.

3. **Bid-Based Estimate**

   The HQ Design Office has some very useful tools for making bid-based estimates. The UnitBid Analysis and Standard Item Table (🖱 www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/contaa) can be used to view per-unit costs for specific standard bid items on past WSDOT projects. This method can quickly provide a price range for most common erosion control bid items.

4. **Construction Contract Information System**

   The HQ Construction Office maintains the Construction Contract Information System (CCIS), which contains cost information from past projects. This database can be used to estimate future erosion control costs. If a project is being built in an area with a history of erosion challenges, the designer can query the database to view how much was estimated under the line item Water Pollution Prevention/Erosion Control, versus how much was actually spent. For instance, on some state routes and on some project types, WSDOT consistently pays more than it estimates for erosion control. If the erosion control costs in an area are consistently greater than the estimates, consult the construction offices that experienced the cost overruns. Ask what factors caused the overruns, and incorporate extra measures into the erosion budget and the TESC plan to address problems and prevent or reduce such overruns on the upcoming project. WSDOT staff should contact their local help desk or workstation support person to obtain access to CCIS.

6-2.2 Contracting

The ability to enforce provisions in the TESC plan is directly tied to the contract. Contracts must be written to ensure that all 12 TESC Elements are addressed throughout construction. The contractual tools for ensuring that the plan is properly enforced include the *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (Standard Specifications), statewide and region-specific GSPs, special provisions, and erosion control *Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (Standard Plans).

Revisions have been made to the erosion control specifications in the 2006 Standard Specifications, to do a better job of meeting the 12 Elements within a TESC plan. However, in some cases they are still deficient and must be supplemented with GSPs or special provisions to ensure that issues concerning erosion control are addressed in the contract language.

GSPs or special provisions should be prepared whenever the Standard Specifications do not address the specific needs of a project. Such provisions may involve limiting earthwork in the wet season, timing of pond installation, requiring specific products, etc. GSPs and special provisions have been written for many common erosion problems and can be pulled from existing libraries. The statewide library for GSPs and special provisions is provided on the HQ Design Office web site (🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/default.htm).

Some regions also have their own libraries of regional GSPs that can be accessed by contacting the region's Plans Office. If there is no suitable provision, one must be written. Staff within design, construction, and environmental offices can often help and should be consulted.

6-3 Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasures Plan

A Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasures (SPCC) plan is required on all projects, since all projects involve either vehicles or construction materials with potential for spills to contaminate soil or nearby waters. The plan is prepared by the contractor as a contract requirement and is submitted to the Project Engineer prior to the commencement of any on-site construction activities. For further information, refer to Standard Specification 1-07.15(1).

The Hazardous Materials Program provides guidance on SPCC plan preparation to contractors, and provides training to WSDOT staff on reviewing an SPCC plan that addresses all SPCC Elements**.** An SPCC plan addresses the following:

1. Site information and project description
2. Spill prevention and containment
3. Spill response
4. Standby, on-site material and equipment requirements
5. Reporting information
6. Program management
7. Plans to contain preexisting contamination (if necessary)
8. Equipment for work below the ordinary high water line
9. Attachments including a site plan and Spill and Incident Report Forms (if needed)

SPCC plans ensure that:

- All pollutants be handled in a manner that does not cause contamination of stormwater.

- Cover, containment, and protection from vandalism be provided for all materials that, if spilled, would pose an immediate risk to surface waters or groundwater.
- Maintenance and repair of heavy equipment be conducted using spill prevention measures such as drip pans and, if necessary, cover.
- Contractors follow manufacturers' recommendations for applying fertilizers and herbicides, to protect runoff water quality.
- Materials that modify pH, such as cement, concrete, kiln dust, fly ash, cement grindings, and cement wash-water be managed to prevent contamination of runoff.

6-4 Water Quality Sampling and Reporting Procedures

The following procedures have been developed for use on WSDOT projects. All projects with greater than 1 acre of soil disturbance (except federal and tribal land) that may discharge construction stormwater to waters of the state are required to seek coverage under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Construction Stormwater General Permit. In-water work projects are not covered under the NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit, but sampling information for these projects can be found in Section 6-7.

The following procedures have been developed to document compliance with state of Washington surface water quality standards (*Washington Administrative Code* [WAC] 173-201A); other local, state, and federal permit conditions; and conditions of the *Implementing Agreement Between the Washington State Department of Ecology and the Washington State Department of Transportation Regarding Compliance with the State of Washington Surface Water Quality Standards* (Implementing Agreement). These procedures are also used to evaluate the effectiveness of BMPs. Projects that require additional permit conditions should contact region environmental and HQ Environmental Services Office staff to incorporate additional sampling parameters into these protocols.

6-5 Standard Sampling Equipment

All regions use the following water quality sampling equipment. This equipment was selected for the purpose of legal compliance and should be maintained to document the project conditions and legal records of WSDOT construction activities.

Conditions/Procedures	Sampling Equipment
Turbidity	Hach Model 2100 p portable turbidimeter with sampling bottles
pH and temperature	Hach Model SensION portable pH meter or HQ11D pH meter
Water sampling	Rod & cup (12-foot extendable)
Rain measurement	Gage – Tru-Check brand or equivalent installed on-site
Field observations	Field notebook/recording equipment

Company	Product	Approximate Cost
Hach Company* (970) 669-3050 www.hach.com	2100 p Turbidimeter SensION1 pH & Temperature Meter or HQ11D pH Meter	$850 $500 $500

(*or any major scientific supply distributor)

6-6 Presampling Procedures

Prior to water quality sampling in the field, the responsible WSDOT personnel perform the following procedures:

1. **Review Important Project Information and Assess Risk**

   Review project maps, project definition, and schedule to understand when and where construction activities have the greatest potential to impact specific water quality parameters.

   Projects that require turbidity sampling are as follows:

   - **Any WSDOT projects that disturb 5 acres or more of soil** when runoff from construction activities discharges to surface waters of the state or to a storm sewer system that drains to surface waters of the state.

   Standard activities and project conditions that require pH sampling are as follows:

   - Any WSDOT project that disturbs 1 acre or more, and involves greater than 1000 cubic yards of poured concrete (or recycled concrete) or the use of soils that are amended with cement or kiln dust where stormwater from the affected area drains to surface waters of the state or to a storm sewer system that drains to surface waters of the state.

2. **Verify Classification and Water Quality Standards**

Verify the classification and water quality standards for potentially impacted water bodies according to state of Washington surface water quality standards (WAC 173-201A). Region environmental personnel should be contacted for assistance if necessary.

3. **Establish Sampling Locations**

Establish sampling locations to determine background, outfall, and downstream water quality conditions. Sites with multiple outfalls or stream crossings may require numerous sampling stations.

Sampling is required at all discharge points where stormwater is discharged off-site. Locate and clearly mark in the field sampling points according to the following criteria:

- **Background condition.** Locate background sampling locations where water bodies enter the right-of-way, or 100 feet upstream from the outfall, whichever is closer.
- **Discharge water quality**. Locate sampling point at the outfall to the receiving water. This sample should be evaluated for possible turbidity benchmark value exceedances, and steps identified in Procedure 6 below should be followed if benchmark value is exceeded.
- **Downstream impacts.** Sample where the water body leaves the right-of-way, or 100 feet from the outfall, whichever is closer. If out of compliance with water quality standards or permit conditions, file ECAP.

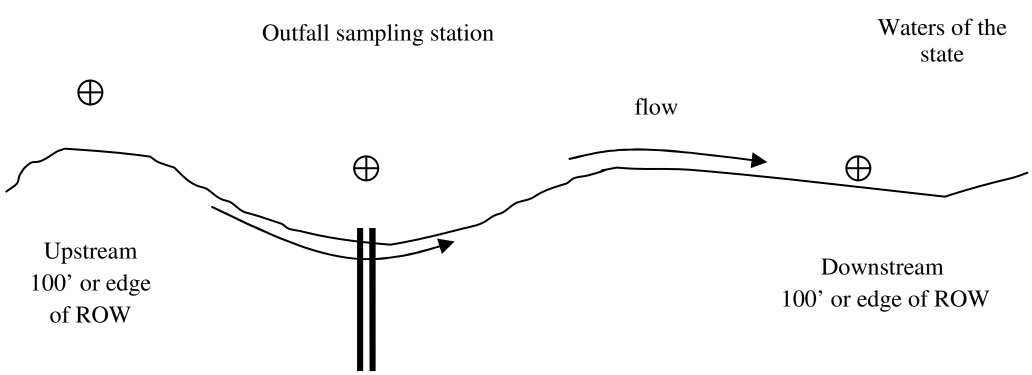


Figure 6-5.1. General layout of typical water quality station locations.

4. **Create Base/Site Map**

Develop a relatively small-scale map depicting the project, sampling locations, and major water, land, and road characteristics. Keep the map in the field notebook so that other staff can understand the locations and access the sampling stations. Monitoring locations should also be drawn onto the TESC plan sheets.

5. **Preconstruction Baseline Sampling**

Prior to beginning compliance monitoring, baseline water sampling is required to establish background water quality characteristics. It is important to show the existing water quality conditions both above and below the site prior to construction, as natural streambank erosion or preexisting stormwater outfalls from adjacent properties may cause differences between proposed monitoring points. Whenever possible, baseline monitoring should be performed during a rainstorm no more than one month prior to the start of construction.

One sampling event is adequate (unless conditions are variable), in which up to three samples can be collected.

6. **Establish Turbidity Sampling Schedule**

Establish a sampling schedule to ensure that monitoring is conducted during the high-risk periods.

Follow the schedule for turbidity sampling.

- **All WSDOT projects that disturb 5 acres or more of soil.** At a minimum, sample at least once every calendar week when there is a discharge of stormwater from the site to satisfy NPDES stormwater permit requirements. If the sample or visual observations indicate the potential for a water quality violation, perform contingency sampling (see section on contingency sampling). Samples must be representative of the flow and characteristics of the discharge. When there is no discharge during a calendar week, sampling is not required. Sampling is not required outside of normal working hours or during unsafe conditions. A note should be made with a brief description of why a sample was not collected. Discharges to surface waters include (but are not limited to) draining of ponds, vaults, or footings, and flushing of water lines. During temporary suspension of construction, monitoring is also suspended if samples from three consecutive storm events meet water quality standards.

Turbidity Benchmark Values

Benchmark values were created as indicators of properly functioning BMPs and are not discharge limitations. Discharges from construction sites less than 25 NTU are considered not likely to cause an exceedance of water quality standards under most conditions, and BMPs are thought to be functioning well. Construction site discharges between 26 and 249 NTU may cause an exceedance of water quality standards, and either the TESC plan has not been well implemented or BMPs are not functioning properly. A discharge greater than 250 NTU is likely to cause an exceedance of water quality standards under most conditions, and the TESC plan has not been well implemented and BMPs are not functioning properly. Therefore:

a. If an outfall sample has a value greater than 25 NTU, but less than 250 NTU:

   i. Review the TESC plan and make appropriate revisions within 7 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark; and

   ii. Fully implement and maintain the BMPs as soon as possible, but within 10 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark, and document in the Site Log Book.

b. If an outfall sample has a value greater than 250 NTU:

   i. Notify Ecology by phone within 24 hours;

   ii. Review the TESC plan and make appropriate revisions within 7 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark; and

   iii. Fully implement and maintain the BMPs as soon as possible, but within 10 days of the discharge that exceeded the benchmark, and document in the Site Log Book.

   iv. Continue to sample discharges daily until:

      1. Turbidity is 25 NTU or lower; or

      2. Compliance with water quality standards is achieved; or

      3. The discharge stops or is eliminated.

7. **Establish pH Sampling Schedule**

Follow the schedules for the following project types if conducting pH sampling:

- **Sites with more than 1000 cubic yards of poured concrete.** pH monitoring should begin when the poured concrete is first exposed to precipitation and should continue at least once per week until stormwater pH is 8.5 or less.
- **Sites with soils amended with cement or kiln dust.** pH monitoring should begin when the soil amendments are first exposed to precipitation and should continue at least once per week until runoff from the area of amended soils meets water quality standards or the area is covered.

At least once per week, pH samples should be collected prior to discharge to surface waters from sediment traps or ponds storing runoff from the two areas described above. If the HQ “GSP for Treatment of pH for Concrete Work” is included in the contract, the contractor will be responsible for this monitoring. WSDOT is always responsible for sampling upstream and downstream of the discharge in the receiving water body.

Process water or wastewater (nonstormwater) that is generated on-site, including water generated during concrete grinding, rubblizing, washout, and hydrodemolition activities, cannot be discharged to waters of the state under the NPDES General Construction Permit. Offsite disposal of concrete process water must be in accordance with Standard Specification 5-01.3(11) of the. Under limited circumstances, infiltration of process water may be acceptable. As standards for dealing with process water are still evolving, contact the region's environmental personnel and the HQ Water Quality Program to determine if infiltration is an acceptable option.

pH Benchmark Values

a. The benchmark value for pH is 8.5 standard units. Anytime sampling indicates that pH is 8.5 or greater:

   i. Prevent the high pH water (8.5 or above) from entering storm sewer systems or surface waters; and

   ii. If necessary, adjust or neutralize the high pH in accordance with the HQ GSP for Treatment of pH for Concrete Work (http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/projectdev/GSPS/egsp8.htm).

   In situations where the GSP does not appear adequate, contact the region's environmental staff and the HQ Environmental Services Office for more information.

   These offices can provide additional guidance for extreme situations where neutralizing the high pH water with dry ice or CO_2 sparging may be necessary.

8. **Contingency Sampling**

If there is a visual change in receiving water turbidity or a potential increase in pH, contingency sampling is required. If monitoring confirms that water quality is out of compliance with standards, then samples should be taken to determine the duration and magnitude of the event. Once compliance with state standards is achieved, the project shall return to its standard sampling schedule. If more than ten contingency samples are collected in one day, contact the HQ Environmental Services Office, Water Quality Program.

9. **Equipment Calibration**

Calibrate equipment according to manufacturers' recommendations and specified schedules. Calibration frequency must follow the manufacturers' recommendations, at a minimum, for data to be legally defensible. Additional calibrations should be performed immediately if data appear suspect.

10. **Field Equipment Checklist**

□ Sampling cup/rod or hip waders

- ☐ Turbidity equipment (check batteries and sampling supplies)
- ☐ pH equipment (check batteries and sampling supplies)
- ☐ De-ionized water for rinsing equipment (distilled)
- ☐ Long survey stakes, hammer, and marking pen (initial set-up only)
- ☐ Rain gage
- ☐ WSDOT-approved safety vest and hardhat
- ☐ Camera
- ☐ Field notebook for recording sampling data and field conditions
- ☐ Cellular phone and contact phone numbers

11. **Sampling Station Setup**

When setting up sampling stations:

- ☐ Mark all sampling station locations with clearly labeled survey stakes.
- ☐ Photograph each sampling station for future reference and reporting. Picture(s) should show a good relationship between the project, the sampling station, and the surrounding environment.
- ☐ If sampling outside WSDOT right-of-way, survey stake locations should be within WSDOT right-of-way with direction and distance labels to the exact sampling point locations. Record the exact sampling point location in the field notebook and in the TESC plan.

6-7 In-Water Work Monitoring

WSDOT monitors water quality on 20% of in-water work projects. Water quality monitoring must be done in accordance with these protocols and other project permits. If permit requirements vary from these protocols, contact the region's environmental staff or the HQ Environmental Services Office. Reporting of data must be in accordance with Sections 6-10 and 6-11 of these protocols, along with reporting required by permit conditions.

- **In-water work.** Such projects require work below the ordinary high water mark of state water bodies.

1. **Establish Sampling Locations**

Establish sampling locations to determine background and downstream water quality conditions. Locate and clearly mark in the field sampling points according to the following criteria:

- **Background condition.** Locate background sampling locations where water bodies enter the right-of-way, or 100 feet upstream of construction activities, whichever is closer.

- **Downstream impacts.** Sample 100 feet downstream of the construction activity or at the edge of the right-of-way, whichever is closer. If a mixing zone is allowed per Ecology's permit, and if the sample collected 100 feet downstream of construction activities is out of compliance with water quality standards, sample at the mixing zone compliance point designated by Ecology. If out of compliance with water quality standards, file ECAP.

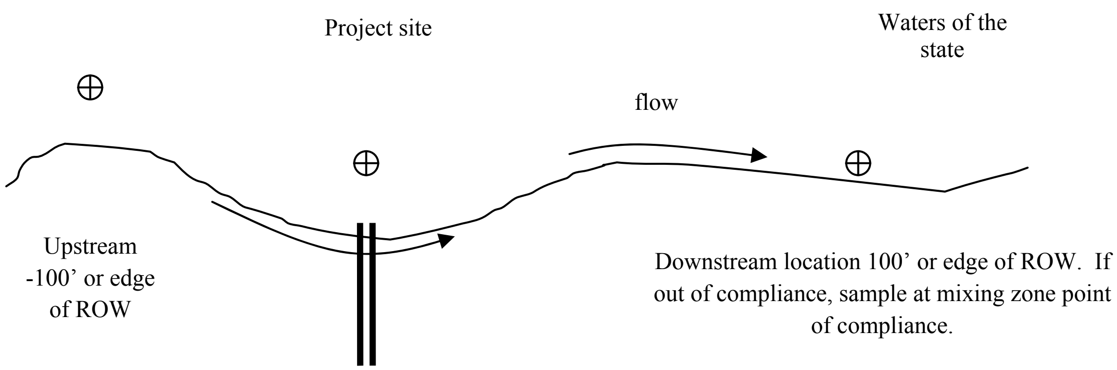


Figure 6-5.2. General layout of typical in-water work sampling locations.

2. **Establish Sampling Schedule**

Establish a sampling schedule to ensure that monitoring is conducted when necessary.

Follow the schedule for conducting turbidity sampling.

- **In-water work.** Sample daily during in-water work activities. One upstream/downstream sample should be collected after work begins each day. If that sample meets standards and visual inspections reveal no change in water quality throughout the day, no further sampling is required. If work activities change during the day (removing piles in the morning and driving piles in the afternoon), another upstream/downstream sample should be collected after work activities change. If standards are met and visual inspections reveal no change in water quality, then no further sampling is required. If visual inspection reveals a change in water quality, then contingency sampling should occur.

Follow the schedule for conducting pH sampling.

- Whenever water comes in contact with curing concrete, a pH sample must be taken prior to discharge. If the pH is less than 8.5 pH units, the water can be discharged, followed by an upstream and downstream sample to verify that water quality standards are achieved. If water quality standards are not achieved, file ECAP. If the pH is greater than 8.5 pH units, the water cannot be discharged to waters of the state. This water must be treated, infiltrated, or sent to a sanitary sewer system. Contact the region's environmental personnel or the HQ Environmental Services Office for more information.

6-8 Sampling Information

The following information is recorded in the field notebook for each sampling event:

- Date, time, and location of the sample
- Project name and contract number
- Name(s) of personnel who collected the sample
- Amount of rainfall in the last 24 hours
- Field conditions (weather, temperature, pertinent construction activities, any prior disturbance of the water body, etc.)
- Testing results for measured parameters
- Date and time of the last calibration of sampling equipment
- Notes summarizing critical activities, unusual conditions, corrective actions, whether or not photographs were taken as supporting documentation, etc.

6-9 Sampling Procedures

The following sampling procedures must be used:

- Sampling begins at the most downstream station first and works upstream to the uppermost station, to avoid contamination. Testing of samples should occur at the designated sampling station whenever possible.
- Collect samples that are representative of the flow and characteristic of the discharge. Use the sampling rod if necessary.
- Fill the sampling bottle (downstream) at least once prior to collecting the sample, to remove possible contaminants. Shake the sample prior to turbidity testing.
- pH sampling should occur prior to turbidity testing, as temperature affects pH.
- Follow the manufacturers' recommendations for equipment operations.

6-10 Office Data Recording and Analysis

All project water quality monitoring forms, maps, and pictures of the sampling stations are kept in the Site Log Book along with copies of the contractors' inspection reports. The Site Log Book must be kept on-site to provide easy access for compliance inspections.

WSDOT has developed a Water Quality Monitoring Database (see Section 2-3.2.1) that automatically calculates water quality standards based on the receiving water body; noncomplying events are flagged, prompting the user to file ECAP. All new projects are required to use the database. For a brief training, contact the Stormwater Erosion Control Coordinator at the Environmental Services Office..

6-11 Reporting Sampling Results and Compliance Issues

The NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit requires that data be submitted monthly for all projects greater than 5 acres of soil disturbance after October 1, 2006. The HQ Environmental Services Office will batch send data to Ecology monthly via the Water Quality Monitoring Database. Therefore, all projects must be entering water quality data into the database by that date.

If a turbidity or pH sample is out of compliance, ECAP should be filed as soon as possible. Once the data is entered into the Water Quality Monitoring Database, it will prompt you to file ECAP if it has not been filed already.

Additional Project Water Quality Sampling

If construction stormwater will be discharging to a 303(d) or a TMDL listed water body, or if there is a 401 Certification for the project that requires additional sampling, contact the region's environmental personnel and/or the HQ Environmental Services Office at 360-570-6649 or 360-570-6648 for guidance on implementation.

If a project chooses to monitor any pollutants more frequently than required by these protocols, the data must be reported to Ecology per a requirement of the NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit. WSDOT's water quality monitoring protocols are designed to meet the NPDES permit requirements, and region environmental and HQ Environmental Services Office staff should be contacted if additional sampling will be performed.

APPENDIX 6A

Best Management Practices

Appendix 6A. Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Appendix 6A. Best Management Practices

6A-1 Introduction

Read Chapter 6 before applying best management practices (BMPs) to projects.

The following descriptions are provided to aid in the selection of appropriate BMPs for temporary erosion and sediment control (TESC) plans. *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (Standard Specifications) exist for most, but not all, BMPs (the Standard Specifications associated with each BMP are referenced in this section).

General special provisions (GSP) and special provisions must be used to ensure that the other BMPs are effectively employed. Prior to writing a special provision, check the statewide library for existing GSPs and special provisions that can be used to satisfy project needs (🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/CAE/pse/PLANTBCN.HTM). Regional GSP libraries may also provide useful provisions. Contact the region's environmental staff or the Statewide Erosion Control Coordinator for assistance in identifying resources when preparing special provisions. The Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology's) stormwater management manuals for western Washington (SMMWW) and eastern Washington (SMMEW) are especially useful, as they contain thorough sets of BMP specifications. They can be accessed at the following web site: 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html

6A-2 Best Management Practices

6A-2.1 Temporary Seeding

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(2) Seeding, Fertilizing, and Mulching

1. Definition

   The establishment of a vegetative cover on disturbed areas by seeding with plants. Temporary seeding is used in areas where permanent cover is not necessary or appropriate (e.g., stockpiles, overwintering of incomplete grades). Permanent seeding is intended to restore and provide perennial vegetative cover to disturbed areas.

2. Purpose

   By protecting bare soil from raindrop impact and binding the soil with its roots, a well-established vegetative cover is one of the most effective methods of reducing erosion.

3. Additional Information

Application of agricultural chemicals to promote grass establishment must be conducted in a manner and at application rates that will not result in loss of chemicals to stormwater runoff. Manufacturers' recommendations for application rates and procedures must be followed.

To determine the optimal seed/fertilizer mixes and application specifications for a project, contact the Headquarters (HQ) Roadside & Site Development Unit. Additional information can be found in the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) *Roadside Manual,* Chapter 800 – Vegetation ~ Seed, Fertilizer, and Mulch.

6A-2.2 Mulching

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(2)D Mulching

1. Definition

Application of organic material to protect bare soil from raindrop and sheet erosion, in addition to enhancing seed germination.

2. Purpose

Mulch provides immediate temporary protection from erosion. Mulch also enhances plant establishment by conserving moisture; holding fertilizer, seed, and topsoil in place; and moderating soil temperatures. There are numerous mulches that can be used, such as straw, wood chips (hog-fuel), wood fibers, and compost.

3. Additional Information

- Compost is a popular material for mulching and has soil-amending properties that benefit continued plant growth. Make sure the material is composted well enough to prevent leaching of nutrients into the runoff.
- Wood chips left over from land-clearing activities also make great mulch. During the decomposition process, however, a nitrogen deficiency can occur in the soil, making it difficult for plants to grow well.
- Wood chip mulch is also a suitable material for stabilizing entrances and haul roads that are not heavily used by construction vehicles.
- Hand-spread straw is less likely to be displaced by wind or runoff, because of its weight and length. Blown straw is smaller and may be more susceptible to wind and rainfall/runoff action.

- Organic and inorganic tackifiers are available to prevent displacement of mulch by wind and rain. Refer to WSDOT Standard Specifications 8-01.3(2)E Tacking Agents and Soil Binders – Soil Binding Using Polyacrylamide (PAM), and 8-01.3(2)D Mulching.

6A-2.3 Blankets

WSDOT Standard Specifications
8-01.3(3) Placing Erosion Control Blanket
9-14.5(2) Erosion Control Blanket

WSDOT Standard Plans
I-12 Erosion Control Blanket Placement on Slope
I-13 Erosion Control Blanket Placement in Channel

1. Definition

   A blanket made of natural plant material or synthetic fibers that is rolled out and fastened to the soil surface to protect soil from raindrop and sheet erosion.

2. Purpose

   Erosion control blankets protect soil from raindrop and sheet erosion until permanent vegetation is established. Organic blankets are made of jute, straw, wood shavings, coconut fiber (coir), or various combinations of each. Product longevity ranges from 6 months to 5 years, depending on the composition of the blanket and environmental conditions. Synthetic blankets often contain materials that resist ultraviolet light and last more than 5 years. While most are suitable for slopes, others can be used in ditches with considerable flow volumes/velocities.

6A-2.4 Plastic Covering

WSDOT Standard Specifications
8-01.3(5) Placing Plastic Covering
9-14.5(3) Clear Plastic Covering

1. Definition

   The covering with plastic sheeting of bare areas that need immediate protection from erosion.

2. Purpose

   The primary uses for plastic are:

   - Coverage of slopes and stockpiles.

- Short-term coverage where mulch or blankets are not an option.
- Protection of seed from cold weather to encourage early growth of vegetation.

3. Additional Information

- Plastic provides 100% protection of the soil; however, it collects 100% of the rain and transfers the erosion potential elsewhere. Therefore, energy dissipation downslope of the plastic, as well as conveyance of runoff, should be anticipated and addressed appropriately with other BMPs.
- As with erosion control blankets, plastic must be keyed in at the top of the slope to prevent water from going under the plastic, and upslope sheets must be placed over downslope sheets like shingles on a roof.
- There is a misconception that plastic is cheaper and easier to use than erosion blankets. The average cost per square yard of installed plastic is often greater than the cost of many erosion control blankets, especially when maintenance, removal, and disposal costs are added.

6A-2.5 Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(2)E Tacking Agent and Soil Binders – Soil Binding Using Polyacrylamide

1. Definition

Polyacrylamide (PAM) is a long-chain polymer developed to clarify drinking water. It can be used in erosion and sediment control applications because of its ability to stabilize soils and remove fine suspended sediments from stormwater runoff at highway construction sites. PAM also increases infiltration rates in soils by preventing surface sealing.

2. Purpose

Applying PAM to bare soil in advance of a rain event reduces erosion and controls sediment transport. First, PAM binds soil particles together and reduces the effects of raindrop and sheet erosion. As a result, stormwater infiltration is increased because the soil pore volume is not clogged with fine sediments. Second, stormwater pond performance is enhanced because sediment that reaches the pond contains PAM. The polymer binds the smaller particles together, making longer, heavier particles that settle out of suspension faster than in the absence of PAM. Consequently, PAM can make conventional BMPs much more effective.

3. Additional Information

- PAM products must meet ANSI/NSF Standard 60 for drinking water treatment, and be anionic (i.e., nonionic) and linear (noncross-linked). The minimum average molecular weight should be 5 Mg/mole.
- PAM must not be applied directly to water or allowed to enter a water body.
- In areas that drain to a sediment pond, PAM may be applied to bare soil under the following conditions:
  - During rough grading operations
  - In staging areas
  - On balanced cut-and-fill earthwork
  - On haul roads prior to placement of crushed rock surfacing
  - On compacted soil road base
  - On stockpiles
  - After final grade and before paving or final seeding and planting
  - In pit sites
- For sites having a winter shutdown, or where soil will remain unworked for several months, PAM should be used in combination with mulch.
- For small areas that need coverage, PAM can be applied at the dry application rate using a hand-held "organ grinder" seed spreader.
- Depending on site conditions, PAM remains in the soil 3 to 6 months from the date of application. Extreme weather and heavy traffic (if used on haul roads) shorten the lifespan. These conditions require more frequent application.
- Refer to Ecology's SMMWW, Volume II, for more information on PAM.

6A-2.6 Bonded Fiber Matrix & Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(2)E Tacking Agent and Soil Binders

1. Definition

Bonded Fiber Matrix: A combination of wood fiber and organic or synthetic tackifier that can be mixed with seed and applied hydraulically. Requires at least a 48-hour cure time and should not be used on saturated soils that have groundwater seeps.

Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix: A combination of wood fiber, organic or synthetic tackifiers, and crimped interlocking poly fibers that can be mixed with seed and applied in advance of or during precipitation and on saturated soil.

2. Purpose

   Soil stabilization BMPs that form a permeable crust over disturbed soils to protect from raindrop impacts. Both products provide better protection than wood cellulose fiber alone. They can be applied with seed or as a stand-alone BMP.

6A-2.7 Preserving Natural Vegetation

WSDOT Standard Specification
1-07.16(2) Vegetation Protection and Restoration

1. Definition

   Minimizing exposed soils by clearing only where construction will occur; an undisturbed strip of natural vegetation; or an established suitable planting between sensitive areas and land-disturbing activities.

2. Purpose

   Vegetation provides the following benefits:

   - Rainfall impact (energy) absorption
   - Reduction of runoff volumes and velocities
   - Sediment trapping
   - Root stabilization of soil

   Preserving natural vegetation reduces the need to spend money on BMPs that try to mimic these natural benefits. Vegetation surrounding sensitive areas (buffer zones) provides critical habitat and assists in controlling erosion, especially on unstable steep slopes.

3. Additional Information

   Many local jurisdictions require that buffer zones be identified and protected with signs and fencing around wetlands, streams, and other sensitive areas. These areas should not be used as sediment filters. Check with the local jurisdiction or with WSDOT environmental permitting staff.

6A-2.8 Sodding

WSDOT Standard Specification
9-14.6(8) Sod

1. Definition

   Stabilizing fine-graded disturbed areas by establishing permanent grass stands with sod.

2. Purpose

   To establish permanent turf for immediate erosion protection or to stabilize drainageways where concentrated overland flow will occur.

3. Additional Information

   - Sod may be more expensive than other permanent-cover BMPs, but because the grass is already established, instant protection is provided.
   - In swales, placing sod strips perpendicular to the flow of water increases the ability to resist shear stress.
   - Staggering sod strips produces a more stable soil cover.
   - For maintenance information, refer to WSDOT Standard Specification 8-01.3(15) Maintenance.

6A-2.9 Topsoiling

WSDOT Standard Specifications
8-02.3(4) Topsoil
9-14.1 Soil

1. Definition

   Preserving or importing topsoil to promote vegetation establishment in nutrient-poor soils.

2. Purpose

   To provide a suitable growth medium for final site stabilization.

6A-2.10 Conveyance Channel Stabilization

WSDOT Standard Specification
For flexible liners, the information below can be used to select appropriate materials. Materials and installation Standard Specifications already exist for these liner types.

If it is determined that a rigid liner is necessary, contact the WSDOT HQ Design Office, Hydraulics Branch. No WSDOT Standard Specification exists for solid liners; therefore, a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   Temporary conveyance channels are designed, constructed, and stabilized to prevent erosion from the expected velocity of flow from a 2-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Materials used to stabilize channels against erosion are categorized as flexible and rigid. Flexible channel liners include vegetation, blankets, gravel, and small- to medium-sized riprap. Rigid materials used for conveyance systems include PVC/concrete/metal pipe, asphalt, and large rock.

2. Purpose

   To stabilize the conveyance feature sufficiently to prevent erosion up to the design storm flow.

3. Additional Information

   The following general guidance comes from the *Hydraulic Engineering Circular No. 15 – Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings*, Federal Highway Administration publication No. FHWA-IP-87-7.

   The following principles must be considered when designing stable channels:

   - Channels should be sized to convey expected flows.
   - Bare soil has very little resistance to erosion when subjected to concentrated flows. Channels must be protected to withstand expected erosive forces.
   - Flow velocities should be limited, if necessary, to prevent damage to channel liners.
   - Flexible liners are not as strong as rigid liners, but are able to conform to changes in channel shape while maintaining the overall lining integrity. As a general guideline, only rigid liners should be used in channels with shear stresses exceeding 8 lb/ft^2 or on slopes exceeding 10% (unless using properly-sized riprap). Table 6A-1 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages of the two liner types.

     The potential for erosion is based on the shear stress of flow, which is the force required to pull or peel (erode) material off the bottom or sides of a ditch. Shear stress can be calculated using the following formula:

Shear Stress = WHG   where:
W = Weight of water (62.4 lb/ft^3)
H = Height of water in feet
G = Channel gradient in ft/ft

(Channel gradient and water height in this formula assume an unobstructed flow of water in the ditch.)

- Using shear stress to determine effective liner types:
  Table 6A-2 indicates the maximum shear stresses that several types of flexible liner materials can withstand. As a general guideline when rock lining is used, multiply the expected maximum shear stress by 3 to apply a 30% safety factor, to obtain the mean diameter of rock or riprap needed to stabilize the ditch. Manufacturers provide the shear strength ratings for erosion control blankets.

  Selection of liner material should be based upon the maximum shear stress that products or specified rock sizes can withstand.

- Sample calculation and product selection process:

  What flexible liner materials are adequate to stabilize a ditch with a 3% slope and an expected flow depth of 1.5 feet?

  Shear stress = (62.4 lb/ft^3)(1.5 ft)(.03) = 2.81 lb/ft^2

  If rock is used, stone size should be a minimum mean stone size of at least 8.4 inches, because (2.81) (3.0 conversion factor) = 8.4

  Numerous erosion control blankets made of coir and synthetic turf reinforcement products could be substituted for rock with potentially significant cost savings. A well-established healthy stand of grass could also withstand the expected shear stresses in the ditch and help purify the runoff.

  Consider coupling other BMPs with the channel lining to ensure channel stability. Check dams can greatly reduce the velocity of flowing water, thereby reducing shear stress. Check dams can prevent erosion until the permanent grass liner is established. Temporary slope drains provide rigid lined conveyances until the permanent rigid or flexible lined channels are completed.

Table 6A-1. Flexible versus rigid lined conveyances.

Flexible	Rigid
Advantages ▪ Inexpensive to install and maintain (grass-lined ditches are self-healing) ▪ Provide runoff treatment ▪ Allow some infiltration ▪ Cause less increase in peak flows	*Advantages* ▪ Maximize conveyance capacity using limited space ▪ Fully effective immediately (no need to wait for grass to grow) ▪ Can be designed to withstand any level of shear stress
Disadvantages ▪ Excessive flows can cause erosion ▪ Vegetation requires time to become established ▪ Require more space ▪ Not to be used in channels where shear stress exceeds 8 lb/ft^2 or slopes exceed 10% (except riprap)	*Disadvantages* ▪ Expensive to build, maintain, and repair ▪ Increased peak discharge rates more likely to cause downstream erosion ▪ Minimal, if any, infiltration ▪ No runoff treatment

Table 6A-2. Maximum permissible shear stresses for flexible liners.

Liner Category	Liner Type	Permissible Shear Stress (lbs/ft^2)
Bare soil – No liner	Noncohesive soil	0.01-0.04
	Cohesive soil	up to 0.1 (noncompacted)/ up to 0.8 (compacted)
Erosion control blankets (temporary/permanent)*	Jute	0.45-1.0
	Curlex wood or straw	1.0-2.5
	Coir	2.0-4.0
	Organic, synthetic, or mix	10.0-12.0
Vegetative**	Uncut stand	2.1-3.7
	Cut grass	0.6-1.0
Gravel/riprap	1-inch	0.33
	2-inch	0.67
	6-inch	2.0
	12-inch	4.0

* Permissible shear stresses based on products chosen at random to give a general idea of blanket strengths by material type. This table does not reflect the full range of permissible shear stresses for each product type.

** Varies with type and density of grass stand.

6A-2.11 Fencing

WSDOT Standard Specifications
1-07.16(2) Vegetation Protection and Restoration
1-07.16(3) Fences, Mailboxes, Incidentals

A special provision must be prepared if a particular fencing design or material is necessary. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1). *Project Delivery Memo #04-04* dated August 11, 2004 addresses high visibility construction fencing. Regions should adapt the special provision to best fit their methods of presentation, while retaining the intent.

1. Definition

   Installing a physical barrier to define a project boundary or protect a sensitive feature.

2. Purpose

   Fencing restricts clearing to approved limits, prevents disturbance of sensitive areas, and limits construction traffic to designated roads and entrances.

3. Additional Information

   - Suitable fencing materials include plastic safety fence, metal fence, and silt fence. Silt fence is appropriate in areas where there is concern about turbid runoff leaving the site. However, safety fence and other material should always be considered in place of silt fence where there is no concern about runoff.
   - Fencing is used to meet Elements 1 and 4 of a TESC plan (see Chapter 6).
   - Maintenance – Refer to WSDOT Standard Specification 8-01.3(15) Maintenance.

6A-2.12 Stabilized Construction Entrance

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(7) Stabilized Construction Entrance

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-14 Miscellaneous Erosion Control Details

1. Definition

   A temporary stone-stabilized pad located at points of vehicular ingress and egress on a construction site.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the amount of mud, dirt, rocks, etc., transported onto public roads by motor vehicles or runoff.

3. Additional Information

   - The same practice can be implemented for all staging and employee parking areas for the project.
   - Maintenance – Refer to WSDOT Standard Specification 8-01.3(15) Maintenance.

6A-2.13 Tire Wash

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(7) Stabilized Construction Entrance

1. Definition

   A system using sump and spray equipment to remove sediment from vehicles during site egress.

2. Purpose

   A tire wash is used when a stabilized construction entrance does not prevent sediment from being tracked onto off-site pavement.

3. Additional Information

   - Effective function requires participation by and communication with vehicle drivers.
   - Wash water must be disposed of in a way that does not violate water quality standards.
   - Local jurisdictions may require a tire wash as a permit condition.

6A-2.14 Construction Road Stabilization

WSDOT Standard Specification
Material specifications exist for road stabilization materials, but a special provision must be written describing when, where, and how much material is to be used. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   The temporary stabilization of access roads and other on-site vehicle transportation routes immediately after grading.

2. Purpose

To reduce erosion of temporary roadbeds by construction traffic during wet and dry weather. Construction road stabilization eliminates the need for regrading of permanent road beds between the time of initial grading and final stabilization, and reduces dust emissions.

3. Additional Information

- If the area will not be used for permanent roads, parking areas, or structures, a 6-inch depth of hog fuel may also be used (but this is likely to require more maintenance). Whenever possible, construction roads and parking areas are placed on a firm, compacted subgrade.
- On areas that will receive asphalt as part of the project, install the first lift as soon as possible.
- A 6-inch depth of 2- to 4-inch crushed rock, gravel base, or crushed surfacing base course can be applied immediately after grading or utility installation. A 4-inch course of asphalt treated base (ATB) may also be used, or the road/parking area may be paved. It may also be possible to use cement or calcium chloride for soil stabilization. If cement or cement kiln dust is used for road base stabilization, pH monitoring and other BMPs are necessary to evaluate and minimize the impact on stormwater.
- Roadways must be carefully graded to drain effectively. Drainage ditches are required on each side of the roadway in the case of a crowned section, or on one side in the case of a super-elevated section. Drainage ditches should be directed to a sediment control BMP.
- Rather than relying on ditches, it may also be possible to grade the road so that runoff sheet-flows into a heavily vegetated area with well-developed topsoil. If the vegetated area has at least 50 feet of vegetation, it is generally preferable to use the vegetation, rather than a sediment pond or trap, to treat runoff.
- Storm drain inlets receiving runoff from temporary construction roadways must be protected to prevent sediment-laden water from entering the storm drain system.
- Inspect stabilized areas regularly, especially after large storm events.
- Crushed rock, gravel base, hog fuel, etc., should be added as required to maintain a stable driving surface and to stabilize any areas that have eroded.

6A-2.15 Dust Control

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   Reducing the movement of dust during land-disturbing, demolition, and construction activities.

2. Purpose

   To prevent movement of dust where on-site and off-site impacts to roadways, drainage ways, or surface waters are likely.

3. Additional Information

   - Vegetate or mulch areas that will not receive vehicle traffic. In areas where planting, mulching, or paving is impractical, apply gravel or landscaping rock.
   - Limit dust generation by clearing only those areas where immediate activity will take place.
   - Construct natural or artificial windbreaks or windscreens.
   - Spray the site with water until the surface is wet. Repeat as needed. To prevent mud being carried onto adjacent streets, install a Stabilized Construction Entrance and/or a Tire Wash as necessary.
   - Spray exposed soil areas with a dust palliative, following the manufacturer’s instructions and cautions regarding handling/application. Used oil is prohibited as a dust suppressant. Local governments may approve other dust palliatives (e.g., calcium chloride or PAM).
   - Techniques that can be used for unpaved roads and lots include:
     - Lower speed limits.
     - Upgrade the road surface strength by improving particle size, shape, and mineral types that make up the surface and base materials.
     - Add surface gravel to reduce the source of dust emission. Limit the amount of fine particles (those passing a #200 screen) to 10% to 20%.
     - Use geotextile fabrics to increase the strength of new roads or roads undergoing reconstruction.
     - Encourage the use of alternative, paved routes, if available.

- Restrict use by tracked vehicles and heavy trucks, to prevent damage to the road surface and base.
- Apply chemical dust suppressants using the admix method: blending the product with the top few inches of surface material. Suppressants may also be applied as surface treatments.
- Pave permanent roads and other high-traffic areas.
- Use vacuum street sweepers.
- Remove mud and other dirt promptly so it does not dry and turn into dust.
- Limit dust-causing work on windy days.

- Contact the local air pollution control authority for guidance and training on other dust control measures. Compliance with the local air pollution control authority constitutes compliance with this BMP.

6A-2.16 Surface Roughening

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(2)A Preparation for Application

1. Definition

   Creating longitudinal depressions perpendicular to the natural flow of runoff by using a cleated roller, crawler tractor, or similar equipment.

2. Purpose

   To aid in the establishment of vegetative cover by reducing runoff velocity, increasing infiltration, and providing for sediment trapping.

3. Additional Information

   There are different methods for achieving a roughened soil surface on a slope; the selection of an appropriate method depends on the type of slope. Roughening methods include stairstep grading, grooving, contour furrows, and track walking. Factors to be considered in choosing a method are slope steepness, mowing requirements, and whether the slope is formed by cutting or filling.

   - Disturbed areas that will not require mowing may be stairstep graded, grooved, or left rough after filling.

- Stairstep grading is particularly appropriate in soils containing large amounts of soft rock. Each step catches material that sloughs from above, and provides a level site where vegetation can become established. Stairs should be wide enough to work with standard earth-moving equipment. Stairsteps must be on contour, or gullies will form on the slope.
- Areas that will be mowed (these areas should have slopes less steep than 3H:1V) may have small furrows left by disking, harrowing, raking, or seed-planting machinery operated on the contour.
- Graded areas with slopes greater than 3H:1V, but less than 2H:1V, should be roughened before seeding. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways, including track walking or driving a crawler tractor up and down the slope, leaving a pattern of cleat imprints parallel to slope contours.

6A-2.17 Pipe Slope Drains

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(14) Temporary Pipe Slope Drain

1. Definition

   A pipe extending from the top to the bottom of a cut or fill slope and discharging into a stabilized water course, a sediment- trapping device, or a stabilized outfall.

2. Purpose

   To carry concentrated runoff down slopes without causing the formation of rills and gullies, and to minimize saturation of slide-prone soils.

3. Additional Information

   - The WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* provides information on calculation of flow rates and selection of pipe diameters large enough to convey the flow.
   - Pipe slope drains can be used when a temporary or permanent stormwater conveyance is needed to move the water down a slope to prevent erosion.
   - Pipe slope drains can be used at bridge ends to collect runoff and pipe it to the base of the fill slopes along bridge approaches. These can be designed into a project and included as bid items.
   - Another use on road projects is to collect runoff from pavement and pipe it away from side slopes. This is useful, because there is generally a time lag between installation of the first lift of asphalt and installation of curbs, gutters, and permanent drainage.
   - Water can be collected and channeled to pipe slope drain inlets with sand bags, triangular silt dikes, berms, or other material.

- Use temporary drains on new cut or fill slopes.
- Compact the soil around and under the pipe and entrance section to prevent undercutting.
- Securely connect prefabricated flared inlet sections to the slope drain pipe.
- Securely fasten multiple slope drain sections together, or use gasketed watertight fittings.
- If 90º bends cannot be avoided in the drain pipe, install thrust blocks constructed from sandbags, straw bales staked in place, “t” posts and wire, or ecology blocks to anchor the bends. For pipe slope drains that are to remain as permanent features, the thrust block materials must be capable of lasting for the expected life of the pipe.
- Secure pipe along its full length to prevent movement. This can be done with steel “t” posts and wire. A post is installed on each side of the pipe and the pipe is wired to them. This should be done approximately every 10–20 feet of pipe length, depending on the size of the pipe and quantity of water to be diverted.
- Pipe slope drains can be used to convey water collected by interceptor dikes. Ensure that the height of the dike is at least 1 foot higher at all points than the top of the inlet pipe.
- The area below the outlet must be stabilized with an energy-dissipating material (such as riprap).
- If the pipe slope drain is conveying sediment-laden water, direct all flows into a sediment-trapping facility.

6A-2.18 Level Spreader

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   A slightly elevated structure made of wood, sandbags, pipe, compost, gravel, or compacted earth that spans an area and converts concentrated runoff into sheet flow.

2. Purpose

   To reduce shear stress by converting concentrated runoff to sheet flow, resulting in less erosion.

3. Additional Information

- Use when a concentrated flow of water needs to be dispersed over a large area with existing stable vegetation.
- Use only where the slopes are gentle, the water volume is relatively low, and the soil will absorb most of the low flow events.
- Use above areas that are stabilized by vegetation.
- If the level spreader has any low points, flow will concentrate, creating channels and possibly causing erosion.
- Design the level spreader so that runoff does not reconcentrate after release, unless intercepted by another downstream measure.
- Level spreaders consisting of gravel or organic material should have a minimal amount of fine particles that could negatively influence turbidity.
- The spreader should span the full width of the channel. Use multiple spreaders for higher flows.
- The depth of the spreader, as measured from the lip, should be uniform across the entire width.
- Level spreaders should be set back from the property line unless there is an easement for flow.

6A-2.19 Interceptor Dike and Swale

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1). The design criteria shown in Table 6A-3 apply.

1. Definition

A ridge of compacted soil with a parallel swale placed on a slope. These structures may or may not be vegetated. They differ from water bars, in that they are of greater scale and complexity.

2. Purpose

To intercept runoff and/or groundwater from drainage areas on slopes and direct it to a stabilized outlet.

3. Additional Information

Use the dike and swale to intercept the runoff from unprotected areas and direct it to areas where erosion can be controlled. This can prevent runoff from entering the work area, or sediment-laden runoff from leaving the construction site.

- When placed horizontally across a disturbed slope, the dike and swale reduces the amount and velocity of runoff flowing down the slope.
- Stabilization of the dike and swale with temporary or permanent vegetation depends on soil characteristics and gradient. Low-gradient, highly porous soils may not require a higher level of protection, because much of the water infiltrates the ground, reducing erosion potential.
- Steeper grades require swale protection, check dams, or level spreaders.
- Provide energy-dissipation measures at swale outlet.
- Sediment-laden runoff must be released to a sediment-trapping facility.
- Minimize construction traffic over temporary dikes. Use temporary cross culverts for channel crossing.

Table 6A-3. Design criteria.

Interceptor dikes meet the following criteria:	
Top width	2 feet (600 mm) minimum.
Height	18 inches (450 mm) minimum. Measured from upslope toe and at a compaction of 90% ASTM D698 standard proctor.
Side slopes	3H:1V or flatter.
Grade	Topography dependent, except that dike is limited to grades between 0.5 and 1.0%.
Horizontal spacing of interceptor dikes	Slopes <5% = 300 feet (90 m) Slopes 5-10% = 200 feet (60 m) Slopes 10-40% = 100 feet (30 m)
Stabilization	Slopes =<5%. Seed and mulch applied within 5 days of dike construction. Slopes = 5-40%. Dependent on runoff velocities and dike materials. Stabilization should be done immediately, using either sod or riprap, to avoid erosion.
Outlet	The upslope side of the dike must provide positive drainage to the dike outlet. No erosion can occur at the outlet. Provide energy-dissipation measures as necessary. Sediment-laden runoff must be released through a sediment-trapping facility.
Other	Minimize construction traffic over temporary dikes.
Interceptor swales meet the following criteria:	
Bottom width	2 feet (600 mm) minimum; the bottom is level.
Depth	1 foot (300 mm) minimum.
Side slope	3H:1V or flatter.
Grade	Maximum 5%, with positive drainage to a suitable outlet (such as a sediment trap).
Stabilization of swale bottom and side slopes	Seed per Standard Specification 8-01.3(2). Temporary seeding, or riprap 12 inches (300 mm) thick, pressed into the bank and extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) vertical from the bottom.
Swale spacing	Slope of disturbed area: <5% = 300 feet (90 m) 5-10% = 200 feet (60 m) 10-40% = 100 feet (30 m)
Outlet	Level spreader or riprap to stabilized outlet/sedimentation pond.

6A-2.20 Stormwater Infiltration

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(1)D Dispersion/Infiltration

1. Definition

   The process of treating water in engineered infiltration ponds, naturally-occurring closed depressions, and vegetated areas with soils or duff that can absorb stormwater.

2. Purpose

   To treat turbid stormwater that would otherwise not meet water quality standards if discharged to a surface water body. This method can often be employed to create a zero discharge site, thereby eliminating the possibility of impacting surface waters.

3. Additional Information

   - Infiltration ponds work best on highly porous soils. Silt and clay deposits reduce infiltration capacity. Upslope erosion/sediment control BMPs, especially sediment traps/basins, are essential to ensure consistent performance of infiltration facilities, whether used as temporary or permanent water quality/quantity BMPs.
   - Infiltration rates are usually higher in undisturbed, vegetated areas.
   - Infiltration rates are limited on most sites, so creative methods are often required to meet infiltration needs.
   - Infiltration can be maximized by spreading water over the largest possible area, discharging water at a slow and constant rate, and using vegetated areas whenever possible.
   - If an area becomes saturated, give it a break and try it again later.
   - Design infiltration areas to empty between storm events.
   - Monitor infiltration areas and nearby surface waters. Infiltrating water on slopes may destabilize the slope, causing structural failure.
   - Always consult with and get approval from the WSDOT Project Engineer before dispersing or infiltrating water.

6A-2.21 Check Dams

WSDOT Standard Specifications
8-01.3(6) Check Dams
8-01.3(6)A Geotextile-Encased Check Dam
8-01.3(6)B Rock Check Dam
8-01.3(6)C Sandbag Check Dam
8-01.3(6)D Wattle Check Dam

*WSDOT Standard Plan*s
I-10 Geotextile-Encased Check Dam Installation
I-11 Check Dams

1. Definition

   Small dams constructed across a swale or drainage ditch. Suitable materials include quarry spalls, riprap, washed gravel, sandbags, and prefabricated structures.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the velocity of concentrated flows, reduce erosion of the swale or ditch, and cause some suspended sediment to settle in ponded areas upstream of check dams.

3. Additional Information

   - Whatever material is used, the cross section of the dam crest should form a triangle. This prevents undercutting at the downstream toe, as water flows over the face of the dam rather than falling directly onto the ditch bottom.
   - The material used to fill sand bags should be selected so that it does not contribute to turbid runoff. For example, use washed rock or pea gravel instead of silty sand.
   - Keep the center of the check dam lower than the outer edges at natural ground elevation, to prevent flooding of roads, dikes, or other structures.
   - Placing rock, geotextile, or erosion control blankets in the conveyance channel reduces or eliminates scouring.

6A-2.22 Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)

WSDOT Standard Specifications
8-01.3(6) Check Dams
8-01.3(6)A Geotextile-Encased Check Dam

1. Definition

   A prefabricated check dam consisting of a urethane foam core encased in geotextile material.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the velocity of concentrated flows, reduce erosion of the swale or ditch, and cause some suspended sediment to settle in ponded areas upstream of check dams. A triangular silt dike can be mobilized and placed quickly. If they are taken care of, triangular silt dikes can be reused.

3. Additional Information

   - The flexibility of the materials in triangular silt dikes allows them to conform to all channel configurations.
   - Triangular silt dikes can be fastened to soil with staples or rock, and to pavement with adhesives.
   - Triangular silt dikes have been used to build temporary sediment ponds, diversion ditches, concrete wash-out facilities, curbing, water bars, level spreaders, and berms.

6A-2.23 Outlet Protection

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1). The region's Hydraulics Office should be consulted whenever shear stresses require solid liners.

1. Definition

   A protective barrier of rock, erosion control blankets, vegetation, or sod constructed at a conveyance outlet.

2. Purpose

   To prevent erosion and scour at drainage conveyance outlets and minimize the potential for downstream erosion by reducing the velocity of concentrated stormwater flows.

3. Additional Information

   - Common locations for outlet protection include discharge points for ponds, pipes, ditches, or other conveyances.
   - Size the scale of the outlet protection based on expected flow volumes and velocities.

- Refer to the WSDOT *Hydraulics Manual* for guidance in choosing appropriate-sized rock outlet protection or alternative materials.

6A-2.24 Vegetated Filter Strip

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   A strip of dense vegetation adjacent to a land-disturbing activity.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the transport of sediment from a construction site by providing a physical barrier that reduces runoff velocities.

3. Additional Information

   Vegetated filter strips may be used downslope of all disturbed areas. The strips are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Any concentrated flows must be conveyed through the drainage system to a sediment pond or a comparable BMP. The only circumstance in which overland sheet flow can be treated solely by a strip, rather than by a sediment pond or comparable BMP, is when the criteria shown in Table 6A-4 are met.

Table 6A-4. Vegetated filter strips.

Average Slope	Slope Percent	Flowpath Length
1.5H:1V or less	67% or less	100 feet
2H:1V or less	50% or less	115 feet
4H:1V or less	25% or less	150 feet
6H:1V or less	16.7% or less	200 feet
10H:1V or less	10% or less	250 feet

Ideally, vegetated filter strips consist of undisturbed native growth with a well-developed soil that allows for infiltration of runoff.

6A-2.25 Wattles

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(10) Wattles

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-8 Wattle Installation On Slope

1. Definition

   Temporary erosion and sediment control barriers consisting of any plant material that is wrapped in biodegradable fiber, tubular plastic, or similar encasing material. Wattles are greater than 5 inches in diameter and 25 to 30 feet in length.

2. Purpose

   The two main purposes of wattles are: to reduce slope length and to trap sediment. Cutting a slope length in half reduces erosion potential by a factor of four. Wattles also trap sediment, whether used on a slope or as a perimeter control device.

3. Additional Information

   Wattles can also be used as temporary curbs for conveying water to catch basins, check dams, and pipe slope drain inlets.

6A-2.26 Silt Fence

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(9)A Silt Fence

WSDOT Standard Plans
I-4 Silt Fence
I-6 Temporary Silt Fence for Inlet Protection In Unpaved Areas

1. Definition

   A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a geotextile fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts, which are entrenched. Adding rigid wire fence backing can strengthen silt fence.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the transport of sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of sheet flow.

3. Additional Information

- Place fence below disturbed areas subject to sheet and rill erosion.
- Place fence on contour to maximize sediment-trapping performance.

6A-2.27 Straw Bale Barrier

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(9)C Straw Bale Barrier

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-9 Straw Bale Barrier

1. Definition

   A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a row of entrenched and anchored straw bales.

2. Purpose

   To intercept sheet flow and detain small amounts of sediment from disturbed areas.

3. Additional Information

- Place straw bale barriers below disturbed areas subject to sheet and rill erosion.
- Straw bale barriers are more suitable for low-gradient slopes and small drainage areas.
- The longevity of the barrier is dependent on the time of year and climate.
- Under no circumstances should straw bale barriers be constructed in streams, channels, or ditches.

6A-2.28 Filter Berm

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(9)B Gravel Filter, Wood Chip or Compost Berm

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-14 Miscellaneous Erosion Control Details

1. Definition

   A berm consisting of gravel, wood chips, or compost.

2. Purpose

   Filter berms have two main functions: to prevent concentrated flows from damaging exposed cut/fill slopes, and to provide perimeter containment of sediment at the toe of a slope.

3. Additional Information

   - Construction vehicles and equipment can easily damage filter berms, so traffic must be routed around them.
   - To prevent blowouts, pipe slope drains may be needed to convey water that accumulates along the filter berm.

6A-2.29 Storm Drain Inlet Protection

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(9)D Inlet Protection

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-7 Storm Drain Inlet Protection

1. Definition

   A device or mechanism (internal or external) for trapping sediment within or immediately adjacent to a catch basin. Prefabricated devices are available for both situations.

2. Purpose

   To prevent sediment from entering an enclosed drainage system where the material can be readily washed downstream. Inlet protection is often the last opportunity to minimize sediment impact to a receiving water body.

3. Additional Information

   - There is a difference in how internal and external inlet protection devices function.
   - Internal devices tend to consist of a nonwoven material that is semiporous. Larger sediments are trapped, but silt and clay-sized particles pass through. They are most appropriate in situations where roadway flooding is a concern or construction traffic will damage an external device.
   - External devices may be prefabricated or assembled in the field using silt fence. Both types trap sediment by creating a ponding area surrounding the inlet. The reduced velocities allow sediment to settle. This process allows external devices to be more efficient at trapping greater volumes of smaller-sized sediment.

- In an emergency, berms of sand bags or washed gravel can be placed around the inlet.

6A-2.30 Sediment Trap

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

WSDOT Standard Plan
I-14 Miscellaneous Erosion Control Details

1. Definition

   A small, temporary detention basin using a natural depression or constructed pond.

2. Purpose

   To settle suspended sediments from concentrated flows.

3. Additional Information

   - Trap efficiency is enhanced when runoff is passed through multiple sediment control BMPs.
   - A sediment trap does not have to be an engineered structure; however, prior to implementing this BMP, consult with the WSDOT inspector or engineer.
   - Sediment traps are limited to removing silt/larger-sized sediment particles.
   - Trap effectiveness increases with trap size.

6A-2.31 Temporary Sediment Pond

WSDOT Standard Specification
8-01.3(1)E Detention/Retention Pond Construction

1. Definition

   A basin with a controlled stormwater release structure sized to detain the peak flow for the 2-year runoff event. Temporary sediment ponds are usually located where the permanent detention facilities are built. In such cases, more stringent permanent facility sizing criteria are used to size temporary sediment ponds. All design criteria for permanent detention facilities should be applied to temporary ponds, unless no permanent pond is to remain or be built.

2. Purpose

   To collect stormwater runoff and detain it long enough to trap sediment.

3. Additional Information

   - The use of infiltration facilities for sedimentation basins clogs the soils and reduces infiltration capacity.
   - Use sediment traps as pretreatment devices to minimize the need for pond maintenance and prevent soil clogging. If pretreatment is not possible, install a permeable rock divider within the pond.
   - Pond outlets must be designed to provide flow control. WSDOT does not yet have a standard temporary pond outlet design. Design outlets in accordance with Figures 6A-1 to 6A-3. Contact the region's Hydraulics Office if site conditions warrant any modification of the figures below.

6A-2.32 Concrete Handling

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

WSDOT has created a GSP for treatment of pH for concrete work, which can be found at: 🖰 http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/projectdev/GSPS/egsp8.htm. In situations where the GSP does not appear adequate, contact region environmental staff and the HQ Environmental Services Office (360-570-6649 or 360-570-6648) for more information or additional guidance for extreme situations where neutralizing the high pH water with dry ice or CO2 sparging may be necessary.

1. Definition

   A BMP designed to control concrete wastes and concrete leachate.

2. Purpose

   To reduce the impact of fresh concrete on regulated water bodies that results from concrete work, including sawing, grinding, and resurfacing. Turbidity and pH are typically the water quality problems of concern with concrete work.

3. Additional Information

   - Stormwater inlet protection measures should be placed around all catch basins in the vicinity of concrete work.
   - Performing concrete work in advance of storm events reduces the risk of generating concrete leachate and violating water quality standards.

- BMPs designed for spill prevention and containment can be used to eliminate the risk of discharging concrete runoff to receiving waters.
- Areas designated to hold process water and to serve as tool-washing stations reduce the risk of concrete leachate being entrained in runoff. Cover these areas with plastic in advance of storms if possible. Dewatering in such areas needs to be done in a way that does not violate water quality standards.

6A-2.33 Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. Region environmental staff and the HQ Environmental Services Office must be notified of intent to use chemical treatment to determine if it is necessary. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   The use of a chemical to encourage flocculation of fine sediments entrained in construction site runoff.

2. Purpose

   Polymers improve the removal of fine sediment that would not normally settle out through gravity alone. Their usage is only warranted when:

   - Large volumes of highly turbid water cannot possibly be prevented due to unusual circumstances (such as projects requiring large dewatering or horizontal drilling operations, or slides), and there is no reasonable possibility of effectively employing any standard sediment control BMP or dispersal/infiltration technique.
   - Chemical treatment system costs enable the recovery of costs by other means, such as accelerated construction rates.

3. Additional Information

   - All TESC plans considering stormwater chemical treatment, whether originally planned or added after construction begins, must obtain approval from both region and HQ water quality programs. This will ensure appropriate application of this BMP to WSDOT projects, as well as allow notification to Ecology. In addition, it will facilitate tracking usage, effectiveness, and costs/benefit information for future policy decisions.
   - This process is sometimes used in conjunction with stormwater filtration (refer to BMP 6A-2.35, Construction Stormwater Filtration).

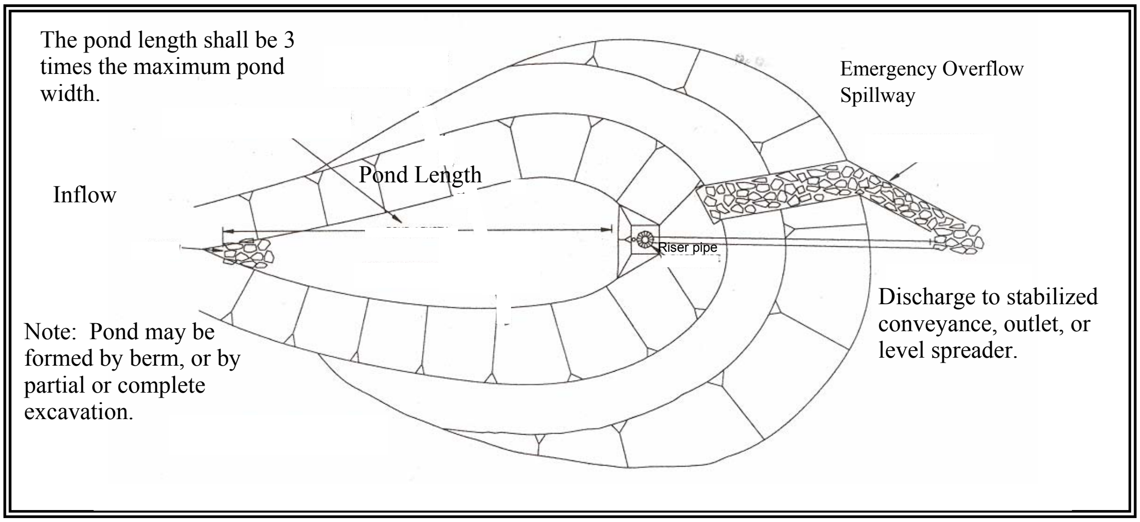


Figure 6A-1. Sediment pond plan view.

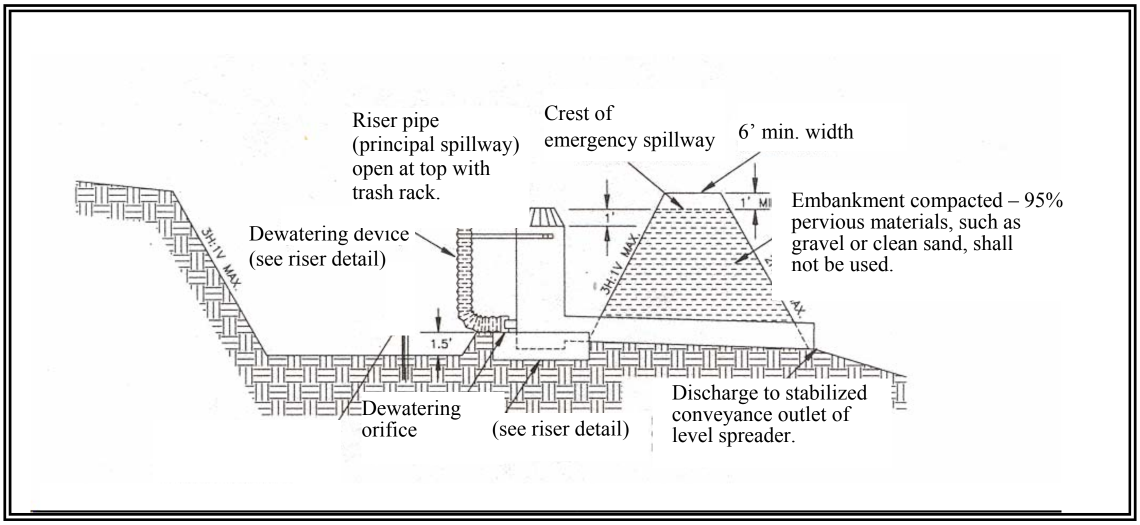


Figure 6A-2. Sediment pond cross section.

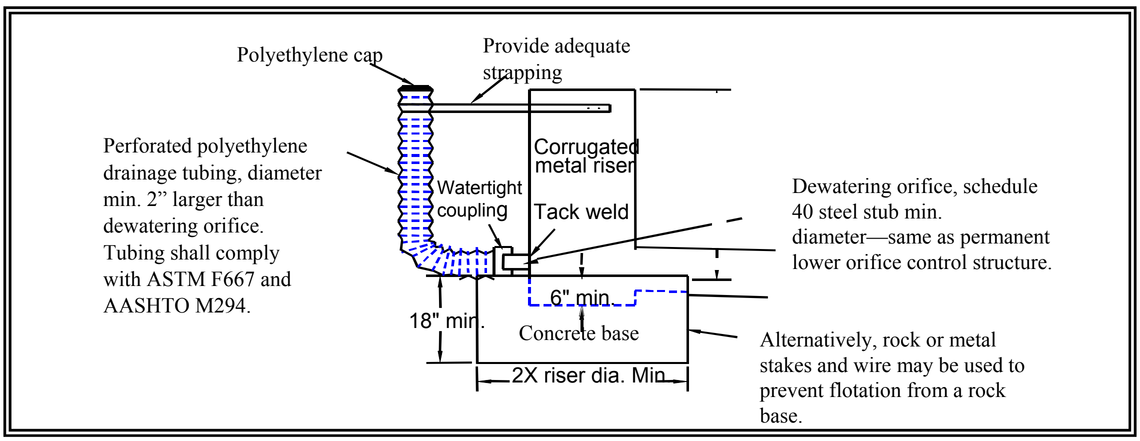


Figure 6A-3. Sediment pond riser detail.

6A-2.34 Construction Stormwater Filtration

WSDOT Standard Specification
No WSDOT Standard Specification exists, so a special provision must be written. For instructions on preparing special provisions, see the Introduction (6A-1).

1. Definition

   The process of pumping construction stormwater through a series of filters—primarily sand. Filters remove sediment from construction site stormwater by trapping sediment on or in filter media. Many of these systems are mobile and can be set up on any construction site.

2. Purpose

   To remove sediment from construction site stormwater ponds that cannot be removed through other conventional means.

3. Additional Information

   - Unlike chemical treatment, the use of construction stormwater filtration does not require approval from Ecology.
   - Two types of filtration systems may be applied to construction stormwater treatment: rapid and slow. Rapid sand filters are typically used for water and wastewater treatment. They can achieve relatively high hydraulic flow rates, on the order of 2 to 20 gallons per minute per square foot of filter area (gpm/sf), because they have automatic backwash systems to remove accumulated solids. In contrast, slow sand filters have very low hydraulic flow rates, on the order of 0.02 gpm/sf, because they do not have backwash systems. To date, slow sand filtration has generally been used to treat stormwater. Slow sand filtration is mechanically simple in comparison to rapid sand filtration, but requires a much larger filter area.
   - Filtration Equipment – Sand media filters are available with automatic backwashing features that can filter to 50 µm particle size. Screen or bag filters can filter down to 5 µm. Fiber-wound filters can remove particles down to 0.5 µm. Filters should be sequenced from the largest to the smallest pore opening. Sediment removal efficiency is related to particle size distribution in the stormwater.
   - Treatment Process Description – Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and diverted to a sediment pond or tank for removal of large sediment and storage of the stormwater before it is treated by the filtration system. The stormwater is pumped from the trap, pond, or tank through the filtration system in a rapid sand filtration system. Slow sand filtration systems are designed as flow-through systems using gravity.

- If large volumes of concrete are being poured, pH adjustment may be necessary.
- Filtration may also be used in conjunction with polymer treatment in a portable system to ensure capture of the flocculated solids.

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

adaptive management The modification of management practices to address changing conditions and new knowledge. An adaptive management approach incorporates monitoring and research to allow projects and activities (including projects designed to produce environmental benefits) to go forward in the face of some uncertainty regarding consequences. The key provision of adaptive management is the responsibility to change adaptively in response to new understanding or information after an action is initiated.

adjacent steep slope A slope with a gradient of 15% or steeper within 500 feet of the site.

aggressive plant species Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant.

algal bloom Proliferation of living algae on the surface of lakes, streams, or ponds; often stimulated by phosphate over-enrichment. Algal blooms reduce the oxygen available to other aquatic organisms.

alignment Horizontal and vertical geometric elements that define the location of a roadway.

anadromous fish species Fish that are born and reared in freshwater, migrate to the ocean to grow to maturity, and return to freshwater to reproduce (e.g., salmon and steelhead).

annual flood The highest peak discharge on average that can be expected in any given year.

anoxic Devoid of oxygen.

antecedent moisture conditions The degree of wetness of a watershed or the soil at the beginning of a storm.

antiseepage collar A device constructed around a pipe or other conduit and placed through a dam, levee, or dike for the purpose of reducing seepage losses and piping failures.

aquifer A geological stratum containing groundwater that can be withdrawn and used for human purposes.

arid Excessively dry; having insufficient rainfall to support agriculture without irrigation.

arterial A road or street intended to move high volumes of traffic over long distances at high speed, with partial control of access, having some intersections at grade. A *major arterial* connects an interstate highway to cities and counties. A *minor arterial* connects major arterials to collectors. A *collector* connects an arterial to a neighborhood (a collector is not an arterial). A *local access road* connects individual residences to a collector.

as-built drawings Engineering plans that have been revised to reflect all changes to the plans that occurred during construction.

at-grade crossing An intersection of two or more flows of traffic at the same elevation, possibly involving more than one mode of transportation.

average daily traffic (ADT) The volume of traffic passing a point on a highway in both directions during an average day of the year (or design year). ADT counts must be estimated using *Trip Generation*, published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or using a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with expertise in traffic volume estimation. ADT counts can be used to forecast future volumes for the design life of a particular project. For project sites with seasonal or varied use, the highest period of expected traffic impacts is evaluated.

background concentration The pollutant level that would exist at a site in the absence of pollutant sources in the neighborhood of the site, or a naturally-occurring pollutant level in a stream prior to watershed development.

backwater Water upstream from an obstruction that is deeper than it would normally be without the obstruction.

baffle A device to check, deflect, or regulate flow.

bankfull discharge A flow condition where stream flow completely fills the stream channel up to the top of the bank. In undisturbed watersheds, the discharge condition occurs on average every 1.5 to 2 years and controls the shape and form of natural channels.

base flood A flood having a 1% chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year; also called the 100-year flood.

base flood elevation The water surface elevation of the base flood, referenced to the national geodetic vertical datum of 1929 (NGVD).

base flow The portion of stream flow that is not attributable to storm runoff and is supported by groundwater seepage into a channel.

baseline sample A sample collected during dry-weather flow (i.e., it does not consist of runoff from a specific precipitation event).

basic water quality treatment (versus *enhanced water quality treatment*) The Washington State Department of Ecology's performance goal is to achieve 80% removal of total suspended solids for influent concentrations that are greater than 100mg/l, but less than 200mg/l. For influent concentrations greater than 200mg/l, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate. For influent concentrations less than 100mg/l, the facilities are intended to achieve an effluent goal of 20mg/l total suspended solids.

basin The area of land drained by a river and its tributaries, which drains water, organic matter, dissolved nutrients, and sediments into a lake or stream (see *watershed*). Basins typically range in size from 1 to 50 square miles.

basin plan A plan that assesses, evaluates, and proposes solutions to existing and potential future impacts on the physical, chemical, and biological properties and beneficial uses of waters of the state within a drainage basin. A plan should include but not be limited to recommendations for the following elements:

- Stormwater requirements for new development and redevelopment
- Capital improvement projects
- Land use management through identification and protection of critical areas, comprehensive land use and transportation plans, zoning regulations, site development standards, and conservation areas
- Source control activities, including public education and involvement, and business programs
- Other targeted stormwater programs and activities, such as maintenance, inspections, and enforcement
- Monitoring
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy

A basin plan that is adopted and implemented must have the following characteristics:

- Adoption by legislative or regulatory action of jurisdictions with responsibilities under the plan
- Recommended ordinances, regulations, programs, and procedures that are in effect or scheduled to go into effect
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy in progress

bench A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

beneficial uses Those water uses identified in state water quality standards that must be achieved and maintained as required under the federal Clean Water Act. “Beneficial use” and “designated use” are often used interchangeably.

berm A constructed barrier of compacted earth, rock, or gravel. In a stormwater facility, a berm may serve as a vertical divider, typically built up from the bottom.

best available science The best available scientific knowledge and practices.

best management practices (BMPs) The structural devices, maintenance procedures, managerial practices, prohibitions of practices, and schedules of activities that are used singly or in combination to prevent or reduce the detrimental impacts of stormwater, such as pollution of water, degradation of channels, damage to structures, and flooding.

biodegradable Capable of being readily broken down by biological means, especially by microbial action. Microbial action includes the combined effects of bacteria, fungus, flagellates, amoebae, ciliates, and nematodes. Degradation can be rapid or may take many years, depending on such factors as available oxygen and moisture.

bioengineering The combination of biological, mechanical, and ecological concepts (and methods) to control erosion and stabilize soil through the use of vegetation alone or in combination with construction materials.

biofilter A designed treatment facility using a combined soil and vegetation system for filtration, infiltration, adsorption, and biological uptake of pollutants in stormwater when runoff flows over and through it. Vegetation growing in these facilities acts as both a physical filter that causes gravity settling of particulates by regulating velocity of flow, and as a biological sink when direct uptake of dissolved pollutants occurs. The former mechanism is probably the most important in western Washington, where the period of major runoff coincides with the period of lowest biological activity.

biofiltration The process of reducing pollutant concentrations in water by filtering the polluted water through biological materials, such as vegetation.

bioinfiltration The process of reducing pollutant concentrations in water by infiltrating the polluted water through grassy vegetation and soils into the ground.

biological assessment A document prepared under the direction of a federal agency to determine whether a proposed action involving major construction activities is likely to (1) adversely affect species protected under the Endangered Species Act or their designated critical habitat, (2) jeopardize the continued existence of species that are proposed for listing as threatened or endangered, or (3) adversely modify proposed critical habitat.

biological control A method of controlling pest organisms by means of introduced or naturally-occurring predatory organisms, sterilization, use of inhibiting hormones, or other biological means, rather than by mechanical or chemical means.

biological evaluation A document that contains exactly the same information as a biological assessment, evaluating the impacts of a proposed action on listed and proposed species and habitat. In the case of projects without federal involvement, the biological evaluation determines whether the proposed action would violate Section 9 of the Endangered Species Act. The biological evaluation can evolve into a biological assessment if formal or informal consultation is required with the federal agencies.

bioretention The removal of stormwater runoff pollutants using the chemical, biological, and physical properties afforded by a natural terrestrial community of plants, microbes, and soil. The typical bioretention system is set in a depressional area and consists of plantings, mulch, and an amended planting soil layer underlain with more freely draining granular material.

bollard A post (which may or may not be removable) used to prevent vehicular access.

bond A surety bond, cash deposit, or escrow account, assignment of savings, irrevocable letter of credit, or other means acceptable to or required by the manager to guarantee that work is completed in compliance with a project's drainage plan and in compliance with all local government requirements.

borings Cylindrical samples of a soil profile used for analysis of soils or determination of infiltration capacity.

borrow area A source of earth fill material used in the construction of embankments or other earth fill structures.

buffer The zone contiguous with a sensitive area that is required for the continued maintenance, function, and structural stability of the sensitive area. The critical functions of a riparian buffer (i.e., those associated with an aquatic system) include shading; input of organic debris and coarse sediments; uptake of nutrients; stabilization of banks; interception of fine sediments; overflow during high water events; protection from disturbance by humans and domestic animals; maintenance of wildlife habitat; and room for variation of aquatic system boundaries over time due to hydrologic or climatic effects. The critical functions of terrestrial buffers include protection of slope stability, attenuation of surface water flows from stormwater runoff and precipitation, and erosion control.

bypass A channel or conveyance constructed to divert water around a stormwater facility or series of stormwater facilities.

capital costs Nonrecurring costs required to construct infrastructure, including costs of right-of-way, facilities, drainage systems, utilities, and associated administrative and design costs, as well as financing charges during construction.

capital improvement project *or* program (CIP) A project prioritized and scheduled as a part of an overall construction program, or the actual construction program.

catch basin A chamber or well, usually built at the curb line of a street, for the admission of surface water to a sewer or subdrain, having at its base a sediment sump designed to retain grit and detritus below the point of overflow.

catch basin insert (CBI) A device installed under a storm drain grate to provide runoff treatment through filtration, settling, or adsorption; also called *inlet protection*.

catchline The point where a severe slope intercepts a different, more gentle slope.

catchment Surface area associated with pavement drainage design.

cation exchange capacity (CEC) The amount of exchangeable cations that a soil can adsorb at pH 7.0. Typically expressed in units of milliequivalents per 100 grams of dry soil.

channel A feature that conveys surface water and is open to the air.

channel erosion The widening, deepening, and headward cutting of small channels and waterways resulting from erosion caused by moderate to large floods.

channel stabilization Erosion prevention and stabilization of velocity distribution in a channel using vegetation, jetties, drops, revetments, or other measures.

channel storage Water temporarily stored in channels while en route to an outlet.

check dam A small dam constructed in a ditch, gully, grass swale, or other small watercourse to decrease the stream flow velocity, enhance infiltration, minimize channel scour, and promote deposition of sediment; or a log or gabion structure placed perpendicular to a stream to enhance aquatic habitat.

clay lens A naturally-occurring, localized area of clay that acts as an impermeable layer to runoff infiltration.

clearing The removal and disposal of all unwanted natural material from the ground surface such as trees, brush, and downed timber by manual, mechanical, or chemical methods.

closed depression A low-lying area that has either no surface water outlet or such a limited surface water outlet that during storm events, the area acts as a retention basin.

coalescing plates A device with parallel plates to separate oil from water by means of gravity.

cohesion The capacity of a soil to resist shearing stress, exclusive of functional resistance.

coir Coconut fiber used for erosion control blankets and wattles.

compaction The densification, settlement, or packing of soil in such a way that its permeability is reduced. Compaction effectively shifts the performance of a hydrologic group to a lower-permeability hydrologic group. Compaction may also refer to the densification of a fill by mechanical means.

compensatory storage New excavated storage volume equivalent to the flood storage capacity eliminated by filling or grading within the flood fringe. "Equivalent" means that the storage removed must be replaced by equal volume between corresponding 1-foot contour intervals that are hydraulically connected to the floodway through their entire depth.

compost Organic residue, or a mixture of organic residues and soil, that has undergone biological decomposition until it has become relatively stable humus. The Department of Ecology's *Interim Guidelines for Compost Quality* (1994) defines compost as "the product of composting; it has undergone an initial, rapid stage of decomposition and is in the process of humification (curing)." Compost to be used should meet specifications shown in WSDOT Standard Specification 9-14.4(8).

composted mulch A protective covering prepared from decomposed organic materials that have undergone a controlled process to minimize weed seeds. Acceptable sources include but are not limited to yard debris, wood waste, land-clearing debris, brush, and branches.

comprehensive planning Planning that takes into account all aspects of water, air, and land resources and their uses and limits.

concentrated flow Water flowing in a channel as opposed to a thin sheet.

constructed stormwater treatment wetland A wetland intentionally created on a site that is not a wetland, for the primary purpose of wastewater or stormwater treatment. Constructed wetlands are normally considered part of the stormwater collection and treatment system.

Construction Contract Information System (CCIS) A WSDOT database managed by the WSDOT HQ Construction Office to track contract costs.

construction staging area A site used temporarily during construction for materials or equipment storage, assembly, or other temporary construction activities.

context sensitive design (CSD) A collaborative, interdisciplinary approach that involves all stakeholders in developing a transportation facility that fits its physical setting and preserves scenic, aesthetic, historic, and environmental resources while maintaining safety and mobility; also known as "context-sensitive solutions" and "thinking beyond the pavement."

converted pervious surface Land cover changed from native vegetation to lawn, landscape, or pasture areas. (See also *pollution-generating impervious surface*.)

conveyance A mechanism for transporting water from one point to another, including pipes, ditches, and channels.

conveyance system The drainage facilities, both natural and manmade, that collect, contain, and provide for the flow of surface water and stormwater from the highest points on the land down to a receiving water. The natural elements of the conveyance system include swales and small drainage courses, streams, rivers, lakes, and wetlands. Manmade elements of the conveyance system include gutters, ditches, pipes, channels, and most retention/ detention facilities.

cover crop A close-growing crop grown primarily for the purposes of protecting and improving soil between periods of permanent vegetation.

created wetland See *mitigation wetland*.

critical areas At a minimum: areas that include wetlands; areas with a critical recharging effect on aquifers used for potable water; fish and wildlife habitat conservation areas; frequently flooded areas; geologically hazardous areas, including unstable slopes; and associated areas and ecosystems.

culvert A pipe or concrete box structure that drains open channels, swales, or ditches under a roadway or embankment. Typically, a culvert is not connected to a catch basin or manhole along its length. Various types of culverts are listed in the *Hydraulics Manual*.

cut-and-fill The process of moving earth by excavating part of an area and using the excavated material for adjacent embankments or fill areas.

cut slope A slope formed by excavating overlying material to connect the original ground surface with a lower ground surface created by the excavation. A cut slope is distinguished from a bermed slope, which is constructed by importing soil to create the slope.

daily data record form The standard electronic form used for recording construction water quality monitoring data, described in Chapter 6.

dangerous waste Any discarded, useless, unwanted, or abandoned substances, including (but not limited to) certain pesticides, or any residues or containers of such substances that are disposed of in such quantity or concentration as to pose a substantial present or potential hazard to human health, wildlife, or the environment (RCW 70.105.010). These wastes may have short-lived, toxic properties that may cause death, injury, or illness; may have mutagenic, teratogenic, or carcinogenic properties; may be corrosive, explosive, or flammable; or may generate pressure through decomposition or other means. (See also *hazardous waste*.)

dead storage The volume of water in a pond, reservoir, or infiltration facility that is stored below the elevation of the lowest outlet or operating level of the structure; the volume available in a depression in the ground below any conveyance system, surface drainage pathway, or outlet invert elevation that could allow the discharge of surface and stormwater runoff.

dedication of land Setting aside a portion of a property for a specific use or function.

demonstrative approach (versus *presumptive approach*) See Chapter 1.

depression storage The amount of precipitation that is trapped in depressions on the surface of the ground.

design flow rate The maximum flow rate to which certain runoff treatment BMPs are designed for required pollutant removal. Biofiltration swales, vegetated filter strips, and oil/water separators are some of the runoff treatment BMPs that are sized based on a design flow rate.

design storm A rainfall event of specified size and return frequency that is used to calculate the runoff volume and peak discharge rate to a stormwater facility. A prescribed hyetograph and total precipitation amount (for a specific duration recurrence frequency) are used to estimate runoff for a hypothetical storm for the purposes of analyzing existing drainage, designing new drainage facilities, or assessing other impacts of a proposed project on the flow of surface water. (A hyetograph is a graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time during which the precipitation occurs.)

design storm frequency The anticipated period in years that will elapse before a storm of a given intensity and/or total volume will recur, based on average probability of storms in the design region. For instance, a 10-year storm can be expected to occur on the average once every 10 years. Facilities designed to handle flows that occur under such storm conditions would be expected to be surcharged by any storms of greater amount or intensity.

design volume In terms of stormwater design, the total volume that is fully treated by a specific runoff treatment BMP. The runoff treatment components of ponds, vaults, and stormwater wetlands are sized based on a design volume.

detention The temporary storage of stormwater runoff in a stormwater facility, which is used to control the peak discharge rates and provide gravity settling of pollutants; the release of stormwater runoff from the site at a slower rate than it is collected by the stormwater facility system, with the difference held in temporary storage.

detention facility An aboveground or below-grade ground facility, such as a pond or tank, that temporarily stores stormwater runoff and subsequently releases it at a slower rate than it is collected by the drainage facility system. There is little or no infiltration of stored stormwater.

detention time The theoretical time required to displace the contents of a stormwater treatment facility at a given rate of discharge (volume divided by rate of discharge). The theoretical detention time for a runoff event is the average time parcels of water reside in the basin over the period of release from the facility.

determination of nonsignificance (DNS) The written decision by the responsible official of the lead agency that a proposal is not likely to have a significant adverse environmental impact, and therefore an EIS is not required.

dewatering Removing water by pumping, drainage, or evaporation.

discharge Runoff leaving a new development or redevelopment via overland flow, built conveyance systems, or infiltration facilities; a hydraulic rate of flow, specifically fluid flow; or a volume of fluid passing a point per unit of time, commonly expressed in cubic feet per second, cubic meters per second, gallons per minute, gallons per day, or millions of gallons per day.

dispersion Release of surface water and stormwater runoff from a drainage facility system in such a way that the flow spreads over a wide area and is located so as not to allow flow to concentrate anywhere upstream of a drainage channel with erodible underlying granular soils.

displacement A property encroachment that requires full acquisition of a parcel in order to build and operate public transportation facilities.

distinct population segment (DPS) A designation used by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) to identify unique species or populations that are threatened or endangered. An example is the bull trout (*Salvelinus confluentus*) listing as a threatened species in the state of Washington. (See also *evolutionarily significant unit*.)

disturbed habitat A habitat in which naturally-occurring ecological processes and species interactions have been significantly disrupted by the direct or indirect results of human presence and activity.

ditch A long, narrow excavation dug in the earth for drainage, having a top width less than 10 feet at design flow.

drainage divide The boundary between one drainage basin and another.

drainage easement A legal encumbrance that is placed against a property's title to reserve specified privileges for the users and beneficiaries of the drainage facilities contained within the boundaries of the easement.

drainage pathway The route that surface and stormwater runoff follows downslope as it leaves any part of the site.

drawdown The gradual reduction in water level in a pond due to the combined effects of infiltration and evaporation; the lowering of the water surface (in open-channel flow), the water table, or the piezometric surface (in groundwater flow) resulting from a withdrawal of water.

drop structure A structure for dropping water to a lower level and dissipating its surplus energy; a fall. A drop may be vertical or inclined.

dry pond A facility that provides stormwater quantity control by containing excess runoff in a detention basin, then releasing the runoff at allowable levels.

dry vault *or* tank A facility that provides stormwater quantity control by detaining runoff in underground storage units and then releasing reduced flows at established standards.

drywell A well completed above the water table so that its bottom and sides are typically dry except when receiving fluids. Drywells are designed to disperse water below the land surface and are commonly used for stormwater management in eastern Washington. (See *also underground injection control [UIC] well*.)

duff The naturally-occurring layer of dead and decaying plant material that develops on the ground surface under established plant communities.

easement The legal right to use a parcel of land for a particular purpose. It does not include fee ownership, but may restrict the owner's use of the land.

Ecology Washington State Department of Ecology.

ecology embankment A stormwater treatment facility constructed in the pervious shoulder area of a highway, consisting of a vegetation-covered french drain containing filter media.

effective impervious surface For a particular TDA, the net-new impervious surfaces plus any applicable replaced impervious surfaces minus those new and applicable replaced impervious surfaces that are noneffective impervious surfaces.

effective pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) For a particular TDA, the new PGIS plus applicable replaced PGIS minus those new PGIS areas and applicable replaced PGIS areas that are noneffective PGIS.

embankment A structure of earth, gravel, or similar material raised to form a pond bank or foundation for a road.

emergency overflow spillway A vegetated earth channel used to safely convey flood discharges in excess of the capacity of the principal spillway.

emergent plants Aquatic plants that are rooted in the sediment but whose leaves are at or above the water surface. These wetland plants often have high habitat value for wildlife and waterfowl and can aid in pollutant uptake.

emerging BMP technology BMP technologies that have not been evaluated using approved protocols, but for which preliminary data indicate that they may provide a desirable level of stormwater pollutant removal. In some instances, an emerging technology may have already received a *pilot use* or *conditional use designation* from Ecology, but does not have a *general use designation*.

endangered species Any species in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range (other than pest insects), according to the federal Endangered Species Act of 1973.

Endangered Species Act (ESA) of 1973 An act *"To provide for the conservation of endangered and threatened species of fish, wildlife, and plants, and for other purposes."*

energy dissipater A means by which the total energy of flowing water is reduced, such as rock splash pads, drop manholes, concrete stilling basins or baffles, and check dams. In stormwater design, an energy dissipater is usually a mechanism that reduces velocity prior to or at discharge from an outfall in order to prevent erosion.

energy gradient The slope of the specific energy line (i.e., the sum of the potential and velocity heads).

engineering and economic feasibility (EEF) An assessment of whether a project will experience practical limitations in fully meeting certain minimum requirements, particularly runoff treatment and flow control, within the project right-of-way. Limitations may be infrastructural, geographical, geotechnical, hydraulic, environmental, or benefit/cost-related. (Chapter 2 provides further discussion of EEF, and Appendix 2A includes the EEF Checklist, which is designed to identify the critical limiting factors that may inhibit or preclude construction of stormwater management facilities in a project right-of-way).

enhanced runoff treatment, enhanced water quality treatment (versus *basic water quality treatment*) The use of runoff treatment BMPs designed to capture dissolved metals at a higher rate than basic treatment BMPs.

environmental impact statement (EIS) A document that discusses the likely significant adverse impacts of a proposal, ways to lessen the impacts, and alternatives to the proposal. It is required by the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) when projects are determined to have significant environmental impacts.

ephemeral stream A stream or portion of a stream that flows in direct response to precipitation, receiving little or no water from groundwater or snowmelt.

equivalent area An impervious surface area equal in size, located in the same drainage basin (threshold discharge area), and having similar use characteristics (for example, similar average daily traffic) to the impervious surface.

erodible granular soils Soil materials that are easily eroded and transported by running water; typically fine- or medium-grained sand with minor gravel, silt, or clay content.

erosion The detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity.

erosion control blanket A blanket made of natural plant material or synthetic fibers, which is rolled out and fastened to the soil surface to protect soil from raindrop and sheet erosion.

erosion and sedimentation control (ESC) Any temporary or permanent measures taken to reduce erosion, trap sediment, and ensure that sediment-laden water does not leave the site.

ESA correction factor A multiplier used to size the volume of detention facilities when the SBUH method is used for stormwater designs. In ESA and DPS areas, the ESA correction factor is 1.22 plus (0.0039 times the site impervious area in percentage). Outside the ESU or DPS areas, the ESA correction factor is 1.11 plus (0.0039 times the site impervious area in percentage).

estuarine wetland Generally, an eelgrass bed, salt marsh, or rocky sand flat or mudflat intertidal area where freshwater and saltwater mix (specifically, a tidal wetland with salinity greater than 0.5 parts per thousand, usually partially enclosed by land, but with partially obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean).

estuary An area where freshwater meets saltwater, or where the tide meets the river current (e.g., bays, mouths of rivers, salt marshes, and lagoons). Estuaries serve as nurseries and spawning and feeding grounds for large groups of marine organisms, and provide shelter and food for birds and wildlife.

eutrophication The addition of nutrients, especially nitrogen and phosphorus, to a body of water, resulting in high organic production rates that may overcome natural self-purification processes. Frequently resulting from pollutant sources on adjacent lands, eutrophication produces undesirable effects including algal blooms, seasonally low oxygen levels, and reduced survival opportunities for fish and invertebrates.

evapotranspiration The collective term for the processes of evaporation and plant transpiration by which water is returned to the atmosphere.

event mean concentration (EMC) The average concentration of a pollutant measured during a storm runoff event, calculated by flow-weighting each pollutant sample measured during the storm event.

evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) A designation used by the National Marine Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries) for certain local salmon populations or runs that are treated as individual species under the Endangered Species Act. An example is the Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*), which was listed as a threatened species in the Puget Sound region in March 1999. This is equivalent to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service *distinct population segment* classification.

exfiltration The downward movement of runoff through the bottom of an infiltration facility into the soil layer, or the downward movement of water through soil.

existing condition The impervious surfaces, drainage systems, land cover, native vegetation, and soils that exist at the site with approved permits and engineering plans when required. If sites have impervious areas and drainage systems that were built without approved permits, then the existing condition is defined as that existing prior to the adoption of this manual. These conditions can be verified by record aerial photography or other methods.

existing roadway prism The limit of embankment or excavation work required to construct the roadway. This limit is further defined as the catch point of a cut or fill with the existing ground.

existing site conditions The conditions (ground cover, slope, drainage patterns) of a site as they existed on the first day that the project entered the design phase.

feasibility See *engineering and economic feasibility*.

fill slope An embankment that is made of earthen material placed by artificial means and is especially vulnerable to erosion**.**

filter berm A berm of compost, mulch, or gravel to detain and filter sediment from sheet flow.

filter fabric A woven or nonwoven water-permeable material, generally made of synthetic products such as polypropylene, used in stormwater management and erosion and sediment control applications to trap sediment or to prevent fine soil particles from clogging the aggregates.

filter strip A grassy area with gentle slopes that treats stormwater runoff from adjacent paved areas before it can concentrate into a discrete channel.

first flush Delivery of a disproportionately large load of pollutants during the early phase of a storm due to the rapid transport of accumulated pollutants in runoff; defined in various ways (e.g., ½ inch per impervious acre).

first-order stream An unbranched tributary. The tributary is a continuous perennial stream reach, meaning that the water table is always above the bottom of the stream channel during a year of normal precipitation, and the perennial reach continues downstream to a confluence with another perennial stream. (See also *stream order*.)

fish-bearing stream According to WAC 222-16-030: Type S, F, and Np waters are fish habitat streams. Until fish habitat water-type maps are available, an interim water-typing system applies (see WAC 222-16-031). Type 1, 2, 3, and 4 waters are fish habitat streams.

fishway A passageway designed to enable fish to ascend a dam, cataract, or velocity barrier (also called a fish ladder).

flood An overflow or inundation that comes from a river or any other source, including but not limited to streams, tides, wave action, storm drains, or excess rainfall; any relatively high stream flow overtopping the natural or artificial banks in any reach of a stream.

flood control Methods or facilities for reducing flood flows and the extent of flooding.

flood control project A structural system installed to protect land and improvements from floods by the construction of dikes, river embankments, channels, or dams.

flood frequency The frequency with which the flood of interest may be expected to occur at a site in any average interval of years. Frequency analysis defines the *n*-year flood as the flood that, over a long period of time, is equaled or exceeded on the average of once every *n* years.

flood fringe That portion of the floodplain outside the floodway that is covered by floodwaters during the base flood; it is generally associated with slower-moving or standing water rather than rapidly flowing water.

flood hazard area An area subject to inundation by the base flood, including but not limited to streams, lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions.

flood insurance rate map (FIRM) The official map on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency has delineated many areas of flood hazard, floodway, and the risk premium zones.

flood insurance study The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that includes flood profiles and the flood insurance rate map.

flood peak The highest value of the stage or discharge attained by a flood; thus, peak stage or peak discharge.

floodplain The total area subject to inundation by a flood, including the flood fringe and floodway.

flood-proofing Adaptations that ensure a structure is substantially impermeable to the passage of water below the flood protection elevation, and that resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and effects of buoyancy.

flood protection elevation The base flood elevation or higher as defined by the local government.

flood protection facility Any levee, berm, wall, enclosure, raised bank, revetment, constructed bank stabilization, or armoring that is commonly recognized by the community as providing significant protection to a property from inundation by floodwaters.

flood routing An analytical technique used to compute the effects of system storage dynamics on the shape and movement of flow represented by a hydrograph.

flood stage The stage at which overflow of the natural banks of a stream begins.

floodway The channel of the river or stream, and those portions of the adjoining floodplains, that are reasonably required to carry and discharge the base flood flow. The "reasonably required" portion of the adjoining floodplains is defined by flood hazard regulations.

flow control (formerly called *water quantity treatment* or *detention*) See Appendix 2B.

flow control facility A drainage facility (BMP) designed to mitigate the impacts of increased surface water and stormwater runoff flow rates generated by development. Flow control facilities are designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground, or to hold runoff for a short period of time, and then release it to the conveyance system at a controlled rate.

flow duration The aggregate time that peak flows are equal to or above a particular flow rate of interest. For example, the amount of time that peak flows are equal to or above 50% of the 2-year peak flow rate for a period of record.

flow frequency The inverse of the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year (the exceedance probability). For example, if the exceedance probability is 0.01 or 1 in 100, that flow is referred to as the 100-year flow.

flow path The route that stormwater runoff follows between two points of interest.

flow rate The amount of a fluid passing a certain point in a given amount of time. In stormwater applications it is usually expressed in cubic feet per second or gallons per minute.

flow splitter A device with multiple outlets, each sized to pass a specific flow rate at a given head.

flow spreader A device with a wide enough outlet to efficiently distribute concentrated flows evenly over a large area, having common components such as trenches, perforated pipes, and berms.

forebay An easily maintained extra storage area provided near an inlet of a stormwater facility to trap incoming sediments before they accumulate in a pond or wetland.

forested community (wetlands) In general terms, a community (wetland) characterized by woody vegetation that is greater than or equal to 6 meters in height; the term applies to such communities (wetlands) that represent a significant amount of tree cover consisting of species that offer wildlife habitat and other values and that advance the overall performance of wetland functions.

forest practice Any activity conducted on or directly pertaining to forest land and related to growing, harvesting, or processing timber, including but not limited to road and trail construction; harvesting (final and intermediate); precommercial thinning; reforestation; fertilization; prevention and suppression of diseases and insects; salvage of trees; and brush control.

freeboard The vertical distance between the design water surface elevation and the elevation of the barrier that contains the water.

frequency of storm (design storm frequency) The anticipated period in years that elapses before a storm of a given intensity or total volume recurs, based on the average probability of storms in the design region. For instance, a 10-year storm can be expected to occur on average once every 10 years. Sewers designed to handle flows that occur under such storm conditions are expected to be surcharged by any storms of greater amount or intensity.

frequently flooded areas The 100-year floodplain designations of the Federal Emergency Management Agency and the National Flood Insurance Program, or as defined by the local government.

frost-heave The upward movement of soil surface due to the expansion of water stored between particles in the first few feet of the soil profile as it freezes; may cause surface fracturing of asphalt or concrete.

functions, wetland The ecological (physical, chemical, and biological) processes or attributes of wetlands without regard for their importance to society. Wetland functions include food chain support; provision of ecosystem diversity and fish and wildlife habitat; flood flow alteration; groundwater recharge and discharge; water quality improvement; and soil stabilization.

gabion A rectangular or cylindrical wire mesh cage (a chicken wire basket) filled with rock and used as a protection or revetment against erosion. Soft gabions, often used in streams and ponds to stabilize banks or change flow patterns, are made of geotextiles filled with soil, with cuttings placed between.

gage *or* gauge A device for registering precipitation, water level, discharge, velocity, pressure, or temperature. Also, a measure of the thickness of metal (e.g., diameter of wire or wall thickness of steel pipe).

gaging station A selected section of a stream channel equipped with a gage, recorder, or other facilities for determining stream discharge.

geologically hazardous areas Areas that, because of their susceptibility to erosion, sliding, earthquake, or other geological events, are not suited to the siting of commercial, residential, or industrial development consistent with public health or safety concerns.

geologist A person who has earned a degree in geology from an accredited college or university or who has equivalent educational training and has at least five years of experience as a practicing geologist or four years of experience in practice, and at least two years of post-graduate study, research, or teaching. The practical experience must include at least three years working in applied geology and landslide evaluation, in close association with qualified practicing geologists or geotechnical professional/civil engineers.

geotechnical professional civil engineer A practicing geotechnical/civil engineer licensed as a professional civil engineer in the state of Washington with at least four years of professional employment as a geotechnical engineer in responsible charge, including experience with landslide evaluation.

geotextile Durable synthetic fabrics used to reinforce soils and construct temporary sediment control BMPs for detaining runoff and trapping sediment.

GIS Workbench An ArcView geographic information system tool maintained by the WSDOT Environmental Information Program to provide staff with access to comprehensive, current, and detailed environmental and natural resource management data.

gore area The tapering paved area between two lanes, on which travel is not allowed.

grade The slope of a road, channel, or natural ground; the finished surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment, or bottom of excavation; any surface prepared for the support of construction, such as paving or the laying of a conduit.

grade separation Vertical or horizontal separation of parallel or crossing lines of traffic that do not share a common intersection.

gradient terrace A terrace cut horizontally into a sloe, designed according to criteria that consider slope, length, and height.

groundwater Water in a saturated zone or stratum beneath the land surface or a surface water body.

groundwater recharge Inflow to a groundwater reservoir.

groundwater table The free surface of the groundwater, which is subject to atmospheric pressure under the ground and is seldom static, generally rising and falling with the season, the rate of withdrawal, the rate of restoration, and other conditions.

grubbing The removal and disposal of all unwanted vegetative matter from underground, such as sod, stumps, roots, buried logs, or other debris.

gully A channel caused by the concentrated flow of surface and stormwater runoff over unprotected erodible land.

habitat The specific area or environment in which a particular type of plant or animal lives. An organism's habitat must provide all the basic requirements for life and should be protected from harmful biological, chemical, and physical alterations.

hardpan A cemented or compacted and often clay-like layer of soil that is impenetrable by roots. Also known as glacial till.

harmful pollutant A substance that has adverse effects on an organism including immediate death, chronic poisoning, impaired reproduction, cancer, or other effects.

hazardous substance Any liquid, solid, gas, or sludge, including any material, substance, product, commodity, or waste, regardless of quantity, that exhibits any of the characteristics or criteria of hazardous waste (RCW 70.105.010). (See also *dangerous waste*.)

hazardous waste All dangerous and extremely hazardous waste, including substances having radioactive or hazardous components (RCW 70.105.010). (See also *dangerous waste*.)

head (hydraulics) The height of water above any plane of reference; the energy, either kinetic or potential, possessed by each unit weight of a liquid, expressed as the vertical height through which a unit weight would have to fall to release the average energy possessed; used in various compound terms such as pressure head, velocity head, and head loss.

head loss Energy loss due to friction, eddies, changes in velocity, or direction of flow.

heavy metals Metals of high specific gravity, present in municipal and industrial wastes, that pose long-term environmental hazards. Such metals include cadmium, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, mercury, nickel, and zinc.

high-use site A site that Ecology presumes will generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. Examples of high-use sites include the following:

- A road intersection with a measured average daily traffic (ADT) count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.
- Rest stops with an expected ADT count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area.
- Any maintenance facility subject to parking, storage, or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that exceed 10 tons gross weight (e.g., trucks, buses, trains, and heavy equipment).

high-vehicle traffic area A road intersection with an average daily traffic (ADT) volume of 25,000 or more vehicles on the main roadway, or 15,000 or more vehicles on any intersecting roadway.

highway A main public road connecting towns and cities.

hog fuel Wood residues processed through a chipper or mill to produce coarse chips. Bark, sawdust, planer shavings, wood chunks, and small amounts of mineral material may be included.

Horton overland flow A runoff process whereby the rainfall rate exceeds the infiltration rate, so that the precipitation that does not infiltrate flows downhill over the soil surface.

humus Organic matter in or on a soil, composed of partly or fully decomposed bits of plant tissue or animal manure.

hydraulic conductivity The quality of saturated soil that enables water or air to move through it. Also known as permeability coefficient.

hydraulic gradient Slope of the potential head relative to a fixed datum.

hydraulic residence time The time required for a slug of water to move through a system. In the most simplistic situation, once inflows to a water body cease, the hydraulic residence time is equal to the volume of the water body divided by the discharge rate (assuming no short-circuiting of the system).

hydrodynamics The dynamic energy, force, or motion of fluids as affected by the physical forces acting upon those fluids.

hydrograph A graph of runoff rate, inflow rate, or discharge rate past a specific point over time.

Hydrological Simulation Program–Fortran (HSPF) A continuous simulation hydrologic model that transforms an uninterrupted rainfall record into a concurrent series of runoff or flow data by means of a set of mathematical algorithms that represent the rainfall-runoff process at some conceptual level.

hydrologic cycle The circuit of water movement from the atmosphere to the earth and returning to the atmosphere through various stages or processes such as precipitation, interception, runoff, infiltration, percolation, storage, evaporation, and transpiration.

hydrologic soil groups A soil characteristic classification system defined by the U.S. Soil Conservation Service in which a soil may be categorized into one of four soil groups (A, B, C, or D) based upon infiltration rate and other properties (based on *Water Quality Prevention, Identification, and Management of Diffuse Pollution* by Vladimir Novotny and Harvey Olem; Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1994, page 109):

- **Type A** – Low runoff potential. Soils having high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of deep, well-drained to excessively-drained sands or gravels. These soils have a high rate of water transmission.
- **Type B** – Moderately low runoff potential. Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission.
- **Type C** – Moderately high runoff potential. Soils having slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, or soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a slow rate of water transmission.
- **Type D** – High runoff potential. Soils having very slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential; soils with a permanent high water table; soils with a hardpan, till, or clay layer at or near the surface; soils with a compacted subgrade at or near the surface; and shallow soils or nearly impervious material. These soils have a very slow rate of water transmission.

hydrology The science of the behavior of water in the atmosphere, on the surface of the earth, and below ground.

hydroperiod A seasonal occurrence of flooding and/or soil saturation; it encompasses the depth, frequency, duration, and seasonal pattern of inundation.

hyetograph A graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time during which the precipitation occurs.

illicit discharge All nonstormwater discharges to stormwater drainage systems that cause or contribute to a violation of state water quality, sediment quality, or groundwater quality standards, including but not limited to sanitary sewer connections, industrial process water, interior floor drains, car washing, and gray-water systems.

impact basin A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water, usually constructed of concrete in the form of a partially depressed or partially submerged vessel, often using baffles to dissipate velocities.

impaired waters Water bodies not fully supporting their beneficial uses, as defined under the federal Clean Water Act, Section 303(d). (See the Washington State Department of Ecology 303(d) list at: 🖰 http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/303d/.)

impervious surface A hard surface area that either prevents or retards the entry of water into the soil mantle as occurs under natural conditions (prior to development), and from which water runs off at an increased rate of flow or in increased volumes. Common impervious surfaces include but are not limited to rooftops, walkways, patios, driveways, parking lots, storage areas, concrete or asphalt paving, gravel roads, packed earthen materials, and oiled or macadam surfaces. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities are not considered impervious surfaces for the purpose of determining whether the thresholds for application of minimum requirements are exceeded. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities are considered impervious surfaces for the purpose of runoff modeling.

Implementing Agreement The Implementing Agreement between the Washington State Department of Ecology and the Washington State Department of Transportation Regarding Compliance with the State of Washington Surface Water Quality Standards (also abbreviated as WQIA: water quality implementing agreement).

impoundment A natural or manmade containment for surface water.

improvement Streets (with or without curbs or gutters), sidewalks, crosswalks, parking lots, water mains, sanitary and storm sewers, drainage facilities, street trees, and other appropriate items.

incidental take authorization Authorization provided through a biological opinion issued by United States Fish and Wildlife Service or National Marine Fisheries Service. The biological opinion allows for a specific level of *take* of threatened or endangered species (as defined under the federal Endangered Species Act) that results from but is not the purpose of carrying out an otherwise lawful activity conducted by a federal agency or applicant. The authorization limits the amount of *take* and requires the applicant to follow reasonable and prudent measures to minimize the incidental *take*.

industrial activities Material handling, transportation, or storage; manufacturing; maintenance; treatment; or disposal. Areas with industrial activities include plant yards; access roads and rail lines used by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters; sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.

infiltration The downward movement of water from the surface to the subsoil.

infiltration facility or **system** A drainage facility designed to use the hydrologic process of surface and stormwater runoff soaking into the ground (commonly called percolation), to dispose of surface and stormwater runoff.

infiltration pond A facility that provides stormwater quantity control by containing excess runoff in a detention facility, then percolating that runoff into the surrounding soil.

infiltration rate The rate, usually expressed in inches per hour, at which water moves downward (percolates) through the soil profile. Short-term infiltration rates may be inferred from soil analysis or texture, or derived from field measurements. Long-term infiltration rates are affected by variability in soils and subsurface conditions at the site, the effectiveness of pretreatment or influent control, and the degree of long-term maintenance of the infiltration facility.

inlet A form of connection between the surface of the ground and a drain or sewer for the admission of surface and stormwater runoff.

inROW treatment Stormwater management facilities within or adjacent to the highway right-of-way.

integrated vegetation management (IVM) IVM is defined as a coordinated decision-making process that uses the most appropriate long-term vegetation management strategy on a site-specific basis. Vegetation management involves caring for and/or controlling foliage within the highway right-of-way. If managed properly, roadside vegetation can become naturally self-sustaining over time and require less intervention from maintenance crews as it grows and matures.

interception (hydraulics) The process by which precipitation is caught and held by foliage, twigs, and branches of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation. Often used to mean interception loss, or the amount of water evaporated from the precipitation intercepted.

interceptor dike A soil berm used to intercept and redirect stormwater runoff to a treatment facility.

interflow That portion of rainfall that infiltrates into the soil and moves laterally through the upper soil horizons until intercepted by a stream channel or until it returns to the surface; for example, in a roadside ditch, wetland, spring, or seep. Interflow is a function of soil system depth, permeability, and water-holding capacity.

intermittent stream *or* channel A stream or portion of a stream that flows only in direct response to precipitation; receives little or no water from springs and no long-continued supply from melting snow or other sources; and is dry for a large part of the year, ordinarily more than three months.

invasive weedy plant species Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to non-native species.

invert The lowest point on the inside of a sewer or other conduit.

invert elevation The vertical elevation of a pipe or orifice in a pond that defines the water level.

isopluvial map A map with lines representing constant depth of total precipitation for a given return frequency.

jurisdictional wetlands All naturally-occurring wetlands; some wetlands unintentionally created as a result of construction activities; and wetlands created specifically for the compensation of wetland losses. The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and local jurisdictions regulate these wetlands. Ditches created in nonwetland areas that support wetland vegetation, and constructed wetlands used for treating stormwater are not considered jurisdictional wetlands.

lag time The interval between the center of mass of the storm precipitation and the peak flow of the resultant runoff.

lake An area permanently inundated by water in excess of two meters deep and greater than 20 acres in size as measured at the ordinary high water marks.

land-disturbing activity Any activity that results in a movement of earth or a change in the existing soil cover (both vegetative and nonvegetative) or the existing soil topography, including but not limited to clearing, grading, filling, and excavation. Compaction that is associated with stabilization of structures and road construction is also considered a land-disturbing activity. Vegetation maintenance practices are not considered land-disturbing activities.

landslide hazard areas Those areas subject to a severe risk of landslide.

leachable materials Those substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oil substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage.

leachate Liquid that has percolated through soil and contains substances in solution or suspension.

level pool routing The basic technique of storage routing used for sizing and analyzing detention storage and determining water levels for ponding water bodies. The level pool routing technique is based on the continuity equation: inflow – outflow = change in storage.

level spreader A temporary erosion and sedimentation control device used to distribute stormwater runoff uniformly over the ground surface as sheet flow (i.e., not through channels), in order to enhance infiltration and prevent concentrated, erosive flows.

live storage The volume of the flow control BMP that is released over a long period of time.

local government, local jurisdiction Any county, city, town, or special-purpose district having its own incorporated government for local affairs.

low-flow channel An incised or paved channel from inlet to outlet in a dry basin, designed to carry low runoff flows and/or base flows directly to the outlet without detention.

low-impact development (LID) An evolving approach to land development and stormwater management that uses a site's natural features and specially designed BMPs to manage stormwater; involves assessing and understanding the site, protecting native vegetation and soils, and minimizing and managing stormwater at the source. Low-impact development practices are appropriate for a variety of development types.

low-permeability liner A layer of compacted till or clay, or a geomembrane.

Manning's equation An equation used to predict the velocity of water flow in an open channel or pipelines:

$$V = (1.486(R^{2/3})(S^{1/2}))/n$$

where:

V = the mean velocity of flow in feet per second

R = the hydraulic radius in feet

S = the slope of the energy gradient or, for assumed uniform flow, the slope of the channel in feet per foot

n = Manning's roughness coefficient or retardance factor of the channel lining

mass wasting The movement of large volumes of earth material downslope.

master drainage plan A comprehensive drainage control plan intended to prevent significant adverse impacts on the natural and manmade drainage system, both on and off the project site.

maximum extent practicable (MEP) The highest level of effectiveness that can be achieved through the use of personnel and best achievable technology, considering (at a minimum) the effectiveness, engineering feasibility, commercial availability, safety, and cost of the measure.

may affect, likely to adversely affect An Endangered Species Act designation meaning that there will be a detrimental effect on threatened or endangered species as a direct or indirect result of the proposed project or its interrelated or interdependent actions, and the effect is not discountable, insignificant, or beneficial. If the overall effect of the project is beneficial to the species but is also likely to cause some adverse effects, then the proposed action is *likely to adversely affect* the species. If incidental *take* (as defined under the Endangered Species Act) is anticipated to occur as a result of the project, a determination of *likely to adversely affect* should be made. A *likely to adversely affect* determination requires initiation of informal Section 7 consultation.

may affect, not likely to adversely affect An Endangered Species Act designation meaning that the effects of the project on threatened or endangered species are expected to be discountable, insignificant, or completely beneficial. *Beneficial effects* are contemporaneous salutary effects without any adverse effects on the species or habitat. *Insignificant effects* relate to the size of the impact and should never reach the scale where *take* (as defined under the Endangered Species Act) occurs. *Discountable effects* are those effects that are extremely unlikely to occur. Based on best judgment, a person would not be able to (1) meaningfully measure, detect, or evaluate insignificant effects, or (2) expect discountable effects to occur.

mean annual water level fluctuation Derived as follows:

1. Measure the maximum water level (e.g., with a crest stage gage—see Reinelt and Horner 1990) and the existing water level at the time of the site visit (e.g., with a staff gage) on at least eight occasions spread throughout a year.
2. Take the difference of the maximum and existing water levels on each occasion, and divide by the number of occasions.

media filter A filter that includes material for removing pollutants (e.g., compost, gypsum, perlite, zeolite, or activated carbon).

mitigated area The drainage area from which stormwater runoff is to be treated.

mitigation Measures to reduce adverse impacts on the environment, in the following order of preference:

1. Avoid the impact altogether by not taking a certain action or part of an action.
2. Minimize the impact by limiting the degree or magnitude of the action and its implementation, by using appropriate technology, or by taking affirmative steps to avoid or reduce impacts.
3. Rectify the impact by repairing, rehabilitating, or restoring the affected environment.
4. Reduce or eliminate the impact over time by preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the action.
5. Compensate for the impact by replacing, enhancing, or providing substitute resources or environments.

mitigation wetland A wetland that is created, enhanced, restored, or preserved to offset the unavoidable environmental impacts of development actions on natural wetlands.

modified wetland A wetland whose physical, hydrological, or water quality characteristics have been intentionally altered for a management purpose, such as by dredging, filling, forebay construction, or inlet or outlet control.

monitoring The collection of data by various methods for the purposes of understanding natural systems and features, evaluating the impacts of development proposals on such systems, and assessing the performance of mitigation measures imposed as conditions of development.

National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) The part of the federal Clean Water Act that requires point source dischargers to obtain permits, called NPDES permits, which in Washington State are administered by the Department of Ecology.

native growth protection easement (NGPE) An easement granted for the protection of native vegetation within a sensitive area or its associated buffer; the easement should be recorded on the appropriate documents of title and filed with the county records division.

native vegetation Vegetation consisting of plant species other than noxious weeds that are indigenous to the region and that reasonably could be expected to occur naturally on the site.

natural conditions Surface water quality that was present before any human-caused pollution. When estimating natural conditions in the headwaters of a disturbed watershed, it may be necessary to use the less disturbed conditions of a neighboring or similar watershed as a reference condition.

natural location The location of channels, swales, and other nonmanmade conveyance systems, as defined by the first documented topographic contours existing for the subject property, based on maps or photographs or other appropriate means. In the case of outwash soils with relatively flat terrain, no natural location of surface discharge may exist.

Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) curve number A number that describes the runoff characteristics of a particular soil type.

new impervious surfaces Those surfaces that expand the existing roadway prism, and those surfaces that are upgraded from gravel to bituminous surface treatment (BST), asphalt, or concrete pavement. For the purpose of conducting a flow control analysis, the representative predeveloped land cover directly below the new impervious surface shall be based on the predominant land cover adjacent to the existing roadway prism.

net-new impervious surface The total area of new impervious surface being added to the project site minus the total area of existing impervious surface being removed from the project site. In order for an equivalent trade-off to occur, the existing impervious surface removal area must fully revert to a natural condition as specified in Section 4-3.6.1. The concept of net-new impervious surface applies only to Minimum Requirement 6 (Flow Control) and is applied at the threshold discharge area level.

NOAA Fisheries National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service.

no effect An Endangered Species Act designation meaning that the proposed project will not affect a threatened or endangered species or its designated critical habitat (i.e., the project will result in no effect whatsoever—no beneficial or highly improbable or insignificant effect).

Noneffective impervious surfaces Those new, applicable replaced, or existing impervious surfaces that are being managed by dispersion areas meeting the dispersion BMP criteria in the *Highway Runoff Manual*. The equivalent area concept generally applies to engineered dispersion areas and may apply to natural dispersion areas, as described in the following: The existing site currently collects runoff in a ditch or pipe and discharges it to a surface water. By changing this condition to a natural dispersion situation through sheet flow or channelized flow dispersion, a surface discharge is eliminated, resulting in a flow control improvement. Equivalent area trades for natural dispersion are allowed for this specific case.

Noneffective pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) Those new, applicable replaced, or existing PGIS surfaces that are being managed by dispersion areas meeting the dispersion BMP criteria in the *Highway Runoff Manual*. The equivalent area concept generally applies to engineered dispersion areas and may apply to natural dispersion areas, as described in the following: The existing site currently collects runoff in a ditch or pipe and discharges to a surface water. By changing this condition to a natural dispersion situation through sheet flow or channelized flow dispersion, a surface discharge is eliminated resulting in a flow control improvement. Equivalent area trades for natural dispersion are allowed for this specific case.

nonfish-bearing stream According to WAC 222-16-030: type Ns waters are nonfish-habitat streams. Until the fish habitat water type maps are available, an interim water typing system applies (see WAC 222-16-031). Type 5 waters are nonfish-habitat streams.

nonmitigated area The area not included as part of the stormwater treatment.

nonpoint source pollution Pollution that enters a water body from diffuse origins in the watershed and does not have discernible, confined, or discrete points of origin.

nonpollution-generating impervious surface (NPGIS) A surface that, based on its use, is an insignificant or low source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. For example, roofs that are subject only to atmospheric deposition or have normal heating, ventilation, and air conditioning vents; paved bicycle pathways and pedestrian sidewalks that are separated from roads by motor vehicles; fenced fire lanes; infrequently used maintenance access roads; and in-slope areas of roads. Sidewalks that are regularly treated with salt or other deicing chemicals are not considered nonpollution-generating impervious surfaces.

nonroad-related project A project involving structures, including rest areas, maintenance facilities, and ferry terminal buildings.

normal depth The depth of uniform flow, which is a unique depth of flow for any combination of channel characteristics and flow conditions; calculated using Manning's equation.

no-vegetation zone (NVZ) A shallow gravel trench located directly adjacent to the highway pavement.

NRCS method See *SCS method*.

off-line facilities Runoff treatment facilities to which stormwater runoff is restricted to some maximum flow rate or volume by a flow-splitter.

off-site Any area lying upstream of the project site that drains onto the site, and any area lying downstream of the site to which the site drains.

oil control The treatment of stormwater runoff with BMPs to remove oil, grease, and total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH).

oil/water separator A vault, usually underground, designed to provide a quiescent environment to separate oil from water.

on-line facilities Runoff treatment facilities that receive all the stormwater runoff from a drainage area. Flows above the runoff treatment design flow rate or volume are passed through at a lower percentage removal efficiency.

on-site The entire property that includes the proposed development.

on-site stormwater management BMPs Site development techniques that serve to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on-site.

operational BMP A type of source control BMP that includes schedules of activities, prohibition of practices, and other managerial actions to prevent or reduce pollutants entering stormwater. Operational BMPs include formation of a pollution prevention team; good housekeeping; preventive maintenance procedures; spill prevention and cleanup; employee training; inspections of pollutant sources and BMPs; recordkeeping; process changes; raw material and product changes; and recycling of wastes.

ordinary high water mark (OHWM) The line on the shore established by the fluctuations of water and indicated by physical characteristics such as a clear, natural line impressed on the bank; shelving; changes in the character of soil destruction on terrestrial vegetation; the presence of litter and debris; or other appropriate means that consider the characteristics of the surrounding area. The ordinary high water mark is found by examining the bed and banks of a stream and ascertaining where the presence and action of waters are so common and usual, and so long maintained in all ordinary years, as to mark upon the soil a character distinct from that of the abutting upland, in respect to vegetation. In any area where the ordinary high water mark cannot be found, the line of mean high water is substituted. In any area where neither can be found, the channel bank is substituted. In braided channels and alluvial fans, the ordinary high water mark or substitute must be measured to include the entire stream feature.

organic matter Decomposed animal or vegetable matter, measured by ASTM D 2974. Organic matter is an important reservoir of carbon and a dynamic component of soil and the carbon cycle. It improves soil and plant efficiency by improving soil physical properties including drainage, aeration, and other structural characteristics. It contains the nutrients, microbes, and higher-form soil food web organisms necessary for plant growth. The maturity of organic matter is a measure of its beneficial properties. Raw organic matter can release water-soluble nutrients (similar to chemical fertilizer). Beneficial organic matter has undergone a humification process either naturally in the environment or through a composting process.

orifice An opening with closed perimeter, usually sharp-edged, and of regular form in a plate, wall, or partition through which water may flow; generally used for the purpose of measurement or control of water.

outlet The point of water disposal from a stream, river, lake, tidewater, or artificial drain.

outlet channel A waterway constructed or altered primarily to carry water from manmade structures, such as terraces, tile lines, and diversions.

outlet protection A protective barrier of rock, erosion control blankets, vegetation, or sod constructed at a conveyance outlet.

outwash soils Soils formed from highly permeable sands and gravels.

overflow A pipeline or conduit device with an outlet pipe that provides for the discharge of portions of combined sewer flows into receiving waters or other points of disposal, after a regular device has allowed the portion of the flow that can be handled by interceptor sewer lines and pumping and treatment facilities to be carried by and to such water pollution control structures.

palustrine wetland A freshwater wetland dominated by trees, shrubs, and emergent vegetation.

PAM A large class of polymers (polyacrylamides), some of which have applications in highway construction. PAM products are used as soil stabilizers to prevent erosion, flocculants to remove sediments from stormwater, drilling lubricants, and soil moisture retention enhancers.

particle size The effective diameter of a particle as measured by sedimentation, sieving, or micrometric methods.

peak discharge The maximum instantaneous rate of flow during a storm, usually in reference to a specific design storm event.

peak flow Same as *peak discharge*.

percolation The movement of water through soil.

percolation rate The rate, often expressed in minutes per inch, at which clear water maintained at a relatively constant depth seeps out of a standardized test hole that has been previously saturated; often used synonymously with *infiltration rate* (short-term infiltration rate).

permeable pavement A permeable surface that readily transmits fluids into the underlying base material. The pavement may be permeable concrete, permeable asphalt, or manufactured systems such as interlocking brick or a combination of sand and brick lattice.

permeable soils Soil materials having a sufficiently rapid infiltration rate so as to greatly reduce or eliminate surface and stormwater runoff; generally classified as Soil Conservation Service hydrologic soil types A and B.

pervious pavement See *permeable pavement*.

pH A measure of the alkalinity or acidity of a substance that is determined by measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in the substance. A pH of 7.0 indicates neutral water. A 6.5 reading is slightly acidic.

piezometric surface The upper surface or top of the saturated portion of the soil or bedrock layer, indicating the water table; the uppermost extent of groundwater.

pipe slope drain A pipe extending from the top to the bottom of a cut or fill slope and discharging into a stabilized water course, a sediment-trapping device, or a stabilized outfall.

plunge pool A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water; a plunge pool may be created by the water's movement, or it may be constructed and protected by various lining materials.

point discharge The release of collected and/or concentrated surface and stormwater runoff from a pipe, culvert, or channel.

point of compliance The location at which compliance with a discharge performance standard or a receiving water quality standard is measured.

point source A general classification of the origin of an air or water pollutant, usually characterized as smokestacks or outfalls.

pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) An impervious surface that is considered a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff, including surfaces that receive direct rainfall (or run-on or blow-in of rainfall) and are subject to vehicular use; industrial activities; or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals. Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals are substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils that are stockpiled, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage container leakage. Metal roofs are also considered pollution-generating impervious surfaces unless they are coated with an inert, nonleachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating). A surface, whether paved or not, is considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly used surfaces: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bicycle lanes within the travel lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced fire lanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, and airport runways. The following are not considered regularly used surfaces: paved bicycle pathways separated from roads for motor vehicles, fenced fire lanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.

pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS) Any nonimpervious surface subject to the ongoing use of pesticides and fertilizers or loss of soil, such as lawns, landscaped areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields. Grass highway shoulders and medians are not subject to such intensive landscape maintenance practices and are not considered pollution-generating pervious surfaces. It is WSDOT policy to create self-sustaining, native plant communities that require no fertilizer and little to no weed control after they are established. During the plant establishment period, usually the first three years after planting, WSDOT revegetation and mitigation projects are intensely managed to aid plant establishment. However, throughout the life of the project, WSDOT practices integrated vegetation management (IVM), which recognizes herbicides as tools in maintaining planting areas (one of many tools available). Questions regarding whether a specific area may be considered a pollution-generating pervious surface should be directed to the local maintenance area superintendent or the region’s landscape architect.

porous pavement See *permeable pavement*.

postproject Description of project site conditions after development.

predeveloped condition The modeled site conditions prior to development, to which postdevelopment runoff flow rates are matched.

preproject Description of project site conditions prior to development.

presumptive approach (versus *demonstrative approach*) See Chapter 1.

pretreatment The removal of material such as solids, grit, grease, and scum from flows to improve treatability prior to biological or physical treatment processes; may include screening, grit removal, settling, oil/water separation, or application of a basic treatment BMP prior to infiltration.

professional civil engineer A person registered with the state of Washington as a professional engineer in civil engineering.

project Any proposed action to alter or develop a site; the proposed action of a permit application or an approval, which requires drainage review.

project area The area between the beginning and ending mileposts within WSDOT right-of-way; defined in the formal project definition agreed upon by the region and Headquarters as to the work to be done, the estimated cost, and the project schedule.

project limits For road projects, the beginning project station to the end project station and from right-of-way line to right-of-way line. For nonroad projects, the legal boundaries of land parcels that are subject to project development (also called the project area perimeter).

Puget Sound basin Puget Sound south of Admiralty Inlet (including Hood Canal and Saratoga Passage); the waters north to the Canadian border, including portions of the Strait of Georgia; the Strait of Juan de Fuca south of the Canadian border; and all the lands draining into these waters, as mapped in water resource inventory areas (WRIAs) 1 through 19, set forth in WAC 173-500-040.

rare, threatened, or endangered species Plant or animal species that are relatively uncommon regionally, are nearing endangered status, or whose existence is in immediate jeopardy and is usually restricted to highly specific habitats. Threatened and endangered species are officially listed by federal and state authorities, whereas rare species are unofficial species of concern that fit the above definitions.

rational method A means of computing storm drainage flow rates (Q) by using the formula Q = CIA, where C is a coefficient describing the physical drainage area, I is the rainfall intensity, and A is the area. (This method is no longer used in the Washington State Department of Ecology technical manual.)

reach A length of channel with uniform characteristics.

receiving waters Bodies of water or surface water systems to which surface runoff is discharged via a point source of stormwater or via sheet flow.

recharge The addition of water to the zone of saturation (i.e., an aquifer).

recurrence interval *or* return frequency A statistical representation of the average time between storm events of a given intensity or size.

redevelopment On a site that is already substantially developed (i.e., has 35% or more of existing impervious surface coverage), the creation or addition of impervious surfaces; the expansion of a building footprint or addition, or replacement of a structure; structural development including construction, installation, or expansion of a building or other structure; replacement of impervious surface that is not part of a routine maintenance activity; and land disturbing activities.

regional action An action (for stormwater management purposes) that involves more than one discrete property.

regional detention facility A stormwater quantity control structure designed to correct surface water runoff problems within a drainage basin or subbasin, such as regional flooding or erosion problems; a detention facility sited to detain stormwater runoff from a number of new developments or areas within a catchment.

release rate The computed peak discharge rate in volume per unit time of surface and stormwater runoff from a site.

replaced impervious surface Those roadway areas that are excavated to a depth at or below the top of the subgrade (pavement repair work excluded) and replaced in kind. The subgrade is taken to be the crushed surfacing directly below the pavement layer (ACP, PCCP, BST). If the removal and replacement of existing pavement does not go below the pavement layer, as with typical PCCP grinding, ACP planing, or "paver" projects, the new surfacing is not considered "replaced impervious surface." For the purpose of conducting a flow control analysis, the representative predeveloped land cover directly below the replaced impervious surface shall be based on the predominant land cover adjacent to the existing roadway prism.

restoration In an area that no longer meets wetland criteria, actions performed to reestablish wetland functional characteristics and processes that have been lost through alterations, land uses, or catastrophic events.

retention The process of collecting and holding surface and stormwater runoff with no surface outflow.

retention/detention facility (R/D) A type of drainage facility designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, or infiltration; or to hold surface and stormwater runoff for a short period of time and then release it to the surface and stormwater management system.

retrofit The renovation of an existing structure or facility to meet changed conditions or to improve performance.

return frequency *or* recurrence interval A statistical representation of the average time between storm events of a given intensity or size (e.g., a stormwater flow that occurs every 2 years on average).

riffles Fast sections of a stream where shallow water races over stones and gravel. Riffles usually support a wider variety of bottom organisms than other stream sections.

right-of-way (ROW) Public land devoted to the passage of people and goods. State highway rights-of-way include state limited access highways inside or outside cities or towns, but not city or town streets forming part of state highway routes that are not limited access highways. The term does not include state property under WSDOT jurisdiction that is outside the right-of-way lines of a state highway (see RCW 90.03.520).

rill A small, intermittent watercourse with steep sides, usually only a few inches deep; often caused by an increase in surface water flow where soil is cleared of vegetation.

riparian habitat A habitat type associated with stream and lake margins, typically characterized by dense vegetation supporting a variety of waterfowl, songbirds, amphibians, and small mammals.

riprap A facing layer or protective mound of rocks placed to prevent erosion or sloughing of a structure or embankment due to flow of surface and stormwater runoff.

riser A vertical pipe extending from the bottom of a pond that is used to control the discharge rate from a stormwater facility for a specified design storm.

road and parking lot-related projects Pavement projects, including shoulders, curbs, and sidewalks.

roadside bioretention area A low-impact development BMP that treats runoff in vegetated closed depressions.

runoff Rainwater or snowmelt that directly leaves an area as a surface drainage.

runoff treatment Pollutant removal to a specified level via engineered or natural stormwater management systems. (Formerly called *water quality treatment*; see Appendix 2B).

runoff treatment BMP A BMP specifically designed for pollutant removal.

salmonid A member of the fish family Salmonidae, including Chinook, coho, chum, sockeye and pink salmon; cutthroat, brook, brown, rainbow, and steelhead trout; Dolly Varden, kokanee, and char species.

sand filter A manmade depression or basin with a layer of sand that treats stormwater as it percolates through the sand and is discharged via a central collector pipe.

Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph method (SBUH) A single-event hydrologic analysis technique for estimating runoff based on the curve number method. The curve numbers are published by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) in *Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds,* 55 TR, June 1976. Updated curve numbers are provided in Appendix 4-B.

scour Erosion of channel banks due to excessive velocity of the flow of surface and stormwater runoff.

SCS method A single-event hydrologic analysis technique for estimating runoff based on the curve number method. The curve numbers are published by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) in *Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds,* 55 TR, June 1976. With the change in name from Soil Conservation Service (SCS) to Natural Resources Conservation Service, the method may be referred to as the NRCS method.

seasonal stream An ephemeral stream.

Section 4(f) of the Federal Department of Transportation Act Restricts the use of federal funds for projects affecting significant publicly-owned land from a public park, recreation area, wildlife or waterfowl refuge, and significant archaeological and historic sites that are eligible for listing on the National Register of Historic Places, or any land from a significant historic site. A Section 4(f) evaluation is an assessment of the effects of transportation projects on recreational and historic resources, performed during project evaluation.

Section 9 of the Federal Rivers and Harbors Act A program administered by the U.S. Coast Guard to issue permits for bridges and causeways across any navigable waters of the United States.

Section 10 of the Federal Rivers and Harbors Act A program administered by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to issue permits for obstructions or alterations of any navigable waters of the United States.

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act A program to review the potential effects on cultural resources resulting from projects receiving federal funds.

Section 404 of the Federal Clean Water Act A permit program administered by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers under U.S. EPA guidelines to protect the nation's waters from dredged and fill sources.

sediment Fragmented material that originates from weathering and erosion of rocks or unconsolidated deposits, and is transported by, suspended in, or deposited by water.

semiarid Description of a geographical area characterized by light rainfall; having about 10 to 20 inches of annual precipitation.

sensitive area Any area designated by a federal, state, or local government as having unique or important environmental characteristics that may require additional protective measures (also see *critical areas*). These areas include but are not limited to:

- ”Critical habitat” as defined in Section 3 of the federal Endangered Species Act of 1973.
- Designated “critical water resources” as defined in 33 CFR Part 330, Nationwide Permit Program.
- Water bodies designated as “impaired” under the provision of section 303d of the federal Clean Water Act enacted by Public Law 92-500.
- Sole-source aquifers as defined under the federal Safe Drinking Water Act, Public Law 93-523.
- Wellhead protection zones as defined under WAC 246-290, Public Water Supplies.
- Areas identified in local critical area ordinances or in an approved basin plan.

sheet flow Runoff that flows over the ground surface as a thin, even layer, not concentrated in a channel.

shoreline development The construction over water or within a shoreline zone (generally 200 feet landward of the water) of structures such as buildings, piers, bulkheads, and breakwaters, including environmental alterations such as dredging and filling; any project that interferes with public navigational rights on surface waters regulated by the Shoreline Management Act.

short-circuiting The passage of runoff through a stormwater treatment facility in less than the design treatment time.

shotcrete Concrete that is placed by means of a spray nozzle, pneumatically applied.

silt fence A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a geotextile fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts, which are entrenched. Adding rigid wire fence backing can strengthen silt fence.

site The area within the legal boundaries of a parcel (or parcels) of land that is subject to the development project. For road projects, the site is defined by the length of the project and the right-of-way boundaries.

slope Degree of deviation of a surface from the horizontal, measured as a numerical ratio, percent, or in degrees. Expressed as a ratio, the first number is the horizontal distance (run) and the second is the vertical distance (rise); e.g., 2H:1V. A 2H:1V slope is a 50% slope. Expressed in degrees, the slope is the angle from the horizontal plane, so that a 90° slope is vertical (maximum), and a 45° slope is 1H:1V (i.e., a 100% slope).

soil The unconsolidated mineral and organic material on the immediate surface of the earth that serves as a natural medium for the growth of land plants. (See also *topsoil*.)

soil amendments Materials that improve soil fertility for establishing vegetation or permeability for infiltrating runoff.

soil drainage As a natural condition of the soil, the frequency and duration of periods when the soil is free of saturation. In well-drained soils, the water is removed readily, but not rapidly; in poorly-drained soils, the root zone is waterlogged for long periods unless artificially drained, and the roots of ordinary crop plants cannot get enough oxygen; and in excessively drained soils, the water is removed so completely that most crop plants suffer from lack of water. Strictly speaking, excessively drained soils are a result of excessive runoff due to steep slopes or low available water-holding capacity due to small amounts of silt and clay in the soil material. The following classes are used to express soil drainage:

- Well drained – Excess water drains away rapidly, and no mottling occurs within 36 inches of the surface.
- Moderately well drained – Water is removed from the soil somewhat slowly, resulting in small but significant periods of wetness; mottling occurs between 18 and 36 inches.
- Somewhat poorly drained – Water is removed from the soil slowly enough to keep it wet for significant periods but not all the time; mottling occurs between 8 and 18 inches.
- Poorly drained – Water is removed so slowly that the soil is wet for a large part of the time; mottling occurs between 0 and 8 inches.
- Very poorly drained – Water is removed so slowly that the water table remains at or near the surface for the greater part of the time. There may also be periods of surface ponding. The soil has a black to gray surface layer with mottles up to the surface.

soil permeability The ease with which gases, liquids, or plant roots penetrate or pass through a layer of soil.

soil stabilization The use of measures such as rock lining, vegetation, or other engineering structures to prevent the movement of soil when loads are applied to the soil.

soil texture class The relative proportion, by weight, of particle sizes, based on the USDA system, of individual soil grains less than 2 millimeters equivalent diameter in a mass of soil. The basic texture classes in approximate order of increasing proportions of fine particles are sand, loamy sand, sandy loam, loam, silt loam, silt, clay loam, sandy clay, silty clay, and clay.

sole-source aquifer An aquifer or aquifer system that supplies 50% or more of the drinking water for a given service area and for which there are no reasonably available alternative sources should the aquifer become contaminated, and the possibility of contamination exists. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency designates sole-source aquifers, and Section 1424(e) of the Safe Drinking Water Act is the statutory authority for the Sole-Source Aquifer Protection Program.

source control A structure or operation intended to prevent pollutants from coming into contact with stormwater, either through physical separation of areas or through careful management of activities that are sources of pollutants.

- *Structural source control BMPs* are physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater.
- *Operational BMPs* are nonstructural practices that prevent or reduce pollutants entering stormwater.

spill control device A tee section or down-turned elbow designed to retain a limited volume of a pollutant that floats on water, such as oil or antifreeze. Spill control devices are passive and must be cleaned out in order to remove the spilled pollutant.

spill prevention, control, and countermeasures (SPCC) plan A plan prepared by a construction contractor, as required in Standard Specification 1-07.15(1), to prevent sediment and other pollutants associated with construction activity from affecting soil, air, and water quality.

spillway A passage such as a paved apron or channel carrying surplus water over or around a dam or similar obstruction; an open or closed channel used to convey excess water from a reservoir. A spillway may contain gates, either manually or automatically controlled, to regulate the discharge of excess water.

stabilized construction entrance A construction site entrance that is reinforced or finished with media such as riprap, gravel, or hog fuel to minimize the tracking of sediment onto adjacent streets.

staging area (construction) A site used temporarily during construction for materials or equipment storage, assembly, or other temporary construction activities.

stairstep grading A technique of grading slopes to minimize erosion, in which continuous slopes are replaced with a series of terraces.

Standard Plans WSDOT *Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction*. Standardized design drawings for commonly used structures that can be referenced in contracts. The Headquarters Design Office maintains the Standard Plans.

Standard Specifications WSDOT *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction*. Construction requirements for commonly used structures that can be referenced in contracts. The Headquarters Construction Office maintains the Standard Specifications.

State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) The Washington State law (RCW 43.21C) intended to minimize environmental damage, modeled after the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA). SEPA requires that state agencies and local governments consider environmental factors when making decisions on development proposals over a certain size, comprehensive plans and zoning requirements, and other programmatic proposals. As part of this process, environmental documents are prepared and opportunities for public comment are provided.

steep slope A slope of 40% gradient or steeper within a vertical elevation change of at least 10 feet.

stoloniferous Description of a type of plant having a long shoot that grows from the central rosette and droops to the ground, where it roots to form a new plant.

storage routing A method to account for the attenuation of peak flows passing through a detention facility or other storage feature.

storm frequency The time interval between major storms of predetermined intensity and volumes of runoff that storm sewers and other structures are designed to handle hydraulically without surcharging and backflooding (e.g., a 2-year, 10-year, or 100-year storm).

storm sewer system A sewer that carries stormwater and surface water, street wash, and other washwaters or drainage, but excludes sewage and industrial wastes; also called a storm drain.

stormwater That portion of precipitation that does not naturally percolate into the ground or evaporate, but flows via Horton overland flow, interflow, pipes, and other features of a stormwater drainage system into a defined surface water body or a constructed infiltration facility.

stormwater drainage system Constructed and natural features that function together as a system to collect, convey, channel, hold, inhibit, retain, detain, infiltrate, divert, treat, or filter stormwater.

stormwater facility A constructed component of a stormwater drainage system, designed or constructed to perform a particular function, or multiple functions. Stormwater facilities include but are not limited to pipes, swales, ditches, culverts, street gutters, detention ponds, retention ponds, constructed wetlands, infiltration devices, catch basins, oil/water separators, and biofiltration swales.

***Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington* (SMMEW)** A technical manual prepared by the Washington State Department of Ecology, containing BMPs intended to prevent, control, and treat pollution in stormwater and to reduce other stormwater-related impacts on waters of the state. The stormwater manual provides guidance on measures necessary in eastern Washington to control the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment.

***Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SMMWW)** A technical manual prepared by the Washington State Department of Ecology, containing BMPs intended to prevent, control, and treat pollution in stormwater and to reduce other stormwater-related impacts on waters of the state. The stormwater manual provides guidance on measures necessary in western Washington to control the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment.

stormwater outfall Any location where concentrated stormwater runoff leaves the right-of-way. Outfalls may discharge to surface waters or groundwater.

stream An area where surface waters flow sufficiently to produce a defined channel or bed. A defined channel or bed is an area that demonstrates clear evidence of the passage of water, indicated by hydraulically sorted sediments or the removal of vegetative litter or loosely rooted vegetation by the action of moving water. The channel or bed need not contain water year-round. This definition does not include irrigation ditches, canals, stormwater runoff devices, or other entirely artificial watercourses, unless they are used to convey streams naturally occurring prior to construction. Topographic features that resemble streams but have no defined channels (i.e., swales) are considered streams when hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed pursuant to a development proposal predict formation of a defined channel after development.

streambanks The usual boundaries, not the flood boundaries, of a stream channel. Right and left banks are named facing downstream.

stream gaging The quantitative determination of stream flow using gages, current meters, weirs, or other measuring instruments at selected locations. (See also *gaging station*.)

stream order A dimensionless basin characteristic indicating the degree of stream channel branching, used in geomorphology and runoff studies. An n^{th}-order stream is formed by two or more streams of (n-1) order: a second-order stream exists below the confluence of two first-order streams, a third-order stream exists below the confluence of two second-order streams, and so on.

structural BMPs Physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater.

subbase storage Temporary storage of surface runoff within granular subbase underlying a structure or pavement.

subgrade A layer of stone or soil used as the underlying base for a BMP.

substrate The natural soil base underlying a BMP measure.

surcharge The flow condition occurring in closed conduits when the hydraulic grade line is above the crown of the sewer.

susceptibility The ease with which contaminants can move from the land surface to the aquifer, based solely on the types of surface and subsurface materials in the area. Susceptibility usually defines the rate at which a contaminant reaches an aquifer unimpeded by chemical interactions with the vadose zone media.

swale A natural depression or shallow drainage conveyance with relatively gentle side slopes, generally with flow depths less than 1 foot, used to temporarily store, route, or filter runoff.

tackifier A plant-based or synthetic polymer used to help hydroseed mixes stick together and adhere to the soil. Some tackifiers directly stabilize soil.

take Defined under the federal Endangered Species Act as "harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect or attempt to engage in any such conduct," including modification to a species habitat. The habitat could be a riparian area, spawning bed, or a rearing area. Changing the hydraulic characteristics of a stream system may result in a habitat alteration and could be considered a *take*. Release of physical, chemical, or biological pollutants into a stream system may result in a *take*.

Technology Assessment Protocol–Ecology (TAPE) A Department of Ecology process for reviewing and approving new stormwater treatment technologies.

temporary erosion and sedimentation control (TESC) plan A plan that includes all physical and procedural BMPs for preventing erosion and turbid discharges throughout a project and during construction.

terrace An embankment or combination of an embankment and channel across a slope to control erosion by diverting or storing surface runoff instead of permitting it to flow uninterrupted down the slope.

threatened species See *rare, threatened, or endangered species.*

threshold discharge area (TDA) An on-site area draining to a single natural discharge location or multiple natural discharge locations that combine within ¼ mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flow path).

tight-line A continuous length of aboveground pipe that conveys water from one point to another (typically down a steep slope) with no inlets or collection points in between.

till A layer of poorly sorted soil deposited by glacial action that generally has very low infiltration rates.

time of concentration The time necessary for surface runoff to reach the outlet of a subbasin from the hydraulically most remote point in the tributary drainage area.

tire wash A facility for washing mud off vehicles, to prevent track-out of sediment.

toe of slope A point or line of a slope in an excavation or cut where the lower surface changes to horizontal or meets the existing ground slope; or a point or line on the upper surface of a slope where it changes to horizontal or meets the original surface.

topsoil Surface soil, presumed to be fertile and used to cover planting areas. Topsoil must meet ASTM D 5268 Standard Specification, and water permeability must be 0.6 inches per hour or greater. Organic matter must have no more than 10% of nutrients in mineralized water-soluble forms. Topsoil must not have phytotoxic characteristics.

total dissolved solids The dissolved salt loading in surface and subsurface waters.

total maximum daily load (TMDL) – Water Cleanup Plan A calculation of the maximum amount of a pollutant that a water body can receive and still meet water quality standards, and an allocation of that amount to the pollutant's sources. A TMDL (also known as a Water Cleanup Plan) is the sum of allowable loads of a single pollutant from all contributing point sources and nonpoint sources. The calculation must include a margin of safety to ensure that the water body can be used for the purposes the state has designated. The calculation must also account for seasonal variation in water quality. Water quality standards are set by states, territories, and tribes. They identify the uses for each water body: for example, drinking water supply, contact recreation (such as swimming), and aquatic support (such as fishing) and the scientific criteria to support each use. The federal Clean Water Act, Section 303, establishes the water quality standards and TMDL programs.

total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) TPH-Gx: the qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for volatile (gasoline) petroleum products in water; and TPH-Dx: the qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for semivolatile (diesel) petroleum products in water.

total suspended solids (TSS) That portion of the solids carried by stormwater that can be captured on a standard glass filter.

toxic Poisonous, carcinogenic, or otherwise directly harmful to life.

Track walking A technique for roughening soils on slopes to reduce erosion, involving systematically covering soils with cleat marks that run perpendicular to the slope, for detaining and infiltrating runoff.

trash rack A structural device used to prevent debris from entering a spillway or other hydraulic structure.

travel time The estimated time for surface water to flow between two points of interest.

treatment liner A layer of soil designed to slow the rate of infiltration and provide sufficient pollutant removal to protect groundwater quality.

treatment train A combination of two or more treatment facilities connected in series.

triangular silt dike A geotextile-encased foam check dam.

trip end The expected number of vehicles using a parking area, represented by the projected trip end counts for the parking area associated with a proposed land use. Trip end counts are estimated using either *Trip Generation* (published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers) or a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with expertise in traffic volume estimation. Trip end counts must be made for the design life of the project. For project sites with seasonal or varied use, the highest period of expected traffic impacts is evaluated.

turbidity Dispersion or scattering of light in a liquid, caused by suspended solids and other factors; commonly used as a measure of suspended solids in a liquid. Turbidity is a state-regulated parameter. Turbidity can be measured in the field with a hand-held meter and is recorded in nephelometric turbidity units (NTU).

underdrain Plastic pipes with holes drilled through the top, installed on the bottom of an infiltration facility, that are used to collect and remove excess runoff.

underground injection control (UIC) well A bored, drilled, or driven shaft whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension; a dug hole whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension; an improved sinkhole; a subsurface fluid distribution system that includes an assemblage of perforated pipes, drain tiles, or other similar mechanisms intended to distribute fluids below the surface of the ground. Examples of UIC wells or subsurface infiltration systems are drywells, drainfields, and french drains that include pipes and other similar devices that discharge to ground. Underground Injection Control is a federal regulatory program established to protect underground sources of drinking water from UIC well discharges.

Uniform Bid Analysis A tracking database used by WSDOT to track costs of items for which Standard Specifications have been developed.

unstable slope A sloping area of land that at any time exhibits mass movement of earth.

upgrade The replacement of paved areas with a better surface or in a way that enhances the traffic capacity of the road.

urbanized area An area designated and identified by the U.S. Bureau of Census according to the following criteria: a densely settled area that has a minimum residential population of 50,000 people and a minimum average density of 1,000 people per square mile.

urban runoff Stormwater from streets and adjacent domestic or commercial properties that may carry pollutants of various kinds into storm sewers or drywells and/or receiving waters.

Vactor waste The waste material that is found in the bottom of a catch basin, so called because it typically is collected and removed by a Vactor (vacuum) truck.

vault See *dry vault or tank* and *wet vault or tank.*

vegetated filter strip A facility designed to provide runoff treatment of conventional pollutants (but not nutrients) through the process of biofiltration.

vertical curve The up and down component of a roadway curve.

Washington administrative unit The basic geographic unit for watershed analysis. The area shown on the map specified in WAC 222-22-020 (1), and referred to in WAC 222-16-010.

water bar A small ditch cut perpendicular to the flow of water in roads or hillsides. A cross-sectional view reveals a ditch with the excavated material placed on the downslope side.

water body Surface waters including rivers, streams, lakes, marine waters, estuaries, and wetlands.

Water Cleanup Plan See *total maximum daily load.*

water quality A term used to describe the chemical, physical, and biological characteristics of water, usually in respect to its suitability for a particular purpose.

water quality criteria Science-based levels or measures of water quality considered necessary to protect a beneficial use, developed as the basis for water quality standards, which identify the uses for each water body; for example, drinking water supply, contact recreation (such as swimming), and aquatic support (such as fishing).

water quality design storm The 24-hour rainfall amount with a 6-month return frequency. Commonly referred to as the 6-month, 24-hour storm.

water quality implementing agreement (WQIA) The Implementing Agreement between the Washington State Department of Ecology and the Washington State Department of Transportation Regarding Compliance with the State of Washington Surface Water Quality Standards.

water quality standards The minimum requirements for water purity for uses like drinking water supply, contact recreation (such as swimming), and aquatic support (such as fishing). The Department of Ecology sets water quality standards for Washington State. Surface water and groundwater standards are established in WAC 172-201A and WAC 173-200, respectively.

water resource inventory area (WRIA) A geographic area within which water drains into a particular river, stream, or receiving water body, identified and numbered by the state of Washington (defined in WAC 173-500).

watershed A geographic region within which water drains into a particular river, stream, or body of water. Watersheds can be as large as those identified and numbered by the state of Washington as water resource inventory areas (WRIAs), defined in WAC 173-500.

waters of the state All surface waters and watercourses within the jurisdiction of the state of Washington, including lakes, rivers, ponds, streams, inland waters, undergroundwaters, saltwaters, and wetlands.

water table The upper surface or top of the saturated portion of the soil or bedrock layer, indicating the uppermost extent of groundwater.

wattle Temporary erosion and sediment control barriers consisting of any plant material that is wrapped in biodegradable fiber, tubular plastic, or similar encasing material. Wattles are typically 8 to 10 inches in diameter and 25 to 30 feet in length.

weir A device for measuring or regulating the flow of water.

wetlands Areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or groundwater at a frequency and duration sufficient to support a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas. Wetlands do not include artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites, including but not limited to irrigation and drainage ditches, grass-lined swales, canals, detention facilities, wastewater treatment facilities, farm ponds, and landscape amenities; or wetlands unintentionally created after July 1, 1990, as a result of construction of a road, street, or highway. Wetlands may include artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland areas to mitigate adverse impacts resulting from the conversion of wetlands. (Water bodies not included in this definition of wetlands, as well as those mentioned in the definition, are still waters of the state.)

wet pond A facility that provides water quality treatment for stormwater by using a permanent pool of water to remove conventional pollutants from runoff through sedimentation, biological uptake, and plant filtration. Wet ponds are designed to optimize water quality by providing retention time in order to settle out particles of fine sediment to which pollutants such as heavy metals absorb, and to allow biological activity to occur that metabolizes nutrients and organic pollutants.

wet vault *or* tank Underground storage facility that treats stormwater for water quality through the use of a permanent pool of water that acts as a settling basin. It is designed to optimize water quality by providing retention time in order to settle out particles of fine sediment that absorb pollutants such as heavy metals, and to allow biological activity to occur that metabolizes nutrients and organic pollutants.

zoning ordinance An ordinance based on the police power of government to protect the health, safety, and general welfare of the public. It may regulate the type of use and intensity of development of land and structures to the extent necessary for a public purpose. Requirements may vary among various geographically defined areas called zones. Regulations generally cover such items as height and bulk of buildings, density of dwelling units, off-street parking, control of signs, and use of land for residential, commercial, industrial, or agricultural purposes. A zoning ordinance is one of the major methods for implementing a comprehensive plan.